MARKHAMS Maister-Peece.

Containing all knowledge belonging to Smith, Farrier, or Horse-leech, touching the curing of all diseases in Horses.

Deuided into two bookes. The first containing all cures Physicall. The second all belonging to Chyrurgery.

The 4th Impression corrected and enlarged by the Author.

Gervase Markham.

To which is now added The Country mans Care For Curing Diseases in Smaller Cattle.

+ Cujv. 407. fl. 10

THE Figure 1. a compleat *Horſeman* ſhows,
That *Rides*, *Keeps*, *Cures*, and all perfections knows.
The 2. *Diet*; the 3. Letting Blood,
Beſt *Balm* of *Balms*, for inward Griefs moſt good:
The 4. *VVounds*, *Galls* and *Sores* doth firmly cure;
The 5. helps *Natures* Marks; 6. doth procure
Helps for the *Sinews* Griefs, as *Slip* or *Strain*,
Knock, or *Convulſion*, all are helpt again.
The 7. wholſom *Drink*; the 8. doth take
Blood from the *Mouth*, which ſudden Death doth ſlake.
The 9. ſhews the *Horſe-Caudle*, or the *Maſh*,
Good as the beſt, yet ſome Fools count it Traſh.
The 10. ſhews *Fury* in untamed things,
The only *Fountain* whence *Diſeaſes* ſprings.

MARKHAM'S
MASTER-PIECE REVIVED;

Containing all Knowledge belonging to the *Smith*, *Farrier*, or *Horse-Leach*, touching the Curing

All Diseases IN HORSES.

DRAWN

With great pains from approved Experience, and the Publick Practice of the best Horse-Marshals in *Christendom*.

Divided into Two Books.

The *I.* containing *Cures Physical*; The *II.* all *Cures Chirurgical*:

TOGETHER WITH

The *Nature*, *Use* and *Quality* of every *SIMPLE* mentioned through the whole WORK.

Now the Fifteenth time Printed, Corrected and Augmented with above Thirty new Chapters, and Forty new Medicines heretofore never Publisht.

To which is added by way of *APPENDIX*,

The Countrey-Man's Care for his other Cattle,

CONTAINING

The exactest *Receipts* for Curing all DISEASES in Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, Goats, and all smaller Cattel, with many new Additions.

And now in this Impression is added

The COMPLEAT JOCKEY;

Containing Methods for the Training of Horses up for Racing; with their Heats and Courses, and manner of Keeping, *&c.* Also Instructions to the Buyers, to avoid Cheating Horse-Coursers; And all things necessary for Gentlemen, and others. *Never before made Publick.*

LONDON, Printed by *John Richardson* for *M. Wotton* and *George Conyers*, at the *Three Daggers* in *Fleetstreet*, near the *Inner-Temple Gate*, and at the *Golden Ring* in *Little Britain*, 1694.

MARKHAM'S

MASTER-PIECE

REVIVED:

Containing all Knowledge belonging to the Ow[illegible]

rier, or Horſe-Leech, touching the Curing

of all Diſeaſes

IN

HORSES.

DRAWN

36.vi.78

BL

CONTAINING

The exacteſt Receipts for Curing all DISEASES in Oxen, Cows, Sheep,

Hogs, Goats, and all manner of Cattel, with many new Additions;

And alſo in a large Diſcourſe is added,

The COMPLEAT JOCKEY:

Containing Methods for the Training of Horſes for Racing, with

their Diets and Cloaths, and manner of Keeping. Alſo Inſtructions

to the Buyers, to avoid Cheats and Cozenages. And all things ne-

ceſſary for Gentlemen, and others, [illegible]

LONDON, Printed for [illegible]

The Epistle Dedicatory.

TO THE

RIGHT HONOURABLE, and

My NOBLE LORD,

Sir *ROBERT DORMER*,

Baronet,

Baron *Dormer* of *Wing*, Viscount *Ascot*, Earl of *Carnarvan*, and Master of His Majesties Hawks.

SIR,

HEver since I came to serve your Country in Military Occasions, I accounted my self your Servant, and to that end have made strong Intimation: But Multa cadunt, *many haps hinder*

hinder hopes: now left to mine own Power, I could not find anything that could so well express me to your Lordship, or shew you what I am either in Affection or Vertue, as the Dedication of this Book, which contains me amply and fully adorned with the best of mine own Feathers. And howsoever it may appear to your Honour with an old countenance, both because my self, the Title, and much of the Matter is old; yet let me give Assurance unto your Noble Goodness, that there is that newness of Truth, Art, and approved Experience, which unto this day hath not been discovered in any other Author. It is more (my Noble Lord) than fifty years agone, since I began to sail in this Ocean, and to discover the fruitful Traffick of this needful Art: Nor have I in the Interim of Time been a Truant, but with my best means and abilities have pursued it (as near as I could) unto the height of Perfection,

and

and doubtleſs (much Honoured Sir) I have not loſt all my Labour, what I have gained I have here now newly inſerted, and ſend it in all Humility to kiſs your Lordſhips Hand; not as a material thing worthy your ſtudy; but as a poor Virtue that needs your Defence. And however, I dare not ſet it forth as a Preſent worthy your acceptance, yet be pleaſed to make it ſuch by your Favour, which can make mean deſerving appear to be of greateſt Merit. This Obligation now offered unto your worthy Hand, is the free Offering of my Love, Service and Affection; and in a word, of my ſelf, who am as well as my Work devoted to be ever Yours. This Book is but the external Pledge which doth demonſtrate the inward Obligation of my Heart, ſince what I am, Art, Soul and Affection is only Yours, and deſire to be ſo eſteemed in all my Actions, eſpecially in this Work. If it arrive with as good ſucceſs

as I tranſport it with ſincere Devotion, no doubt but the Work will gain Luſtre, and my ſelf ſhall find that ſatisfaction which ſhall make me ever acknowledge my ſelf,

Your Honours Humble

Devoted Servant,

GERVASE MARKHAM.

AN ADMONITION TO THE READER:

Which I would wish him to Read, before he peruse the Book.

TWO Errors (gentle Reader) have been laid to my Charge in the first Publication of this Book, as namely, a mistaking in the Table of Additions wanting Direction: And the great multiplicity of heaping together of many Medicines for one Grief, without distinguishing their goodness, or foretelling the Practitioner, on which to rely for his best Profit and Assurance.

The first was but a venial escape in the Printer, and maybe forgotten, inasmuch as it is in this Impression fully amended. For the second, which is the multiplicity of Medicines, I have for thy satisfaction, to all those Medicines which of mine

own Knowledge I have found to be certain and moſt approved, and to be the beſt of thoſe which are coupled with it; I have in the Margin, and over againſt the Medicin placed this Mark ☞.

As alſo to every new addition and new Chapter, (never before publiſhed) I have in the beginning of the Chapter placed this ☞.

And for thy better furtherance in this Work, I have likewiſe in the Table, to all the new Additions (which are the very excellencies of all my Knowledge) placed this Mark alſo ☞.

And this I have done for two Reaſons.

Firſt, to make this Work which was one of my firſt, and entituled my *MASTER-PIECE*, a true *MASTER-PIECE* indeed, and ſo exact in every part, that other ſtoln Pieces & Pamphlets Chriſtened in my name, and Printed without my knowledge or aſſiſtance, with twice ſo many Falſhoods as Pages may be known to be both Baſtards and Abortive; miſtaking an ounce for half an ounce, three handful for two, too much of one Simple and too little of another, of which whoſoever maketh trial, will, without he hath had ſome knowledge already, indanger his horſe; and therefore I have given many men notice my ſelf of it, becauſe they have taken one thing for another.

And

And that the Bombaſted Title, and the illiterate and abſurd Epiſtles, were neither the one nor the other of my invention: For I muſt moſt ingenuouſly confeſs, that, but to this Book and my firſt, I was never ſo happy as to be made a God-Father.

And laſtly, to wiſh all thoſe which are abuſed by falſe and imperfect Printings, to come to this Book for Correction, which is a Cabinet that contains all, and more than others ſtruggle for. I can give the Reader no better a Reaſon to perſwade him to read my Book, than to ſhew him the real uſe of Horſes well managed, according to the Rules of Horſemanſhip; he is fit for feats of Arms, and Triumphs in War; and a great pity it is, that ſuch an excellent Beaſt ſhould any way miſcarry for want of knowing his natural Diſeaſes, and the Cure thereof.

I have now made the Souldier and all others, Maſters of Art in the Cures of their Horſes, if Farriers be failing to adviſe and conſider with them: For it is a Knowledge fit for a Gentleman, both in Peace and War, to be able to cure the Diſeaſes incident to his Horſes; for other Countries do love all Experiments, and to be ſeen generally in all generous Practices, whereof horſemanſhip

manſhip is one of the chiefeſt. Which work I will juſtifie upon my reputation to have bin tried by me, and hath wrought good effect; having theſe fifty years been a Practitioner in the ſame, and did never think to have diſcloſed theſe Secrets that now I have, which Time and my Induſtry hath brought to light; and becauſe old age groweth upon me, and that the Grave will be never a whit the better, I thought therefore to divulge them to the World, rather than to have hid them in Oblivion; deſiring the Reader to give God the Glory. and me but only thanks and good wiſhes. So I reſt,

Thine,

G. M.

The

The AUTHORS Names, from whom any thing in this *Work* is Collected, being the beſt Farriers.

Theſe are Publick.

Xenophon
Ruſticus
Vegetius
Pelagonius
Camerarius
Apollonius
Greſſon
Grilli
Horatio
Gloria de Caballi
Libal
Stevens
Wickerus
La Brove
Martin ſenior
Albiterio
Vinet
Clifford
Maſcal
Markham

Theſe are Private.

Martin junior
Webb
Dallidoun ſen.
Dallidoun jun.
Ausbourn
Stanley
Smith
Dowſing
Day
Barns
Mayfield
Lupman
Goodſoon
Parfray
White

Dunlop	
Smith	White
Stanley	Crawford
Arbuthnot	Goodfellow
Balfour [illegible]	[illegible]
Balfour [illegible]	Mylne
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	Grey
[illegible]	[illegible]

Markham's Master-Piece.

THE

FIRST BOOK

CONTAINING

All Cures, Physical, or such Infirmities, as being inward, crave the Administration of Physick, and are called in Horse-Leach-craft, *Horse-sicknesses.*

CHAP. I.

Of the Natural Composition of Horses bodies.

TOuching the true composition of a Horses body, you shall understand, that it is (as the Body of Man) compounded of thirteen several things, that is to say, seven natural, and six not natural: The seven natural are *Elements*, *Temperaments*, *Humours*, *members*, *Powers*, or *Vertues*, *Actions* or *Operations*, and *Spirits*; all which be called natural, because the natural *Perfection*, and excellency of every sensible body doth wholly depend upon them: And hath his moving no longer than they have power of working. The six, which are not Natural, be the *Air*, *Meat* and *Drink*, *Motion* and *Rest*, Sleep and *Watch*, *Emptiness*, and *Fulness*, and the *Affects*, or *Motions* of the mind; and these are called not natural, because as (being rightly and in due order applied) they preserve, sustain, and fortify, the body

so being misgoverned, or used in any excess, or disorder, they are the only corrupt destroyers of the whole body: And of these thirteen principles which compound the Fabrick, or whole frame of the body, I intend to speak severally.

CHAP. II.

Of the four Elements, their Vertues and Operations.

FIrst, for the Exposition of the word *Elemens*, you shall understand that it is the primary or first beginning of all things, being of it self pure, uncorrupt and simple; all things being first made thereof, and all things at last being resolved into the same again. It is also in its own nature so bright, clear, and without contraction of impurity, that it is not able to be discerned by any sensible eye, whatsoever. Lastly, It is the last part of *Aboon* or that thing which is made, or proceedeth from it.

Now of these Elements which are the usual first movers, or beginners of all moving things, there are only four in number, that is to say, *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*; meaning not that *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*, which is here visible with us beneath, and which through the grossness thereof, is both palpable and to be discerned; but those which are amounted aloft, and through their purity invisible and concealed from us, (for the other are compounded Bodies, and not simple.) And of these perfect and distinct Elements you shall know that the *Fire* is the highest as being fixed or joyned next unto the *Moon*, being hot and dry; yet naturally exceeding, or being most predominant, or ruling in heat.

The *Air* is placed next unto *Fire*, and is naturally light and hot; yet his predominant or chief quality is moist.

The *Water* is joyned unto the *Air*, the disposition thereof being heavy and moist; but his predominant or chief quality only cold.

Lastly, The *Earth* adjoyned to the *Water*, is the lowest; and it is most heavy and cold; but the predominant or chief quality thereof is only driness.

Now for the Vertues, Properties and Operations of these four Elements, you shall understand, that first the *Fire*, by means of his heat moveth matter to generation, and stirreth up warmth in all living things; it is that which the Philosophers call *Heterogenick*, which is in the mixt bodies to separate things of divers kinds one from another

ther, and also to joyn things of like kinds together, which they like-wise call *Homogenea*. For by vertue of the Fire, the bones of Horses are separated from the flesh, the flesh from the sinews, the sinews from the veins, the veins from the Arteries, the heart from the Liver, the liver from the Spleen, and so forth in such sort as we see the divers parts of the fuel we burn, by the vertue of the fire and heat to be separated, and divided one from another, as the vapour from the smoke, the smoke from the flame, and the flame from the Ashes, as in these things, so in many other things; as in the trial of Metals and such like, where the fire by vertue of his heat separateth the body from body, that is, metal from metal, and corruption from incorruption, gathering and knitting together every thing of one and the self same kind. Besides the vertue of the fire, is to ripen, order and digest things raw and undigested, mingling the dry with the moist, and opening the pores, that the Air being somewhat more solid and gross, may enter into the *Body*: And lastly, it breaketh and moderateth the coldness of the Water and the Earth, so that it may not distemper or confound the *Body*.

Touching the vertue and operation of the Air, you shall understand, that by the moistness thereof it maketh the matter apt to receive shape, either natural, or accidental, and by the help and Assistance of the fire, bringeth the *Powers* and influences of the Heavens and Stars into Inferiour *Bodies*, making the mixt bodies not only subtle and penetrable, but also light and mounting, to the end they may neither be too gross, nor too heavy. Secondly, the Air through his Moistness cooleth the burning heat of the Heart, Liver, and Intralls, as we daily see by the Office of the Lights and Lungs, which like a pair of bellows draweth incessantly fresh Air unto the Heart and inward members. And albeit, the Air doth not seem to the sense of the outward eyes, to be any thing near so moist as the Water, yet according to the opinions, both of our Books and best *Phisicians*, it is by much the moister, which is well proved, (say they) by the abundant flux it containeth, which flux spreadeth it self so far abroad in the Body, that it filleth every empty part and corner thereof with the special *Properties* and *Characters* of moistness, and by that Reason, is much harder to be kept within his own *Bounds* than the Water is. Lastly, as the Water was altered by God from his first natural place, for the better profit both of Man and *Beast*: Even so the Air, according to School-mens opinions, was not left al-

together in his firſt natural diſpoſition, leſt being over-moiſt it ſhould ſo confound and ſuffocate all ſenſe, that neither man nor Beaſt ſhould be able to breath or Live.

Now for the vertue and operation of the Water, it is to be noted, that through the Coldneſs thereof, it conglutinateth and bindeth in mixt bodies, both parts and members together, which be of divers kinds; as bones with fleſh and ſinews, fleſh with ſinews and bones, and ſinews with bones and fleſh. Even as for a familiar example, we ſee in the time of any great Froſt, the ſtrength of the Cold how it bindeth things of divers kinds together, bringing into one maſs or ſubſtance, both Water, Dirt, Stones, Straws, Sticks and Leaves: The Water alſo with its Coldneſs, doth temper and cool the inflammation and heat of the Fire, gathering together thoſe things, which otherwiſe the violent Heat would diſperſe and ſcatter abroad.

Laſtly, for the vertue and operation of the Earth, it is through his drineſs in mixt bodies, ſo to harden and fix them together, that they may retain their ſhapes, which otherwiſe by the power of the Air and Water, would be ſo Soluble and Looſe, that they could not hold together; as we may ſee in Paſt, Wax and ſuch like, which whilſt it is moiſt, will receive no print, but being once hardned, it retaineth any Form that is preſt into it. And here is to be noted, that according to the opinion of *Hypocrates*, when any ſenſible body dyeth, not only every quality, but every ſubſtance, and part makes his return to the Element from whence it came; as heat to the Fire, moiſtneſs to the Air, coldneſs to the Water, and drineſs to the Earth. And thus briefly you ſee, that of theſe four common Elements, or common beginners of things; the Fire being hot ſeparateth; the Air being moiſt, ſhapeth; the Water being cold, bindeth; and the Earth being dry, hardneth and retaineth. The uſe that you are to make of this knowledge, over and beſides the compoſition of a natural body, is, that when you find any ſickneſs, or infirmity, which proceedeth from the fire, as Inflammations of the body, or ſuch like, that then you apply ſimples of the nature of the Air or Water, which may moiſten and cool the violence of the heat. If the Infirmity proceed from the Air, as Flux of Blood, or too much moiſture, then you ſhall apply ſimples of the nature of the Fire or Earth, whoſe heat and drineſs may diſperſe and harden ſuch moiſture. If the Diſeaſe ſpring from the Water, as Colds, Rheumes, Apoplexies, and ſuch like;

like; then you ſhall ſeek ſimples of the nature of the Fire and Air; that through the heat of the one, and the moiſt lightneſs of the other, all ſuch cold, groſs and ſolid humours may be diſperſed, But if the diſeaſe proceed from the Earth, as Mangineſs and Leproſie, or their like, that are dry and hardned infectious, then you ſhall ſeek ſimples of the nature of the Fire only, whoſe heat may diſſolve and looſen thoſe ill knit, dry, and hard humours.

Thus you ſee, too much heat is abated by coldneſs and moiſtneſs, too much moiſtneſs by heat and drineſs; too much coldneſs by heat and moiſtneſs; too much drineſs by heat only.

Thus much of theſe four common Elements, which begin all things living and unliving, ſenſible and unſenſible; yet of ſenſible things, which live and have blood, there be other more near Elements, or beginnings, which are called proper Elements, or generation; as the ingendring ſeed, and menſtrual blood, from whence every Beaſt taketh his firſt ſhape and beginning; and yet thoſe proper beginnings have their whole dependency and hanging upon the qualities of the firſt common beginnings already ſpoken of, which is moiſt, dry, hot and cold, for without them they are nothing, nor can do any thing.

CHAP. III.

Of Temperaments, and their ſeveral kinds, and how far every way they extend in Horſes.

THeſe *Temperaments*, or *Temperatures*, which are the ſecond thing in a Horſes compoſition, do ſpring from the Commixture of the four Elements, and are nine in number, whereof eight are unequal, and the ninth is equal. Of the eight unequal, four are ſimple, and thoſe be hot, cold, moiſt, and dry, which Phyſicians call the firſt Qualities; and of theſe, the firſt two be active, and the other two Paſſive: the other four are compound, and they be hot and moiſt, hot and dry, cold and moiſt, cold and dry. Now the equal temperament is divided into two, an Univerſal and a Special. The equal *Temperament Univerſal*, is, when the four Elements are in an equal proportion, generally divided through the whole Body, Nature injoying no more from the one, than from the other. The equal *Temperament eſpecial*, is when the Elements are proportioned according as every kind doth moſt properly require, be it either plant or beaſt: in

Plants, when every Plant hath that commixture of Elements, which are proper to its kind, as the hot Plant being hot, the cold, being cold, &c. Whereas to contrarywise, to have a hot plant cold, or a cold hot, to have one cold, or dry hot, were a false and unequal commixture of Elements. So likewise Beasts, that Horse, that Dog, that Swine is said to have his due *Temperament*, when he is of such temperature as is most proper unto his kind, which is best discerned by his Actions, or Motions. As thus, the Horse is known to be hot and moist by his Lightness, Swiftness, Valiantness, and long life, and also to be of a temperate nature, in that he is easily Tamed, Docible, Obedient and Familiar with the Man. And so long as either Horse, or any other thing, continueth in the Mediocrity and Excellency of his proper Temperament, so long we may truly judge him of a good temper and disposition; but if there be any overflow of qualities, or excess in his humours, as either heat, coldness, moistness or dryness, then we say, he is either a hot Choleric Horse, a cold Dull Horse, a Drie Mischievous Horse, or a most Cowardly Horse according to the overflow of that quality which reigneth in him.

Again, every Horse is said to have his *Temperaments*, according to his Age and the Country wherein he is bred, and sometimes according to the time of the year wherein he Liveth. And thus a Horse in his foal Age, which is till he be six years old, is naturally hot and moist; in his middle, which is till twelve, more hot and dry than moist; and in his old age, which is past eighteen, more cold and dry, than either hot or moist. So likewise, the Horses which are bred in Southern parts, as either in *Spain*, *Barbary*, or *Greece* are naturally more hot than those which are bred either in the seventeen Lands, *Germany* or *England*; neither is there any Horse, which is in good state of body, that is so hot in the spring time of the year, as in the Summer, nor so cold in the Summer, as the Winter. All which observations are with most curious diligence to be observed of every Horse-leach, when he goeth about to cure any sickness: for unless he considers their natures and temperatures, and every other circumstance already declared, he shall right soon be deceived in the administration of his Physick. Therefore, I earnestly desire every Farrier, before he give any drench or potion, first to enquire the kind, race, and disposition of the Horse, next his Age, then the Country, and lastly, the time of the year: And so according to the truth thereof, to mix his Receipts.

It

It is moſt expedient alſo, for every Horſe-leach to conſider the ſecond qualities, which are ſo called, becauſe they take their beginnings from the firſt qualities already declared, of which ſecond qualities ſome are called palpable, or to be touched, as theſe, ſoftneſs, hardneſs, ſmoothneſs, roughneſs, thickneſs, bricklineſs, heavineſs, thinneſs, thickneſs, ſmallneſs, groſſneſs, and ſuch other like. Some again are not palpable, as thoſe which appertain to hearing, ſeeing, and ſmelling, as noiſes, colours, odours, and ſuch like; and by obſerving well the ſecond qualities, he ſhall with much eaſe know whether the Horſe be diſpoſed to any ſickneſs or not, as ſhall be more largely declared hereafter in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. IV.

Of Humours, and to what end they ſerve.

NOw concerning *Humours*, which are the third compoſers of a *Horſes* body, and to likewiſe of every other Beaſt alſo; you muſt underſtand that they are four in number, that is to ſay, *Blood*, *Flegm*, *Choler*, and *Melancholly*. As touching *Blood*, it is in its nature uncorrupted, and therefore hot and moiſt, and ſweet in taſte, participating of the Elements Water and Air, *Choler* is hot and dry, and bitter in taſte, as participating of the Elements Fire and Earth. *Melancholly* is cold and dry, and in taſte ſowre and heavy, as participating of the Elements Fire and Air; *Flegm* is cold and moiſt, and either ſweet, or wallowiſh without any taſte at all, as participating of the Elements Water and Earth. ſo that theſe four Humours by their qualities, are every way allied unto the Elements. For to ſpeak briefly, and according to the manner of Phyſicians, *Blood* is of the nature of the Air, it being moſt predominant there in; *Flegm* of the nature of the water, *Choler* of the nature of fire, and *Melancholly* of the nature of the Earth. And albeit theſe Humours are ſymbolized or mixt through every part of the body, yet every one of them aboundeth more in one part than in another, and have their places of reſidence, abſolute, and particular to themſelves; as *Blood* about the heart; *Flegm* in the Brain, *Choler* in the Liver, and *Melancholly* in the *Spleen*. Now as theſe Humours do more or leſs abound, or have greater or leſſer ſovereignty in the Horſe, ſo is the Beaſt naturally better or worſe coloured, qualified, or diſpoſed as thus. That Horſe in whom blood hath the greateſt predominance,

and

and may be called a Horse sanguine, is bright, bay of Colour, and in disposition pleasant, nimble, and of temperate or moderate motion. That Horse in whom Flegm hath the greatest dominion, and may be called a Flegmatick Horse, is for the most part of a milky white colour, and so consequently slow, dull, and heavy. If Choler bear the greatest rule in his Constitution, then is his colour commonly a bright Sorrel, and by that means of disposition hot, fiery, and of little strength. Lastly, If the earth have gotten power above the other Elements, so that he may be called a Melancholly Horse, then his colour is commonly a mouse dun, and his disposition cowardly, faint and slothful. But because these particulars are properly appertaining to the Complexions of Horses, of which we shall have cause to speak more largely hereafter, I will not stand upon any greater relations; only I give you thus much in conclusion: to understand that every one of these aforesaid Humours hath his proper use and end, whereunto it serveth, as thus. *Blood* serveth more properly to nourish the Body. *Flegm* giveth motion to the joynts. *Melancholly* begetteth an Appetite or longing to his meat. Now during the time that these Humours do possess their natural qualities, so long they are wholsome, and be called by their simple names without Gloss or Addition: but if by any mischance they be disordered or corrupted, then they are unwholsom, and are no longer called by their simple names, but have other Epitherons annexed unto them, as *Melancholly*, *Blood*, *Salt*, *Flegm*, *Choler*, *adust* or *burnt Choler* and *fretting Melancholly*, whereof proceedeth many pestilent and dangerous diseases, as shall be at large declared hereafter. And thus much for the state of Humours,

CHAP. V.

Of Members, and their several kinds.

TOuching *Members*, which are the fourth main instrument in this great Fabrick of a Horses body, they are by School-men divided into two parts. The first is called *Similaria*, which is like, semblable, or one and the same thing. The other is called *Instrumental*, and are contrary to the first.

Members alike, are those, which being separated, or distributed into parts, yet every part thereof is alike in substance to the whole, neither altering in definition, appellation, or nature; as flesh, bone, sinew,

ſinew, and ſuch like: for fleſh being cut or inciſed into many parts, yet is every part ſtill fleſh, ſo reputed, and ſo called, as well as when it was in combination all together; and as of this, ſo likewiſe may it be ſaid of bones, ſinews, and the like.

Now for Members inſtrumental, they be thoſe which being made of parts of ſemblable, and divided into parts, yet the parts are not alike, neither have one name with the whole; as the head, legg, foot, and ſuch like: for every part of the head is not called the head, nor every part of the legg the legg, but have other appellations, as the Brow, the Temples, the Knees, the Feet lock, *&c.* Now theſe Inſtrumental members, in doing of their offices and duties, are of much more perfection than the ſemblable Members: Wherefore Schoolmen have made amongſt theſe Inſtrumental Members, four Soveraigns or Princes above the reſt; that is, the *Brain*, the *Heart*, the *Liver*, and the *Stones*; of which the firſt three are the preſervers of the ſingular Body, and the fourth of the whole kind; the firſt three giving motion and agitation to the Body, the fourth generation and increaſe to ſucceeding Ages.

Now from theſe principal Members, like branches from a well-grown Tree, do ſpring other Members, which doth them Service: as from the Brain ſpring ſinews, whoſe office is feeling, from the Heart Arteries, whoſe office is ſprightlineſs and lively-hood; from the Liver Veins, whoſe office is warmth and ſtrength; and from the Stones the ſeed-veſſels, whoſe office is procreation and increaſe. Now foraſmuch as from theſe do likewiſe proceed a World of other members, as *Tendons*, *Ligaments*, *Lungs*, *Spleens*, *Guts*, and ſuch like; all which, in as much as the knowledge of them doth more properly belong to the office of the Chirurgion, than to the Phyſician, (though moſt neceſſary to both) I am here to adertiſe every ſtudious Reader that when he ſhall have occaſion to meddle with any member about a Horſe, that he turn to the ſecond Book of this Volume, which treateth only of Chirurgery, and there he ſhall not only find every member and lineament in a Horſe, but alſo the true Anatomy ſo lively demonſtrated, that there ſhall be nothing wanting to the perfecting of his underſtanding. And thus much in this place of members.

CHAP. VI.

Of Powers, and how a Horses Body is governed by them.

POwers which by some are called *Virtues*, or principal faculties, and do govern and controul both the body of man and beast, and have the fifth place in this Work, are in number three, that is, the *power Animal*, the *power Vital*, and the *power Natural*. The *power Animal*, is a vertue incident to the *Brain*, which through the Sinews coming like little conduit-pipes from the Brain, distributeth feeling and moving to all the parts of the *Body*. The *power Vital* is a vertue belonging to the heart, which doth give Life and Spirit to all the body by means of the Arteries; which proceeding from the heart, which is the chief Fountain of natural heat, carry in their little chanels over the whole body, that air and Spiritual blood which makes it full of lightness and alacrity. The *power Natural* is a vertue belonging to the Liver, which gives nourishment unto all the body, and to every part thereof by means of the Veins, which do likewise proceed from the Liver, like greater conduits, carrying the *Blood* from the Liver, which is the Fountain of *Blood*, into every part of the *Body*. *Besides*, the *power Natural* containeth four other vertues, that is the vertue *Attractive*, which draweth Food, meat to sustain the *Body*; the vertue *Retentive*, by which it retaineth and keepeth the Food received; the Vertue *Digestive*, whereby it concocteth and digesteth the same; and lastly, the vertue *Expulsive*, by which it expelleth excrements and superfluities. Thus these Powers or vertues being of no less validity than you percive by this discourse, it is the part and duty of every good Horse-leach, to have a more careful and vigilant respect unto them; for if any one of them fail, the Horse cannot live. Therefore whensoever you see that either your Horse refuseth his Food, or that he cannot retain and keep his Food, but casteth it up again; or that he doth not digest his food, but keeps it corruptly in his stomach; or that he cannot void his excrements in a natural manner, but holds it burning in his body, take them for most certain signs of morral sickness: and Thus much of Powers and Vertues.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of Actions or Operations, And whereto they belong.

AS touching *Actions* or *Operations*, which are the ſixth columa or pillar which doth uphold this natural body of which we treat, they are not only belonging, but even derived from the three powers immediately ſpoken in the former Chapter, as thus : The action and operation of the *power Animal*, is to diſcern, to move, and to feel. Horſes diſcern by means of the vertue *Imaginative*, *Diſcurſative*, and *Memorative*, whereof the firſt is placed in the forehead, the ſecond in the middle of the *Brain*, and the third in the hinder part of the head. All which are comprehended under the *power Animal*. Horſes move by means of the vertue *Motive*, whoſe Action and Operation is to reſtrain, or let ſlack the ſinews, whereby every member hath his moving. And Horſes feeling is by means of the vertue *Senſitive*, whoſe Action or Operation is buſied in the five Senſes, as to *See*, *Hear*, *Smell*, *Taſt*, and *Touch*, and all theſe Actions ſpring from the *Power Animal*.

The Action or Operation of the *Power Vital*, is to reſtrain and looſen the Heart, and the Arteries which proceed from the Heart, which Action, whether it be hurt or diſturbed in a Horſes *Body*, is eaſily known of every good *Farrier*, or *Horſe-Marſhal*, by the unequal beating of his pulſe ; that is to ſay, of the Arteries, which come down from the Heart to the inſides of both his fore Leggs, a little below the Knuckles of his Shoulders, and likewiſe croſs both the Temples of his Head, a little higher than his eyes. And if any man be ſo ſimple to imagine that the thickneſs of the Horſes skin ſhall be an impediment to the feeling of his motion ; let him remember, that as a Horſes skin is thicker than a mans, ſo alſo are his Arteries greater, and beat with more violence, and ſo conſequently be felt without any great difficulty.

The Actions or Operations of the *Power Natural*, are to *Ingender*, *to Encreaſe*, *to Nouriſh*, *to deſire with Appetite*, *to Attract*, *to Change*, *to Digeſt*, *to Retain*, *and to Expel*, *and many other of like kind*. Theſe Actions therefore are carefully to be looked unto by every *Farrier*, to the intent that he may learn by them, not only the whole eſtate of a Horſes Body, but alſo what particular member thereof is evil affected, as thus : if either in your Horſe you find much forget-

fulneſs, Unnimbleneſs of his Limbs, or Dulneſs upon Correction, it is a ſign of ſickneſs in the Brain, and that the *Power Animal* is evil affected. If you find that his *Pulſes* do beat extraordinary ſlow, or much too faſt, it is a ſign that his heart is grieved, and his *Power Vital* evil affected: but if you find that he doth conſume, pine away, and loſeth his ſtomach, it is a ſign that his *Liver* is perplexed, all his inward parts out of frame, and his *Power Natural* evil affected.

Now you ſhall again underſtand, that of Actions ſome be *Voluntary*, ſome not *Voluntary*.

The *Voluntary* Actions be thoſe, which a *Horſe* may either further or hinder, ſtay or let, when themſelves pleaſe, as the moving of the Leggs; for they may go, ſtand, or lye down at their own pleaſure.

The Actions not Voluntary, are thoſe, which depend not upon the will of any Beaſt, but be done of their own accord, and naturally, as the moving of the heart, and of the Arteries and the paſſage of the Blood; the firſt, whereof beateth *Sleeping* and *Waking*; and the other hath his courſe every minute. And thus much of the Actions and *Operations*.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Spirits, and in what part of the Horſes Body they remain.

SPirits, which is the ſeventh natural Builder of this natural Work, are to be underſtood, to be that fine, pure, clear, and Aery ſubſtance which is engendred of the fineſt part of the Blood, whereby the vertue of every principal Member may viſit all the other parts of the Body, making them to do their duties, according to the Rules of Nature. Now of Spirits according to the Opinions of ſome Phyſicians, there are but two kinds, that is, the *Spirit Animal* and the *Spirit Vital*: The *Spirit Animal* is that which giveth power of feeling and moving to a Horſe, and hath his reſting place in the Brain from whence through the ſinews, it is diſperſed into all other parts of the Body: and it is engendred of the *Vital Spirit*, being more vehemently wrought and Laboured, and partly of continual breathing: Even ſo it is partly preſerved by the *Caul* of the *Brain*, which doth hourly water and nouriſh it.

The *Spirit Vital* is contained in the Heart, from whence it floweth into every part of the Body, being the chief cauſe of all natural heat, and it is preſerved and nouriſhed both by breathing and blood.

To

To theſe two Spirits, there be moſt *Farriers*, both *Italians* and *French*, which add a third Spirit, and call it the *Spirit Natural*, ſaying, it hath his reſidence in the *Liver*, and the veins, but the two former are of ſuch *Power*, and have ſuch ſuperiority; that the Body cannot live without them, nor have any being at all: Wherefore, it is the Office of the *Farrier* continually, in all his Medicines, to have ſome comfortable Simple, which may maintain and keep the Spirits in their full ſtrength, lively-hood and vertue. And thus much touching Spirits, and thoſe ſeven natural things which compact a natural Body.

CHAP. IX.

Of the ſix things not Natural, how they Profit, and how they hurt.

HAving ſpoken of the Natural things, whereof a Horſes Body is Compounded, it is needful now that we ſpeak ſomething of the other ſix which be not natural, ſo far forth as they concern the Office of the *Farrier*, and no further; for with other matters we have not to do. The firſt thing then which is not natural, yet preſerveth a Horſes Body in good ſtate, is the Air, which being pure, ſharp, clear, and piercing, giveth great life and nouriſhment to a Horſe: but being contrary, that is, groſs, thick, and full of putrefaction, it cannot chooſe but alter the good habit of his body, and breed in him many Infirmities: Therefore every *Farrier* ſhall have great reſpect to the Air wherein a Horſe either liveth, or was bred in; as if a Horſe that was bred in a hot Air come to live in a cold, and through the exchange grow ſick, the *Farrier*, ſhall by warm diet, cloſe houſe, and moderate cloathing, bring his nature to a ſtronger acquaintance: Alſo when a Horſe exceedeth in any of the four qualities, that is, in heat, moiſtneſs, coldneſs, or drineſs it is beſt for him to live in that Air which is contrary to that quality, wherein he exceedeth. Laſtly, in many Diſeaſes, the change of the Air is moſt wholeſom, as ſhall be ſhewed at large in the particular Diſeaſes.

For the Meat and Drink of a *Horſe*, which is the ſecond thing not Natural in a Horſes Compoſition, it is not to be doubted, but whilſt it is ſweet, clean, and good, as bread well made and baked, dry *Oats*, dry beans, dry Peaſe, ſweet Hay, ſweet Straw, or ſhort Graſs, ſo long it nouriſheth and preſerveth the *Horſes* body: But if it be fuſty, raw, corrupt and unclean, or if he eat Tares, Fitches, Rye, or Barly,

then

then muſt he needs be unſound, and full of infirmities: Therefore the *Farrier* ſhall be careful to keep him from all ſuch Food, as breeds naughty evil blood. As for his water, the more pure it is, the better; and the more muddy; thick, and pleaſant, ſo much the more unhealthful.

Now for this Moving and Reſt, that is, either his Travel or Standing ſtill, which is the third thing not natural in a Horſes compoſition, doubtleſs they be great *Preſervers* of Horſes a Health: for as moderate Exerciſes diſſolve groſs Humours, ingender Appetite, and add ſtrength unto the Limbs, ſo likewiſe indifferent Reſt cauſeth Digeſtion, comforteth the Sinews, and maketh the Heart cheerful againſt inſuing Labour. But on the contrary part, immoderate Travel or Exerciſes, when a Horſe is ridden beyond his ſtrength, breedeth many dangerous and mortal ſickneſſes; as the Foundring in the Body, the Conſumption in the *Lungs* and *Liver*, molten *Greaſe*, and ſuch like, beſides the piſſing of *Blood*, *Mangineſs*, *Farcy*, and ſuch like: All which inward Diſeaſes crave ſtrong *Purges*, and the outward *Sharp* and *Corroding* Medicines. Immoderate Reſt, which is, when a Horſe doth ſtand long ſtill without any Exerciſe, Feeding foul and groſly, is as great an enemy to a Horſes health as the other: For it congregateth and bindeth together all ſorts of ill humours, breeds corruption in the Blood, Rottenneſs in the Fleſh, and generally as many Diſeaſes as any ill Diet whatſoever.

The Sleep or Watch of a Horſe, (which is the fourth thing in our Compoſition) is ſo neceſſary a comfort to a Horſe, that he cannot live without it: it is the greateſt mover of Digeſtion, and ſo conſequently gives comfort to the whole Body. For whilſt the Horſe ſleeps, the powers Animal do take their Reſt, which otherwiſe would be over-wearied; and neither able to diſcharge their Duties nor to continue their Actions and Operations, which is the giving of feeling and moving only: and whilſt a Horſe doth ſleep, the powers Natural have more Liberty to do their work, in Concocting the Meat and comforting the Body, inſomuch as I account ſleep to be the only quieting of the Senſes, ordained by Nature to ingender ſtrength. Sleep is begotten by ſweet, fatty and groſs Vapours, (and not by their contraries) which are raiſed from the Heart to the Brain, with the Coldneſs of which Brain, thoſe Vapours being congealed and thickned together, do ſtop the pipes of the Senſitive Spirits, ſo as they cannot reſort to the Inſtruments of the Senſes, to give the Body feeling and moving, whereby the Body at that time is deprived of thoſe Motions.

And

And according as thoſe Vapours do more or leſs fill the Pipes, ſo is the Horſes ſleep more or leſs ſound and undiſturbed; but when this ſleep ſhall at any time grow into exceſs, and you ſhall perceive a Horſe to ſleep beyond both Nature and Cuſtom, then you ſhall know that ſuch ſleep cometh from an evil habit of the Body, and is a ſign either of a *Lethargy*, and a numneſs of the Spirits, or elſe that he hath ſome inward grief and pain in his Limbs, when he ſtandeth; which being eaſed by lying, makes him covet a continual reſt and ſleeping. Now for the Watch of a Horſe, becauſe it is the meer contrary to ſleep, there needs little to be ſaid more than this; that as the exceſs of the one ſheweth the want of the other, ſo the natural wanting of either ſhews the evil ſtate of a Horſes Body, and gives the *Farriers* warning to expect enſuing ſickneſs.

Now for Emptineſs and Fulneſs, (which is the fifth not natural Compoſitor) foraſmuch as it is only in adding to, and taking away; ſome *Farriers* have held opinion, that all Phyſick belonging to a Horſes body, conſiſteth in them two only; and truly I am of this mind, that whoſoever can take away Corruption, and add Perfection, ſhall without doubt ever keep an able and ſubſtantial Body. But to our purpoſe, of this Fulneſs there are two ſorts, the one fulneſs by exceſs of Humours, the other fulneſs by exceſs of Meat; either of which perturbing the Spirits, are the grounds of ſickneſs. Again, exceſs of Humours are of two kinds, the one an equal encreaſe of all manner of Humours gathered together, and the other particular exceſs, either of too much *Melancholly Flegm*, or other Watriſh Humours whatſoever, the firſt being termed an abundance of Humours, the latter an exceſs of evil Juice or Nutriment. Laſtly, there is fulneſs in quantity and fulneſs in quality. Fulneſs in quantity is when a Horſe is full of Blood, or any other ſimple Humour. Fulneſs in quality, is, when any of theſe humours are too hot, or too cold, too groſs or too thin. Now for emptineſs, as all Diſeaſes of Fulneſs muſt be cured by it only, ſo all Diſeaſes of Emptineſs muſt be healed by Fulneſs, as by taking of *Blood*, by *Purge*, *Fritiion*, *Scarification*, *Boxing*, *Sweating*, *Bathing*, and a World of ſuch like, as ſhall be very largely ſet forth hereafter, in its proper place.

Laſtly, Touching the affections of a Horſes mind you ſhall underſtand, that ſo far forth as the Senſitive Soul doth ſtretch, ſo far they have ſenſe and feeling of Affections as namely, to Love, to Hate, to be Angry, to Rejoyce, to be ſorry, and to Fear: For all which there needs

needs no great *Apology*, ſith, we have it in dayly Experience: as who ſeeth not the love of ſome *Horſes* to their keepers, their hate to Strangers, their Angers in their Fights, their joyes in their Prides and Wooings, their ſorrows in their ſickneſſes, and their fears unto their Riders; now theſe Affections, ſith many times they are the grounds of ſtrange Motions in the body; therefore they ought carefully to be looked unto by the *Farrier*, and that the *Horſe be not overpreſſed with any of them*; eſpecially fear and hatred, the firſt whereof compelleth the blood and Spirits to fly to the inward parts, and to leave the outward without ſenſe or feeling; and the latter makes him to be unquiet, fierce and raging; both together breed diſtemperature in a Horſe, and thoſe diſtemperatures ingender mortal ſickneſſes. *And thus much for theſe ſix things, being held not Natural in a Horſes Compoſition.*

CHAP. X.
Of Horſes Complexion.

HAVING ſpoken of thoſe Thirteen Natural and not Natural things, whereof a Horſes body is compounded, we will now in a ſomewhat more particular manner ſpeak of the Complexions of Horſes, which is one of the moſt neceſſary Faces that a Farrier can behold, both for the judging of a Horſes Infirmities, and alſo for the true compounding of his Medicines for every Diſeaſe: Therefore you ſhall firſt underſtand, that by the colour of the Horſe you ſhall ever judge his Complexion: For, look which of the Elements is moſt predominant in him, from that Element we draw his Complexion, as thus. If he participate more of the Fire than of any of the other Elements, then we hold him to be a Cholerick Horſe, and his Colour is either a bright *Sorrel*, *a Coal black* without any white, or an *Iron Gray* unchangeable, that is, ſuch a Gray as neither will ever turn a Dabble-Gray, a White, or a Flea-bitten, and theſe Horſes are of Nature *Light*, *Hot*, *Fiery*, and ſeldom of any great ſtrength; theſe Horſes are much ſubject to peſtilent *Feavers*, Yellows, and Inflammations of the Liver. Wherefore every Farrier ſhall be careful in his compoſing of any Medicine for ſuch a Horſe, to purge Choler, yet very moderately, and not with any extraordinary Strength in the Potion or Drench; becauſe the Horſe being in his beſt ſtrength, not reputed ſtrong, ſhould you apply any violent thing to him, that little

ſtrength

ſtrength being abated, there were great danger in the confounding of the whole Body.

If the *Horſe* participate more of the Air, than of the other Elements, then he is of Sanguine Complexion, and his Colour is either a bright Bay, or a dark Bay, which hath neither skouling Countenance, mayly Mouth, nor white Flank, or a white Flea bitten, white lyard like Silver, or black with a white *Star*, white Rach, or white Foot. Theſe Horſes are of Nature *Pleaſant*, *Nimble*, *Free*, and of good *Strength*. The Diſeaſes to them moſt incident, is a Conſumption of the Liver, Leproſie, Glanders, or any Diſeaſe that is infectious. They are of a good ſtrong Conſtitution, and may endure ſtrength in their Medicines, eſpecially any thing that cooleth the blood.

If the *Horſe* participate more of the Water, than of the other Elements, then is he of a Flegmatick Complexion, and his Colour is either milk white, or yellow dun, kite-glewd, or pideball in whom there is an equal mixture of Colours, that is as much white as of the other Colour. Otherwiſe if the Bay, the Black, or the Dun exceed the white, he is ſaid to be of that Complexion of which the Colour is greateſt. Theſe Horſes are of Nature ſlow, and apt to loſe fleſh: The Diſeaſes which are moſt incident unto them, are *Colds*, *Headach*, *Rheumes*, *Staggers*, and ſuch like. They are able to indure the reaſonable ſtrength of any Medicine, becauſe the abundance of *Flegm* which is in them, ſufficeth both Nature, and the Potion to work upon: All cold ſimples are to them exceeding hurtful, ſo are alſo they which are violently hot in the third degree: The firſt, becauſe it bindeth too ſoon; the latter becauſe it diſperſes too ſuddenly, therefore ſimples of a moderate mean are the beſt.

If the *Horſe* participate more of the Earth than of the other Elements, then he is of a Melancholly complexion, and his colour a *Mouſe-dun*, *Ruſſet*, *Cheſnut*, *Aſhy*, *Gray*, *dark Bay*, with *mayly Mouth*, *Red* or *white* Flanks, or a *Reddiſh Bay*, having long white *Hair* like *Goats Hair*, growing on his Leggs. Theſe Horſes are of Nature heavy and faint-hearted; The Diſeaſes to them moſt incident, are Inflammations in the *Spleen*, *Frenzie*, *Dropſie*, and ſuch like. They are commonly of better ſtrength, than they will ſuffer to appear by their Actions, and are able to endure the ſtrength of any reaſonable Medicine: all cicatrizing and dry ſimples are hurtful unto them; the cold and moiſt are the moſt profitable.

Having thus ſhewed you theſe four Complexions, *Cholerick*, *Sanguine*,

Sanguine, *Flegmatick* and *Melancholly*, together with their qualities and strengths, you shall understand now, that amongst *Farriers* there is another complexion, or fifth constitution, which is called the Composition or mixture of Complexions: That is, whensoever a Horse doth participate of all the four Elements equally, and in due proportion, none being greater or lesser than another, and this Complexion of all other is the best, and most perfect, and the Horse which is of this complexion, is ever of one of these colours; that is to say, either a fair brown bay, Dabled or not dabled, a dabled gray, a Black full of Silver Hair, or a fair *Roan*, *Red* or *Black*. And these Horses are of *Nature* most excellent, most Temperate, Strongest, gentlest, and most *Healthful*: though they may have any *Disease*, yet are they *Naturally* inclined to no *Disease*: But what Infirmity soever falleth unto them, is *meerly Accidental*, and not through any overflow of natural distemperature. All *Medicines* must be compounded for them according to the *Nature* of the Sickness, and the time of their *Languishment*. For if the Sickness be *Young* and new *Bred*, Then they are able to receive any well-composed *Receipt*; But if it be *Old*, and the inward *Powers* and *Faculties* feebled, then you must be careful to help *Nature*, by adding to every *Medicine* of what Nature soever, some *Simple* of *Comfort*, that, As ill *Humours* be cleansed, so *Strength* may still be repaired and maintained. And thus much for *Complexions*.

CHAP. XI

Of Inward Sicknesses, the Causes and several kinds thereof.

SIth I have already passed over all those things which have a natural and perfect working in a Horses a Body, and do maintain, uphold and preserve the same in good state and Health, except accidentally they be encountred and crossed by some Excess, Either in *Diet* or in *Exercise*, it shall now be *Meet*, that we begin to speak of the *Things* which be *contrary* and against *Nature*, which are all those *Things*, whereby at any time the *healthful* Estate of the *Horses* Body is any way impeached: and they be three in number, that is, the *Causes*, the *Sickness*, and the *Accidents* which follow every *Sickness*.

Now the Causes of *Sickness* are all unnatural *Affects*, and evil dispositions, which going *before*, do as it were by *Violence*, bring Sickness after them: and of these *Causes* there be 2 *Sorts*, some *Internal*, some

ſome *External*: The Internal be thoſe which breed within the Body of the *Horſe*, as evil Humours, evil Obſtructions, and evil Juyce, External are they which communicate with the outward parts of the Body, as Heat, Cold, Worms, and ſuch like, of which I ſhall ſpeak more in the ſecond Book: And for ſo much as I intend at the beginning of every particular Diſeaſe, to ſhew the Cauſe of that Diſeaſe, I will at this time ſpeak no more of that ſubject.

Now for *ſickneſs* it ſelf, which is any thing that is contrary to Nature, it is divided into three generul kinds: the firſt an *Evil Temperature*, the ſecond, an *Evil State and Compoſition*; and the Third, A *Looſing or Dividing of an Unity*. Now of theſe two latter, I intend not to ſpeak in this place, becauſe they appertain to Chirurgery, which I reſerve for the ſecond Book: But for the firſt kind, which is an evil Temperature, it is taken two-fold, that is, either ſimple, or compound: Simple, when one quality only doth abound, or exceed, as to be too moiſt, or too dry: Compound, when more qualities than one do grow into exceſs, as for a *Horſe* to be too hot, and too dry, or too cold, and too moiſt. Again, ſickneſſes are ſaid ſome to be long, as *Conſumptions*, *Glanders*, and ſuch like, which linger and wear a *Horſe* away by ſmall degrees; ſome ſhort, as the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Antivor*, and ſuch like, which as ſoon as they be perceived, ſo ſoon they be mortal.

Now of inward ſickneſſes, ſome do occupy all the whole Body, ſome but particular parts: thoſe which occupy the whole Body, are *Feavers*, the *Peſtilence*, *Convulſions*, and ſuch like: thoſe which occupy Parts or Members, are Colds which annoy the Head; Surfeits which perplex the Stomach: And ſo likewiſe all outward infirmities, proper to every particular Member; as *Spleens* upon the Leggs, *Spavens* on the Hoofs, *Pearls* in the Eyes, and ſuch like; as ſhall be amply ſhewed hereafter, with their ſeveral Cures. And thus much for ſickneſs, and the ſeveral kinds thereof.

CHAP. XII.

Of the ſigns of Sickneſs, and what Nature is conſiſteth.

THE Signs and Faces, by which ſickneſs is diſcerned, are many, and almoſt numberleſs: yet in the beſt ſort, that I may, I will ſhew you ſuch, and ſo many, as ſhall amply ſerve for any man's underſtanding. Know then firſt that there be, according to the Rules

in Physick? four especial wayes to judge of inward and outward infirmities. First by accidents, as by the shape, number, quantity and place of the Member grieved, for if it carry not his true proportion, or be more or less in number or quantity, or out of his proper place, then questionless it is diseased. Secondly, by alteration of the quality, as when 'tis either too hot, too cold, too moist, or too dry. Thirdly, when any Member of the Body is hindred from doing his Office, as when the eye cannot see, or the foot cannot tread. And fourthly, by Excrements, as by his Dung or Urine. But forasmuch, as in the speculation of these qualities, many of the ignorant sort may be either amazed, Distract or Deceived, and that my desire is to give an absolute satisfaction to all sorts of People, I will briefly, and plainly shew you the most undeceivable signs of all sorts of inward sicknesses, as thus: If a Horse be slower in labour, or Duller to the *Spurr* than he hath been accustomed; If he be shorter-breathed; If his Ears hang down more than they were wont; If his hair be more staring; If his Flank be more than usually hollow; If he burn betwixt his Ears, or about his Pasterns; If in Travel his Stomach fail him; or his Mouth, that in labour was usually wont to be Foaming, become dry; all these are most apparent signs of inward Sickness.

When a *Horse* holdeth down his head, which was wont to be of cheerful Countenance, it is a sign either of a Feaver, Head-ach, or else Foundring in the *Body*.

If a Horse be dimm of sight, which was clear sighted, it is a sign either of *Head-ach*, the *Staggers*, or *Sore Eyes*.

When a *Horse* turneth his Head backward to the place grieved, if it be to the right side, it is a sign of *Obstructions* in the *Liver*: but if he turneth down to his *Belly*, then it is a sign either of *Cholick*, *Bots*, or *Worms*.

When a Horse hath water running from his Mouth, it is a sign of the *Staggers*, or *Wet Cough*.

If a Horses breath stinks, or foul matter issues from his Nostrils, it is a sign of an *Ulcer* in the Nose or Head; but if the matter be white, then it is a sign of *Glanders*; if the matter be black, then it is a sign of the mourning of the *Chine*; but if the matter be yellow, then it betokens the Consumption of the *Liver*; But if he cast little Lumps out of his mouth, then it betokens the Consumption or rottenness of the *Lungs*.

If a Horses *Body* and *Breath* be hot, It is a sign of a *Feaver*, and heat

heat of the ſtomach; if therewithal he forſake his Meat, it is a ſign of Inflammation in his *Liver*, and either of dry or moiſt *Yellows*.

If the Temple of a *Horſes* head be very hollow, it is a ſign either of the *Strangle* or Old Age.

Shortneſs of Breath, and a beating Flank, is a ſign either of a *Feaver* or the *Strangle*, but if the paſſage of the Throat be ſtopped, it is a ſign the film of the *Lungs* is broken, and the Spleen troubled, or elſe broken-winded.

If any thing lie on both ſides the Fore-head, which may be felt beat, it is a ſign of the *Staggers*.

If there be any thing ſwelling about the Ears, it is a ſign of the *Pole-evil*: ſwelling under the Ear, is a ſign of the *Vives*; and ſwelling in the Mouth, a ſign either of *Canker*, *Flaps*, *Lampaſſe*.

Swelling under the Throat is a ſign of the *Glanders*; and ſwelling about the tongue-roots, a ſign of the *Strangle*: But if there be about the Tongue-roots, nothing but little ſmall knots, like wax kernels, then it is but a ſign of cold only.

Swelling on the left ſide is a ſign of a ſick *Spleen*. Swelling in the Belly and Leggs, a ſign of the *Dropſie*, and ſwelling in the Flank, of *Cholick* only.

To Cough, or to offer to Cough, is a ſign either of the *Glanders*, or the Mourning of the Chine, of a Feather in the Weſand, of the wet or dry Cough, of the Film broken, of the dry Malady, of a Conſumption, or of Foundring in the Body.

Staggering is a ſign either of a *Feaver*, of the Staggers, or of ſwaying in the Neck: But if he ſtagger or role behind only, then it is a ſign either of Foundring in the Body, or of pain in the kidneys.

Trembling is a ſign of a *Feaver*, or of a foundring in the Body: and here is to be noted, that a Horſe which trembleth after the drinking of a cold water, hath during that time of trembling, a very certain fit of an Ague; and if any *Farrier* or other, will but obſerve it, he ſhall find that the Horſe, after he hath done trembling, will burn and glow in as great Extremity, at leaſt an hour and a half after; and ſome Horſes after their burning will ſweat alſo.

The hollowneſs of a Horſes back is a ſign of a dry Malady, or the Dropſie.

Hair ſtaring is a ſign either of a cold *Stomach*, or of foundring in the Body, but generally of a cold, or want of Cloaths.

If a Horſe ſtale with much pain, it is a ſign either of foundring

in the Body, the wind *Cholick*, or the *Stone*; and if the Urine which comes from him be *Yellow*, it is a sign of the *Glanders*, but if it be blackish and thick, it is a sign of a pain in the Kidneys.

Leanness and *Gantiness*, is a sign of *Hide-bound*, or of a *Consumption*, of the dry *Malady*, of foundring in the Body, Inflammation of the *Liver*, the *Yellows*, *Cholick* or *Worms*.

Laxativeness, a looseness of the Body, is a sign of a hot *Liver*.

Costiveness in the Body, is a sign of dry Yellows, or of Diseases in the Gaul.

If a Horses Dung stink, it is a sign of a hot Liver; if it have no smell, then of a cold Liver; but if it be indigested, then either of a *Consumption*, or of a dry *Malady*.

If a Horse go stiff, it is a sign either of Wrenching, Hipping, Stifling, or Foundring either in Body or Leggs. If he go crouching behind, and stiff before, then the grief is in his Fore Legs, but if he go only weak behind, then is the grief in his hinder Legs only.

If a Horse desire *Extraordinarily* to lye down on his right side, it is a sign of heat in the *Liver*. If on the left side, then of a *Diseased Spleen*. If he be oft up and down, finding no rest, then it is a sign of *Bots*, *Worms*, *Cholick* or *Griping* in the *Belly*, if when he is down, he spreads himself abroad, it shews the Dropsie; if he groan when he is down, it shews either a sick *Spleen*, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, *Bots*, or film broken; if he be not able to rise when he is down, then either mortal *Weakness*, or *Foundring* in the Body or Legs.

To be troubled with much *Wind*, is a sign either of grief in the Spleen or loss of much Blood.

If a *Horse* forsake his *Meat*, it is a sign either of a Feaver, Headach, Strangles, Staggars, Consumption, or dry Malady, Anticor, Foundring in the Body, a hot and consumed Liver, moist *Yellows*, *Cholick*, or the *Worms*; but if when he forsakes his *Provender*, he doth as it were *chavel*, or *chaw* a little Hay, and in his chawing doth make a certain sharp Noise in his *Mouth*, as if his Tongue could not well part from the Roof without a kind of chanking, it is then a certain sign that the Horse is troubled with the falling of the Pallet of the Mouth, a Disease which only cometh by over much Travelling, or too sore a Burthen.

If a Horse desire to eat much, and drink little, it is a sign of a cold *Liver*, but if he desire to drink much, and eat little, it is then a sign either of a *Feaver*, rotten *Lungs*, heat in the Stomach, heat in the *Liver*, or the dry Yellows.

If

If a Horse both *eat* and *drink* with an *Extraordinary greedineſs*, it is a ſign of rotten *Lungs*, or a diſeaſed *Spleen*.

Lazy, heavy going, contrary to true *Nature*, is a ſign either of a *Feaver*, Sick *Spleen*, *Yellows*, or elſe *Obſtructions* of the *Liver*.

If a Horſe ſtrike with his Foot at his Belly, it is a ſign of the *Cholick*, but if when he ſtriketh, he *Fisk* with his Tail alſo, then it is either *Bots*, or rough *Worms*.

If a Horſe be *Scabby* and *Ulcerous* all over his Body, and about his Neck, it is a ſign of the *Mangy*: if it be an *Ulcer* full of knots creeping along a *Vein*, it is the *Farcy*, if ſpreading abroad only in one place, it is a *Canker*: if the Ulcer be hollow and crooked, it is a *Fiſtula*: But if it be a ſpungy Wart, full of Blood, it is then an *Anbury*.

If an Horſes Tongue hang out, and be ſwoln, it is a ſign of the *Strangle*.

To conclude, if a Horſe in health beat ſhort, thick, and faſt in the Flank, it is a ſign of ſickneſs in the *Lungs* and *Lights*, which we call *broken Winded*, with a world of other ſuch like ſigns and tokens, as ſhall be more amply declared in every particular Chapter.

CHAP. XIII.

General Obſervations in the Phyſicking of Horſes.

AFter you can by theſe Signs and Characters, judge and approve either the health or ſickneſs of a Horſe, it is then neceſſary that you learn ſome *General Rules* and *Obſervations* which belong to the Phyſicking of a Horſe; leſt that either by your *Raſhneſs*, *Unskilfulneſs*, or *Uncleanneſs* in what you go about to do, you commit errors more groſs than the *Medicine* you *Adminiſter* hath Power, to do good. Know then firſt, that whenſoever you go about to give your Horſe any inward *Potion* or *Drench*, you muſt firſt take very careful heed, that your *Drink* be no more than *Milk* warm, for there is nothing more mortal to a Horſe, than the Scalding of his ſtomach. Next, you muſt be very careful that you give the *Drench* eaſily and gently, leſt in making too much haſte, the *Drink* paſs into his *Weſand* or *Wind Pipe*, and ſo force him to an *extream Coughing*, and almoſt *ſuffocate* him; which if it do, you muſt then let his *Head* looſe, and walk him up and down till the paſſion be paſt. *Laſtly*, you

you shall observe in giving a Drench, to draw out the *Horses* tongue before you put in the *Horn*, and then presently let it loose again; for that will compel him to swallow whether he will or no. And this is principally to be used, when you give your *Horse* Pills, as Butter and Garlick, Butter and Sanders, or Butter and Savin: Also, every Drench will work the better, the longer you keep the sick *Horse* fasting both before and after his Medicine; wherein is likewise to be observed, that moderate Exercise, (as gently Walking, or Trotting up and down, according to the Horses strength, after his Drench received) is most wholesom, and maketh the Medicines work a great deal the better.

You shall likewise observe, if your *Horses* sickness be a Feaver, to mix always your simples either with warm Water, with Honey, or with Oyl; but if the Disease be Coughs, Rheums, or any thing that proceedeth of cold Causes, then you shall mix your simples with good Ale, or Wine; and if your *Horse* be brought low and weak with sickness, then you shall mix your Simples with Milk and Eggs.

You shall also observe, that in Blood-letting, you must take but half so much from a young Colt, as from an old Horse, and but the fourth part from a Yearling Foal: Also in letting blood you must carefully regard the Age and Strength of your Horse, Taking more or less according to his Ability of Body. Lastly, letting of Blood is either to divert sickness, and preserve Health, or to refresh and cool the Spirits, or to diminish Blood; or else to purge gross and bad Humours.

Observe before you let your Horse blood; first, moderately to chase, or exercise him: then let him take rest a day before his letting blood, and three days after, not forgetting that *April* and *October* are the two principal Seasons of the Year for that purpose, except urgent occasion be ministred.

Observe, whensoever you rake your *Horse* with your hand, (which is to draw his Ordure out of his Fundament when he cannot Dung) that then, first you anoint all your hands with Sallet Oyl, or Butter: the like you must ever do when you put up any Suppositary; but when you administer any Glister, you shall then but anoint the Glister-pipe only. Many other Observations there are, which be more particular, and those you shall find annexed to the several Cures of every Disease. Thus much then of these general Observations.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.
Of the Urine, and Excrements of a Horſe.

AFter you have made your memory acquainted with the ſign and obſervations before ſpecified, and ſo in the end find a Horſe, which by the demonſtration of ſome of theſe ſigns, appeareth moſt certainly to be ſick and diſeaſed: My advice is then, (if conveniently you may, and that the violence of the ſickneſs doth not urge the contrary) that before you adminiſter any thing unto him, in any caſe you ſee his Urine, from which Urine you ſhall reap theſe Knowledges.

Firſt, if the Urine of a Horſe be of a pale, whitiſh, yellow colour like unto Amber, and therewithal ſomewhat ſtrong ſmelling, and not very clear, then you ſhall be aſſured that the Horſe is in good ſtate of Body, ſtrong and healthful; but if it be extraordinary white, as it were creamy, then it is a ſign the Horſe hath weak Reins, and is ſubject to the *Stone*, and the *ſtopping of the Kidneys*.

If the Urine of a Horſe be ſomewhat high coloured, bright and clear like Lamber, and not like Amber, or like a Cup of ſtrong *March Beer*; then it ſheweth the Horſe hath Inflammation in his Blood, and that he hath either a Feaver, or elſe ſome great, *Surfeit*, but if it be red like Blood, then is his Inflammation more great, and his *Surfeit* is only an over-heat taken by over-riding; Inſomuch, that if preſent Remedy be not applyed, either by ſcouring or other healthful Phyſick, the Horſe cannot chuſe but fall into ſome mortal ſickneſs.

If the Urine of the Horſe be of a pale greeniſh Colour, thick and ſlimy, it is a ſign of a weak Back, and conſumption of the Seed.

Laſtly, If the Horſes Urine be high coloured, yet therewithal cloudy, and full of blackneſs, then it is a ſign that the Horſes *ſickneſs* is *Mortal*, and hardly to be preſerved by any *Phyſick*; but if the *Blackneſs* and *Cloudineſs* of the Urine do not remain, (as it were) bound up together in one body, but is broken and diſperſed, ſhewing many Clouds in one Water, then it is a ſign that the Violence of the ſickneſs departeth away, and there is great hope, by good government that the Horſe will recover his Health as at the beginning.

Now for the Excrements or dung of a Horſe, which is no leſs worthy of Note than the Urine; you ſhall firſt underſtand, that if

his Dung be ever of Alliance with his Food. I mean either in part or whole coloured like unto that he eateth, as thus for Example; if your Horſe go at Graſs, his Dung will ever be green, and the brighter ſuch *greenneſs* is, and being in a mean-between hardneſs and Softneſs the ſounder and in more perfect Eſtate the Horſe ſtandeth; but if the *Greenneſs* be bright, yet the Ordure ſo ſoluble and looſe, that it cometh from the Horſe like Water, then you ſhall underſtand, that either the Horſe hath eaten up ſome Feather, or elſe he hath an inward Coldneſs both in his Stomach and Bowels.

If a Horſes Dung be of a reaſonable thickneſs, neither too Coſtive, nor too Soluble, yet the *Greenneſs* inclined to ſome *Blackneſs*, it is a ſign that the *Horſe* hath a hot ſtomach, and is eaſily ſubject either to the *Yellows* or *Staggers*.

If the Horſes Dung be in round hard Pellets, and of a *Blackiſh* green *Colour*, like the dung of *Sheep*, or a *Deer*, then it is without fail, that the *Horſe* hath had ſome great ſurfeit, either by overriding, or by ill Food, or elſe is certainly poſſeſt either of the *Yellows*, or *Fever*, or Foundring in the Body.

Now if your Horſe be fed only upon Straw, then its Colour will be of a high-coloured Yellow, rather Coſtive than Soluble, and the Grain thereof long, and not well couched together: And all theſe be good ſigns of great healthfulneſs; but if the Colour be inclined to Redneſs, or if it be exceeding dry without moiſture, or if it be Thin, like the dung of an Ox or Cow, they all be apparent ſigns of inwardſickneſs; but if the Redneſs turn to Blackneſs, and that his Ordure doth loſe the ſtrength of its ſmelling, then it is a great ſign of Death and Mortality.

If your Horſe be fed with Hay and Provender, then your perfect and ſound Dung will be of a brown yellow Colour, the Grain ſomewhat long, yet moiſt and well fixt together; but if the browneſs turn to redneſs, it is a ſign of diſtemperature; and if it turn to blackneſs, then of Death. Now for the ſmell of his Dung, you muſt underſtand, that the more Provender you give the greater will be the ſmell, and the leſs Provender, the leſs ſmell.

Laſtly, If you feed your Horſe only upon Provender, as bread, Oats, and ſuch like, then the Dung which ſhews a perfect and a ſound Body, will be of a pale yellow Colour, like coarſe honey, firm, like a thick Salve, having within it when you tread upon it or break it, little white Grains, like thoſe which are in Sope; or if the Dung be

be harder, like the ordinary Ordure of a Man, it is not amiſs: For both be ſigns of health and ſtrength; and if the dung look Red, then it is a ſign that the Horſe hath taken ſome inward heat, and his Stomach and Bowels do reſt ſtill inflamed.

If his Dung be brown and ſlimy, or if it ſhine and look greaſie, it is a ſign that he hath had ſome of his inward greaſe molten, and that it reſteth and putrifieth in his Body; but if with his dung, you ſee him void great clods and lumps of Greaſe, then you may be aſſured that his Greaſe was molten, but Nature hath overcome infirmity, and the worſt danger is paſt already; but if the Dung be matter undigeſted, ſo that you may either perceive therein whole Corns, or whole bits of Bread, it is a ſign the Horſe hath either had a late Surfeit, or is entering into a Mortal Conſumption. Laſtly, if his dung be black, or have loſt the Smell, it is an apparent ſign of death. And thus much for Urine and Excrements, and the ſeveral knowledges attained by them.

CHAP. XV.

Of Feavers in General, and the divers kinds thereof.

THAT *Horſes* have Feavers, and thoſe Feavers of divers and ſundry Natures, there is nothing more certain, as by ſtrict Obſervation may daily be perceived, eſpecially when we uſe either much travel or diſorderly Diet: for queſtionleſs from theſe two and none other Heads, do ſpring moſt Feavers whatſoever. But firſt, that I may give you an account what a Horſes Feaver is, you ſhall know that it is an unnatural, and immoderate heat, which proceeding firſt from the Heart, diſperſeth it ſelf not only through all the Arteries, but even the Veins of a Horſes Body, and thereby hindreth all the Actions and wholeſome Motions of the ſame. Now of Feavers, ſome *Farriers* make three ſorts. The firſt, thoſe which breed in the ſpirits, being inflamed and ſet on fire beyond the ordinary courſe of Nature: The ſecond, thoſe which breed in the Humours, being likewiſe diſtempered by heat: And the third, thoſe which breed in the firm parts of the Body, and are continually hot. Now I for your better Memory, will divide them only into two parts, that is to ſay, Ordinary, and Extraordinary. The Ordinary *Feavers*, are all thoſe which are bred either in the ſpirits, or in the Humours; as namely, *Quotidians*, *Tertians*, *Quartans*, *Feavers continual*, *Feavers hectick*, *Feavers* in

Autumn, *Summer* or *Winter*. And the Feavers extraordinary, are all those which are bred in the firm parts of the Body, and are ever hot as *Pestilent Feavers*, and the *Plague*, which are ever accompanied with *Ulcers*; and the *Feaver accidental*, which proceedeth from the Anguish and pain of some mortal wound.

Now for the cause, from whence these *Feavers* do proceed, you shall understand, that all these which I call ordinary *Feavers*, do generally spring either from Surfeit by extreme Labour, or some Surfeit by naughty meat, as *Raw Pease*, *Raw Fitches*, *Raw Oats*, *Mouldy* and unwholsome *Bread*, and such like: Sometimes they do proceed from the extreme Violence and heat of the Sun Beams, when travelling with disorderly haste, in the extreamest heat of the Day, those two heats mixed together, *Labour* and the *Sun*, there cannot chuse but be bred in the Horse some *Mortal* Inflammation; and for my own part, I have seen Horses fall down dead in the High-way: For whose deaths, I could find no reason more than their Labours, and the heat of the *Sun*. *Feavers* sometimes spring from a contrary Cause, as from extreme cold, in this manner: When a Horse in the Winter time hath been Travelled sore all the Day, and is brought into the house hot, if after his blood and inward powers are setled and cooled, you then presently, or the same night give him cold Water as much as he will drink, you shall see him out of hand fall into an extreme Quaking, and from that Quaking into a violent burning, with all other distemperatures of a Feaver.

Now for extraordinary Feavers, they ever proceed either from Corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air: And albeit these Feavers are not usually known unto our *Farriers*, yet they are as common as the former; only the violence of them is so great, and the Poyson so strong, that they ever carry with them some other Mortal sickness, as namely the *Staggers*, *Yellows*, *Amicor*, and such like, which never are, but a Pestilent Feaver ever goeth before them: And they, like the Marks of the Plague, are seldom seen till the Cures be desperate, and then the unskilful *Farrier*, neither noting, nor knowing, if he did, the effects of the Feaver, doth ever mis call the name of the Horses infirmity, and taking the lesser for the greater, fails many times to do the good Office and Cure, which he intendeth.

Now the signs to know the Feaver, be these: First, he will ever hold down his Head, he will quake and tremble; but when his trembling

trembling is paſt, then will his Body burn, and his Breath be hot, he will breath faſt, and his Flank will beat, he will reell, he will forſake his Meat, his Eyes will be ſwoln and cloſed up, yet therewith all much Watering; his Fleſh will as it were fall from his Bones, and his Stones will hang down low, he will oft lye down and riſe up again: as his deſire will be to drink; yet at no time drink much, neither will he at any time ſleep.

Now for the general cure of theſe general *Feavers*, you ſhall underſtand, that ſome *Farriers* uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Face, Temples, and Palate of the Mouth, and the firſt day to give him no Meat, but warm drink only, by a little at a time: And after the fineſt Graſs, or fineſt Hay wet in Water, keeping him warm, and often walking him up and down in a temperate Air; and giving him good ſtore of Litter, then when he begins to mend, to feed him with Barely ſodden, Huskt and beaten; as you do Wheat before you make Furmity, and this Cure is not amiſs; for it agreeth with the Antient experience of the *Italians*: but in our Engliſh Horſes, (through the *Clime*; as I ſuppoſe) it often faileth.

The beſt Cure therefore that I have found, is, as ſoon as you perceive him to begin to ſhake, to give him the yolks of three or four Eggs, beaten with ſeven or eight ſpoonfuls of *Aqua-vitæ* to drink, and then chaſe him up and down till his ſhaking be paſt, and then ſet him up cloſe and warm, and with many cloaths make him ſweat an hour: Let his Food be Oats, very well dried and ſifted, and once a day ſome waſh'd in Ale. If his ſhaking fit be paſt, before you perceive his ſickneſs, you ſhall only give him a pint of *Muſkadine*, and an Ounce of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and brewed togerher to *Drink*, and ſo let him reſt, feeding him by little and little, as aforeſaid, and giving him no water but ſuch as is warm: and this Order you ſhall obſerve at the beginning of every fit, if you can note them, or elſe every Morning, if his ſickneſs hath no ceaſing.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Quotidian, or every days Feaver, and the Cure.

THE *Quotidian*, or every days *Feaver*, is that which takes a Horſe and holdeth him with one fit once every day; and will at firſt appear ſomewhat Violent, but ſeldom or never endureth long, if the

the *Farrier* have any diſcretion. It proceedeth moſt commonly from extreme Riding, either after water, or a full ſtomach; and then ſuddenly, after his heat, being thruſt into a Stable, and neither ſtopt, nor rubbed, a ſuddain *Coldneſs* to that ſuddain Heat, begets a ſhaking, and ſo conſequently, the effect of a Feaver.

The ſigns to know it, are Watriſh and Blood-ſhotten eyes, ſhort and hot breathing, Panting, Loathing of his Meat and Stiffneſs in his Limbs; but above theſe, to know it is a *Quotidian*, you ſhall obſerve, that theſe ſigns, together with the ſickneſs, will not laſt above ſix or eight hours in one day, and then he will be cheerful and in health again, till very near the ſame hour of the next day, at what time his fit will begin again. And here is to be noted, that the more it altereth the hours, the more hope there is of his health; as if it takes him at ſeven of the Clock of the one day, and at three of the Clock of the other, and ſo forth. The cure is, you ſhall only during his fit, give him nothing but a ſweet Maſh made of Malt and Water being luke warm, and walk him gently up and down in a Temperate Air; then as ſoon as his fit is paſt; you ſhall ſet him up, and rub his Body and Leggs exceedingly; then four hours after you ſhall give him this Drink: Take of ſtrong Ale a quart, and boyl therein half a handful of Wormwood, of long Pepper and Grains two ounces, of the beſt Treacle two Ounces, and of the Powder of dried Rue one Ounce: Now when a third part of the Ale is conſumed, take it from the fire and ſtrain it, then put therein three ounces of Sugar-candy beaten to Powder; then when it is luke-warm give it him with a Horn to drink. Do this twice at the leaſt, or thrice if his fits continue, and there is no doubt but he will Recover.

CHAP. XVII.
Of the Tertian Feaver.

THE *Tertian Feaver*, is that which cometh every other day, holding the Horſe with one ſick day, and one ſound: it is not ſo violent as the *Quotidian*, but much longer laſting; it happeneth oftеſt in the ſpring-time of the year, when Blood begins to encreaſe, and moſt commonly to Colts and young Horſes. It proceeds of the ſame cauſes that the *Quotidian* doth, and ſometimes of Rankneſs and ill Blood. The ſigns to know it, are all the ſigns formerly ſpoken of and this is the chiefeſt, that the Horſe will be apparently ſick;

ſick, as it were on the Monday, then apparently well on the Tueſday, and ſick on the Wedneſday following. This Feaver is never ſeen, but it beginneth with ſhaking. The Cure thereof is, as ſoon as you perceive the Horſe begin to ſhake, you ſhall take a certain Herb, or rather a Weed called Stone-crop, and bruiſing it in a Morter, take ſome four ſpoonfuls of the juice thereof, and infuſe it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the Horſe to drink: then walk him gently up and down in ſome temperate Air for an hour, then ſet him up, and with the help of Cloaths put him into a ſweat for another hour, then cool him; and in any wiſe, till his fits leave him, let him Drink no cold Water, and let his Provender be the oldeſt and drieſt Oats you can get, only upon his good daies before his fits come, keep him very long faſting and empty.

CHAP. XVIII.
Of the Quartan Feaver.

THE *Quartan Feaver*, is that which ſome *Farriers* call a third daies ſickneſs, as thus: If his fits begin on the Monday, he will be well on the Tueſday and Wedneſday, and ſick again on the Thurſday. It proceeds from the ſame Cauſes that the *Tertian Feaver* doth, yet in his working is nor ſo apparently Violent, but of much longer Continuance: for if greater care and help be not, theſe *Feavers* will laſt ſome a quarter of a year, ſome half a year, and ſome a whole year. There needs no other ſign to know it, then the coming and going of the fits, as hath been declared already. And for the Cure, it is the ſelf ſame which is deſcribed in the former Chapters, for the *Tertian Feaver*: only if his fits doth not leave him at the firſt taking of the Medicine, you ſhall then give it him again the ſecond time, but not above thrice at the moſt in any wiſe.

CHAP. XIX.
Of the Feaver continual.

THE *Feaver Continual* is that which continueth without any intermiſſion, and it is moſt dangerous and violent: For there is in it the effects of all the former Feavers, every one taking place as the other endeth: as the *Quotidian* beginning is purſued by a *Tertian*, and a *Tertian* by a *Quartan*, and thoſe two ſupply ſo many hours till the

the *Quotidian* doth begin again. This kind of continual Feaver, most often springeth from some inflammation or violent heat ingendred in the Principal Members about the Heart: and the signs thereof are Want of Rest, and falling away of the flesh, besides certain Inflammations or swellings, which will appear about his Withers and Flanks. The Cure is, first to purge his head by sneezing, the manner whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter hereafter: which done, you shall give him this Drink, take of Jermander two Ounces, of Gum Tragacant, and dried Roses, of each half an Ounce, beat them into fine powder, and put them into a quart of Ale, adding thereunto of Oyl-Olive two Ounces, and as much Honey; and when it is luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink: then walk him a little space, and after set him up close and warm, keep him from cold Water, and let his Provender be dry Oats.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Hectick Feaver.

THE *Hectick Feaver* in *Horses*, is a dangerous and mortal Feaver, being in a *Horse* the first Original breeder of a Consumption; it is a certain hot and dry Humour, which runneth between the Skin and the Flesh, proceeding from a sick Stomach, which having been scalded with hot Drinks, as those ill dieted running Horses be, which feed upon much Spice, (as those which take hot drenches, upon every foolish and slight occasion) hath almost clean lost the power of Digestion: It sometimes happens to those Horses which Men too carefully teaching to Drink Beer and Wine, do so continually apply them thereunto, that in the end they become subject to this sickness. The signs to know it; the horse will never eat with any appetite, and when you draw out his Tongue, you shall find it raw and almost scalded; his Flesh will be loose and flaggy, and his Body subject to a continual Trembling. The Cure is, first wash his Tongue either with the Sirrup of Mulberries, or with Allom, running Water, Sage, and woodbine Leaves boyled together, then give him fasting in a morning this drink: Take of Aloes one Ounce, of Garlick half an Ounce, of Licoras and Anniseeds of each a dram, beaten to powder, and let him drink it with a quart of white Wine, luke-warm; and made sweet with Sugar-candy or Honey: let him drink

drink no drink, but warm maſhes of Malt and Water, and let his meat be ſweet *Hay*, or green Corn blades: and ever after his Medicine, let him be chafed a little, kept faſting two or three hours, and ſtand warm and well cloathed.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Fever taken in Autumn, or the fall of the Leaf.

ALL theſe Fevers before ſpoken of, do for the moſt part, commonly happen to *Horſes* in the Spring-time of the year, by reaſon that the new Blood is ever apteſt to be inflamed: yet notwithſtanding, we find by experience, that Feavers will ſometimes come at the fall of the Leaf, which we call *Autumn*, and they are of a longer continuance than the other. The ſigns are none other but ſuch as I have already declared: For they are the ſame Fevers, only altering the time of the year. If therefore your *Horſe* do chance to catch a Fever at the fall of the Leaf, you ſhall let him Blood on his Neck-vein, and in the Palate of his Mouth, and you ſhall give him to drink the ſame drink which is formerly ſet down for the Fever-continual, and there is no doubt of his Recovery.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the Feaver taken in the Summer-ſeaſon.

A Fever taken in the Summer ſeaſon, is the worſt of all Ordinary Fevers whatſoever, eſpecially all ſuch as are taken in the Dogdays; becauſe according to the opinion of Farriers, all accidents are then moſt furious: the eſpecial ſigns of this Feves are that his Arteries will beat moſt palpably, and whereſoever he ſtaleth there you ſhall perceive he ſheddeth his Seed alſo. The Cure According to the Antients, is to let him Blood in the great Vein which he hath on his hinder haunch, almoſt four Inches beneath his Fundament: but for mine own part becauſe that Vein is not eaſily found by every ignorant Smith, and that many times by miſtaking, they may cut the Arterie, inſtead of the Vein, I hold it fully as good to let him Blood on the Neck-Vein, which done, give him this Drink two hours and a half after; Take the Juice of a handful of Purſlane, and mix it with Gum-Tragacant, Anniſeeds, and Damask-Roſe-

leaves beaten to powder: then put them into a quart of Strong Ale; made ſweet either with Sugar-candy, or Honey, and fail not to give him this Drink three mornings together, keep the Horſe warm during his ſickneſs.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Feaver taken in the Winter ſeaſon.

A Feaver taken in the Winter, is not ſo dangerous to the Life of a Horſe, as the Feaver before mentioned; yet it is a Feaver which will continue long, and ask great Circumſpection in the Cure: the cauſes thereof are the ſame which are formerly deſcribed; and the ſigns are no other than hath been formerly declared. Touching the Cure, it is thus: you ſhall firſt purge his head by making him ſneeze, that done, you ſhall let him Blood both in the Neck and the Pallat of the Mouth, and then two hours and a half after give him this drink: Take of Rue three Ounces, of round Pepper half an Ounce, of Bay-berries, and the ſeed of Smallage, each half an Ounce, boyl theſe in White Wine, and give it him to drink luke warm. Other Farriers uſe to take a pint of new Milk, and to put therein two Ounces of Saffet Oyl, of Saffron one ſcruple, and of Myrrh two ſcruples, of the Seed of Smallage a ſpoonful, and to make him drink it lukewarm; but the Horſe which taketh this Drink, muſt be good in ſtrength, for if he be brought low it is ſomewhat too ſtrong.

The Antient *Italians* did uſe for this Fever, to give this Drink: Take of *Ariſtolochia* half an Ounce, of *Gentian*, of Hyſſop, Wormwood, of Southern-wort, of each half an Ounce, of dry fat Figs three Ounces, of the ſeed of Smallage an Ounce and a half, of Rue half an handful, boyl them all with running Water in a clean Veſſel, till almoſt half be conſumed; then when it begins to thicken, take it from the fire, ſtrain it, and give it the Horſe luke-warm. Now there are not any of theſe Drinks but are ſufficient for the Cure; but the firſt is beſt. Now for his Diet, be ſure to keep him faſting long before his fits come, and let his Drink be only warm Maſhes of Malt and Water. Now if you perceive that his fits continue, and bring the *Horſe* to any weakneſs, you ſhall then to comfort and quicken the natural heat of the *Horſe*, rub and chafe all his Body over, either in the Sun, or by ſome ſoft Fire, with ſome wholſome Friction, of which Frictions you ſhall find choice in a particular Chapter here-

hereafter following together with their ſeveral natures and uſes.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Feaver which cometh by Surfeit of meat only.

THE Feaver which cometh by Surfeit of Meat only, without either Diſorder of Travel or Corruption of Blood, is known by theſe ſigns: the Horſe will heave and beat upon his back, his breath will be ſhort, hot, and dry, and his Wind will draw only at his Noſe with great violence. The cure therefore is, you ſhall let him Blood in his Neck, under his Eyes, and in the Palate of his mouth, you ſhall alſo purge his head by making him ſneeze, then keep him with very thin Diet, that is, let him faſt for more than half of the day, and let him not drink above once in four and twenty hours, and that drink to be warm water; you ſhall alſo once or twice chafe his Body with a wholſome Friction; and if, during his Cure, he chance to grow coſtive, you ſhall cauſe him to be raked, and afterward give him either a Suppoſitory, or a Cliſter, of both which, and of their ſeveral natures, you ſhall read ſufficiently in a Chapter following.

CHAP. XXV.

Of Fevers extraordinary, and firſt of Peſtilent Fevers.

WE find by many Antient *Italian* Writers, that both the *Romans*, and others their Countrymen, have by experience found many Horſes ſubject to this Peſtilent Fever, which is a moſt contagious and peſtiferous Diſeaſe, almoſt incurable; and for mine own part I have ſeen it in many Colts and young Horſes. Surely, it proceedeth as I judge, either from great corruption of Blood, or from Infection of the Air. The ſigns thereof be, the Horſe will hold down his Head, forſake his Meat, ſhed much Water at his Eyes; and many times have ſwellings or Ulcers riſing a little below his Ear-roots. The Cure is, firſt you ſhall not fail to let him Blood in the *Neck-vein*: then two or three hours after you ſhall give him a Cliſter, then make him this Plaiſter: Take of *Squilla* five Ounces, of Elder, of *Caſtoreum*, of Muſtard-ſeed, and of *Euforbium*, of each two Ounces, diſſolve the ſame in the Juice of Daffodil and Sage, And lay it all about the Temples of his Head, and between his Ears: then give

him to drink for three or four days together, every Morning, two Ounces of the best Treacle dissolved in a pint of good *Muskadine*.

The *Italians* use to give him divers Mornings, a pound of the Juice of Elder roots, or instead of his *Hay*, a good quantity of that *Herb* which is called *Venus hair*; but if the time of the year be such that they cannot have it green, then they boil it in Water, and strain it, and give it him to Drink, but I hold the first *Drink* to be most sufficient, his *Diet* being thin, and his keeping warm.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Plague and Pestilence in Horses, of some called the Gargil or Murrain.

THis Pestilence, Murrain, or Gargil in Horses, is a contagious and most infectious *Disease*, proceeding either from Surfeit of Heat, Cold, Labour, Hunger, or any other thing breeding corrupt humours in a *Horses* Body, as the holding too long of his Urine, drinking when he is hot, or feeding upon gross, foul, and corrupt Foods, as in low grounds, after floods, when the Grass is unpurged and such like. Sometimes it springs from some evil Influence of the Planets, corrupting the Plants and Fruits of the Earth, and Cattel too sometimes, and from divers other such like Causes; but howsoever, when the Disease beginneth, certain it is, that it is most infectious, and if there be not care and prevention used, of multitudes, it will not leave one. Not any of the Antient *Italian* Farriers, nor any of our *English* Farriers that I have met with, do or can shew me any sign or token to know this Disease, more than that one or two must first die, and then by their Deaths I must adjudge and prevent what will follow; but they are mistaken: For this Disease is as easily known by outward signs, as any Disease whatsoever; as namely, the Horse will begin to lower and hang down his head; and within two or three days after such lowring, you shall see him begin to swell under his Ear roots, or under the roots of his Tongue, and that swelling will run universally over all one side of his Face, being very extream hard and great. Moreover all his Lips, Mouth, and Whites of his eyes will be exceeding yellow, and his Breath will be strong, and stink exceedingly.

The Cure of this Disease, according to the manner of the *Italians* and *French men*, is first to separate the sound from the sick, even a far distance from that Air where the sick breatheth; then let him blood

blood in the Neck veins, and give every one ſeverally to drink, two ſpoonfuls of the powder of *Diapente*, brewed in a pint of ſtrong *Sack*, of the compoſition of which *Diapente*, and of the particular Virtues thereof, you ſhall read in a Chapter following. If you cannot readily get this *Diapente*, you may then take a pint of *Muskadine*, and diſſolve into it two Ounces of the beſt Treacle, and it will ſerve the turn. Queſtionleſs theſe Medicines are both exceeding good; for they are great preſervatives againſt all infections.

Now that which I have found far to exceed them, and to be moſt Excellent, not only for this Plague amongſt Horſes, but for the Plague or Murrain (of ſome called the Mountains-evil) amongſt Beaſts, is this; Take a good quantity of old Urine, and mix therewith a good quantity of Hens Dung, ſtir them well together till the Dung be diſſolv'd: then with a horn give to every Horſe or Beaſt a pint thereof lukewarm. This have I ſeen help hundreds.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Fever accidental, coming by ſome Wound received.

IF a Horſe ſhall receive any grievous and ſore wound, either by ſtroke or thruſt, by which any of the Vital Powers are let or hindred, certain it is, that the pain and anguiſh of ſuch wounds will bring a Horſe to a hot Fever, and then his life is in great danger: Beſides a Horſe being naturally ſubject to moiſt Diſtillations in his throat, there will many times riſe therein great ſwellings and Ulcers, through the pain whereof a Horſe will fall into a burning Ague.

The ſigns whereof are, that he will covet much to drink, but cannot drink, and his fleſh will fall away in much extraordinary faſhion.

The Cure beſides the Remedies before mentioned, is, to let him blood under his Ears, and in the Mouth: and then to take a fine Manchet, and cutting it in ſlices, ſteep it in Muskadine, and compel him to ſwallow them: It ſhall alſo be good, if once in three days you ſteep your Manchet in Sallet-Oyl, and make him eat it. As for his drink, let it be only warm Maſhes of Malt and Water, which if he cannot drink, you ſhall then give it him with an horn. And thus much touching Fevers both ordinary and extraordinary.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

☞ One general, certain, and approved Cure for all the Fevers and Sicknesses formerly rehearsed, never yet disclosed from the Author's breast.

I Have in the former Chapters shewed you the Names, Diversities, Natures, Signs, and ordinary Cures for all sorts of Fevers whatsoever: Now because I know the Ignorance of some so great that they cannot discern; the Sloth of others such, that they will not indeavour to discern; and the Folly of many so peevish, that they will mistake what they may discern: I will shew you here one general, certain, and approved Medicine, for all Fevers of what Nature or Violence soever.

When therefore at any time you shall find by any of the Signs formerly rehearsed, that your Horse droopeth, you shall presently let him blood in the Neck vein, and let him bleed well, then three Mornings together after (the *Horse* being fasting) give him half an Ounce of the Powder called *Diapente*, (the Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter, together with the Vertues,) and this *Diapente* you shall brew in a pint of Muskadine, and so give it the Horse to drink with an Horn: then let him be ridden or walked abroad for an hour; after he cometh in, give him any meat whatsoever that he will eat. At noon give him a sweet Mash. In the evening perfume his head with a sweet perfume: The Composition whereof you shall find in a particular Chapter; at Night rub all his Limbs well with hard Wisps, and his head and nape of the Neck with a coarse harden Rubber, then feed as aforesaid. And thus do three days together, and without doubt health will come suddenly.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Diseases in the Head.

AS a Horses Head is composed of many parts, so are those many parts subject to many and sundry grievances, as namely, the Panicles, or thick skins, which cleave to the Bones, and cover the whole Brain, are subject to Head-ach, Megrim, Dizziness, and Amazes; the whole Brain it self is properly subject to breed the Frensie, Madness, sleeping evil, the taking and forgetfulness. And here is

to

to be noted, that many Farriers, and thoſe of approved good skill have ſtrongly held opinions, that Horſes have very little or no brains at all: And my ſelf for my own part, being carried away with their Cenſures, did at laſt upon good conſideration, cut up the heads of divers Horſes, ſome Dead, and ſome in dying, and could never find any Liquid or thin Brain, as in other Beaſts, but only a very thick, ſtrong, tough, and ſhining ſubſtance, ſolid and firm, like a tough jelly, which I ever held to be only a *Panicle*, and ſo reſolved with others, that a Horſe had no Brain: But after, upon further Diſcourſe with Men of better Learning, I had this Reſolution given me: That a Horſe being a Beaſt of extraordinary ſtrength and ability, made even to endure the worſt of all extremities, either by ſore labour, or heavy Burthen, that Nature in his Creation had endowed him with Members anſwerable to ſuch Vigour: As namely, that his Brain was not liquid and moiſt, as ſubject to fleet, or to be diſtempered with every ſmall diſorder, but tough and hard, even unpenetrable, and not to be pierc'd by any reaſonable motion. And for the Panicles, they ſhewed me thoſe thin skins over and beſides that great ſubſtance: ſo that by experience I ſaw, and now know, that a Horſe hath both Brain and a Panicle, and in them two are bred the Diſeaſes before mentioned. Now in the Ventricles, or Cells of the Brain, and in thoſe Conduits by which the lively Spirits give feeling and motion to the Body, there do breed the Turnſick, or Sturdy, the Staggers, the falling evil, the Night-Mare, the Apoplexy, the Palſie and Convulſion, or Cramp, the Catarrh, or Rheum, and laſtly the Glanders. And thus much of the Head in general.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Head-ach, or pain in the Head.

THE Headach is a pain that cometh either from ſome inward cauſe, or of ſome Cholerick Humour gathered together in the Panicles of the Brain, or elſe of ſome extream heat or cold, or of ſome ſudden blow, or of ſome noiſome Savour. The ſigns are, the hanging down of the Horſes *Head* and Ears, dropping of his Urine, dimneſs of ſight, ſwoln and watriſh Eyes. The Cure according to the opinion of ſome of our Engliſh Farriers, is to let him blood in the Eye-veins, and to ſquirt warm water into his Noſtrils; and for that day give him no meat; the next Morning faſting give him warm

warm Water, and ſome Graſs: at night give him *Barley* and *Fitches* mixt together, and ſo keep him warm till he be ſound: But this Cure ☞ I do not fancy. The beſt help is, firſt to make him ſneez by Fuming him, then let him blood in the Palate of the Mouth, And keep him faſting at the leaſt twelve hours after: Then pour into his Noſtrils Wine, wherein hath been ſodden *Euphorbium*, and *Frankincenſe*, and after feed him, and keep his head warm.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Frenzy, and Madneſs in a Horſe.

THE madneſs of a *Horſe*, by the moſt antient and beſt approved Farriers, is divided into four Paſſions: The firſt is, when ſome naughty Blood doth ſtrike the Panicle of the Brain but in one part only, it preſently makes the *Horſe* dull both in mind and ſight, and you ſhall know it by this ſign, the *Horſe* will turn round like a Beaſt that is troubled with the Sturdy: the Reaſon being, Becauſe the outſide of the head is grieved only. The ſecond is, when the Poyſon of ſuch Blood doth infect the middle part of the Brain: Then the *Horſe* becometh Frantick, leaping againſt Walls or any Thing. The third is, when that Blood filleth the veins of the Stomach, and infecteth as well the Heart as the Brain: then he is ſaid to be mad. But the fourth and laſt is, when that Blood infecteth not only the *Brain* and *Heart*, but even the Panicles alſo, and then he is ſaid to be ſtark mad, which you ſhall know by his biting at every man which comes near him, by his gnawing of the Manger and the Walls about him. And laſtly, by tearing his own skin in pieces.

Now for the Cure, you ſhall cauſe him to be let blood in all the lower parts of his body, to draw the blood from his *Head*; as namely, on the Shackle-veins, the Spur-veins, the Flat-veins, and the Thigh-veins, and you ſhall let him blood abundantly, then give him this Drink: Take the root of wild Cucumber, and where that cannot be gotten, take a handful of Rue or Mints, and a handful of black Elleborus, and boyl them in ſtrong red Wine, and give it lukewarm to the *Horſe* in a horn.

Some uſe to give Man's Dung with Wine, three Mornings together: And alſo to rub his body over with a Friction at leaſt twice a day, and not to fail to give him moderate Exerciſe.

Others

Others uſe to pierce the skin of his head, with a hot Iron, to let out the ill humours.

Others as the moſt certain of all Medicines, uſe to geld him of both, or one ſtone at the leaſt, but I like it not for my own part

The Cure I have ever uſed for this grief, was either to make him ſwallow down hard Hens Dung, or elſe give him to drink, the Root of *Virga Paſtoris* ſtamped in Water, and for his ordering during the Cure I would have his Stable quiet, but not cloſe, and his Food only warm Maſhes of Malt and Water, yet but a very little at one time, for the thinneſt Diet is beſt.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Sleeping Evil or Lethargy in a Horſe.

THE Sleeping Evil, is an infirmity which maketh a Horſe to ſleep continually, depriving him thereby, both of Memory, Appetite, and all Alacrity of Spirit. It is moſt incident to White and Dun Horſes, becauſe it proceedeth only from *Flegm*, cold and groſs, which moiſtneth the Brain too much, cauſeth heavineſs and ſleep: There needs no other ſign more than his ſleeping only. The Cure is, to keep him waking whether he will or no, with great noiſes and affright; then let him blood in the Neck, and the Palate of the Mouth, and give him to drink Water luke-warm, wherein hath been boyled Camomil, Motherwort, Wheat-Bran, Salt, and Vinegar: You ſhall alſo perfume his Head, and make him ſneeze, and anoint the Palate of his Mouth with Honey and Muſtard mixt together: It ſhall not be amiſs, if with the ordinary Water which he drinketh, you mix either Parſley ſeed, or Fennel ſeed, for that will provoke Urine: you ſhall alſo bathe his Leggs, and ſtop his Hoofs with Bran, Salt, and Vineger boyled together, and applied as hot as may be, and his Stable would be lightſome and full of noiſe.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of a Horſe that is taken, or of Shrow-running.

THoſe Horſes are ſuppoſed by Farriers to be taken, or as ſome call it Planet-ſtrook, which are deprived of feeling or moving, not being able to ſtir any Member, but remain in the ſame Form as they were at their time of taking. Some hold it proceeding of Choler

and Flegm, when they are ſuperabundantly mixt together, or of Melancholy Blood, which being a cold dry humour, doth oppreſs and ſicken the hinder part of the Brain. Other antient Farriers hold, it cometh of ſome extreme cold, or extream heat, or raw digeſtion ſtriking into the empty Veins ſuddenly: or elſe of extreme Hunger, cauſed by long faſting. The ſigns thereof are numbneſs, and want of motion before ſpoken of: As for the cauſe, it is diverſe, for firſt you muſt note, whether it come of cold or heat: If it come of Cold, you ſhall know it by the ſtuffing and poze in the Head, which is ever joyned with the Diſeaſe: if of heat, by the hotneſs of his Breath, and clear fetching of his Wind. Now if it proceed from cold, you ſhall give him to Drink one Ounce of *Laſerpitium* mixt with Sallet Oyl and Muſkadine lukewarm: if it proceed of heat, you ſhall give him one Ounce of *Laſerpitium* with water and Honey luke-warm: But if it proceed of Crudity, or any raw digeſtion, then you ſhall help him by faſting: and if it proceed of faſting, then you ſhall heal him by feeding him often with good Meat, as with wholſome Bread and dry Oats; yet but a little at a time, that he may ever eat with a good ſtomach

Now for the *French* Farriers, as Monſieur *Horace* and the reſt, who call this Diſeaſe *Surpius*, they hold, it cometh only from cold cauſes, following hot accidents, and they uſe for their Cure to let him blood on the Breaſt-veins, and then put him into a ſweat, either by Exerciſe, or multiplicity of Cloaths, but many cloaths are better, Becauſe the Horſe is not capable of Labour: And ſometimes they will bury him all ſave his head in an old Dunghil, till through the heat thereof his Limbs receive ſuch feeling, that he begins to ſtruggle out of the ſame. All which Cures are not much amiſs; Yet in mine opinion, this is the beſt, eaſieſt, and ſureſt way. Firſt, to let him blood in the Neck and Breaſt, then to anoint all his Body with Oyl *Petrolium*, then give him this Drink. Take of Malmſey three pints, and mix it with a quartern of Sugar, Cinamon and Cloves, and let him drink it luke-warm, then take old rotten wet litter, and for want thereof, wet Hay, and with Cloaths, Surſingles and Cords, ſwaddle all his whole Body over with the ſame of a good thickneſs, and renew it once in three days till he be whole; let his Stable be warm, his Exerciſe moderate, and if he grow coſtive, let him firſt be raked, and after give him either a Cliſter, or a Suppoſitary, according to his ſtrength. There is alſo another kind

of

of taking, and that is, when a Horſe is Planet-ſtruck, or ſtricken with Thunder: but it is utterly uncurable, and therefore I will omit to ſpeak further of it. The laſt kind of taking is when a Horſe is ſhrow-run, that when a Horſe lieth ſleeping, there is a certain venomous field-Mouſe called a Shrow, whoſe head is extraordinary long, like a Swines head, and her feet ſhorter of the one ſide than the other. This Mouſe if ſhe happen to run over any of the Limbs of the Horſe, preſently the Horſe loſeth the uſe of that Limb ſhe ran over, and if ſhe run over his body, he commonly loſeth the uſe of his hinder loins: and theſe accidents having been often found unexpected common Farriers have held the horſe to be taken, or Planet-ſtrook. As for the Cure thereof, the beſt is to ſeek out a brier, which groweth at both ends, and take the horſe or beaſt that is thus vexed, and draw him under the ſame, and it is a preſent remedy. For mine own part, I have heard much, both of the infirmity, and of the Cure, but I have had no experience of it, but only in one young Foal which being ſuddenly Lame, was as ſuddenly helped, to my much Contentment.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Staggers.

THE *Staggers* is a dizzy madneſs of the Brain, proceeding from corrupt blood, or groſs, tough and heavy Humours, which oppreſs and make ſick the Brain, and from whence proceedeth a vaporous Spirit, diſſolved by a weak heat which troubleth all the whole head: It is almoſt of all Diſeaſes the moſt common, yet very Mortal and dangerous; it cometh many times from ſurfeit of Meat, ſurfeit of Travel, or from corruption of blood. The ſigns to know it is Dimneſs of ſight, ſwoln and watriſh Eyes, a moiſt Mouth, ſtaggering and reeling of the horſe, and beating of his head againſt the Walls, or thruſting it into his Litter. The Cure is divers: for almoſt every Smith hath a ſeveral Medicine, yet theſe which I ſhall rehearſe, are the moſt approved. The Antient Farriers, both *Italians* and *French*, uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Temple-veins, and then with a knife make an hole an inch long over-thwart his fore-head, underneath his fore top, and raiſing up the skin with a Cornet, ſome two or three inches about, ſtop the hollowneſs with a tent dipt in Turpentine and hogs greaſe molten together; but ſome of our Smiths finding this Cure fail, except the Diſeaſe be very young, uſe to ſtop the

hollowneſs with Dock roots. Others with a Clove or two of Garlick. Others uſe for this Diſeaſe to take Selladine, and ſtamping it to ſtop it into his Ears, and ſo tye up his Ears, or ſtitch the tips of his Ears together, that he may not ſhake the Medicine out. Others uſe to mix Salt and Water together thick, and to put it into his Ears. Others uſe to mix *Groundſel* and *Aqua-vitæ* together, and to put that into his Ears. Others uſe to take Garlick, Rue, and Bay Salt, and beat them groſly, then mix Vinegar with them, and put it into the Horſes Ears, then wet Wool or Tow in the Medicine, and ſtop that in his Ears alſo: let the Medicine reſt ſo four and twenty hours, and if he forſake his Meat, waſh his Tongue with Vinegar, and it will recover his Stomach. Others uſe firſt to purfume the horſes head to make him ſneeze, then to take half a handful of Selladine, and as much Herb-of-Grace, three or four Cloves of Garlick, and a little Bay-Salt, and ſtamp them together: then mix therewith two or three ſpoonfuls of Vinegar or Verjuice, and thruſt it hard into the horſes Ears: then tye up his Ears with a ſoft inkle ſtring, that no Air may come in, and let this Medicine remain the ſpace of a Day and a Night: then let him Blood in the Neck vein, and give him a comfortable Drench, of which Drenches you ſhall find great plenty, together with their uſes, in a Chapter following. There be ſome Smiths which only take Rue and Selladine, of each a like quantity, and ſtamping them with white Salt, thruſt it into the Horſes Ear, and it helpeth. Others take an Ounce and an half of the Oyl of bitter Almonds, two drams of Oxe-gall, and a half penny in black Ellebor ſtamped, and five drams of the grains of Caſtoreum, Vinegar, and Verjuice, ſeethe them altogether till the Vinegar be conſumed, then ſtrain them, and put it into the Horſes Ears. All theſe Medicines have been divers times approved to be ſingular good, and for mine own part, I have found great effects in them: Yet that which I have found at all times moſt excellent, is, if the Diſeaſe be young and early taken, (that is, before the horſe be grown into an extremity of Weakneſs) to take only Verjuice and Bay-Salt, and mixing them well together, to ſtop it into the horſes Ears. But if the Diſeaſe be old, and the horſe brought to a deſperate ſtate of Mortality, then you ſhall take Aſſa fœtida, and having diſſolved it in Vinegar, warm it upon a Chafingdiſh of Coals, and with round Balls of Tow, ſtuff it hard into the horſes Ears, and ſo bind them up for four and twenty hours, after which time give him a comfortable drink. Now where-

as

as ſome Smiths do uſe to ſtamp Aqua-vitæ and Garlick together, and ſtop that into his Ears: I for my part, think it too ſtrong, except the horſe be in great luſt, and full of fleſh, which if he be, doubtleſs it may do well enough; only for a general rule you muſt obſerve, ever to let the horſe blood in the Neck-vein, two or three Mornings together, and every time take a great abundance of Blood from him.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the Falling Evil.

THis Falling evil, or as the *Italians* call it, This *Malcaduco*, is nothing elſe but that which we call in Men the *Falling-ſickneſs*, in Beaſts the Falling evil: for it doth for a certain Seaſon, deprive them of all ſenſe whatſoever. It is a Diſeaſe not commonly incident to our *Engliſh* Races, but amongſt the *Italian*, *Spaniſh*, and *French* horſes, many times found.

Now conſidering that the moſt of our beſt *Engliſh* Stables are furniſhed even with ſome horſes of theſe Countries, I think it good to write ſomething touching the Diſeaſe. It proceeds from cold and groſs Flegm, gathered together in the fore part of the Head, betwixt the Panicle and the Brain, which being by any hot vapour diſperſt over the whole Brain, it doth inſtantly cauſe this falling. There be others which ſuppoſe it to be governed by the Moon; and that by a certain coarſe thereof, both horſes and other beaſts do fall, and as it were die for a ſmall time. The ſign to know the Diſeaſe, is, the horſe will fall ſuddenly, both through the Reſolution of his Members, and the Diſtenſion of his Sinews, all his Body will quake and quiver, and they will foam much at their Mouths, yet when you think them paſt all hope of Life, they will ſtill ſtart up ſuddenly and fall to their Meat. Now if you will know whether theſe fits will come often, or but ſeldom, you ſhall feel the Griſtle betwixt his Noſtrils, and if it be cold, he will oft; but if he be warm, he will fall ſeldom. The Cure is, you ſhall firſt let him blood in the Neck-vein, taking good ſtore of blood away: then within four or five days after, you ſhall let him blood on his Temple-veins, and on his Eye-veins: then anoint all his Body over with a comfortable Friction, then bathe his head and Ears with Oyl de Bay, liquid Pitch and Tar mixt together, and of the ſame put ſome into his Ears:

then

then make him a Cap or Biggin of Canvaſe, quilted with Wooll to keep his head warm: then give him a purgation or ſcouring, of which you ſhall find plenty in a Chapter hereafter: you ſhall alſo force him to ſneeze, but if the Diſeaſe notwithſtanding continue ſtill, you ſhall then with a hot Iron pierce the skin of his Fore-head in divers places, and after anoint it with ſweet Butter, for thereby you ſhall draw out the groſs humours which do oppreſs the Brain, and in any wiſe during the time that he remaineth in Phyſick, let his Stable be kept exceeding warm, and his Diet thin.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Night-mare.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the Night-mare, is an infirmity which only troubleth the horſe in the Night-ſeaſon, ſtopping the drawing of his breath, in ſuch violent ſort, that with the ſtruggling and ſtriving he will be driven into a great ſweat and faintneſs: It proceedeth, according to the opinion of antient Farriers, from a continual Crudity, or raw Digeſtion of the ſtomach, from whence groſs Vapours aſcending up into the head, do not only oppreſs the Brain, but all the Senſitive parts alſo. Now for my part, I rather hold it an infirmity of the Stomach and inward Bowels, which being cloyed with much Glut and Fat, doth in the Night ſeaſon ſo hinder the Spirits and Powers from doing their Natural Office, that the Beaſt having, as it were, his breath ſtrangled, doth with an unnatural ſtruggling in his ſleep, put his body into an extream ſweat, and with that paſſion is brought to much faintneſs; of which I have had much and continual experience not only in horſes, exceeding fat, and newly taken from the Graſs, but eſpecially from ſuch horſes as are either fatted upon Eddiſh Graſs, which in ſome Countries is called after-Mathes; or ſuch as are taken up fat in the Winter-ſeaſon. The ſigns to know this Diſeaſe, is, that in the Morning when you come early to your Horſe, you ſhall find him all of a great ſweat, and his body ſomething panting; or perhaps you ſhall but only find him ſweat in his flanks, upon his Neck, and at the Roots of his Ears: Either or both are ſigns of this ſickneſs, eſpecially if at Night when you litter him, if you find that he is dry of his body, and giveth no outward ſign of inward ſickneſs. Now there be ſome that will Object againſt me, and ſay, that this infirmity is not the Night Mare, but

but an ordinary Infirmity ingendred by ſuperfluity of cold, groſs, and unwholſom Food, got in the Winter-ſeaſon; which Nature, through the help of warm Cloaths, and a warm houſe, expels in this manner, in the night-ſeaſon. To this Objection I anſwer, that if they do diſallow this ſickneſs to be the Night-mare, that then without Contradiction, there is no ſuch Diſeaſe as the Night-mare at all, and that it is but only a name without any ſubſtance or conſequence; but foraſmuch as this ſickneſs is not only very uſual, but alſo carrieth with it all the Effects and Attributes aſcribed unto the Night mare, and that it is as yet a Diſeaſe unnamed, I do not think I can give it a more proper Term than to call it the Night-mare. The Cure whereof is, every Morning and Evening, both before and after his water, to give the Horſe ſome moderate Exerciſe, as to make him go at leaſt a mile and more for his water; and after he is watred, to gallop him gently on the hand a good ſpace; then when he is brought into the houſe, and well rubbed, to give him his Provender, (being Oats) and to mix therewith a handful, or better of Hempſeed, only in this Cure you muſt be careful, that your Exerciſe do not inforce him to ſweat, nor ſhall you have need to uſe it longer, than you find that he ſweateth much in the Night ſeaſon. This Exerciſe and Medicine will not only cure this infirmity, but alſo any cold that is newly gotten whatſoever.

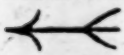
CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Apoplexy, or Palſie.

THeſe Palſies or Apoplexies which happen unto horſes, are of two ſorts: the one general, the other particular. The general Palſie is, when a *Horſe* is deprived of all ſenſe, and moving generally over his whole Body, which is ſeldom or never found out by our Farriers; becauſe the Mortality and ſuddenneſs of Death which purſues the Diſeaſe, takes from them all Notes and obſervations of the Infirmity: And indeed, for the general Palſie, there is no Cure, and therefore there needs no Deſcription of ſign or Cure. For this particular Palſie, that is when a horſe is deprived but of ſome part or member of his body, and moſt commonly it is but the Neck only, as both my ſelf and others have found by daily experience. This Diſeaſe proceedeth from foulneſs of food, or from ſen-feeding, which breedeth groſs and tough humours, which joyned with Crudities and

and raw Digeſtions, oppreſs the Brain violently altogether: it alſo cometh manytimes by means of ſome blow or Wound given upon the Temples of the Head. The ſigns to know the Diſeaſe, are, the gathering together of his Body, going crookedly, and not ſtraight forward, but ſeldom and holding his neck awry without Motion: yet never forſaking his Provender or Meat, but eating it with greedineſs and much ſlavering. The Cure is, to let him blood on his Neck vein, and Temple-vein, on the contrary ſide to that way he wryeth: then anoint all his Neck over with the Oyl Petrolium, and with wet hay Ropes ſwaddle all his Neck over, even from his Breaſt to his Ears, but having before ſplented his Neck ſtraight with ſplents of Wood, made ſtrong, ſmooth, and flat for the purpoſe: then for three Mornings together, give him a pint of old *Muskadine*, with two ſpoonfuls of this Powder to drink. Take of Opoponax two Ounces, of Storax three Ounces, of Gentian three Ounces, of Manna, Succary three Ounces, of Myrrh one ſcruple, and of long Pepper two ſcruples: beat all theſe into fine powder.

Now there be ſome Farriers, which for this Diſeaſe uſe to draw the horſes Neck on the contrary ſide with a hot Iron, even from the Neck to the Shoulder, and on the Temple of his head of that ſide alſo, a long ſtroke, and on the other a little Scar in this manner ⊣, and from his Reins to his middle back, ſmall lines in this manner:



But I that know this ſickneſs proceedeth from the Brain and Sinews, cannot conceive how any help ſhould come from burning of the skin, that is drawn up and ſtreightned: And therefore I would wiſh every Farrier to forbear this tormenting, unleſs he apparently ſee, that the skin it ſelf, through diſlike and weakneſs, is ſhrunk alſo, and then the Cure is not amiſs.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the general Cramps, or Convulſion of ſinews.

THeſe general Cramps, or Convulſion of ſinews, are moſt forcible Contractions, or drawing together of the ſinews, and muſcles: and they happen ſometimes generally into many parts of the Body, ſometimes particularly, as but into one Member and no more: When they are generally diſperſt in horſes, they proceed commonly from ſome wound, wherein a ſinew is half cut and no more, and ſo there runneth

runneth a general Contraction over the whole Body by degrees. When they are particular, as but in one Member, then they proceed either from cold windy cauſes, or from the want of Blood. For the general contraction which cometh by a wound, you ſhall read the Cure thereof in the Book of Chirurgery following, where the ſinew being cut in two pieces, the contraction ceaſeth. For this particular, where but one member is grieved, you ſhall know it by theſe ſigns: The Member will be ſtark and ſtiff, inſomuch that neither the Peaſt, nor any man will be able to bow it: The ſinews will be hard like ſticks, and the Horſe being down, is not able to riſe during the time of the Contraction, he will alſo halt extremely whilſt the fit is upon him, and preſently go well again, as it were in one moment. The Cure is, to chafe the Member exceedingly, either with Linſeed Oyl, Sheeps-foot Oyl, or Neats-foot Oyl, and during the time of his Chaffing, to hold up the contrary foot that he may ſtand upon the Limb which is moſt pained. There is alſo another Cramp or Convulſion of ſinews, which doth extend into the Neck and reins of the Horſes back, and ſo almoſt univerſal over the horſes whole Body: It proceeds ever, either from ſome extreme cold, as by turning a Horſe ſuddenly out of a warm Stable, and warm Cloathes, into the piercing rage of the Cold Winter, or by the loſs of Blood, whereby great windineſs entreth into the Veins, and ſo benummeth the ſinews: or elſe by two much Phyſicking and Drenching of a Horſe, whereby the natural heat is much weakned or dried. The ſigns of this Convulſion be, his Head and Neck will ſtand awry, his Ears upright, and his Eyes hollow, his mouth will be clung up that he cannot eat, and his back will riſe up in the midſt like the back of a Camel; the Cure hereof is, with great ſtore of warm woollen Cloaths, as Blankets and Coverlids, ſome folded double about his Body, and ſome girded all over from his Head to his Tail, to force him into a ſweat; but if the Cloaths will not force him to ſweat, then you ſhall either fold all his Body over with hot wet Horſe Litter, or elſe bury him all ſave the Head in a Dunghil or Mixon; then when he hath ſweat an hour or two, and is moderately cooled, you ſhall anoint him all over with this Ointment, (holding hot Larrs of Iron over him, to make the Ointment ſink into his Body:) take of Hoggs-greaſe one pound, of Turpentine a quarter of a pound, of Pepper beaten into powder half a dram, of old oyl Olives one pound, boyl all theſe together, and uſe it being

made warm. There be other Farriers which use this Ointment Take of new Wax one Pound, of Turpentine four Ounces, of Oyl de Bay as much, Opoponax two Ounces, of Deers suet, and of Oyl of *Styrax* of each three Ounces, melt all these together, and use it warm.

There be others which use, after his sweat, nothing but Oyl of *Cypress*, or of *Spike*, and Oyl de Bay mixt together, and with it anoint his Body over. After this Unction thus applied, you shall take twenty grains of long Pepper beaten into fine Powder, of Cedar two Ounces, of *Nitre* one Ounce, of *Laserpitium* as much as a Bean, and mingle all these together with a Gallon of White wine, and give him a quart thereof to drink every morning for four dayes. Now for his Diet and Order, let his Food be warm *Masbes*, and the finest Hay, his Stable exceeding warm, and his exercise gentle Walking abroad in his Cloaths, once every day about high noon.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Cold, or Poze in the Head.

THE Cold or Poze in a *Horses Head* is gotten by divers sudden and unseen means, according to the Temper and Constitution of the *Horses Body*, insomuch, that the best keeper whatsoever cannot sometimes warrant his Horse from that infirmity. Now according as this Cold is old or new, great or small, and according to the abundance of Humours which abound in the Head, and as those Humours are of thickness or thinness, so is the Disease and the danger thereof greater or lesser, stronger or weaker. For you shall understand, that if the Horse hath but only a cold that is newly taken, the signs are, he will have many Knots like Wax Kernels between his Chaules about the Roots of his Tongue; his Head will be somewhat heavy, and from his Nostrils will run a certain clear Water; but if about his Tongue roots be any great Swelling, or Inflammation like a mighty botch or bile, then it is the *strangle*; but if from his Nostrils do issue any thick, stinking, or corrupt matter, then it is the *Glanders*, of both which we shall speak hereafter in their proper places. Now for this ordinary Cold, which is ordinarily taken, (the signs whereof, besides his much Coughing, are before declared) you shall understand; that for the Cure being very easie, it is helped sundry ways: Some cure it only by purging his head with Pills of Butter and Garlick,

lick, the manner whereof you ſhall find in the Chapter of Purgations. Other Farriers cure it with purging his head with fumes, and forcing him to ſneeze, the manner whereof is in the Chapter of Neeſing; which done, you ſhall give him to drink Water wherein hath been ſodden *Fenugreek*, Wheat-meal, and Anniſeeds; and then to trot him up and down half an hour after. Others uſe to give him Neeſing powder, blown up into his Noſtrils; and then this drink: take a pint of *Malmſey*, and the whites and yolks of four or five Eggs, a head of Garlick bruiſed ſmall, Pepper and Cynamon, and Nuttmegs, of each a like quantity beaten to fine powder, and a pretty quantity of ſweet Butter, mix them together, and give it lukewarm with a horn three days together: then keep him faſting at leaſt two hours after. Others uſe to let the Horſe blood in the vein under his Tail, and to rub all his Mouth over with a Bunch of Sage bound to a ſticks end, and then to mix with his Provender the tender crops of black Berries; but I take this Medicine to be fitteſt for ſuch Horſes, who with the cold Rheume are troubled with pain in their Chaps, and not with ſtuffing in their head.

Now albeit none of theſe Medicines are fault-worthy, yet ſome for mine own part, I have ever found to be moſt Excellent for theſe ſlight colds, moderate Exerciſe, both before and after a Horſes water in ſuch ſort as is declared in the Chapter of the Night-Mare, without any other fuming or drenching except I found the cold to be more than ordinary, and that for want of heed taking it was like to grow to ſome Ulcer about the Roots of the Tongue. In this caſe I would for one time and no more, give the Horſe a pint of Sack, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl made lukewarm, and well brew'd with good ſtore of *Sugar-Candy*, to drink in the Morning faſting, and then exerciſe him moderately thereupon, without putting him into any ſweat, and it hath never failed to work the effects I wiſhed in ample ſort, without hindring meat any time of my Travel or Journey, but if you cannot conveniently come by this Medicine, and you muſt notwithſtanding Travel your Horſe, then take a ſpoonful of *Tarr*, and folding it in a fine Cloath, fix or tye it faſt to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffel, and ſo Travel your Horſe therewith, and it will take his cold clean away. But yet it will a little abate and leſſen his ſtomach.

CHAP. XL.

How certainly to take away any Cold, Poze, or Ratling in the Head, how violent soever, without giving any Inward Medicine.

IF your Horse have taken any extreme Cold, or Poze in his head, and being matcht either to hunt, or to run for any great Wager, the day is so near that you dare not give him any inward Drench, without which, none of our Farriers know how to cure any Cold; you shall then, or at any other time, (for there is no Medicine in the World more Soveraign) take as much sweet Butter as is big Wall-nut, and with the powder of Brimstone finely beaten and searst, work them either with your Knife, or a Splatter together, till the Butter be brought to a high cold Colour; then take two clean Goose feathers, the longest in all the Wing, and first at the Quills ends, with a Needle, fasten two long Threds: Then with your Salve anoint all the Feathers clean over; which be done in the dry powder of Brimstone, role them over and over; then putting the Feathers ends foremost, open the Horses Nostrils, and thrust them up into his Head: then take the Threads which are at the Quills ends, and fasten them on the top of the Horses Head; which done, Ride him abroad for an hour or two, airing him in this manner Morning and Evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath stood tied up a pretty Season, untie the Threds, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have next occasion to use them. This Cure of all others is most certain, and taketh away any stopping in the Head how extreme soever.

CHAP. XLI.

The Perfection and best of all Medicines for Poze or Cold.

TAke (if you can get it) an Ounce of the fine and pure paste of Elicampane, which hath the strings at the Roots taken from it, or for want thereof, an ounce of the Conserve of Elicampane, and dissolve it in a pint and a half of Sack, and so give it the Horse with a Horn in the Morning fasting, and then ride him half an hour after it, and let him fast two hours more, then feed him as at ordinary times: and thus do for two or three Mornings together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.
Of a Horse that is Hide-bound.

THis Disease which we call Hide-bound, is, when a Horses skin cleaveth so hard to his Ribbs and Back, that you cannot with your hand pull up or loosen the one from the other. It proceedeth sometimes from poverty and ill keeping, sometimes from surfeit of over Riding; especially if when he is extreme hot, he be suffered to stand long in the Rain or wet-Weather: And lastly, it proceedeth from a corrupt drineſs of the Blood, which wanting his Natural course, forceth his skin to shrink up, and cleave to the Bones. The signs, besides the cleaving of his skin, is, leanness of Body, gauntness of Belly, and the Standing up of the Ridgebone of his Back: It drieth up the Entrails, torments the Body, and makes his Dung stink extraordinarily: and if he be not remedied, Mangineſs will presently follow after it. The Cure of it is divers, according to the opinion of divers Workmen. The most antient Farriers did use to let him blood on the Spur veins, of both sides his Belly, somewhat toward his flank, which done, they give him this *Drink*: Take of white wine, or strong Ale a Quart, and add thereunto three Ounces of Sallet-Oyl, of *Cummin* one Ounce, of *Annisseeds* two Ounces, of *Licoras* two Ounces, beaten all into fine powder, and give it him luke-warm with a horn; when he hath Drunk, let one chase his Back, from the Huckle-bone upward, for the space of an hour or more; then set him in a warm Stable, with good store of Litter; then fold about his Body a thick Blanket, soaked in Water, and wrung; then over it a dry Blanket, then gird them both fast, and stop the surfingle about with great Wisps, for the wet Blanket will put him into a great heat, and for want of a wet Blanket, if you fold his Body in wet hay, it will do the like, and loosen his skin; this you shall do the space of a Week, during which time he shall drink no cold Water.

There be other Farriers, which before they lay on the wet Blanket, will anoint all the Horses Body over with Wine and Salet Oyl, and surely it is good also. There be others which for this Disease, use to let the Horse blood in the Neck, then bathe his sides with warm Water, wherein hath been sodden Bay-Leaves: then anoint him all over with the Oyl of Rue or Camomile, holding a hot Iron over

over him to make the *Oyl Sink* into his *Skin*, then give him this *Drink*: Take of *Carrets*, *Rue*, *Wild Mint*, of each an *Ounce and a half*, of *Wormwood* two *Ounces*; dry them, and beat them to *Powder*, then give two ſpoonfuls thereof in a pint of *Malmſey*. There be other *Farriers*, which take *Fenugreek*, *Turmetrick*, *Anniſeeds*, *Bay*, *Licoras*, and *Cumin*, of each a like quantity, dry them, and beat them to powder, and give the Horſe two ſpoonfuls there of with a quart of Ale or Beer luke-warm: Uſe this at leaſt three Mornings together, and it will not only help the Diſeaſe, but if it be formerly uſed it will prevent the coming thereof: This drink is alſo good for a Cold. Now although every one of theſe Medicines are very good, yet for my own part, I have found this which followeth to exceed them all.

Firſt, Let him blood in the Neck-vein, then give him this Drink: Take two handfuls of *Celladine*, if it be in the Summer the Leaves and Stalks will ſerve, but if it be in Winter, take Leaves, *Stalks*, Roots and all, chop them ſmall, then take a handful of Wormwood, and a handful of Rue, chop them likewiſe, put all theſe into three quarts of ſtrong Ale or Beer, and boyl them till it come to a quart; then take it from the fire, and ſtrain it till you have left no moiſture in the herbs; then diſſolve it in three ounces of the beſt Treacle, and give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink: then for a Week together, once a day, rub all the Horſes Body over with Oyl and Beer, or Butter and Beer, againſt the Hair, and feed him with warm-maſhes of Malt and Water, and for his Provender, let him have Barley ſodden till it be ready to break, provided that you keep it not until it ſower.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the Glanders.

TOuching this Diſeaſe which we call the *Glanders*, My Maſters, the old Farriers and I, are at much difference: for ſome of them do hold opinion, that it is an inflammation of the Kernels, which lye on each ſide of the Throat, underneath the Roots of the Tongue, near the ſwallowing place; and their reaſon is, that becauſe thoſe Kirnels are called of the *Italians*, *Glandula*, that thence we borrow this word *Glanders*; adding moreover, that a horſe which is troubled with this Diſeaſe, hath great Kirnels underneath his Jaws,

eaſie

eaſie to be felt, paining him ſo, that he cannot eat, or ſwallow any thing. Others ſay, it is a ſwelling upon the Jaw Bones, great and hard, which being inflamed, doth putrifie and rot. But both theſe Opinions I hold in part erroneous: For although our old Farriers might (according to the Cuſtom of our Nation, which loveth imitation of Strangers) borrow this word *Glanders* from the *Italian Glandule*; yet theſe Inflammations under the Chaps of the Tongue Roots, is that Diſeaſe which we call the *Strangle*, and not the *Glanders*; and whereas they could call the *Strangle*, the *Quinſie*, or *Squinancy*, there is no ſuch matter, neither hath an Horſe any ſuch Diſeaſe, except they will call the *Vives* by that name, which is far more fitter for the application.

Now for the *Glanders*, you ſhall underſtand that it is a Running Impoſthume, engendred either by cold, or by Famine, or by long Thirſt, or by eating corrupt or muſty meat, or by being kept in Unſavoury Places, or is taken by ſtanding with infected *Horſes*. It is a gathering together of moiſt and corrupt *Humours*, which runneth at the Noſe; or may be ſaid to be a flux of Rheum, which iſſueth ſometimes at one, ſometimes at both the Noſtrils: the cauſe being, the Wideneſs of the paſſage, ſo that the Cold liberally entring into the Brain, bindeth it and cruſheth it in ſuch manner, that it maketh the humours there to diſtill; which deſcending to the ſpiritual parts, and poſſeſſing them, in the end ſuffocates the Horſe, either by their abundance, or killeth him by corrupting the principal parts; or elſe by congealing there by little and little, over-runneth the natural heat. Now that diſtillation, that by cold cometh from the Brain and breedeth this *Glanders*, is of three ſorts. The firſt is a cold, which maketh indigeſted Humours to paſs from the Brain, which cometh by taking off the Saddle ſuddenly when the horſe is hot, or by letting him drink before he be inwardly cooled, or before his Body be dried: This diſtillation commonly is ſlimy matter that ſmells not, and is eaſie to be cured; for it is no inward Ulcer, but only abundance of Humour, the ſubſtance whereof is groſs and white. The ſecond is a great cold ingendred and congealed, cauſing *Humours* ſomething thin and ſlimy, of the colour of *Marrow*, or the White of an Egg; this deſcendeth to the Throat, and lyeth there till it be diſcharged through the *Noſtrils*. The third is by long continuance thicker, and therefore harder to be cured; if the colour thereof be yellow like a Bean, then is the *Glanders* moſt deſperate, and lyeth alſo in his Throat,

Throat: but if it be a brown or darkish yellow, then commonly a Fever will accompany the Disease. To these three distillations, there is commonly added a fourth, which is, when the matter which comes from his Nose, is *Dark*, *Thin*, and *Reddish*, like little sparks of blood, but then it is not said to be the Glanders, but the Mourning of the Chine, which is a Disease, for the most part held incurable. It is therefore most necessary for every good Farrier, when he shall take this Cure in hand, to consider well the matter which issueth from the Horses Nose: For if the humour be clear and transparent, so that it may be seen through, then it is not greatly hurtful, or of much moment. If it be White it is worse, yet with much ease cured If it be yellow, separate him from the sound Horses, for he is infectious, yet to be cured: If that Yellow be mixed with blood, it is with much difficulty helped, or if the matter be like unto Saffron, the Horse is hardly to be saved. He must also consider whether the matter stink, or have lost the smell; The first is the sign of an Ulcer, the latter of Death: Also whether he cougheth with straightness in his Chest or no; for that also is a sign of an inward Ulcer, and that the Disease is past Cure. Now for the Cure of these three Distillations, which are all that make up a compleat Glanders, you shall understand, that when the Glanders is of the first sort, it is easily helped by moderate exercise, and warm keeping: but if it be of the second sort, you shall give him warm Mashes of Malt and Water and perfume his Head well, and purge it by sneezing; and into his Mashes you shall put Fennel seed bruised. Others will take a pint of white-Wine, and a handful of Soot, a quart of Milk, and two heads of Garlick bruised, brew them together, and give it the Horse to drink. Others will take a pottle of Urine, a handful of Bay-Salt, and a good quantity of brown Sugar-candy, boyl it to a quart; then add Licoras and Anniseeds beaten to fine powder, and give it luke-warm to Drink. Others will take Lard, or Swines Grease and boyl it in Water: Then take the Fat from the Water, and mingle it with a little Oyl Olive, and a good quantity of Urine, and half as much white Wine, give a quart of this lukewarm to drink. Others use to give of Ale a quart, of grated bread one ounce and an half, the yolks of two Eggs, of Ginger, Saffron, Cloves, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cardamomum, Spikenard or Lavender, Galingal, and Honey, of each a pretty quantity, mix these together, and give it to Drink. Now if the Distillation be of the third sort, which is the worst

worſt of the three, you ſhall take half a pound of Swines Blood, and melt it at the fire, add to it a pound of the juice of Leeks, with three Ounces of *Euforbium* finely beaten; and when it hath boyled a little, take it from the fire, and add another Ounce of *Euforbium* to it: Keep this Oyntment, and anoint therewith two very long Feathers or little Rods, lapt with linnen about, and ſo anointed, put them into his Noſtrils, and after rubbing them up and down, tye them to the noſe-band of the Bridle, and walk him abroad: Do thus three days together, and it will either abſolutely cure him, or at leaſt take away the Eye-ſore. Others uſe to take a quart of Ale, an half penny worth of long Power, a little Brimſtone, a penny worth of *Galingal*, two penny worth of Spikenard of *Spain*, two penny weight of Saffron brayed, with two Ounces of Butter boyled in the Ale: When it is luke-warm, caſt the Horſe, and holding up his head, pour it equally into his Noſtrils; then holding his Noſtrils cloſe, till his Eyes ſtare, and that he ſweat; which done, give him Bayes and Ale to drink; then let him riſe, and ſet him up warm; feeding him with warm Grains and Salt, or with ſweet Maſhes; but the beſt is, if the Weather be warm, to let him run abroad at Graſs. Other Farriers uſe to diſſolve in Vinegar three Drams of Muſtard-ſeed, and as much *Euforbium*; then to give him one Dram at his Noſtrils every day before he drink. Others uſe to take of *Myrrh*, *Iris*, *Illyrica*, ſeeds of Smallage, *Ariſtolochia*, of each three Ounces, *Salniter*, *Brimſtone*, of each five Ounces, Bayes two Ounces, Saffron one Ounce; make this into Powder, and when you give it, give part in Pills, made with Paſte and Wine, and part by the Noſtril with ſtrong Ale: do this for the ſpace of three days at the leaſt. Others uſe to take of Malmſey a pint, of ſtrong Ale a pint, of *Aqua vitæ* four ſpoonfuls, & brew them together, with a pretty quantity of Anniſeeds, Licoras, Elicampane Roots, long Pepper, Garlick, and three or four new laid Eggs, and a little Butter; give this luke-warm to Drink; then walk him abroad, and ſet him up warm; do this every other day for a Week together. Others uſe to take ſtale Urine that hath ſtood three or four days, and ten Garlick heads, and ſeething them together, give it the Horſe to Drink. Others uſe to take Swines greaſe well clarified, and as much Oyl de Bay as a Walnut, and give it the Horſe to drink, with fair Water luke-warm.

But better than all theſe it is, to take of Elicampane, Anniſeeds, and Licoras, of each one penny worth, boyl them in three pints of

Ale or Beer till one pint be conſumed, then add unto it a quarter of a pint of Sallet Oyl, and give it him to drink luke-warm, then with a quill blow *Euforbium* up into his Noſtrils, and within three days after, take of Muſtard four ſpoonfuls, Vinegar a pint, Butter three Ounces, boyl them together, then add thereunto half an Ounce of Pepper, and give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink; uſe this Medicine a Fortnight. Others uſe to take a handful of pill'd Garlick and boyl it in a quart of Milk till a pint be conſumed, then add thereto two ounces of ſweet Butter, and a pint of ſtrong Ale; ſtir them well together, and give it the Horſe faſting to drink luke warm, which done, Ride him a little up and down, and uſe this the ſpace of nine days.

☞ Thus I have plainly ſhewed you the Opinion and Practice of all the beſt *Farriers*, both of this Kingdom and of others, and they be all very good and effectual; yet for mine own part, that which I have found ever the beſt in my practice, is, if the Diſeaſe be of the firſt or ſecond ſort, to give the Horſe to drink faſting every morning for a fortnight together, a pint of ſtrong Ale, and five ſpoonfuls of the Oyl of Oats, the making of which Oyl, you ſhall read in a particular Chapter following; but if the Diſeaſe be of the third ſort, which is moſt deſperate, you ſhall then take of Tanners ouſe a pint, and of new Milk a pint, and of Oyl Olive half a pint, and the quantity of a head of Garlick bruiſed, and a little Turmerick, mix theſe well together, and give it the Horſe to drink: Do this thrice in one fortnight, and it will help if any help be to be had.

CHAP. XLIV.

Two moſt certain and lately found out Medicines, which will without all fail cure any Glanders, though our Farriers hold it impoſſible.

☞ IF your Horſes cold be come to the worſt Glanders, which is a continual running at the Noſe, and hath run by the ſpace of divers Months, ſo that your Farriers can do you no good; you ſhall then take better than two handfuls of the White Cankerous Moſs which grows upon an old Oken pale, and boyl it in two quarts of Milk, till one quart be almoſt conſumed; then ſtrain it, and ſqueeze the moſs well, which done, give it the Horſe luke-warm to drink: then take the Gooſe-feathers, Brimſtone, and Butter, in ſuch manner as is ſet down in the new Additions for the Cold, or Poze in a Horſes head, before

fore, and having put them up into his Noſtrils, Ride him forth an hour or two gently, and after he is come home, draw forth the Feathers, and keep his Body warm. This Diſeaſe you ſhall underſtand cometh not ſuddenly, but grows out of long proceſs of time; ſo likewiſe the cure muſt not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leiſure; therefore you muſt continue your Medicine as your leiſure will ſerve, either every day, or at leaſt thrice a Week, if it be for four or five months together, and be aſſured in the end it will yeild your deſire

Now the ſecond certain and well approved Medicine is, to take Elicampane Roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be ſoft, that you may bruiſe them to pap: Then with a horn give them to the Horſe, together with the Milk luke-warm, being no more than will make the Roots liquid; then having anointed your Goose-feathers, put them up into his Noſtrils, and ride him forth, as is before ſhewed.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Mourning of the Chine.

THe Diſeaſe which we call the *Mourning of the Chine*, or as ſome Farriers term it, the *moiſt Malady*, is that fourth ſort of corrupt Diſtillation from the Brain, of which we have ſpoken in the Chapter before, ſhewing from whence it proceeds, and the ſigns thereof: *to wit*, that the corrupt matter which iſſueth from his Noſtrils will be dark, thin, and reddiſh, with little ſtreaks of Blood in it. It is ſuppoſed by ſome Farriers, that this Diſeaſe is a foul Conſumption of the Liver, and I do not derogate from that opinion: For I have found the Liver waſted in thoſe Horſes which I have opened upon this Diſeaſe: And this Conſumption proceeds from a Cold, which after grows to a Poze, then to a Glanders, and laſtly to this Mourning of the Chine.

The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the eldeſt *Farriers*, is, to take clear Water, and that Honey which is called *Hydromel*, a quart, and put thereunto three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, and pour it into his Noſtrils each Morning, the ſpace of three days: and if that help not, then give him to drink every day, or once in two days at the leaſt, a quart of old Wine, mingled with ſome of the ſovereign Medicine called *Tetrapharmacum*, which is to be had almoſt

of every *Apothecary*, Others use to take *Garlick*, *Houseleek*, and *Chervil*, and stamping them together, thrust it up into the Horses Nostrils.

Others use to let the Horse fast all night, then take a pint and an half of Milk, three heads of *Garlick* pill'd and stamped, boyl them to the half, and give it the Horse, some at the Mouth, and some at the Nose, then Gallop him a quarter of a mile, then rest him; then gallop him half a mile, then rest him again: thus do twice or thrice together, then set him up warm, and give him no Water till it be high noon; then give him a sweet Mash: Use this Cure at least three days together. Others use to take half a peck of Oats, and boyl them in Running Water till half be consumed, then put them into a Bag, and lay them very hot upon the Navel-place of his back, and there let it lye thirty hours, using thus to do three or four times at least. Others use to take *Wormwood*, *Penedanum*, and *Centory*, of each a like quantity: boyl them in Wine, then strain them, and pour thereof many times into his Nostrils, especially in that which most runneth. Others use to take Hare-hound, Licoras, and Anniseeds, beaten to powder; then with sweet Butter to make Pills thereof, and give them fasting to the Horse. Others use to take Wheat-flower, Anniseeds, and Licoras stamped in a Mortar, five or six Cloves of Galrick bruised; mix all these together, and make a past of them; then make it into Pills as big as Wall-nuts, and taking out the Horses tongue, cast the Balls down the Horses throat three or four at a time, then give him two new laid Egg-shells and all after them.

Now after all these, the best and most approved Medicine is, to take as much of the middle green bark of an Elder Tree growing on the Water side, as will fill a reasonable Vessel, putting thereunto as much running Water as the Vessel will hold, and let it boyl till half be consumed, and then fill up the Vessel again with Water, continuing so to do three several times together; and at the last time when the one half is consumed, take it from the fire, and strain it exceedingly through a Linnen-cloath; then to that decoction add at least a third part of the Oyl of Oats, or for want of that, of Oyl Olive, or of Hogs-grease, or sweet Butter; and being warmed again, take a quart thereof, and give it the Horse to drink, one horn-full at his Mouth, and another at his Nostrils, especially that which casteth out the matter. And in any case, let the Horse be fasting when he taketh this Medicine; for it not only cureth this, but any sickness

ſickneſs proceeding from any Cold whatſoever. It ſhall be alſo good to uſe to his Body ſome wholſome Friction, and to his head ſome wholſome Bath, of which Baths you ſhall read more hereafter in a Chapter following. For his Diet, his Meat would be ſoddeu Barley, and ſweet Hay, and his Drink warm Water, or Maſhes: but if it be in the Summer-ſeaſon, then it is beſt to let him run at graſs only.

CHAP. XLVI.

A moſt Rare and Certain approved Medicine, to Cure any High Running Glanders, called the Mourning of the Chine, held of all Men incurable.

THis Diſeaſe to my Knowledge, there is not any Smith or Farrier in this Kingdom, can tell how to cure; for it comes not to the extremity, till the Horſe have run at his Noſe a year or more; and have at the Roots of his Tongue, a hard lump gathered, which will not be diſſolved. Now for mine own part, it is well known I have cured many with this Medicine only. Take of *Auripigmentum* and *Tuſſilaginis* beaten into fine powder, of each of them four Drams: then beating them with fine Turpentine, bring them into a paſte, then make of it little Cakes, or Troches, as broad as a groat, and dry them: This done, lay about two or three of them on a Chaffing-diſh of Coals, and cover them with a Tunnel, ſo that the ſmoak may come out only at the end thereof, and ſo without any loſs aſcend up into the Horſes head through his Noſtrils; then Ride the Horſe till he bêgin to ſweat; do this once every Morning before water, till the running be ſtopt, which will be in a very ſhort ſpace, conſidering the greatneſs of the Diſeaſe.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the Cough.

COughing is a Motion of the Lungs, raiſed naturally from his Expulſive Power, to caſt out the hurtful cauſe, as Neeſing is the Motion of the Brain. Now of Coughs, there be ſome outward and ſome inward: thoſe are ſaid to be outward, which proceed of outward cauſes, as when a Horſe doth *Eat or Drink* too greedily, ſo that his Meat goeth the *wrong way*, or *when* he *Licketh* up a Feather,

or

or eateth duſty or ſharp bearded ſtraw, and ſuch like, which tickling his Throat, cauſeth him to cough; thoſe which are ſaid to be inward, are either wet or dry, of which we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter. Now of theſe outward Coughs, they may proceed from the corruption of the Air, which if it do, you ſhall give him half an Ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of Sack, and it will help. It may alſo proceed from duſt, and then you muſt waſh it down by pouring into his Noſtrils Ale and Oyl mingled together. It may come by eating ſharp and ſowre things; and then you muſt put down his Throat Pills of ſweet Butter, whoſe ſoftneſs will help him. It may proceed from ſome little or ſlight taken Cold, and then you ſhall take the whites and yolks of two Eggs, three Ounces of Sallet Oyl, two handful of Bean Flower, one Ounce of Fenugreek, mix them with a pint of old Malmſey, and give it the Horſe to drink three days together: or elſe take Tarr and freſh Butter, mix them together, and give Pills thereof to the Horſe four times in ſeven days: that is, the firſt, the third, the fifth, and the ſeventh day. There be others which uſe to take a Gallon of fair water, and make it ready to ſeethe; then put thereto a peck of ground Mault, with two handful of Box leaves chopt ſmall, and a little Groundſel, mix them all together, and give him every morning and evening a pint for a week together. If to the Box leaves you add Oats and Bettony, it is not amiſs ſo you keep the Horſe warm. Others uſe to give the Horſe a pint of Swines blood warm. Others uſe to boyl in a Gallon of Water one pound of Fenugreek, then ſtraining it, give the Water Morning and Evening by a pint at a time to drink, then drying his Fenugreek, give it the Horſe with his Provender. Others uſe for all manner of Coughs, to take a quartern of White Currants, and as much clarified Honey, two Ounces of ſweet Marjoram, with old freſh Greaſe, and a head of Garlick; melt that which is to be molten, and pun that which is to be beaten; mix them together, and give the Horſe a pint thereof, better than three Mornings together. Others uſe to give the Horſe the gut of a young Pullet dipt in Honey, and being warm; and certainly, there is not any of theſe Medicines, but are moſt Sovereign and well approved. Now whereas ſome Farriers uſe to thruſt down the Throat of the Horſe a Willow Wand, rolled about with a linnen cloath, and anointed all over with Honey, (I for my part) do not like it; for it both torments the Horſe more than there is occaſion, and doth but only go about to take

take away that which is gone in the ſtruggling, before the Medicine can be uſed, for it is only for a Cough, which cometh by a Feather, or ſome ſuch like matter.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the inward, or wet Cough.

TOuching inward Coughs, which are gotten and engendred by Colds and Rheumes of long continuance, being not only dangerous, but ſometimes mortal, you ſhall underſtand, that they are divided into two kinds, the one wet, the other dry; the wet cold proceedeth from cold cauſes taken after great heat; which heat diſſolving humours, thoſe humours being again congealed, do preſently cauſe Obſtructions and ſtopping of the Lungs. Now the ſigns to know this Wet Cough, is, the Horſe will ever after his Coughing, caſt out either water or matter out of his Noſtrils, or champ or chaw with his Teeth the Thick matter which he caſteth out of his Throat, as you ſhall eaſily perceive, if you heedfully note him; he will alſo Cough often without intermiſſion, and when he Cougheth, he will not much bow down his head, nor abſtain from his meat: and when he drinketh, you ſhall ſee ſome of his Water to iſſue out at his Noſtrils. The Cure is, firſt to keep him exceeding warm; then foraſmuch as it proceedeth from cold cauſes, you ſhall give him hot drinks, and Spices, as Sack, or ſtrong Ale brewed with Cinnamon, Ginger, Cloves, Treacle, long Pepper, and either Swines greaſe, Sallet Oyl, or ſweet Butter; for you ſhall know, that all cold Cauſes are cured with Medicines that open and warm; and the hot with ſuch as cleanſe and cool. Some uſe to take a pretty quantity of *Benjamine*, and the yolk of an Egg, which being well mixt together, and put into an Egg-ſhell caſt all down into the Horſes throat, and then moderately Ride him up and down for more than a quarter of an hour: And do this three or four Mornings together. Others uſe to keep him Warm, and then to give him this drink. Take of Barley one peck, and boyl it in two or three Gallons of running Water, till the Barley burſt, together with bruiſed Licoras, Amiſeeds, and Raiſons, of each a pound; then ſtrain it, and to that Liquor put of Honey a pint, and a quartern of Sugar-candy, and keep it cloſe in a pot to ſerve the Horſe therewith four ſeveral Mornings, and caſt not away the Barley, nor the reſt of the ſtrainings, but make it hot every day to perfume the

the Horſe withal in a cloſe Bag; and if he eat of it, it is ſo much the better; and after this, you ſhall give the Horſe ſome moderate Exerciſe; and for his Diet, let him drink no cold Water till his Cough abate, and as it leſſeneth, ſo let the Water be the leſs warmed.

Now for mine own part, though all theſe Receits be exceeding good, and very well approved, yet in this caſe, thus have been and ever ſhall be my practice; if I found either by the heavineſs of the Horſes head, or by the ratling of his Noſtrils, that the Cough proceeded moſt from the ſtopping of his head, I would only give him four or five mornings together, three or four good round Pills of Butter and Garlick, (well knodden together) faſting, then ride him moderately an hour after; but if I found that the ſickneſs remained in the Cheſt or Breaſt of the Horſe, then I would give him twice in four days a pint of Sack, half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and two Ounces of Sugar-candy well brewed together, and made luke-warm, and then Ride him half an hour after, and ſet him up warm, ſuffering him to drink no cold Water till his Cough begin to abate and leave him.

But for all Wet Coughs, frettized and broken Lungs, putrified and rotten Lungs, or any ſuch moiſt Diſeaſe, ſee the new Additions for the *Mourning of the Chire*, and it is a certain Cure.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of the Dry Cough.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the dry Cough, is a groſs and tough Humour, cleaving hard to the hollow places of the Lungs, which ſtoppeth the Wind-pipes, ſo that the Horſe can hardly draw his breath. It doth proceed by ill Government, from the Rheume, which diſtilleth from the head, falleth down to the Breaſt, and there inforceth the Horſe to ſtrive to caſt it out.

The eſpecial ſigns to know it, is, by eating hot Meats, as Bread that is ſpiced, Straw dry, Hay, or ſuch like, his extremity of Coughing will increaſe, by eating cold and moiſt Meats, as Graſs, Sorage, Grains, and ſuch like, it will abate and be the leſs: he cougheth ſeldom yet when he cougheth, he cougheth violently, a long time together, and drily, with a hollow ſound from his Cheſt: he alſo boweth his head down to the ground, and forſaketh his meat whilſt he

he Coughcth, yet never caſteth forth any thing either at his Mouth or Noſtrils.

This Cough is moſt dangerous, and not being taken in time is incurable: For it will grow to the Purſick or broken-winded altogether. The cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is, that foraſmuch as it proceedeth from hot humours, therefore you ſhall perfume his head with cold Simples, as Camomile, Mellilot, Licoras, dried red Roſes and Camphire boyled in water, and the Fume made to paſs up into his mouth and Noſtrils.

Others uſe to take a cloſe earthen pot, and to put therein three pints of the ſtrongeſt Vinegar, and four Eggs, ſhells and all, unbroken and four heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruiſed, and ſet the pot being very cloſe covered in a warm dunghil or a horſe mixen, and there let it ſtand 24 hours, then take it forth and open it, and take out the Eggs which will be as ſoft as ſilk, and lay them by until you have ſtrained the Vinegar and Garlick through a linnen Cloath: then put to that Liquor a quartern of Honey, and half a quartern of Sugar-candy, and two ounces of Licoras, and two ounces of Anniſeed beaten all into fine powder, and then the horſe having faſted all the night early in the morning about ſeven or eight a Clock, open the Horſes mouth with a drench-ſtaff and a Cord, and firſt caſt down his throat one of the Eggs, and then preſently after it a Horn full of the aforeſaid drink, being made luke-warm: then caſt in another Egg, and another Hornful: and thus do till he hath ſwallowed up all the Eggs, or three at the leaſt; then bridle him and cover him warmer than he was before, and ſet him up in the Stable, tying him to the bare Rack for the ſpace of two hours: then unbridle him, and give him either ſome Oats, Hay, or Graſs: yet in any caſe give him no Hay, until it hath been ſomewhat ſprinkled with water: For there is no greater enemy to a dry cough than dry Hay, dry Straw, or Chaff; then let him have cold water the ſpace of nine days. Now if you chance the firſt morning to leave an Egg untaken, you ſhall not fail to give it him, and the remainder of the drink the Morning following. If you find by this practice that the Cough weareth not away, you ſhall then purge his head with Pills, of which you ſhall read in the Chapter of Purgations: after his Pills received, you ſhall let him faſt three hours, ſtanding warm cloathed and littered in the Stable: you ſhall alſo now and then give him a warm Maſh, and once a day trot him moderately abroad.

There be other Farriers which for this dry Cough take only the Herb called Lyons Foot, Ladies Mantle, Spurge, and Smallage, of each a like quantity, seeth them in a quart of old Wine, or a quart of running Water till some part be consumed, and give it the horse to drink; if instead of the herbs themselves, you give the juice of the herbs in Wine, it is good. There be others which take a good quantity of white Currants, and as much honey, two ounces of Marjoram, one ounce of penyrial, with five pound of fresh Grease, and nine heads of Garlick, beat that which is to be beaten, and melt the rest; give this in four or five days like pills dipt in honey. Others use to take Myrrh, Opoponax, Iris, Hierica, and Galbanum, of each two ounces, of red Storax three ounces, of Turpentine four ounces, of Henbane half an ounce, of Opium half an ounce, beat them to fine powder, and give two or three spoonfuls with a pint of old Wine, or a quart of Ale.

Others use to take forty grains of Pepper, four or five roots of raddish, four heads of Garlick, and five ounces of sweet Butter; stamp them all well together, and give every day a ball of it to the horse for a week together, making him fast two hours after his taking of it: and surely it is a most excellent approved Medicine for any old over-grown cold, or Cough. Other Farriers use to take of oyl de Bay and sweet Butter, of each half a pound, Garlick one pound, beat it together unpilled, and being well beaten with a pestle of Wood, add your oyl and butter unto it: then having made it unto Balls, with a little Wheat-flower, give your horse every morning for a week and more three or four balls as big as Walnuts, keeping him fasting after from meat three hours, and from drink till it be night, provided that still his Drink be warm, and his meat, if it possible may be Grass or Hay sprinkled with water: as for his Provender, it would be Oats and Fenugreek sprinkled among it. Now if you perceive that at a fort-nights end, his cough doth nothing at all abate, you shall then for another week give him again the same Physick and Diet; but truly for my own part, I have never found it to fail in any horse whatsoever; yet I will wish all Farriers not to be too busie with these inward Medicines, except they be well assured that the cold hath been long, and that the cough is dangerous.

CHAP.

CHAP. L.

Two Excellent true and well approved Medicines for any Cold, dry Cough, shortness of Breath, pursiness or Broken-winded.

THE first is, take of Tarr three spoonfuls, of sweet Butter as much, beat and work them well together with the fine powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be brought to a hard paste; then make it in three round Balls, and put into each Ball four or five Cloves of Garlick, and so give them to the Horse, and warm him with Riding both before and after he hath received the pills, and be assured that he be fasting when he takes it; and fast at least two hours after he hath taken it.

The second is, take of the white fat or lard of Bacon, a piece four fingers long, and almost two fingers thick both ways; then with your knife making many holes into it, stop it with as many Cloves of Garlick as you can conveniently get into it, then rolling it in the powder of Licoras, Anniseeds, Sugar-candy and Brimstone, all equally mixt together, give it your horse fasting in a morning at least twice a week continually, and ride him after it, and be sure that all the *Hay* he eats be finely sprinkled with water.

CHAP. LI.

The best of all other Medicines, for a dry-Cough never before mentioned, nor revealed.

TAke of the Sirrup of Colts-foot two ounces, of the powder of Elicampane, of Anniseeds, and of Licoras, of each half an ounce, of Sugar-candy divided into two parts, two ounces, then with sweet Butter work the Sirrup and the powders, and one part of the Sugar-candy into a stiff-paste, and thereof make Pills or small Balls, and role them in the other part of the Sugar-candy, and so give it to the *Horse* fasting, and exercise him gently an hour after it: and thus do for divers mornings till you find amendment.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Frettized, Broken, and Rotten Lungs.

COughs do many times proceed from the corruption and putrefaction of the Lungs, gotten either by some extream Cold, Running or Leaping, or by over-greedy drinking after great thirst; because the Lungs being inclosed in a very thin film, they are therefore the much sooner broken; and if such a breach be made, without instant cure, they begin to inflame and Apostheme, oppressing and sicking the whole Lungs. Now the signs to know this disease, is, the horses flanks will beat when he Coughs, and the slower they beat, the more old and dangerous is the disease: He will also draw his wind short, and by a little at once: he will groan much, be fearful and loath to Cough; and often turn his head to the place grieved: To conclude, he will never cough but he will bring up something which he will champ in his mouth after. The Cure is, give him two or three ounces of Hogs-grease, and two or three spoonfuls of Diapente brewed in a quart of Barly-water, wherein Currants have been sodden. Other Farriers use to take a pound of Licoras, and being scraped and sliced, to steep it in a quart of water four and twenty hours; then to strain it, then to boyl three or four ounces of Currants in it, and so give it the Horse to drink and keep him fasting three or four hours after. There be other Farriers which use to take of Fenugreek and Linseed, of each half a pound, of Gum-dragant, of Mastick, of Myrrh, of Sugar, of fine flower, of each one ounce; let all these be beaten into fine powder, and then infused one whole night in a good quantity of warm water, and the next day give him a quart of this luke-warm, putting thereto two ounces of the Oyl of Roses, and this you must do many dayes together: and if the disease be new it will certainly heal; if it be never so old it will assuredly ease him, but in any case let him drink no cold Water: And for his food, Grass is the most excellent.

Others use (and it is the best Cure) to take of Malmsey a pint, of Honey three spoonfuls, mix them together, then take of Myrrh, of Saffron, of Cassia and Cinnamon, of each a like quantity, beat them to a fine powder, and give two spoonfuls thereof in the Wine to drink, do this at least a fort-night together, and it is certain it will help these Frettized and broken Lungs, but for the putrified and rotten Lungs, we will speak more in this next Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIII.
Of the Putrefied or Rotten Lungs.

THIS diſeaſe of Rotten and Exulcerate Lungs, you ſhall know by theſe ſigns: he will Cough oft and vehemently, and ever in his Coughing he will caſt little Reddiſh lumps out of his Mouth, he will decay much in his fleſh, and yet eat his meat with more greedineſs than when he was ſound: And when he coughcth, he will cough with more eaſe and clearneſs, than if his Lungs were but only broken. The cure whereof, according to the practice of our ordinary Engliſh Farriers, is, to give the horſe divers Mornings together a pint of ſtrong Vinegar warm, or elſe as much of mans Urine, with half ſo much Hogs-greaſe brewed warm together.

But the more antient Farriers take a good quantity of the juice of Purſlain mixt with the oyl of Roſes, adding thereunto a little Tragacanthum, which hath before been laid to ſteep in Goats milk, or for want thereof in Barly, or Oaten Milk ſtrain'd from the Corn, and give him a Pint thereof every morning for ſeven days together. This Medicine is but only to ripen and break the Impoſthume, which you ſhall know if it hath done, becauſe when the ſore is broken, his breath will ſtink exceedingly: Then ſhall you give him the other ſeven days this drink. Take the Root called Caſtus, two ounces, and of Caſſia, or Cinamon, three ounces beaten into fine powder, and a few Raiſins, and give it him to drink, with a pint of Malmſey. Others uſe to take of Frankincenſe and Ariſtolochia, of each 2 ounces, beaten into fine powder, and give the Horſe two or three ſpoonfuls, thereof with a pint of Malmſey. Others take of unburnt Brimſtone two ounces, of Ariſtolochia one ounce and a half beaten to powder, and give it the Horſe with pint of Malmſey.

CHAP. LIV.
Of ſhortneſs of Breath, or Purſineſs.

THis diſeaſe of ſhort Breath or Purſineſs, may come two ſeveral ways, that is, naturally, or accidentally: Naturally, as by the ſtraightneſs of his Conduits, which convey his Breath, when they want liberty to carry his breath freely, or being cloyed up with fat, ſorce ſtoppings and obſtructions, in his Wind-pipe, and threeby make

make his Lungs labour and work painfully. Accidentally, as by haſty running after drinking, or upon full ſtomach, by which humors are compelled to deſcend down into the Throat and Lungs, and there ſtoppeth the paſſage of the breath. The ſigns of this diſeaſe are continual panting and heaving of his body without any Coughing, great heat of breath at his Noſtrils and a ſqueezing or drawing in of his noſe when he breatheth; beſides a coveting to hold out his head whilſt he fetcheth his wind. The cure, according to the opinion of ſome of our beſt Farriers, is, to give him in his Provender, the Kirnels of Grapes, for they both fat and purge; and you muſt give them plentifully. The warm blood of a ſucking Pigg is excellent good alſo. Other Farriers uſe to take Venus hair, Irees, Aſh-keys, Licoras, Fenugreek, and Raiſins, of each a dram and a half: Pepper, Almonds, Borage, Nettle-ſeed, Ariſtolochia, and Colloquintida, of each two drams, Algaritium one dram and a half, Honey two pound, diſſolve them with water, wherein Licoras hath been ſodden, and give him one pint every Morning for three or four Mornings. Others uſe to take Molline or Long-wort, and make a powder thereof and give two ſpoonfuls thereof with a pint of running water, or elſe powder of Gentian, in the afore-ſaid manner, and do it for divers Mornings.

☞ Others uſe to take of Nutmegs, Cloves, Galingal, grains of Paradiſe, of each three drams, Carraway-ſeed, and Fenugreek, a little greater quantity, as much Saffron, and half an ounce of Licoras; beat them all into fine powder, then put two or three ſpoonfuls thereof to a pint of white-wine and the yolks of four Eggs, and give it the horſe to drink; then tye his head up high to the Rack for an hour after: that done, either ride him, or Walk him up and down gently, and keep him faſting four or five hours after at the leaſt, the next day turn him to graſs, and he will do well. There be others which uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Neck-vein, and then give him this drink: Take of Wine and Oyl, of each a pint, of Frankincenſe half an ounce, and of the juice of Hare-hound half a pint, mix them well together and give him to drink.

☞ Others uſe to give him only ſomewhat more than a pint of Honey, Hoggs Greaſe and Butter molten together, and let him drink it luke-warm. Eggs made ſoft in Vinegar, as is ſhewed in the Chapter of the dry Cough, is Excellent for this ſhortneſs of breath, ſo you give the Eggs increaſing, that is, the firſt day one, the ſecond day three

three, and the third five: and withal, to pour a little Oyl and Wine into his Noſtrils is very good alſo. There be other Farriers which uſe to take a Snake, and cut off her head and tail, and then take out the guts and entrails, boyl the reſt in Water till the bone part from the fleſh: then caſt the bone away, and give every Third day of this decoction more than a pint, till you have ſpent three Snakes and this is excellent good for the dry Cough alſo.

Now the laſt and beſt Medicine for this ſhortneſs of breath, (for indeed in this Caſe I do not affect much Phyſicking) is only to take Anniſeeds, Licoras, and Sugar-candy, all beaten into very fine powder, and take four ſpoonfuls thereof, and brew it well with a pint of White-wine, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl: and uſe this ever after your horſes travel, and a day before he is travelled.

CHAP. LV.

Of the Broken winded, Purſe-fick Horſe.

THis Diſeaſe of Broken-winded, I have ever ſince I firſt began to know either Horſe or Horſe leach-craft, very much diſputed with my ſelf: and for many years did conſtantly hold (as I ſtill do) that in truth there is no ſuch diſeaſe; only in this I found by daily experience, that by over-haſty or ſudden running of a horſe (or other) preſently after his water, or by long ſtanding in the Stable with no exerciſe and foul Food, that thereby groſs and thick humours may be drawn down into the horſes body ſo abundantly, that cleaving hard unto the hollow places of his Lungs, and ſtopping up the wind-pipes, the Wind may be ſo kept in, that it may only have its reſort backward, and not upward, filling the guts, and taking from the Body great part of his ſtrength and Liveli-hood: which if from the corruption of our old inventions, we call broken-winded then I muſt needs confeſs, that I have ſeen many broken winded Horſes. The ſigns of which diſeaſe are theſe, much and violent beating of his flanks, eſpecially drawing up of his belly upward, great opening and raiſing of his Noſtrils, and a continual ſwift going to and fro of his Tuel: beſides, it is ever accompanied with a dry and hollow cough. The cure, I muſt needs ſay in ſo great an extremity, (for it is the worſt of all the evils of the Lungs, which are before ſpoken of) is moſt deſperate, but the preſervations and helps both to continue the horſes health and his daily ſervice, are very many

many, as namely, (according to the opinion of the antient Farriers) to purge your Horse by giving him this drink. Take of Maiden-hair, Ireos, Ash, Licoras, Fenugreek, Basnis, of each half an ounce, of Cardanum, Pepper, bitter Almonds, borage, of each two ounces, of Nettle-seed, and of Aristolochia, of each two ounces, boyl them all together in a sufficient quantity of water, and in that Decoction dissolve half an ounce of Agarick, and two ounces of Colloquintida, together with two pound of Honey, and give him a pint and a half of this at a time, for at least a week together; and if this Medicine chance at any time to prove too thick, you shall make it thin with Water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden; and some Farriers, also besides this Medicine, will with a hot Iron draw the Flanks of the Horse to restrain their beating, and slit the horses Nostrils to give the wind more liberty, but I do not affect either the one or the other: The best diet for a horse in this case, is Grass in Summer, and Hay sprinkled with Water in Winter. There be other Farriers, which for this infirmity hold, that to give the Horse three or four days together sodden Wheat, and now and then a quart of new sweet Wine, or other good Wine, mixt with Licoras Water, is a certain remedy. There be other Farriers, which for this Disease take the guts of a Hedge-hog, and hang them in a warm Oven till they be dry, so that a man may make powder of them; then give your horse two or three spoonfuls thereof with a pint of Wine or strong Ale: Then the rest mixt with Annis-seeds, Licoras, and sweet Butter, and make round Balls or Pills thereof, and give the Horse two or three after his Drink: and so let him fast at least two hours after. Now when at any time you give him any Provender, be sure to wash it in Ale, or Beer; then take Cummin, Annis-seeds, Licoras, and Century, of each a just quantity, make them being mixt together into fine powder, and strew two spoonfuls thereof upon the Provender being wet. This Physick must be used for a fortnight at least. Others use to take of Cloves and Nutmegs three drams, of Galingale and Cardamomum three drams, of Soot, of Bay-seeds, and Cummin of each three drams, and make them into fine powder, and put it into white-Wine being well tempered with a little Saffron, then put to so many Yolks of Eggs, as may countervail the other quantity: then mix them with water wherein Licoras hath been sodden, making it so thin that the Horse may drink it, and after he hath drank the quantity of a pint and a half of this drink, tye up his head to the rack, and let him

so

so stand at least an hour after, that the drink may descend unto his Guts, then walk him gently abroad that the Medicine may work; and in any case give him no water for the space of four and twenty hours after: The next Morning give him some Grass to eat, and the branches of Willows or Sallow, which will cool the heat of the Potion.

Now there be other Farriers which take of *Pances*, *Long-wort*, *Maiden-hair*, the crops of *Nettles*, *Cardans Benedictus*, herb *Fluellin*, the roots of *Dragons* bruised, the roots of *Elicampane* bruised, of Water-hemp, of *Pennyral*, of *Light-wort*, of *Angelica*, of each of these a good handful, or so many of these as you can conveniently get: bruise them, and lay them all night in two or three Gallons of water, and give it a boyl in the Morning, and let the Horse drink thereof as much luke-warm as he will, then after this Drink, give him a pretty quantity of sodden wheat; use this diet for a week or more at the least; and then if the Season be fit, put him to Grass. This Cure is of great Reputation, and thought to help when all other fail: for mine own part, I wish every man to judge it by the practice.

There be others, which only for nine or ten days together, will give their horse water, wherein Licoras hath been sodden, mixt with Wine, and hold it a most soveraign help.

There be others, which will only give new Milk from the Cow: but I despair of that Cure, because Milk being only Flegmatick, Flegm is the only substance of this Disease. Other Farriers use to keep the Horse fasting four and twenty hours, then take a quart of Ale, a quarter of an ounce of Fenugreek, half a quarter of Bayes, of the green bark of Elder trees, of Sugar-candy, of Water-cresses, of red Mints, of red Fennel, or Haw-tree leaves, and of Primrose-leaves, of each half an ounce, the whites of six Eggs, beat these in a Mortar, and seeth them in the Ale, give it him to drink, then let him fast after it two hours; Then give him meat and Provender enough, yet but a little drink. Others use to give him wet Hay, and moderate Travel: Then take twenty Eggs, steep them in Vinegar four and twenty hours, giving the Horse two every morning, and after the Eggs are spent, a pottle of new Milk from the Cow.

Now there be other Farriers, which only will dissolve in Vinegar fifteen Eggs, and give the horse the first day three, the second day five, and the third day seven, and hold it a good help. Others will

take an ounce of Frankincenſe, two ounces of Brimſtone, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and half a pint of Honey. Others will take Sal Nitre, burnt with the powder of Pitch, and give it with the ſame quantity of Wine and Honey. Others will only give Sal Nitre mingled with his meat, provided always, that in every Cure you keep your horſe from Cold and labour, and daily chaſe his head with Oyl and Wine. But of this, look in the laſt new Additions for the dry Cough, noted thus ☞.

CHAP. LVI.

Of the dry Malady or Conſumption.

THis diſeaſe of the dry Malady, or as the Antient Farriers term it, a general Conſumption, is nothing but a meer Exulceration of the Lungs, proceeding from a cankerous fretting and gnawing Humour ingendred by cold and Surfeit, which deſcending from the head, ſickneth and corrodeth the Lungs. Some of our ignorant Farriers will call it the mourning of the Chine, but they are thus far forth deceived, that the mourning of the Chine doth ever caſt ſome filthy Matter from the noſe, and the dry Malady never caſteth forth any thing.

The ſigns to know this dry Malady or Conſumption, are theſe: His fleſh, and ſtrong eſtate of body will conſume and waſte away, the belly will be gaunt, his back-bone hid, and his skin ſo ſtretched or ſhrunk up, that if you ſtrike on him with your hand, it will ſound hollow like a Tabor: his hair will hardly ſhed, and either he will utterly deny his Meat, or the meat he eateth will not digeſt, proſper or breed any fleſh on his Body, he will offer to cough, but cannot except in a faint manner, as though he had eaten ſmall bones; and truly, according to the opinion of others, ſo I find by mine own practice of fifty years, that it is incurable, yet that a horſe may be long preſerved to do much ſervice, I have found it by theſe helps: Firſt, to purge his head with ſuch Fumes and Pills, as are good for the Glanders, which you may find in the Chapter of Purgations, then give him Colewarts ſmall chopt with his Provender, and now and then the blood of a ſucking Pig warm.

There be other well experienced Men, that inſtead of the blood, will give either the juyce of Leeks mixt with Oyl and Wine, or elſe Wine and Frankincenſe, or Sallet Oyl and the juyce of Rue mixt together:

gether; but in my conceit, the beſt Cure, is, to purge his body clean with comfortable and gentle purges, and then to be ſuffered to run at graſs, both for a Winter and a Summer, and there is no queſtion, but he muſt neceſſarily end or mend, for languiſh long he cannot.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the Conſumption of the Fleſh.

THis Diſeaſe which we call the Conſumption of the Fleſh, is an unnatural or general diſlike, or falling away of the whole body, or, (as we term it,) the waſting of the fleſh, which proceedeth from divers grounds: as namely, from inward Surfeits, either by naughty Food, or ill Diet, or from unclean, moiſt and ſtinking Lodging, but eſpecially from diſorderly Labour, as by taking great and ſudden Colds after violent heat, or ſuch like; all which procure the waſting or falling away of the fleſh. The ſigns whereof are theſe: firſt, an unnatural and cauſeleſs leanneſs, a dry and hard skin cleaving faſt to his ſides, want of Stomach or Appetite to his Meat, a falling away of his Fillets, and a general Conſumption both of his Buttocks and ſhoulders: The Cure whereof, according to the Antients, is, to take a Sheeps head unflayed, and boyl it in a Gallon and a half of Ale, or running water, untill the fleſh be conſumed from the bones; then ſtrain it through a cloath, and put thereto of Sugar half a pound, of Cinnamon one ounce, of Conſerve of Roſes, of Barberies, and of Cherries, of each one ounce; mingle them together, and give the Horſe every morning a quart thereof luke-warm, till two Sheeps-heads be ſpent; and after every time he drinketh, let him be gently walked or ridden up and down according to his ſtrength, that is, if the weather be warm, abroad, if it be cold and windy, then in the Stable, or ſome cloſe houſe, ſuffering him neither to eat nor drink ſix two hours after his Medicine; and from cold water you ſhall keep him the ſpace of fifteen dayes. Now for his ordinary Food or Provender, you ſhall repute that beſt which he eateth beſt, whatſoever it be; and that you ſhall give him by little and little, and not any groſs or great quantity at once, becauſe the abundance and glut of Food taketh away both the Appetite and Nutriment which ſhould proceed from wholſome Feeding.

CHAP. LVIII.

How to make a lean Horse fat.

BEsides this general Consumption of a Horses flesh, which for the most part, or altogether, proceedeth from sickness; there is also another Consumption, or want of flesh, which proceedeth from Nesbness, Tenderness, Freeness of Spirit, and the Climate under which the Horse is bred: as namely; when a horse that is bred in a warm Climate comes to live in a cold; or when a horse that is bred upon a fruitful and rich Soil, comes to live in a Barren and dry place. In any of these cases, the horse will be lean without any apparent sign of grief or disease, which to recover, there be many Receipts and Medicines, as namely; the Ancient Farriers did use when a horse either grew lean without sickness or wound, or any known distemperature, to take a quarter of a peck of Beans, and boyl them in two gallons of Water till they swell or burst, then to mix with them a peck of Wheat Bran, and so to give it the horse in manner of a Mash, or instead of Provender; for it will fat suddenly. Others, and especially the *Italians*, will take Coleworts, and having sodden them, mix them with Wheat Bran, and Salt, and give them instead of Provender. There be others which take the fatty decoction of three Tortoises being well sodden, (their heads, tails, bones, and feet being rejected) and giving it the horse, suppose it fatteth suddenly; or if you mix the flesh of the Tortoise so sodden with your horses provender, that is good also. But as the simples are Italian, and not English, so I for mine own part, refer the use rather to them than to my Countrey-men. There be others which use to fat up their horses, by giving them a certain grain which we call Bock, in the same manner as we give Oats or Pease. There be others, which to fat a horse will give him only parched Wheat, and a little wine mixed with his water, and amongst his ordinary Provender always some Wheat Bran; and be exceeding careful that the horse be clean dresst, well rubbed, and soft littered; for without such clean keeping, there is no Meat will injoy, or do good upon him; and also when he is fed, it must be by little at once, and not surfeited. There be other Farriers, which to feed up a lean horse, will take Sage, Savin, Bay-berries, Earth-Nuts, Bears-grease, to drink with a quart of Wine. Others will give the Entrails of a Barbil or

Tench

Tench with white wine; others will give new hot draff, and new Bran, and twenty hard roasted Eggs, the shells being pulled off, then bruise them, and then put thereto a pretty quantity of Salt, then mix all together, and give a good quantity thereof to the horse at Morn, Noon, and at Evening for his Provender; and once a day (which will be at high Noon) give him a quart or three pints of strong Ale, and when the Horse beginneth to be glutted upon this Meat, then give him dried Oats: if he be glutted upon that then give him Bread, if he leave his Bread, give him Malt, or any Grain that he will eat with a good Appetite, observing ever to keep the Horse very warm, and with this Diet in fourteen days the leanest Horse will be made exceeding fat. There be other Farriers which to make a Horse fat, will take a quart of Wine, and half an Ounce of Brimstone finely beaten with a raw Egg, and a penny-weight of the powder of Myrrh; mix altogether, and give it the horse to drink many mornings together. Others will take three-leaved grass, half green, and half dry, and give it the horse instead of hay, by little at once, and it will fat suddenly, only it will breed much Rank Blood. Other Farriers use to take two penny worth of Pepper, and as much Saffron, Anniseeds and Turmerick, a penny worth of long Pepper, two penny-worth of Treacle, a penny-worth of Licoras, a good quantity of Penirial and Arch-Angel, give the horse these with the yolks of Eggs in Milk to drink. Others use to take Wheat made clean, and sod with Salt and Lard dried in the Sun, and give it twice a day before each watering. Others strong Ale, Myrrh, Sallet-Oyl, and twenty grains of white Pepper, and instead of the Ale you may take the Decoction, that is, the water wherein Sage and Rue hath been sodden, it will soon make the horse fat. Others take sodden Beans well bruised and sprinkled with Salt, adding to the water four times so much bean-flower, or wheat bran, and give that to the horse, and it will fat him suddenly. Wine mixt with the blood of a sucking Pig, made luke-warm, or Wine with the juyce of Feather-few, or an Ounce of Sulphur, and a penny-weight of Myrrh well made into powder, together with a new laid Egg, will raise up a horse that languisheth. Barley dried, or barley boyled till it burst, either will fatten a horse.

But the best way of fatting a horse, (for the most of the ways before prescribed are not to breed fat that will continue) is, first to give your horse three mornings together a pint of sweet wine and two spoonfuls

full of Diapente brewed together: for that drink will take away all infection, and sickness from the inward parts; then to feed him well with Provender at least four times a day, that is, after his water in the morning, after his water at noon, after his water in the Evening, and after his water at 9. of the clock at Night. Now you shall not let his Provender be all of one sort, but every meal it may be changed as thus: If in the morning you give him Oats, at Noon likewise you shall give him Bread, at Evening Beans or Peale mixt with Wheat Bran, at night sodden Barley, &c. and, ever observe, of what food he eateth best, of that, let him have the greatest plenty, and there is no question but he will in short space grow fat, sound, and full of Spirit, without either dislike or sickness.

CHAP. LIX.

The Mirror and Master of all Medicines, teaching how to make the leanest and unsoundest Horses that may be, fat, sound, and fit either for Market or Travail, in the space of fourteen days.

☞ IF your Horse be full of all inward diseases that may be, and brought to that dislike and poverty that you are desperate of his life, you shall take of Annifeeds, of Cummin-seeds, of Fenugreek, of Carthamus, of Elitcampane, of the flower of brimstone, of brown Sugar-candy, of each of these two ounces beaten and searst to a very fine powder, then take an ounce of the juyce of Licoras, and dissolve it in half a pint of White-wine, then take three ounces of the Syrrup of Colts foot, of Sallet-Oyl, and of live Honey, of each half a pint, then mix all this with the former powders, and with as much wheat flower as will bind and knit them all together, work them into a stiff paste, and make thereof balls as big as French Wall-nuts, Hulls and all, and so keep them in a close Gally-pot, and when you have occasion to use them, take one and anoint it with sweet butter, and give it the horse in the manner of a Pill, and Ride him a little after it, then feed and water him as at other times, and thus do (if it be to prevent sickness) for three or four mornings together.

But if it be to take away infirmity, as Glanders, &c. then use it at least a week or more.

But if to take away molten grease, then instantly after his heat, and in his heat.

But if it be to fatten a horse, then use it at least a fortnight: now as

as you give them this in the manner of a Pill, so you may give them dissolved in sweet Wine, Ale, or Beer.

Lastly, if it be to fatten a horse, then you shall take the second Balls: That is to say, of wheat-meal six pound, or as Physicians write, *Quantum sufficit*, of Annifeeds two ounces, of Cummin seeds six drams, of Carthamus one dram and a half, of Fenugreek seeds one ounce two drams, of Brimstone one ounce and a half, of Sallet Oyl one pint two ounces, of honey one pound and a half, of white wine four pints: This must be made into paste, the hard simples being pounded into powder, and finely searst, and then well kneaded together, and so made into Balls as big as a Mans fist, and then every Morning and Evening when you would water your Horse, dissolve into his cold water one of these Balls, by tathering and chafing the same in the water, and then give it him to drink. The Horse it may be will be coy at the first to drink, but it is no matter, let him fast till he take it: for before two Balls be spent, he will refuse all waters for this only. This is the Medicine above all Medicines, and is truly the best scouring that can be given to any horse whatsoever: for besides his wonderful Feeding, it cleanseth the Body from all bad Humours whatsoever.

CHAP. LX.

Of the Brisk-pain, or pain in the Breast.

THough most of our Farriers are not curious to understand this Disease, because it is not so common as others: yet both my self and others find it a disease very apt to breed, and to indanger the Horse with death. The *Italians* call it *Granchezza di petto*, and it proceedeth from the superfluity of Blood and other gross humours which being dissolved by some extreme and disorderly heat, resorteth downward to the Breast, and paineth the Horse extremely that he can hardly go. The signs are, a stiff staggering, and weak going with his fore-legs, and he can very hardly, or not at all, bow down his head to the ground, either to eat or drink, and will groan much when he doth either the one or the other. The Cure is first to bath all his breast, and fore-booths with the Oyl of Peter, and if that do not help him within three or four days, then to let him blood on both his breast-veins in the ordinary place, and then put in a Rowel either of Hair, Cork, Horn, or Leather, all of which, and the manner of

of Rowelling, you shall find in more particular Chapter hereafter in the Book of *Chirurgery*.

☞ Now there be other Farriers, which for this sickness, will first give the Horse inward Drench, as namely, a pint of Sweet Wine, and two spoonfuls of Diapente, then bathe all his Breast and Legs with Wine and Oyl mingled together, and in some ten or twelve days it will take away the grief.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the sickness of the Heart called the Avier.

THis sickness of the Heart, which by the Antient Farriers is called *Avier*, is much as to say, against or contrary to the Heart, is a dangerous and mortal sickness, proceeding from the great abundance of Blood which is bred by too Curious and proud keeping: where the horse hath much meat, and little or no labour, as for the most part your Geldings of Pride have, which running all the Summer at Grass, do nothing but gather their own Food, and such like, where the Masters too much love and Tenderness is the means to bring the Horse to his Death, as we find daily in our practice: for when such naughty and corrupt Blood is gathered, it resorteth to the inward parts, and so suffocateth his heart. The signs whereof are the horse will many times have a small swelling rise at the bottom of the breast, which swelling will increase and rise upward even to the top of the neck of the horse, and then most assuredly it kills the horse. He will also hang his head either down to the Manger, or down to the Ground, forsaking his Food, and groaning with much painfulness. ☞ This Disease is of many an ignorant Smith taken sometimes for the Yellows, and sometimes for the Staggers; but you shall know that it is not by these observations: First, neither about the whites of his Eyes, nor the insides of his Lips shall you perceive any apparent Yellows, and so then it cannot be the Yellows; neither shall he have any great swelling about his Eyes, nor dizziness in his head, before he be at the point of Death, and so consequently it cannot be the Staggers. The Cure whereof is twofold, the first a preservative or preventative before the Disease come; the second, a Remedy after the Disease is apparent.

☞ For the prevention, or preservative, you shall observe, that if your horse live idly, either at grass or in the stable, and withal grow very

very fat, which fatneſs is never uncompanied with corruptneſs, that then you fail not to let him blood in the Neck-vein before you turn him to Graſs, or before you put him to feed in the Stable; and likewiſe let him blood two or three Months after, when you ſee he is fed, and at each time of letting blood, you muſt make your quantity according to the goodneſs of the blood: for if the blood be black and thick, which is a ſign of Inflammation and Corruption, you ſhall take the more: if it be pure red, and thin, which is a ſign of ſtrength and healthfulneſs, you ſhall take little or none at all. There be others which uſe for this prevention, to give the horſe a Scouring or purgation of Malmſey, Oyl, and Sugar-candy, the making and uſe whereof you ſhall read in the Chapter of Purgations, and this would be given immediately when you put your horſe to feed, and as ſoon as you ſhall ſee his skin full ſwoln with fatneſs.

Now for the Remedy, when this diſeaſe ſhall be apparent; you ſhall let him blood on both his plat-veins, or if the Smiths skill will not extend ſo far, then you ſhall let the horſe blood on the Neck-veins and that he bleed abundantly, then you ſhall give him this Drink. Take a quart of Malmſey, and put thereunto half a quartern of Sugar, and two Ounces of Cinnamon beaten to powder, and being made warm give it the horſe to drink: then kee him very warm in the Stable, ſtuffing him round about with ſoft Wiſps very cloſe, eſpecially about the ſtomach, leſt the wind do annoy him: and let his ordinary drink be warm Maſhes of malt and Water, and his Food only that, whatſoever it be, which he eateth with the beſt Stomach.

Now if you ſee any ſwelling to appear, whether it be ſoft or hard, then beſides letting him blood, you ſhall ſtrike the ſwelling in divers places with a Fleam or Launcet, that the corruption may iſſue forth, then anoint it with hogs-greaſe made warm: For that will either expel it, or bring it to a head, eſpecially if the ſwelling be kept exceeding warm. There be other Farriers which for this diſeaſe uſe to let the horſe blood as is aforeſaid, and then to give him a quart of Malmſey, well brewed with three ſpoonfuls of the powder called *Diapente*, and if the Swelling ariſe, to lay thereunto nothing but Hay well ſodden in old Urine, and then keep the ſame Diet as is aforeſaid: Others uſe after the letting of blood, to give the horſe no Drink, but only ten or twelve ſpoonfuls of that water which is called Doctor Stephens Water, and is not unknown to any Apothecary:

thecary: and then for the rest of the cure to proceed in all things as is before specified, and questionless I have seen strange effects of this practice.

CHAP. LXII.

Of tyred Horses.

SInce we are thus far proceeded into the inward and vital parts of a horse body, it is not amiss to speak something of the Tyring of horses, and of the Remedies for the same, because when a horse is truly tyred (as by over extream Labour) it is questionless that all his Vital parts are made sick and feebled. For to tell you in more plainness what tyring is, it is when a horse by extream and uncessant Labour, hath all his inward and vital powers which should accompany and rejoyce the heart, expelled and driven outward to the outward parts, and less deserving Members, leaving the heart forlorn and sick, insomuch that a general and cold faintness spreadeth over the whole body, and weakneth it in such sort that it can indure no further Travail, till those lively heats, Facalties and Powers be brought unto their natural and true Places back again, and made to give comfort to the heart whom their loss sickned.

Now for the tyring of Horses, though in truth proceeding from no other cause but this before spoken, yet in as much as in our common and vulgar speech, we say every horse that giveth over his Labour is tyred, you shall understand that such giving over may proceed from four causes: the first from inward sickness: the second from some wound received either of Body or Limbs: the third from dulness of Spirit, cowardliness, or restiness; and the fourth from most extream labour and Travail, which is true tyredness indeed. Now for the first, which is inward sickness, you shall look into the general signs of every disease, and if you find any of those signs to be apparent, you shall straight conclude on that disease, and taking away the cause thereof, have no doubt but the effect of his Tyring will vanish with the same: for the second, which is by some wound received, as by cutting or dismembring the sinews, Ligaments, Muscles, or by straining or stooming any bone or joynt, or by pricking in Shooing, or striking Nail, Iron, Stub or Thorn into the sole of the horses foot, and such like.

Sith, the first is apparent to the Eye, by dis-joyning the skin, the other

other by halting, you shall take a survey of your horse, and finding any of them apparent, look what the grief is, repair to the latter part of this Book, which treateth of Chirurgery, and finding it there, use the means prescribed, and the tyring will easily be cured. Now for the third, which is dulness of Spirit, cowardliness or restiness, you shall find them by these signs, if he have no apparent sign either of inward sickness, or outward grief, neither sweateth much, nor shewеth any great alteration of countenance, yet notwithstanding tyreth, and refuseth reasonable labour, then such tyring proceedeth from dulness of Spirit; but if after indifferent long Travail the horse tyre, and then the man descending from his back, the horse run or trot away, as though he were not tyred, the man then amounting again, the horse utterly refuses to go forward, such tyring proceedeth from cowardliness; but if a horse with one, two, or three miles Riding being temperately used, and being neither put to any trial of his strength, nor, as it were, scarcely warmed, if he in his best strength refuse labour, and tyre, it proceedeth only from restiness and ill conditions. Then for the Cure of any of all these proceeding from Dulness, fearfulness, and unwillingness, you shall take ordinary Window-glass, and beat it into fine powder. Then take up the skin of each side the spur-vein between your finger and your thumb, and with a fine Aull or Bodkin, make divers small holes through his skin, then rub glass-powder very hard into those holes; which done mount his back, and do but offer to touch his side with your heels, and be sure, if he have Life in him, he will go forward, the greatest fear being that he will still but go too fast: but after your journey is ended, and you alighted, you must not fail, (because this powder of Glass will corrode and rot his sides) to anoint both the sore places with the powder of Jet and Turpentine mixt together, for that will draw out the Venom, and heal his sides again. There be others which use when a horse is tyred thus through dull cowardliness or restiness, to thrust a burning brand or Iron into his Buttocks, or to bring bottles of blazing straw about his Ears, there is neither of the cures but is exceeding good.

But for the true tyred horse, which tyreth through a natural faintness, drawn from exceeding labour, the signs to know it, being long Travail, much sweat, and willingness of Course during his strength: the cure thereof, according to the opinion of some Farriers, is to pour oyl and Vinegar into his nostrils, and to give him the drink of sheeps-

heads, mentioned in the Chapter of the Consumption of the flesh, being the 57 Chapter of this Book, and to bathe his Legs with a comfortable bath, of which you shall find choice in the chapter of baths, or else charge them with this charge: Take of Bole-armony, and of Wheat flower, of each half a pound, and a little Rosin beaten into fine powder, and a quart of strong Vinegar, mingle them well together, and cover all his Legs therewith, and if it be in the Summer, turn him to Grass and he will recover his wearines, others use to take a slice of fresh Beef, having steeped it in vinegar, lap it about your bit or snaffle; and having made it fast with a Thred, ride your horse therewith and he will hardly tyre: yet after your journey is ended, be sure to give your horse rest, much warmth and good feeding, that is, warm meshes and store of Provender, or else he will be the worse whilst he lives.

Now if it be so that your horse tire in such a place as the necessity of your occasions are to be preferred before the value of your horse, and that you must seek unnatural means to controul Nature: In this case you shall take (where the powder of Glass before spoken of cannot be had) three or four round Pebble stones, and put them into one of his ears, and then tye the Ear that the stones fall not out, and the noise of those stones will make the horse go after he is utterly tyred; but if that fail, you shall with a Knife make a hole in the flap of the horses ear, and thrust a long rough stick, full of nicks through the same; and ever as the horse slacks his pace, so saw and fret the stick up and down in the hole, and be sure whilst he hath any life he will not leave going.

Many other torments there are which be needless to rehearse, only this is my most general advice, if at any time you tire your horse, to take of old Urine a quart, of Salt-peter three Ounces, boyl them well together, and bathe all the horses four Legs in the same, and without question it will bring the sinews to their natural strength and nimbleness and for other defects, warm and good keeping will cure them.

And although some of our Northern Farriers do hold that Oaten dough will prevent tyring, yet I have not approved it so, because I could never get any Horse that would eat it, the dough will so stick and clam in the horses mouth. Therefore I hold the Cures already recited to be fully sufficient. But for farther satisfaction use these, which I reserved for mine own privacy.

Take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the

powder of Elicampane, and brew them well together, and give it the horſe with a horn.

Take a bunch of Penerial, and tye it to the mouth of your Bit or Snaffle, and it will preſerve a horſe from tyring. Now if all theſe fail, then take off your horſes Saddle, and rub his back all over very hard with the herb called Arſemart, and lay Arſemart under his ſaddle, and ſo ride him.

CHAP. LXII.

Of the Diſeaſes of the Stomach, and firſt of the loathing of Meat.

THIS diſeaſe of the loathing of Meat, is taken two ways; the one a forſaking of Meat, as when a Horſes mouth, either through the inflammation of his Stomach, doth break out into Bliſters, or ſuch like venomous ſores, or when he hath the Lampaſs, Gigs, Wolfs-teeth, and ſuch like. The Cure of all which, you ſhall readily find in the ſecond part of this Book, which treateth of Chyrurgery: the other diſlike of his meat through the intemperature of his Stomach, being either too hot, as proceeding either from rankneſs of blood, or extremity of travail, as you may perceive by daily experience, when a horſe is ſet up in his Stable very hot, and meat inſtantly given him, it is all things to nothing, but he will loath and refuſe it. Hence it comes, that I do ever hate the Noon-tide baiting of Horſes, becauſe mens journeys commonly crave haſte, the Horſe cannot take ſuch a natural cooling as he ought before his meat, and thereby breeds much ſickneſs and diſeaſe: for meat given preſently after Travail when a horſe is hot, is the mother of all infirmity: or elſe it proceedeth from the intemperature of the Stomach, being too cold, as being cauſed by ſome natural defect. Now if it proceed from heat only, which you ſhall know either by his ſudden loathing of his Meat, or the extream heat of his Mouth and breath: Then to cool his Stomach again, you ſhall either waſh his Tongue with Vinegar, or give to him drink cold water mingled with Oyl and Vinegar. There be other Farriers which uſe to give this drink: Take of Milk and Wine, of each one pint, and put thereunto of Mel Roſatum three ounces, and having waſhed his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, give him the drink luke-warm with a Horn. But if the loathing of his meat proceed from the coldneſs of his ſtomach, which only is known by the ſtanding up and ſtaring of the hair, Then by the

the opinion of the antient Farriers, you ſhall give him Wine and oyl mixt together divers mornings to drink: but others of our late Farriers give Wine, Oyl, Rue, and Sage boyled together by a quart at a time to drink. Others to the former compound will add white Pepper and Myrrh. Others uſe to give the Horſe Onions pilled and chopt, and Rocket ſeed boyled and bruiſed in Wine. Others uſe to mix Wine with the blood of a Sow-Pig. Now to conclude, for the general forſaking or loathing of meat, proceeding either from hot or cold cauſes in the Stomach, there is nothing better than the green blades of Corn, (eſpecially Wheat) being given in a good quantity, and that the time of the year ſerve for the gathering thereof. Others inſtead thereof, will give the horſe ſweet wine and the ſeeds of Gith mixt together, or elſe ſweet Wine and Garlick well peel'd and ſtampt, being a long time brewed together.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of the caſting out of the Horſes drink.

THE antient Farriers, eſpecially the *Italians*, conſtantly do affirm, that a horſe may have ſuch a Palſie, proceeding from the coldneſs of his ſtomach, that may make him unable to retain and keep his drink, but that many times he will vomit and caſt it up again: for mine own part from other cauſes, as from cold in the head, where the Rheum bindeth about the Roots and Kernels of the Tongue, hath as it were ſtrangled and made ſtraight the paſſages to the ſtomach: There I have many times ſeen a horſe caſt his water that he drank, in very abundant ſort back again through his Noſtrils, and ſometimes ſtrive with great earneſtnels to drink, but could not at all. The ſigns of both (from which cauſe ſoever it proceed) is only the caſting up of his drink or water, and the cure thereof is only to give him Cordial and warm drinks, as is Malmſey, Cinnamon, Aniſeeds, and Cloves, well brewed and mixed together, and to anoint his breaſt, and under his ſhoulders, with either the Oyl of Cypreſs, Oyl of Spike, or the Oyl of Pepper, and to purge his head with ſumes or Pills, ſuch as will force him to ſneeze, of which you may ſee more in a chapter following: for ſuch Fumigations joyning with theſe hot Oyls, will ſoon diſſolve the humours

CHAP.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Surfeiting with glut of Provender.

THERE is not any diſeaſe more eaſily procured, nor more dangerous to the life of a horſe, than the Surfeit which is taken by the glut of Provender, it cometh moſt commonly by keeping the horſe extream ſharp and hungry, as either by long Travail, or long ſtanding empty: and then in the height of greedineſs, giving him ſuch ſuper-abundance of Meat, that his ſtomach wanting ſtrength to digeſt it, all the whole body is driven into an infinite great pain and extremity. Theſe ſigns are great weakneſs and feebleneſs in the horſes Limbs, ſo that he can hardly ſtand, but lieth down oft, and being down, walloweth and tumbleth up and down as if he had the Bots.

The Cure thereof, according to the common practice of our common Farriers, is, to take half a penny-worth of black Soap, and a quart of new Milk, and as much ſweet Butter as Sope, and having on a Chafing-diſh and Coals, mixt them together, give it the horſe to drink: this will cleanſe the horſes Stomach, and bring it to it's ſtrength again.

But the antient Farriers did uſe firſt, to let the horſe blood in the Neck-vein, (becauſe every Surfeit breeds diſtemperature in the blood) then trot the horſe up and down an hour or more, and if he cannot ſtale, draw out his Yard, and waſh it with white-Wine made luke-warm, and thruſt into his Yard either a Clove of Garlick, or a little Oyl of Camomile, with a peice of ſmall Wax-Candle. If he cannot dung, firſt with your hand rake his Fundament, and then give him a Cliſter, of which you ſhall read hereafter: when his Cliſter is received, you ſhall walk him up and down till he have emptied his belly, then ſet him up, and keep him hungry the ſpace of two or three days, obſerving ever to ſprinkle the Hay he eateth with a little water, and let his drink be warm water and bran made maſh wiſe: After he hath druſk the drink, let him eat the Bran if he pleaſe, but from other Provender keep him ſtill faſting, at the leaſt ten days.

There be other Farriers, that in this caſe, uſe only to take a quart of Beer or Ale, and two penny-worth of Sallet-Oyl, and as much Dragon-water, a penny-worth of Treacle, and make all theſe warm upon

upon the coals, then put in an ounce of Cinnamon, Anniseeds, and Cloves, all beaten together, and so give it the Horse luke-warm to drink.

☞ All these receipts are exceeding good, yet for mine own part, and many of the best Farriers confirm the same, I think there is nothing better for this disease than moderate Exercise, much Fasting, and once in four or five days a pint of sweet Wine, with two spoonfuls of the powder of *Diapente*.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of Foundring in the body, being a surfeit got either by Meat, Drink, or Labour.

THis disease of Foundring in the body, is of all Surfeits the most vile, most dangerous, and most incident to horses that are daily travailed; it proceedeth according to the opinion of some Farriers, from eating of much Provender suddenly after Labour; The horse being then, as it were, panting hot, (as we may daily see unskilful horse-men do at this day) whereby the meat which the horse eateth, not being digested, breedeth evil and gross humours, which by little and little spread themselves through the Members, do at length oppress and almost confound the whole Body, absolutely taking away from him all his strength, insomuch that he can neither go nor bow his joynts, nor being laid, is able to rise again: besides it taketh away from him his instrumental powers, as the office both of Urine and Excrements which cannot be performed but with extream pain. There be other Farriers, and to their opinion I rather lean, that suppose it proceedeth from suffering the horse to drink too much in his Travel being very hot, whereby the Grease being suddenly cooled it doth clap about, and suffocate the inward parts with such a loathsome fulness, that without speedy evacuation, there can be no hope but of Death only. Now whereas some Farriers do hold, that this Foundring in the body, should be no other than the Foundring in the Legs, because it is (say they) a melting and dissolution of evil humours which resort down-ward, they are much deceived: for it is not, as they hold, a dissolution of humours, but rather a binding together of Corporal and Substantial evils, which by an unnatural accident doth torment the heart. Now for the hold which they take of the name of Foundring, as if it were drawn from the French word

Fundu,

Fundu, ſignifying melting, truly I think it was rather the ignorance of our old Farriers, which knew not how to entitle the diſeaſe, than any coherence it hath with the name it beareth: for my own part, I am of opinion, that this diſeaſe which we call foundring in the body, doth not only proceed from the cauſes aforeſaid, but alſo and moſt oftеſt by ſuddain waſhing horſes in the Winter-ſeaſon, when they are extream fat and hot with inſtant Travail, where the cold Vapor of the Water ſtriking into the body, doth not only aſtoniſh the inward and vital parts, but alſo freezeth up the skin, and maketh the blood to loſe his Office. Now the ſigns to perceive this diſeaſe are, holding down of his head, ſtarting up of his hair, coughing, ſtaggering behind, trembling after water, diſlike of his meat, leanneſs, ſtiff going, diſability to riſe when he is down: and to conclude, which is the chieſeſt ſign of all other, his belly will be clung up to his back, and his back riſen up like a Camel.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the Farriers, is, firſt to rake his fundament, and then to give him a Cliſter: which done, and that the horſes belly is emptyed, then take of Malmſey a quart, of Sugar half a quartern, of Cinnamon half an ounce, of Licoras and Anniſeeds, of each two ſpoonfuls beaten into fine powder; which being put into the Malmſey, warm them together at the fire, ſo that the Honey may be molten, then give it the horſe luke-warm to drink which done, walk him up and down either in the warm Stable, or ſome warm Road the ſpace of an hour, then let him ſtand on the Bit faſting two hours more, only let him be warm cloathed, ſtopt, and littered, and when you give him hay, let it be ſprinkled with Water, and let his Provender be very clean ſifted from duſt, and given by a little at once; and let his drink be warm maſhes of Malt and Water. Now when you ſee him recover and get a little ſtrength you ſhall then let him blood in the Neck-vein, and once a day perfume him with Frankincenſe to make him ſneeze, and uſe to give him exerciſe abroad when the weather is warm, and in the houſe when the Weather is ſtormy.

Now there be other Farriers which uſe for this diſeaſe, to take a half-penny-worth of garlick, two penny-worth of the powder of pepper, two penny-worth of the powder of Ginger, two penny worth of grains bruiſed, and put all theſe into a pottle of ſtrong Ale, and give it the horſe to drink by a quart at a time, dieting and ordering him as aforeſaid; And when he getteth ſtrength, either let him blood in

the Neck-vein, or the Spur-veins, or on both: to conclude, there is no Drink nor Diet which is comfortable, but it is moſt Soveraign good for this infirmity.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the greedy Worm, or hungry Evil in Horſes.

THis hungry Evil is a diſeaſe more common, than found out by our Farriers, becauſe the moſt of our Horſe-Maſters being of great ignorance, hold it a ſpecial vertue to ſee a horſe eat eagerly, whereas indeed this over haſty and greedy eating, is more rather an infirmity and ſickneſs of the inward parts; and this diſeaſe is none other than an inſatiate and greedy eating, contrary to Nature and old cuſtom, and for the moſt part, it followeth ſome extream great emptineſs or want of natural food, the beaſt being even at the pinch, and ready to be chap-fain. There be ſome Farriers which ſuppoſe that it proceedeth from ſome extream cold outwardly taken by travelling in cold and barren places, as in the froſt and Snow, where the outward cold maketh the Stomach cold, whereby all the inward powers are weakned. The ſigns are only an alteration or change in the horſes feeding, having loſt all temperance, and ſnatching and chopping at his Meat, as if he would devour the Manger: The cure according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, firſt to comfort his ſtomach by giving him great ſlices of white-bread toaſted at the fire, and ſteeped in Muskadine, or elſe bread untoaſted, and ſteeped in Wine, and then to let him drink Wheat flower and Wine brewed together. There be others that uſe to knead ſtiff Cakes of Wheat-flower and Wine, and feed the horſe therewith. Others uſe to make him bread of Pine-tree nuts and Wine mingled together, or elſe common Earth and Wine mingled together. But for mine own part, I hold nothing better than moderately feeding the Horſe many times in the day with wholeſome Bean-bread, well baked or Oats well dried and ſifted.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of the Diseases of the Liver in general, and first of the Inflammation thereof.

THere is no question but the Liver of a horse is subject to as many Diseases, as either the Liver of a man or any other Creature, only, through the ignorance of our common Farriers, (who make all inward diseases one sickness) the true grounds and causes not being looked into, the infirmity is let pass, and many times poysoned with false potions; but true it is, that the Liver sometimes by the intemperateness thereof, as being either too hot or too cold, too moist, or too dry, or sometimes by means of evil humours, as Choler, or flegm overflowing in the same, heat ingendring choler, and coldness flegm the Liver is subject to many sicknesses, and is diversly pained, as by Inflammations, Apostumation, or Ulcer, or by obstructions, stoppings, or hard knobs: or lastly, by the Consumption of the whole substance thereof. The signs to know if the disease proceed from hot causes, is leanness of body, the loathing of Meat, voiding dung of a strong scent, great thirst, and loosness of belly. The signs to know if the disease proceed from cold causes, is good state of body, appetite of Meat, dung not stinking, no thirst, and the belly neither loose nor costive. Now to proceed to the particular diseases of the Liver, and first of the inflammation, you shall understand that it cometh by means that the blood through the abundance, thinness, boyling heat, or sharpness thereof, or through the violence of some outward causes breaketh out of the veins, and floweth into the body or substance of the Liver; and so being dispossessed of his proper Vessels, doth immediately putrifie, and is inflamed corrupting so much of the fleshy substance of the Liver, as is either touched or imbrued with the same, whence it cometh, that for the most part, the hollow side of the Liver is first consumed, yea, sometimes the full side also: This Inflammation by a natural heat is sometimes turned to putrefaction, and then it is called an Apostumation: which when either by the strength of nature or art, it doth break and run, then it is called an Ulcer or filthy sore. Now the signs of an inflammation on the hollow side of the Liver, (which is the least hurtful) is loathing of meat, great thirst, loosness of belly, and a continual unwillingness to lye on the left side: but if the

Inflammation be on the full ſide of the Liver, then the ſigns be ſhort breathing, a dry Cough, much pain, when you handle the horſe about the Wind-pipe, and an unwillingneſs to lie on the right ſide. The ſigns of Apoſtumation is great heat, long fetching of breath, and a continual looking to his ſide. The ſigns of Ulceration, is continual coldneſs, ſtarting up of the hair, and much feebleneſs and fainting, becauſe the filthy matter caſting evil vapours abroad, doth many times corrupt the heart and occaſion death. Now for the Cure of theſe Inflammations, ſome Farriers uſe to take a quart of Ale, an Ounce of Myrrh, an ounce of Frankincenſe, and brewing them well together, give it the horſe divers mornings to drink. Others uſe to take three ounces of the ſeeds of Smallage, and three ounces of Hyſſop, and as much Southern-wort, and boyl them well in Oyl and Wine mingled together, and give the horſe to drink; keep the Horſe warm, and let him neither drink cold water, nor eat dry duſty Hay.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Obſtructions, Stoppings, or hard Knobs on the Liver.

THeſe Obſtructions or Stoppings of a horſes Liver, do come moſt commonly by Travelling or Labour on a full ſtomach, whereby the meat not being perfectly digeſted, breedeth groſs and tough humours, which humours by the extremity of Travel, are violently driven into the ſmall veins, through which the Liver ought to receive good Nutriment, and ſo by that means breedeth obſtructions and ſtoppings. Now from theſe Obſtructions (when they have continued any long time) eſpecially if the humours be Cholerick, breedeth many times hard knobs on the Liver, which knobs maketh the horſe continually lye on his right ſide, and never on the left; becauſe if he ſhould lye on the left ſide, the weight of the knob would oppreſs the Stomach, and even ſicken all the vital parts in him.

The ſigns of theſe Obſtructions or ſtoppings, are heavineſs of Countenance, diſtention or ſwelling, great dulneſs and Sloath in the horſe when he beginneth his Travail, and a continual looking back to his ſhort Ribs, where remaineth his greateſt pain and torment. Now the cure thereof, is, to ſeeth continually in the water which he drinketh, Agrimony, Fumitory, Camomil, Worm-wood, Licoras

Licoras, Anniſeeds, Smallage, Parſley, Spikenard, Gentian, Succory, Endive and Lupins, the vertues whereof are moſt comfortable to the Liver. But foraſmuch as the moſt part of our Engliſh Farriers are very ſimple Smiths, whoſe capacities are unable to dive into theſe ſeveral diſtinctions, and that this Work (or Maſter-piece) is intended for the weakeſt Brain whatſoever: You ſhall underſtand, that there be certain general ſigns to know when the Liver of a horſe is grieved with any grief, of what nature or condition ſoever it be; and ſo likewiſe general Receits to cure all the griefs, without diſtinguiſhing or knowing their Natures: You ſhall know then if a horſe have any pain or grief in his Liver by theſe ſigns. Firſt, by a loathing of his Meats, next by the waſting of his fleſh, drineſs of his mouth, and roughneſs of his Tongue, and great ſwelling thereof, and refuſing to lye on the ſide grieved: and laſtly a continual looking backward.

Now the general cure for the ſickneſs of the Liver, is according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, to give the horſe Aloes diſſolved in ſweet Wine, for it both purgeth and comforteth the Liver. Others uſe to give him to drink Ireos ſtampt and mixt with Wine and Water together, or inſtead of Ireos, to give him Calamint, called of the Latins Polimonia. Others give Savory with Oyl and Wine mixt together. Others uſe Liver-wort and Agrimony with Wine and Oyl. Others uſe comfortable Frictions, and to ſteep his provender in warm water, and to mix with his Provender a little Nitrum, not forgetting to let him ſtand warm and lie ſoft: but that which is generally praiſed above all Medicines, is, to give the horſe a Wolfs Liver beaten to powder, and mixt either with Wine, Water, Oyl, or any other Medicine.

Now for a concluſion of this Chapter. If the Farriers skill be ſo good that he can diſtinguiſh the nature of each ſeveral infirmity about the Liver; then I would have him for to underſtand, that for Inflammations (which are the firſt beginners of all diſeaſes) would be uſed ſimples that mollifie and diſperſe humours, as by theſe, Linſeed, Fenugreek, Camomil, Anniſeeds, Mellilot, and ſuch like; to which mollifying ſimples, would be ever added ſome ſimples that are aſtringent or binding, as are theſe, red Roſe leaves, Bramble leaves, Worm-wood, Plantain, Myrrh, Maſtick, Storax, and ſuch like. Now for Apoſtumes, they are to be ripened and voided, and Ulcers muſt be cleanſed and ſcoured downward, either by excrement or Urine, and therefore the uſe of ſuch ſimples as provoke either the one

or.

or the other, of which you shall find plenty in other Chapters) is most necessary.

CHAP. LXX.

Of the Consumption of the Liver.

OF the Consumption of the Liver, I have spoken something in the Chapter of the Mourning of the Chine: yet because amongst our best Farriers it is diversly taken, I will shew you their divers opinions. First, some hold it cometh only from sudden cold after heat, taken either by drinking or standing still. Others hold it cometh of any humour, especially of cholerick matter, shed throughout the whole substance of the Liver, which rotting by leasurable degrees, doth in the end corrupt and confound all the substance of the Liver, proceeding, as they think, from corrupt meats and sweet drinks. And the last thinketh it cometh by extreame heat gotten in Travail, which inflaming the blood, doth afterward putrefie, corrupt, and exulcerate the whole substance of the Liver: because the Liver is spongious like the Lungs, therefore the cure of this disease is held desperate; yet it bringeth no speedy or sudden death, but a wasting and lingring infirmity: For the Liver being corrupted, digestion is taken away, and so the body for want of good Nutriment, doth in time consume. The signs of this disease is a loathing of Meat, and a stretching forth of the horses body at length as he standeth, he will seldom or never lye down, his breath will stink marvellously, and he will continually cast exceeding foul matter, either at one nostril, or both, according as one side, or both sides of the Liver is consumed; and on that side which he casteth, he will ever have betwixt his neather jaws, about the midst of them, a hard knob or kernel about the bigness of a Walnut. Now the preservative of this disease, (for in truth it is incurable) is, according to the opinion of some Farriers, to take half a pint of Malmsey, and as much of the blood of a young Pig, and to give the horse luke-warm to drink. Other Farriers use to give the horse no other Food for the space of three dayes, then warm wort, and Oats baked in an Oven, being sure that the horse be kept fasting the first Night before he receive his Medicine. Others suppose, that if into the Wort which he drinketh, you do put every Morning two or three spoonful of the powder made of Agrimony, red Rose leaves, Saccharum

charum Roſaceum, Diarrhadon Abbatis, Diſantelon, Licoras, and of the Liver of a *Wolf*, that is more excellent. Others hold that this powder given with Goats milk lukewarm, is very good. Others hold that Malmſey, and the juyce of Featherfew given to drink is alſo good.

Others uſe (and hold it equal with the beſt) to take an ounce of Sulphur Vive beaten into fine powder, and a penny-weight of Myrrh beaten to fine powder, mix them together with a new laid Egg, and give them to drink with half pint of Malmſey; uſe this divers times, and keep the Horſe faſting, yet ſeparate him from other horſes, for this diſeaſe is infectious.

CHAP. LXXI.
Of the Diſeaſes of the Gall.

AS is the Liver, even ſo the Gall of a Horſe is ſubject to divers and many infirmities, as to Obſtruction, according to the opinion of old Farriers: from whence floweth the fulneſs and emptineſs of the bladder, and Stone in the Gall. And theſe obſtructions do chance two ſeveral ways: Firſt, when the paſſage by which choler ſhould paſs from the Liver unto the Bladder of the Gall, as unto his proper Receptacle, is ſtopped, and ſo the bladder of the gall remaineth empty: for you are to underſtand, that the gall is none other thing than a long, ſlender, little greeniſh bladder fixed underneath the Liver, which doth receive all the Cholerick bitter moiſture, which would otherwiſe offend not only the Liver, but the whole body alſo. Now if the paſſage of this neceſſary Veſſel be ſtopped, there cannot chuſe but follow many infirmities, as either Vomiting, the Lax, the bloody-flux, or the Yellows.

Secondly, when the way whereby ſuch Choler ſhould iſſue forth of the bladder of the gall, down into the guts and Excrements, is cloſed up, and ſo ſuperaboundeth with too much Choler; from whence ſpringeth dulneſs of Spirit, ſuffocating, belching, heat, thirſt, and diſpoſition to rage and fury; and truly to any beaſt there is not a more dangerous diſeaſe, than the overflowing of the Gall: but our latter experience findeth that a horſe hath no Gall at all; but that filthy and corrupt matter is waſted and ſpent, either by Sweat, Exerciſe, or elſe doth turn to infirmity. The ſigns of both theſe kinds of evils, or obſtructions, are yellowneſs of the skin,

infected

infected with the yellow Jaundiſe, and a continual coſtiveneſs of the body: and the cures of them are, according to the moſt antient Farriers, to give the horſe Milk, and great ſtore of Saffron, boyled together, or inſtead of Milk, to give Ale, Saffron, and Anniſeeds mixt together. But there be other Farriers, with whom I more do agree, which hold, that Selladine roots and leaves chopt and bruiſed, and boyled in Beer; or for want of Selladine, Rue, or Herb of Grace, and given the horſe luke-warm to drink, is moſt ſoveraign.

Now for the Stone in the Gall, which is of a blackiſh colour, it comes from the Obſtruction of the Conduits of the bladder, whereby the Choler being too long kept in, becometh dry, and ſo converteth firſt into gravel, and after into a ſolid and hard Stone, of which both the ſigns and the cures are thoſe laſt before rehearſed.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of all ſuch diſeaſes as are incident to the Spleen.

THE Spleen is a long, narrow, flat, ſpungy ſubſtance, of a pale fleſhy colour, joyning with the Liver and the Gall, it is the Receptacle of Melancholy and the dregs of the blood, and is as ſubject to infirmity as any inward Member whatſoever, as to Inflammations, Obſtructions, Knobs and Swellings; it is through the Sponginеſs, apt to ſuck in all manner of filth, and to dilate and ſpread the ſame over the whole body: The appearance thereof is on the left ſide under the ſhort ribs, where you ſhall perceive ſome ſmall Swelling, which ſwelling gives much grief to the Midriff, eſpecially after a full ſtomach, taking away much more of the horſes digeſtion than his Appetite, and being ſuffered to continue, it makes faint the heart, and grows in the end to a hard Knob, or Stony Subſtance.

This diſeaſe, or diſeaſes of the Spleen, are incident to Horſes moſt in the Summer, proceeding from the Surfeit or greedy eating of green Meats. The ſigns of which diſeaſes are theſe, heavineſs, dulneſs, pain on the left ſide, and hard ſwellings, ſhort breath, much groaning, and an over haſty-deſire to his Meat. The Cure, according to the opinion of our beſt Farriers, is, to make the horſe ſweat either by labour or Cloaths, then to give him to drink a quart of White-wine, wherein hath been boyled the leaves of Tamariſk bruiſed,

bruiſed, and a good quantity of Cummin-ſeed beaten to powder, and give it lukewarm. Others uſe, after the horſe hath ſweat, to pour into his left Noſtril every day the juyce of Myrabolans, mixt with Wine and Water, to the quantity of a pint. Others take Cummin-ſeed and honey, of each ſix ounces, of Laſerpitium as much as a Bean, of Vinegar a pint, and put all theſe into three quarts of water, and let it ſtand ſo all night, and give the horſe a quart thereof next Morning, having faſted all Night. Others make the horſe to drink of Garlick, Nitrum, Hare-hound, and Worm-wood ſodden in a ſharp Wine, and to bath all the Horſes left ſide with warm water, and to rub it hard. There be others which uſe to Cauterize or ſcarifie the Horſes left-ſide with a hot Iron; but it is barbarous and vile, and carrieth no judgment in the practice.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Yellows or Jaundice.

AS before I ſaid, from the Obſtructions or Over-flowings of the Gall and Spleen, doth ſpring this diſeaſe which our common Smiths call the Yellows, and our better Farriers the Jaundiſe: and you ſhall underſtand, that of this Yellows or Jaundiſe, there are two kinds, the firſt an overflowing of Choler, proceeding from the ſickneſs of the Gall, and it is called ſimply the Yellows, or yellow Jaundiſe; becauſe the outward parts of the body, as Eyes, Skin, Mouth, inſide of the Lips, and the like, are dried and coloured Yellow: the other an over-flowing of Melancholy, proceeding from the ſickneſs of the Spleen, and is called the black Yellows, or black Jaundiſe, becauſe all the outward parts are black. Now both theſe Jaundiſe, or Yellows, have their beginnings from the evils of the Liver; the Yellow Jaundiſe, when the Liver by inflammation hath all his blood converted into Choler, and ſo overwhelms the body: and the black Jaundiſe, when ſome obſtructions in the Liver-vein, which goeth to the Spleen, hinder the Spleen from doing his Office, and receiving the dregs of blood from the Liver, or elſe when the Spleen is ſurcharged with ſuch dregs of blood, and ſo ſheddeth them back again into the Veins.

Now although this diſtinction of the black Jaundiſe, or black Yellows, will appear ſtrange unto our common Farriers, yet it is moſt certain, that whenſoever a horſe dyeth of the Yellows, he dieth only

of the black Yellows: For when it cometh unto the caſe of Mortality, then are all the inward powers converted to blackneſs, and the Yellow ſubſtance is clean maſtered: but whilſt the matter is yellow, ſo long the Horſes Body is in good ſtate of recovery. Beſides, theſe Yellows do ever follow one the other, and the leſſer hath no ſooner got preheminence, but the greater purſues him; of all the inward Diſeaſes in a horſes body, that is moſt common, oftneſt in practice, and yet moſt mortal, if it be not early prevented. The ſigns of this diſeaſe of yellow Jaundiſe, are yellowneſs of his Eyes, Noſtrils, inſide of the Lips, the Skin, the Yard, and the Urine: his Ears and his Flank will ſweat, and he will groan when he lyeth down, and he will not only be faint, but utterly forſake his meat alſo. The cures which are at this day in practice for this diſeaſe, are infinite, and a World of them corrupt and poyſonous: Every Smith almoſt making a Medicine of his own invention, God knows weak, and to little purpoſe, but for the beſt Receipts, which at this day are uſed by any good Farriers whatſoever, I will deliver you the whole Catalogue.

Firſt, For the antient Farriers, both *Italian* and *French*, they did uſe to take of Thyme and Cummin, of each a like quantity, and ſtamping them together, to mingle it with Wine, Honey, and Water; and then to let him blood in the Paſterns.

But now the Farriers of later days uſe, firſt to let the horſe blood in the Neck-vein, ſuffering him to bleed, till you perceive the blood to grow pure, then to give this Drink: Take of white-Wine, or Ale a quart, and put thereunto Saffron and Turmerick, of each half an ounce, and the juyce that is wrung out of a great handful of Selladine, and being luke-warm give it the horſe to drink, then keep him warm the ſpace of three or four dayes, giving him warm water with a little Bran in it. Others uſe after the Horſe is let blood in the Neck-vein, Firſt to Rake him, then to give him a ſuppoſitory made of Salt, Honey, and Marjoram, and then give him to drink half an ounce of Myrrh diſſolved in a quart of Wine or Ale. Others uſe to give after blood-letting, only cold Water and Nitrum mixt together. There be others which after blood-letting will only ſtop his Ears with Selladine, and then bind them faſt up and let him have no exerciſe for twelve hours after. Others uſe, after the letting him blood, to give him a Cliſter, then to take Saffron, and Turmerick, and mixing them with a quart of Milk, give it him

to

to drink luke-warm. Others use to let the Horse blood in the third barr of the Roof of his Mouth, with a sharp knife and after he hath bled well, to take an half penny worth of English Saffron, and a penny worth of Turmerick, and a new laid Egg, with the shell and all small broken, and mix it in a quart of stale Ale or Beer, and so set him up warm.

Others use to take after Blood-letting, of Turmerick, and Saffron, alike quantity, and two or three Cloves, and six spoonfuls of Vinegar and Verjuyce, and to put into each Ear of the Horse three spoonfuls thereof, and then stop his Ears with black Wool, and so tye them up for seven or eight days after. Others take long Pepper, Grains, Turmerick, and Licoras, all beaten into fine powder, then brew them with a quart of strong beer or Ale, and give it the Horse to drink. Others use after taking and blood-letting, to take the juyce of Ivy-leaves, and mingling it with Wine, to squirt it into the horses nostrils; and to let him drink only cold water mixt with Nitrum, and let his Food be grass, or new Hay sprinkled with water.

Thus you have seen, I dare well affirm, all the best practices which are at this day known for this disease, and where they all fail, there is no hope of cure, as the (old Farriers affirm) yet let me thus far further inform you, This disease of the Yellows, or Jaundise, if the Keeper and Master be not a great deal the more skilful and careful, will steal upon you unawares, and (as I have often seen) when you are in the midst of your journey, remote and distant far from any Town that can give you succour, it may be your horse will fall down under you, and if you should let him rest till you fetch him succour questionless he will be dead.

In this extremity you have no help but to draw out a sharp pointed Knife, Dagger, or Rapier for a need, and as near as you can, opening the horses mouth, strike him blood about the third Bar of the Roof of his mouth, and so letting him eat and swallow his own blood a good while, then raise him up, and be sure he will go as fresh as ever he did: But after you come to a place of rest, then be sure to blood him, and give him half an ounce of the Powder of Diapente in a pint of Muskadine well brewed together, and thus do three or four Mornings together, and let him be fasting before, and fast two hours after; and after the potion give him a little moderate Exercise, or else there will a worse fit come upon him.

Now to conclude for the black Jaundise, which of some Farriers

is called the dry Yellows, though for mine own part, I hold it to be incurable, yet there be other Farriers which are of a contrary Humour, and prescribe this Physick for the Cure thereof: First, to give the Horse a Clister made of Oyl, Water, Milk and Nitrum, after his Fundament is raked, then to pour the decoction of Mallows, mingled with sweet Wine in his Nostrils, and let his Meat be grass or Hay sprinkled with water, and a little Nitre, and his Provender dried Oats: he must rest from labour, and be often rubbed. Now there be other Farriers, which for this disease would only have the horse drink the decoction of Wild Coleworts sodden in Wine; the effects of all which I only refer to experience.

CHAP. LXXIV.

Of the Dropsie or Evil Habit of the body.

WHereas we have spoken before of the Consumption of the Flesh, which proceedeth from Surfeits, ill Lodging, Labour, Colds, Heats and such like: you shall also now understand, that there is another drineſs or Consumption of the Flesh, which hath no apparent cause or ground, and is called of Farriers a Dropsie, or evil habit of the body, which is most apparently seen, when the horse by dislike doth lose his true natural colour, and when Bayness turns to dunness, blackness to duskishness, and whiteness to Ashiness, and when he loseth his Spirit, Strength and Alacrity. Now this cometh not from want of Nutriment, but from the want of good Nutriment, in that the blood is corrupted either with flegm, Choler, or Melancholy, (coming according to the opinion of our best Farriers) either from the Spleen, or the weakness of the Stomach or Liver, causing naughty digestion.

Others think it cometh from foul feeding, or much idleness, but for mine own part, albeit I have had as much tryal of this disease, as any one man, and that it becometh not me to controul men of approved judgment; yet this I dare aver, that I never saw this disease of the evil habit, or evil colour of the body, spring from any other grounds, than either disorderly or Wild riding, or from hunger, or barren woody keeping. Betwixt it and the Dropsie, there is small or no difference. For the Dropsie being divided into three kinds, this is the first thereof, as namely, an universal swelling of the body, but especially the Legs, through the abundance of

water

water lying between the skin and the fleſh. The ſecond, a ſwelling in the covering or bottom of his belly, as if the horſe were with foal, which is only a watriſh humour abiding betwixt the skin and the Rim: And the third, a ſwelling in the ſame place by the like humours abideth betwixt the great bag and the Kell.

The common ſigns of this diſeaſe, are ſhortneſs of breath, ſwelling of the body or legs, loſs of the horſes natural colour, no appetite unto Meat and a continual Thirſt; his Back, Buttocks and Flanks will be dry, and ſhrunk up to their bones: his Veins will be hid that you cannot ſee them, and whereſoever you ſhall preſs your finger any thing hard againſt his body, there you ſhall leave the print behind you, and the fleſh will not ariſe of good ſpace after: When he lyeth down he will ſpread out his Limbs, and not draw them round together, and his hair will ſhed with the ſmalleſt rubbing. There be other Farriers which make but only two Dropſies, that is a wet Dropſie, and a Windy Dropſie, but being examined, they are all one with thoſe recited, have all the ſame Signs and the ſame Cure, which according to the antient Farriers is in this ſort: firſt, to let him be warm covered with many Cloaths, and either by exerciſe, or otherwiſe drive him into a Sweat; then let his back and body be rubbed againſt the hair, and let his Food be for the moſt part Coleworts, Smallage and Elming Boughs, or whatſoever elſe will keep his body ſoluble or provoke Urine, when you want this food, let him eat Graſs or Hay ſprinkled with water, and ſometimes you may give him a kind of Pulſe called ciche, ſteeped a day and a night in water, and then taken out and laid ſo as the water may drop away.

There be other Farriers which only would have the horſe drink Parſley ſtampt and mixt with Wine, or elſe the root of the Herb called Panax ſtampt and mixt with Wine. Now whereas ſome Farriers adviſe to ſlit the belly a handful behind the Navel, That the wind and water may leiſurely iſſue forth, of mine own knowledge, I know the Cure to be moſt vile; nor can it be done, but to the utter ſpoiling and killing of the horſe, for the horſe is a beaſt and wanting knowledge of his own good, will never be dreſt but by violence, and that violence will bring down his Kell, ſo as it will never be recovered. Now for theſe Dropſies in the belly, although I have ſhewed you the ſigns and the Cures, yet they are rare to be found, and more rare to be cured; but for the other Dropſie, which is the ſwelling of the legs, and the loſs of the colour of the

hair

hair, it is very ordinary and in hourly practice: the best cure whereof, that ever I found amongst the Farriers is this.

☞ Take of strong Ale a gallon, and set it on fire, and then skum off the white froth which riseth, then take a handful of Wormwood with stalks, and put them into the Ale, and let them boyl till it become almost to a quart: then take it off, and strain it exceedingly, then dissolve into it three ounces of the best Treacle, and put in also an ounce, and a half of long Pepper and grains beaten to very fine powder: then brew them all together till it be no more but luke-warm, and so give it the Horse to drink; the next day let him blood on the Neck-vein, and anoint his Fore-legs with train Oyl, and so turn him into good grass, and fear not his Recovery.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Diseases in the Guts of a Horse, and first of the Cholick.

A Horses Guts are subject unto many and sundry infirmities: as namely, to the Wind Cholick, fretting of the Belly, Costiveness, Lax, Bloody-flux, and Worms of divers kinds. Now for the Cholick, it is a grievous and tormenting pain in the great Gut or Bag, which because it is very large and spacious, and full of empty places, it is the more apt to receive divers offensive matters, which do breed divers infirmities, especially Wind, which finding no ready passage out, maketh the Body, as it were, swell, and offendeth both the stomach and other inward Members. This disease doth not so much appear in the Stable, as abroad in Travail, and the signs are these: the Horse will often offer to stale, but cannot; he will strike at his belly with his hinder foot, and many times stamp; he will forsake his Meat, and towards his Flank you shall see his Belly appear more full than ordinary, and he will desire to lie down and wallow. The cure thereof, according to the most antient Farriers, is, only to give him a Clister made either of Wild Cucumbers, or else of Hens-dung, Nitrum, and strong Vinegar, the manner whereof you shall see in the Chapter of Clisters, and after the Clister labour him.

Others use to give the Horse the Urine of a Child to drink, or a Clister of Sope and Salt water. Others use to give him five drams of Myrrh in good Wine and then gallop him gently thereupon. Others use to give him Smallage and Parsley with his Provender; and then

then to travail him till he ſweat. But for my own part, I hold it beſt to take a quart of Malmſey, of Cloves, Peper, Cinnamon, of each half an ounce, of Sugar half a quartern, and give it the horſe lukewarm, and then ride him at leaſt an hour after; but before you Ride him, anoint all his Flanks with Oyl de Bay, or Oyl of Spike. Now if whilſt you ride him he will not dung, you ſhall then Rake him and if need be, enforce him to dung, by thruſting into his fundament a pill'd Onion Jagged croſs ways, that the tickling of the Juyce may inforce Ordure: And by no means, for 4 or 5 dayes, let him drink no cold water, or eat any Graſs or green Corn, but keep him upon wholſom dry meat in a warm Stable.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Belly-Ake, or fretting in the Belly.

BESIDES, the Cholick, there is alſo another grievous pain in the Belly, which Farriers call the Belly-ake, or Fretting in the belly; and it proceedeth either from eating of green Pulſe, when it grows on the ground, or raw undried Peaſe, Beans or Oats, or elſe when ſharp fretting humours, or Inflammations or abundance of groſs matter is gotten between the great Gut and the Panſicle. The ſigns are much wallowing, great groaning, and often ſtriking at his Belly, and gnawing upon the Manger. The cure, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, firſt to anoint your hand with Sallet-Oyl, Butter or Greaſe, and then thruſting it in at the horſes Fundament, pull out as much dung as you can reach, which is called raking a Horſe; then give him a Cliſter of water and Salt mixt together, or inſtead thereof, give him a Suppoſitory of Honey and Salt, and then give him to drink the powder of Centuary and wormwood brewed with a quart of Malmſey. Others uſe only to give the Horſe a Suppoſitory of New caſtle Soap, and for mine own part, I hold it only the beſt.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of the Coſtiveneſs, or Belly-bound.

COſtiveneſs, or Belly-bound, is, when a Horſe is ſo bound in his Belly that he cannot Dung, it is a diſeaſe of all other moſt incident

incident to Running horſes, which are kept in a dry and hot Diet. Now my Maſters, the great Farriers, affirm, that it proceedeth from Glut of Provender or over-much Feeding, and Reſt; or from wind, groſs humours, or, cold, cauſing Obſtructions, and ſtoppings in the Guts; but I ſuppoſe (and imagine that all the beſt keepers of hunting or running horſes will conſent with me) that it rather proceeds from much faſting, whereby the Gut wanting freſh ſubſtance to fill it, doth out of its own great heat, bake and dry up the little which it containeth: For it is a certain Rule, that nothing can overflow before it be full. Or elſe it may proceed from eating too much dry and hot food, which ſucking up the flegm and moiſture of the body, leaves not ſufficient whereby it may be digeſted; however it is a dangerous infirmity, and is the beginning of many other evils. The ſigns are only abſtinence from the office of Nature, (I mean Dunging) which is moſt uſual in all Beaſts. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of the antienteſt Farriers, is, to take the water wherein Mallows have been long boiled, to the quantity of a quart, and put thereto half a pint of Oyl, or inſtead thereof, half a pint of Butter very ſweet, and one ounce of Benedicte Laxatu, and pour that into his Fundament Cliſterwiſe: then with a ſtring faſten his Tail hard to his Tuel, and then trot the horſe up and down a pretty while, that the Medicine may work ſo much the better; then let his Tail looſe, and ſuffer him to void all that is in his belly; then bring him into the Stable, and having ſtood a while, give him a little well-clarified honey to drink; then cover him and keep him warm, and let his drink for three or four days be nothing but ſweet warm Maſhes of Malt and Water. Other Farriers uſe to take elven leaves of Laurel, and ſtamping them in a Mortar, give it the horſe to drink with one quart of good ſtrong Ale.

Others uſe to take an ounce of brimſtone finely beaten to powder and mixing it with Sugar, to give it the horſe in Maſh a to drink. Now for mine own part, I could wiſh you, if the Diſeaſe be not very extreamly violent, only but to rake the horſes Fundament, and then to gallop him in his cloaths till he ſweat, and then give him a handful or two of clean Rye, and a little brimſtone mixt with it: for brimſtone being given with Provender at any time will ſcour; but if the diſeaſe be raging and violent, take a quartter of a pound of white Soap, a handful of Spurge, and a handful of Hemp ſeed, bray them very well together, and give it the horſe to drink

drink with a quart of Ale luke-warm, then let him faſt, and Exerciſe him more than half an hour after; and be ſure to keep him very warm, and let his drink be only warm maſhes. A World of other Scouring Receipts there be: but you ſhall find them more at large in the Chapter of Purgations, Cliſters, and Suppoſitories.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

Of the Lax or too much ſcouring of Horſes.

THE Lax, or open flux of a Horſes body, is a dangerous diſeaſe and quickly bringeth a horſe to great weakneſs and faintneſs; It proceedeth ſometimes from the abundance of Cholerick humours, deſcending from the Liver or Gall down into the Guts: Sometimes by drinking over-much cold water immediately after his Provender, ſometimes by ſudden Travelling upon a full ſtomach before his Meat be digeſted; ſometimes by haſty running or Galloping preſently after Water; and ſometimes by licking up a Feather, or eating Hens-dung: there is no diſeaſe that taketh more ſore upon a Horſe in a ſhort time than this, and yet, ſith nature her ſelf in this diſeaſe ſeemeth to be a Phyſician to the Horſes body, I would not wiſh any Farrier to go about too ſuddenly to ſtop it; but if you find that by the continuance, Nature both loſeth her own ſtrength, and the Horſe the good eſtate of his body, then you ſhall ſeek remedy; and the Cure thereof, according to the opinion of ancient Farriers, is this: Take of Bean-flower, and Bole-Armonick, of each a quartern, mix them together in a quart of red Wine, and give it the horſe luke-warm to drink, and let him be kept very warm, and have much reſt: alſo let the water that he drinketh be luke-warm, and mixt with Bean-flower; yet by no means let him drink above once in four and twenty hours, and then not to his full ſatisfaction. Others take a pint of red Wine, the powder of one Nutmeg, half an ounce of Cinamon, and as much of the rind of Pomegranate, and mixing them together, give it the horſe lukewarm to drink, & let him not drink any other drink, except it be once in four and twenty hours, half a horſes draught of warm water mixt with bean-flower. Others take a half penny-worth of Allom beaten into fine powder, and Bole-Armony beaten ſmall, and a quart of good Milk, mingle them together till the Milk be all on a curd, & then give it the horſe to drink, obſerving the Dyet before rehearſed: But if this diſeaſe ſhall happen to a ſucking

Foal, as commonly it will, and I my self have seen many that for want of experience have perished thereby, you shall then only give it a pint of strong Verges to drink, and it is a present Remedy. For the Foal only feeding upon Milk, and that milk avoiding in as liquid form as it was received, The Verges will curdle it, and so make it void in a grosser and more tougher substance.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of the Bloody-flux in Horses.

IT is not to be doubted, but that a horse may have the Bloody-flux, for in my Experience I have seen it, besides the confirmation of all my Masters the old Farriers. Now of the Bloody-flux they make divers kinds, for sometimes the fat of the slimy filth which is avoided, is sprinkled with a little blood; sometimes the Excrements is watrish blood, like the water wherein bloody flesh hath been washed; sometimes blood mixed with Melancholy, and sometimes pure blood: but all these proceeding from one head, which is the Exulceration of the Gut, they may all very well be helped by the cure. Yet that you may know whether the Exulceration be in the inward small Gut, or in the outward great Gut, you shall observe if the matter and blood be perfectly mixt together, then it is the inner small Guts; but if they be not mixed, but come out severally, the blood most commonly following the matter, then it is in the thick outward Guts. Now this bloody flux cometh most commonly of some sharp humours, ingendering either by a naughty raw food, or unreasonable Travel, which humours being violently driven, and having passed through many crooked and narrow ways, do cleave to the Guts, and with their heat and sharpness fret them and cause Exulcerations and grievous pains. Sometimes this Bloody-flux may come from extream cold, extream heat, or extream moistness, or through the Violence of some extream scouring formerly given, wherein some poisonous simple as Siomony, Stibium, or such like, may be applied in too a great quantity, or it may come from the weakness of the Liver, or other members, which serve for digestion. The sign of this Disease, is only the avoiding blood with his Excrements, or blood instead of Excrements: And the cure, according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is to take Saffron one ounce, of Myrrh two ounces, of Southern-wood three ounces, of

Parsley

Parſley one ounce, of Rue three ounces, of Spittle wort, and Hyſſop of each two ounces, of Caſſia, which is like Cinnamon, one ounce, let all theſe be beaten into fine powder and mingled with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar wrought into a paſte, of which paſte make little Cakes, and dry them in the ſhadow, and being dryed diſſolve ſome of them in a pint and a half of Barley-Milk, or for want thereof, in that juyce which is called Crimor Priſame, and give it the horſe to drink: for it not only cureth the Bloody-flux, but being given with a quart of warm water, it healeth all grief and pain either in the belly or bladder, which cometh for want of ſtaling.

Now for mine ownpart, I have ever uſed for the bloody-flux, but this Medicine only. Take of red wine three pints, half a handful of the Herb called Burſa Paſtoris, or Shepherds purſe, and as much Tanners bark taken out of the Fat and dryed, boyl them in the wine till ſomewhat more than a pint be conſumed, and then ſtraining it very hard give it the horſe luke-warm to drink, if you do add unto it a little Cinnamon it is not amiſs. There be other Farriers which uſe to diſſolve in a pint of red wine, four ounces of the conſerve of Sloes, and give it the horſe to drink: but either of the other Medicines are fully ſufficient.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of the falling down of a Horſes Fundament.

HOrſes ſometimes, by means of the diſeaſe formerly ſpoken of which is the Bloody-flux, and ſometimes by a natural weakneſs in the inward Bowels, coming through the Reſolution of the Muſcles, ſerving to draw up the Fundament, will many times have their Fundaments fall down in great length, both to the much pain of the horſe, and great loathſomeneſs to the beholders. Now the reſolution or falling down, may come partly by over-much ſtraining to dung when a horſe is coſtive, and partly by over great moiſture, as it happens in young Children: For thana Horſe, no creature hath a moiſter body. Now the ſigns are apparent, hanging down of the Fundament, and the cure is this. Firſt, you ſhall look whether the Fundament be inflamed, that is whether it be much ſwell'd or no, if it be not inflam'd, then you ſhall anoint it with oyl of Roſes warmed on a Chafing-diſh and coals, or for want of ſuch

Oyl, you ſhall waſh it with warm red Wine, but if it be inflamed, then you ſhall bathe it well with a ſoft ſponge, dipt in the decoction, of Mallows, Camomil, Linſeed, and Fenugreek, and alſo you ſhall anoint it well with Oyl of Camomil and Dill mingled together, to aſſwage the ſwelling, and then with a gentle hand, and warm Linnen cloths, thruſt it fair and ſoftly up into his true place; that done, bathe all the Tuel with red Wine, wherein hath been ſodden Acatium, Galls, Achron Cups, and the pairng of Quinces: Then throw upon it either the powder of Bole-Armonick, or of Frankincenſe, or Sanguis Draconis, Myrrh, Acatium, or ſuch like, and then give him to drink the dry Pills of Pomegranats beaten to powder, either with wine or warm water, and be ſure to keep the horſe very warm, and in his body neither too ſoluble or looſe, nor too coſtive or hard bound, but of a mean and ſoft temper, for the extremity of either is hurtful.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in a Horſes Body.

MY Maſters, the old antient Farriers, are of opinion, that the Guts of a Horſe do breed three ſorts of Worms, that is to ſay, little ſhort Worms with great red heads, and long ſmall white tailes, which we call Bots: ſhort and thick Worms all of a bigneſs like a mans finger, which we call Truncheons, and great long Worms as big as a mans finger, and at the leaſt ſix inches in length, which we call by the Simple name of Worms only.

Now in mine own Experience, and all other Mens, I find a fourth ſort, which is of a middle ſize, and are red and fiery, with thick, ſhort, ſharp heads, and are called poyſonous red Worms, and are of all other moſt poyſonous and dangerous, for they will aſcend up even to the Throat of the Horſe, and will choak and kill him, and ſometimes they will eat through his ſtomach, and ſo confound him.

Now for mine own part I am of opinion, that the firſt which are Bots, are not bred in the Guts, but the Stomach only, becauſe having cut up many horſes, I never could yet find any one Bot in the Gluts, yet great ſtore of both the other worms, nor ever cut up the ſtomach of a Horſe, but I found great abundance of bots, and neither of the other worms: whence I am confidently opinionated, that bots are ever bred in the ſtomach, and both the other ſorts of Worms in the Guts:

Guts: Truth it is, that all three do proceed from one self-same cauſe, which is a raw, groſs, and flegmatick matter, apt to putrefaction, and ingendred by foul and naughty feeding, and as they proceed from one self-ſame cauſe, ſo have they all one ſign, and all one Cure. The ſigns then are, the horſe will forſake his Meat, and not ſtand upon his legs, but wallow and tumble, and beat his belly with his feet, and ſometimes the pain will be ſo extream, that he will beat his head againſt the ground, and truly, the Violence of the red Worms are wonderful, for I have ſeen Horſes whoſe ſtomach have been eaten quite through with them, ſo that the meat which they eat could not abide in their ſtomach, but fell upon the ſwallowing into the body, making the body ſwell like a Tun, and ſo have died with huge torment. Now the Cure according to the antienteſt Farriers is, to take a quart of ſweet Milk, of Honey a quartern, and give it him lukewarm: then walk him up and down for the ſpace of an hour after, and ſo let him reſt for that day, with as little Meat and Drink as may be; and by no means ſuffer him to lie down. Then the next day when the Horſe is faſting, take of Rue a handful, of Savin as much, and being well ſtampt, put thereunto a little Brimſtone, and a little Soot of a chimny beaten into fine powder, put all theſe things together in a quart of wort, or new Ale, and there let them lie in ſteep the ſpace of an hour or two; then ſtrain it hard through a fair cloth, and give it the horſe to drink lukewarm, then bridle him, and walk him abroad the ſpace of an hour, then ſet him up, and let him ſtand on the bit two or three hours after, and then give him a little Hay.

Other antient Farriers uſe only to give the horſe for this diſeaſe the warm Guts of a new ſlain Hen or Chicken, being thruſt down the horſes throat, and ſure it is paſſing good, eſpecially if a little ſalt be mixed with them: and this muſt be done three mornings together faſting, keeping the horſe from drinking three or four hours after. Others uſe to take three ounces of the Roots of Caphers, beaten with half ſo much Vinegar, and put it down the Horſes Throat: or elſe a pint of Milk, and a ſpoonful of Sope given the Horſe to drink: or Brimſtone and Milk given to drink, all very ſoveraign. Others uſe to bind about the Snaffle or Bit, mans-dung new made, and ſo ride him therewith.

Others take of Gentian, Aloes, and Savin, of each half an ounce, and brew them together with Honey and ſtrong Ale. Others uſe to take only a quart of cold ſweet Wort. Others take Savin and Southern-

Southern-wort, or else Worm-wood, and the tops of Broom small chopt, and mix it with the horses Provender. Others use to give the horse to drink luke-warm Elder-berries sodden in Milk. Others use to give the horse with his Provender, his own hair chopt small, and mixt with Bay-Salt. Others put hot Embers in water, and presently strain it, and give it the horse to drink. Others make little round balls of Honey, and the fine powder of Chalk, and putting them into Ale, make the Horse swallow them. Others use to take, especially for the long worms, half a penny worth of Fenugreek, of Anniseeds a quarter of a pound, half a penny worth of Bay-berries, as much Licoras, and as much Turmerick, and a little quantity of Brimstone, beat them into powder, put them into a quart of Ale, and give it the horse fasting luke-warm to drink: then ride him an hour after, then set him up warm four and twenty hours after. Others use, especially for the Truncheons, to take two spoonfuls of the powder of Wormwood, finely searst, and put it into a pint of good Malmsey, and after it is brewed a while, let it stand and soak all night, and then give it the horse in the morning fasting, then keep him without meat or drink four hours after. Others use to give the horse to drink, two spoonfuls of Wormseed, and as much Brimstone as powder of Savin, with a quart of Malmsey, Ale, or Beer. Others use to take as much black Soap as a Walnut, and as much brimstone beaten to powder, and a head or two of Garlick pill'd and bruised, and put into a quart of good Ale, and give it the horse luke-warm to drink.

This Medicine may also be administered to a Mare great with Foal, if she be troubled with the Bots or other Worms, so that the black Sope be left out, for it is a violent purger, and may kill the Foal in the Mares belly; yet for mine own part, I never give any inward Physical Medicines to a Mare great with Foal, but if I find her troubled with Worms, as is easie to be done by the stinking of her breath, by the sliminess of her Mouth, and by the greatness of the worm-veins under her Lips, then presently I do nothing but let her blood in the Roof or Palate of her Mouth, and make her eat her own blood; for that I know will both kill worms, and help most inward Maladies. But leaving Mares with Foal, let us return again unto Horses. There be other Farriers which use to take a handful of new hens dung, and a quart of stale Ale, and bray them well together; then take a handful of Bay Salt, and put two

Eggs

Eggs to it, and having mixt them all well together, give it the horse to drink. Others use to take half a penny worth of Saffron, and as much Allum, and mix them with a pint of Milk, and give it the horse to drink: or else give him green Willow, and green Reed to eat. Others use (and think it the best of all other Medicines) to take the Guts of a young Hen or Pigeon, and roul it in a little black Soap, then in Bay-Salt, and so force it down the horses throat. Others use (especially for the Truncheons) to let the horse drink hens durg, Mint, Sage, and Rue, with Beer or Ale, and to let him blood in the Nostrils. To conclude, except you see the horse very much pained, you shall need to give him nothing but Rozen and brimstone mixt together, and blended with his Provender, having care that you ever give it fasting, and long before the horse do drink.

Lastly, and as the chief of all Medicines for all manner of Worms, take as much precipitate as will lie on a silver two pence, and work it with as much Butter as a French Walnut, then lap it in another peice of Butter as big as a Hens Egg, and so give it the horse fasting in the manner of a Pill. Ride him a little after it, and give him no water that night, and let him fast two hours, then feed as at other times.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of the pain in a Horses Kidneys.

THere is no question, but the same Infirmities which do belong unto the Liver or Spleen of a Horse, do also belong unto the Kidneys, as Inflammations, Obstructions, Aposthumes, and Ulcers; and truly in opening of Horses, I have found the Kidney sometimes wasted, which I imputed to some matter of Inflammation; I have likewise found much Gravel, which was only through obstructions; and I have seen the Kidnies as black as Ink, which could not come without an Ulcerous Apostumation, But forasmuch as a horse is a Beast, who cannot tell the manner of his pain, nor we so heedful as we might have been, to observe the symptoms of every grief, we are inforced to conclude all under one name, which is the pain in the Kidnyes, gotten either by some great strain in Leaping, or by some great burthen bearing.

The signs are, the horse will go rowling and staggering behind, his Urine will be blackish and thick, and his Stones (if he have any) will

will be ſhrunk up into his body, if he have not, you ſhall perceive the ſheath of his yard to be drawn backward, and the great Vein which runneth up the ſide of his Thigh, called the Kidney-vein, will ſlack and beat continually. The cure according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is Firſt to bathe his back and Loins with Oyl, Wine, and Nitrum, warmed together, and after he is bathed cover him with warm cloaths, and let him ſtand in Litter up to the belly, then give him to drink water wherein hath been ſodden Dill, Fennel, Anniſeeds, Smallage, Parſley, Spikenard, Myrrh, and Caſſia or as many as you can conveniently get of theſe ſimples. The next Morning faſting, give him to drink a quart of Ews Milk, or for want thereof half ſo much Sallet-Oyl, and Deers ſuet molten together: or if you can get it, the root of Daffodill boyled in Wine, and let his Provender be dried Oats; and in his Diet keep him about ten days, and he will recover.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of the diſeaſes belonging to the Bladder or Urine, and firſt of the Strangury.

ACcording to the determinate opinion of all the beſt and Ancienteſt Horſe-Leaches, the Bladder of a Horſe is ſubject to three dangerous diſeaſes, as firſt, the Strangury, or Strangullion; the ſecond, the pain-piſs, and the third the Stone, or Piſſuppreſt. Now for the firſt, which is the Strangury, or Strangullion, it is, when the Horſe is provoked to ſtale often, and avoideth nothing but a few drops; it cometh without doubt, either by the heat and ſharpneſs of Urine, cauſed either by great Travel, or by ſharp and hot meats and drinks, or elſe by the Exulceration of the Bladder, or by means of ſome Apoſthume in the Liver and Kidneys, which Apoſthume being broken, the matter reſorteth down into the Bladder, and with the ſharpneſs thereof cauſeth a continual provocation of piſſing. The ſigns are (as I ſaid before) a continual deſire to Piſs, yet avoiding nothing but a few drops, and thoſe with ſuch pain, that he will whisk, wry, and beat his Tail as he piſſeth.

The Cure whereof is to bathe the horſes hinder Loins with warm water, and then take Bread and Bayberries, and temper them together with *May* Butter, and give him two or three Balls thereof down his throat three days together.

Others

Others uſe (and I have ever found it the beſt) to take a quart of new Milk, and a quartern of Sugar, and brewing them well together, give it the horſe to drink ſix mornings together, obſerving to keep the horſe from all ſharp meats, as Mow-burnt Hay, Bran, and ſuch like.

CHAP. LXXXIV.

Of the Pain-piſs, or piſſing with pain.

THis Diſeaſe of Pain-piſs, is, when a Horſe cannot piſs but with great pain and labour, and doth proceed ſometimes from the weakneſs of the bladder, and the cold intemperance thereof; and ſometimes through the abundance of Flegm and groſs-humours, ſtopping the Neck of the bladder. The ſigns whereof are, the horſe will ſtretch himſelf out as though he would ſtale, and thruſt out his Yard a little, and with a pain clap his Tail betwixt his Thighs to his belly, and having ſtood ſo a good while, in the end he will ſtale a good quantity.

The cure whereof, according to the opinion of Farriers, is, to take the juyce of Leeks, ſweet Wine, and Oyl, and mingling them together, to pour it into his right Noſtril, and walk him a little up and down upon it: or elſe to give him to drink Smallage ſeed, or elſe the Roots of wild Fennel ſodden with Wine. Others uſe to put fine ſharp onions clean pill'd and a little bruiſed, into his Fundament, and then to chafe him immediately upon it, either by riding him, or running him in a man's hand: or elſe to take the ſcraping of the inward parts of the horſes own Hoofs, beaten into powder, and mingled with Wine, and pour it into his right Noſtril, and then ride him upon it. Others uſe to lead the Horſe to Sheep-coats, or Sheep-pens, where great ſtore of ſheep are wonted, and making the horſe to ſmell of the dung and piſs of the ſheep, it will provoke him to ſtale preſently. Others uſe to give the horſe white dogs-dung dried and mingled with Ammoniacum, Salt, and Wine to drink: or elſe hogs dung only with Wine, or the dregs of horſe piſs and Wine.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the Stone, or Piſs ſuppreſt in a Horſe.

THE Stone or Piſs-ſuppreſt in a Horſe, is, when a Horſe would fain ſtale, but cannot at all, and therefore may well be called the ſuppreſſion of the Urine. It proceedeth according to the opinions of my Maſters, the old Farriers, ſometimes from the weakneſs of the bladder, when the water conduit is ſtopped with groſs humors, or with matter deſcending from the Liver, or from ſome Inflammation or hard Knobs growing at the mouth of the conduit, or for that the ſinews of the bladder are numbed, ſo as the bladder is without feeling; or it may come by keeping a horſe being long in Travel, and not ſuffering him to ſtale; but moſt commonly and oftest it cometh from Obſtructions in the Kidneys, where, by the cauſes aforeſaid, a certain red Gravel being bred, and falling down into the conduits, by mixture of flegm and other groſs humours, is there brought to be a hard ſtone, and ſtoppeth the paſſage of the Urine. For the ſigns there needeth no more but this, that he would fain piſs, but cannot.

The cure, according to the opinion of the moſt antienteſt Farriers, is firſt to draw out his yard, and bathe it well with white wine, and pick it, and ſcour it well, leſt it be ſtopped with dirt and filthineſs, then put a little Oyl of Cammomil into his yard with a wax candle, and a bruiſed clove of Garlick: but if that will not force him to ſtale, then take of Parſley a handful, of coriander one handful, ſtamp them and ſtrain them with a quart of white Wine, and diſſolve therein one ounce of Cake Sope, and give it lukewarm unto the horſe to drink, and ſee that you keep him as warm as may be, and let him drink no cold Water for the ſpace of five or ſix days, and when you would have him to ſtale, let it either be on good plenty of ſtraw or upon the graſs, or in a Sheeps Coat. Others (and thoſe of the beſt eſteem for horſe-leach-craft at this day) uſe only to give White-wine, Cake-ſope, and butter very well mixt together, and let the horſe drink it warm.

Others uſe to anoint the Horſes belly firſt with warm water, then when it is dried, to anoint it again with Salet Oyl, Hogs-greaſe and Tar mixt together and made warm, and ſo hold a hot Iron againſt his belly whilſt it is anointing, that the Oyntment may the better

better enter the skin: But I hold this Medicine to be much better for the Strangury, or any other pain in the belly, than for the Stone; yet it is approved good for all. Others uſe to take a pint of White-wine or Ale, and mix it with a little Garlick, and the whites of ten Eggs, and give it the horſe to drink: or elſe give him the juice of red-Colewarts mixt with White-wine, or the root of Alexanders bruiſed and ſodden in Wine to drink, and waſh his yard with Vinegar. Others uſe to take either Worm-wood, Southernwood or Galingale, or Mallows, or Pimpernel, ſome of theſe, or any one of thoſe, ſtampt and ſtrained, and give it the horſe with Ale to drink. Others uſe to take a pint of White-wine, half a pint of Burr-ſeed beaten very ſmall, two ounces of Parſley-ſeed, half a handful of Hyſſop, half an ounce of black Sope, mix them all well together, and warm it, and give it the horſe to drink: or elſe take un-ſet Leeks, and ſtamp them ſmall, and Sope, Milk, and Butter, and being mixt together, give it the horſe to drink. Others uſe to take a Nutmeg, and a handful of Parſley-ſeed, beat them to powder, then take as much butter, and mix them altogether in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and give it the horſe lukewarm to drink: or elſe take the ſeed of Smallage, Parſley, Saxafras, the Roots of Philupendula, Cherry-ſtone Kernels, Grummel-ſeeds, and Broom-ſeed, of each a like Quantity, beat them into fine powder, and give it the horſe with a pint or a quart of White-wine.

Now albeit, theſe Medicines before rehearſed, are daily in practice, and approved very ſoveraign, yet for mine own part, I have found none more ſoveraign than this: Take a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put it into a pottle pot, then take as many keen Raddiſh Roots, clean waſhed, being ſlit through and bruiſed, as will fill up the pot; then ſtopping the pot very cloſe that no Air may come in, let it ſo ſtand four and twenty hours, then ſtrain the Ale and the Roots very hard into a clean Veſſel, and give it the horſe faſting in the Morning to drink; then ride him a little up and down, and ſo ſet him up warm, and watch him, and you ſhall ſee him ſtale. This you muſt do divers Mornings together.

CHAP. LXXXVI.
Of a Horse that pisseth Blood.

THere is nothing more certain, than that a horse many times will pis blood instead of Urine, the cause (as the most Antient Farriers suppose) proceeding from some one of these Grounds; either over-much Labour, or too heavy a burthen, especially when the horse is fat: for by either of them the horse may come to break some vein in his body, and then you shall see clear blood come out and no Urine at all; but if the blood be mixt with Urine, then ☞ they suppose it cometh from the Kidneys, having some ragged Stone therein, which through great Travel doth fret the veins of the Kidneys, and make them bleed, through which as the Urine passeth, it taketh the blood away with it also; but for mine own part I have not found any greater cause for the pissing of blood than the taking up of a horse from Gras in the strength of Winter, (as about *Christmas*) and presently, without a days rest in the Stable, to thrust him into a long and weary Journey; from this cause I have seen many Horses after two or three dayes Journey, to pis blood in most grievous manner. The signs are needless. The cure according to the opinion of the antient Farriers, is this: First, let the horse blood in the palate of the mouth, to convert the blood the contrary way; then take of Tragagant which hath been steeped in White-wine half an ounce, of Poppy-seed, one dram and one scruple, and of Storax as much, and twelve Pine-apple Kernels; let all these things be beaten and mingled well together, and give the horse thereof every morning the space of seven days, the quantity of a Walnut, infused in a quart of sweet Wine. Other latter Farriers use to let the horse blood in the Neck, and boyl that blood with Wheat, and with the powder of dried Pomegranate Pills; then strain it, and give it him three or four mornings together to drink, and let him by no means travel thereupon: or else give him of husked Beans boyled with husks of Acorns beaten small, and mixt together. Others use to make him a drink with the Roots of Daffodil mingled with Wheat-flower, and Summach sodden long in VVater, and so to be given to the horse with sweet VVine: or else to make him drink of Goats-Milk and Sallet Oyl, straining thereunto a little Frumenty: or else to give him sodden Beans and

Deers

Deers ſuet in Wine, each of theſe are of like force and goodneſs. Now there be others which uſe for this Diſeaſe to take Barley, and ſeeth in the juyce of Gum-ſolly, and give him the barly to eat, and the juyce to drink: or elſe take the powder of Licoras and Anniſeeds rouled up in Honey, and make round balls thereof, and caſt down the horſes throat two or three of them: Laſtly, and the beſt, take Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Garlick bruiſed together with Sallet-Oyl and Honey, and give it in a quart of new Milk to the horſe to drink, it is very ſoveraign alſo; and theſe two Medicines laſt rehearſed, are exceeding good alſo for any Cold or Glanders.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

Of the Colt-Evil.

THE Colt Evil by the moſt antient Farriers, eſpecially the *Italians*, whoſe hot Countrey affordeth the Beaſts of more hot and ſtrong Natures than ours doth, is thought to be a continual ſtanding Erection, together with an unnatural Swelling of the Yard, proceeding either from ſome Wind, filling the Arteries and hollow Sinews, or Pipes of the Yard, or elſe through the abundance of ſeed, provoked by the natural heat of the horſe; but our Farriers, who have not ſeen that experience, becauſe our horſes are of a colder temper, ſay, it is only a ſwelling of the ſheath of the Yard, and of that part of the belly about the Yard, together with the cold alſo proceeding from corrupt ſeed, which cometh out of the Yard, and remaining within the ſheath, there Putrifieth: and this judgment we find by experience to be moſt true. Now you ſhall underſtand, that Geldings as well as horſes are ſubject thereunto, becauſe they want natural heat to expel ſeed any further.

The ſigns are only the outward Swelling of the ſheath and Cod, and none other: and the beſt cure is, firſt to waſh the ſheath clean with lukewarm Vinegar, then draw out the yard and waſh it alſo; which done, ride the horſe twice every day, that is, Morning and Evening, into ſome deep running water up to the Belly, toſſing him to and fro, to allay the heat of his Members, till the ſwelling be vaniſhed, and if you ſwim him now and then it will not do amiſs. Others uſe to bath his Cods and yard with the juyce of Houſe-lick, or with the water wherein Kinholm hath been ſod. Now this Colt-Evil will ſometimes ſtop the horſes urine that he cannot piſs: then you

ſhall

ſhall take new Ale, and a little black Sope, and give it the Horſe to drink. Others uſe to waſh the Horſes Cods and ſheath with butter and Vinegar made warm. Others uſe to waſh his Yard and Cods with the juyce of Hemlock, or elſe take bean-flower, Vinegar, and Bole-Armonick, and mixing them together, lay it plaiſterwiſe to his ſheath and Cods. Others make him a plaiſter of Wine lees, Houſe-Leek, and bran mixt together, and laid to his ſheath and Cods: But if the firſt receipt will ſerve, I would not wiſh you to uſe any other medicine.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Mattering of the Yard.

THis Diſeaſe of the Mattering of the Yard, is ſeldom ſeen but amongſt the hot Races or Breeds of Horſes, as the Jennet, the Barbary, and ſuch like; and it hapneth ever at covering time, when the horſe and Mare both being too hot, do burn themſelves, by which means there iſſueth forth of the horſes yard much filthy matter. The ſigns are the falling down of the Matter, and a ſwelling at the end of the yard, and the horſe can by no means draw up his yard, or cover it within his ſheath. The cure is, to take a pint of White-wine, and boil therein a quartern of Roch Allom, and with a large Serringe or Squirt, ſquirt in three or four ſquirtfuls into his yard one after another, and be ſure that your ſquirt go home unto the bottom, that the Liquor or Lotion may ſcour the bloody matter away: this do five or ſix times every day till the horſe be whole.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the ſhedding of the Seed.

THE ſhedding of the Seed, or the falling away of the Sperm in Horſes, is none other than that which we call in Men the running of the Reins: It cometh, as our old Farriers ſay, either by abundance and rankneſs of Seed, or by the weakneſs of the Stones, and Seed-Veſſels, not able to retain the Seed until it be digeſted and thickned; but truly for mine own part, I think it cometh oftner (eſpecially among our Engliſh horſes) by ſome great ſtrain in Leaping, or by teaching a horſe to bound, and making him bound above

above the compaſs of his natural ſtrength. The ſigns are only the ſhedding of his ſeed, which will be white, thin, and wateriſh. The cure, according to the antient Experiments, is, firſt to ride the horſe into ſome cold Water up to the belly, inſomuch that his ſtones may be covered with water; which done, bathe his Fundament with Water and Oyl, then cover him exceeding warm, and give him every day to drink of red Wine, and hogs-dung, till the flux of his ſeed ſtay; but latter experience hath found this Receipt better. Take of red Wine a quart, and put therein a little Acatium, the juyce of Plantain, and a little Maſtick, and give it him to drink; and then bathe all his back with red Wine, and Oyl of Roſes mixt together, but other Farriers take Venice-Turpentine, and being waſht, beat it well with half ſo much Sugar, and then make round balls as big as walnuts, and give the horſe five every morning till the flux ſtay.

CHAP. XC.

Of the falling of the Yard.

THe falling down of the Yard, is when a horſe hath no ſtrength to draw up his Yard within the ſheath, but lets it hang down between his legs ill-favouredly: It cometh (as our beſt Farriers ſuppoſe) either through the weakneſs of the Member, by means of ſome Reſolution in the Muſcles and Sinews, ſerving the ſame, cauſed by ſome great ſtrain or ſtripe on the back, or elſe through extream wearineſs and tyring. The ſign is only the apparent hanging down of the Member: and the cure is, (according to ſome opinions) to waſh the horſes yard in Salt-water from the Sea, or for want thereof with Water and Salt: but if that will not prevail, then prick all the outmoſt skin of his yard with a ſharp needle, but yet as ſlightly as may be, and not deep; and then waſh all the pricks with ſtrong Vinegar, and this will not only make him draw up his yard again, but alſo if at any time his Fundament chance to fall, this cure will put it up again. There be other Farriers which for this diſeaſe will put into the pipe of the horſes yard, honey and ſalt boyled together, and made Liquid, or elſe a quick flye, or a grain of Frankincenſe, or a Clove of Garlick clean pilled and bruiſed, and bathe his back with Oyl, Wine, and Nitre made warm and mingled together.

But the beſt cure, according to our Engliſh practice, is, firſt, to waſh all the yard with White-wine warmed, and then anoint it with

Oyl

Oyl of Roſes and Honey mixt together, and ſo put it up into the ſheath, and with a little Bolſter of Canvas keep it from falling down, and dreſs him thus once in four and twenty hours, until he be recover'd, and in any caſe let his back be kept as warm as is poſſible, both with cloth and a charge of Plaiſter made of Bole Armonick, Eggs, VVheat-flower, Sanguis Draconis, Turpentine, and Vinegar; or elſe lay next his back a wet Sack, or wet Hay, and a dry cloth over it, and that will keep his back exceeding warm.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the Diſeaſes incident to Mares, and firſt of the Barrenneſs of the Womb.

THE only Diſeaſe incident to the Womb of a Mare, (as far forth as our Farriers are experienced) is barrenneſs which may proceed from divers cauſes, as through the intemperance of the Matrix, being either too hot and fiery, or too cool and moiſt, or too dry; or elſe too ſhort, or too narrow, or having the neck thereof turned awry, or by means of ſome obſtruction, or ſtopping in the matrix, or in that the Mare is too fat or too lean, and divers other ſuch like cauſes. Now the cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, to take a good handful of Leeks, and ſtamp them in a mortar with four or five ſpoonfuls of Wine, then put thereunto twelve flies, called Cantharides, then ſtrain them all together with a ſufficient quantity of water to ſerve the Mare therewith two days together, by pouring the ſame into her nature with a Cliſter-pipe made for the purpoſe, and at the end of three days next following, offer the horſe unto her that ſhould cover her, and after ſhe is covered, waſh her Nature twice together with cold water.

There be others which uſe to take of Nitrum, of Sparrows dung, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity well wrought together, & make a ſuppoſitory, and put that into her Nature, and it will cauſe her both to deſire the horſe, and alſo to conceive. There be ſome of opinion, that it is good to put a Nettle into the horſes mouth that ſhould cover her. Of all which, let only experience be your warrant.

CHAP.

CHAP. XCII.
Of the Pestilent Consumption in Mares.

THere is a certain pestilent consumption incident to Mares when they are with Foal, proceeding from cold flegm, gathered by raw foggy food in the Winter-season, which descending from the Kidneys, doth oppress the Matrix, and makes the Mare consume and pine away, so that, if she be not holpen, she will want strength to foal her foal. The signs are, sudden Leanness, and a Drooping of Spirit, with much dislike of meat, a continual desire to be laid. The cure is, to pour into her Nostrils three pints of fish brine, called Garume, three or four mornings together, and if the grief be very great, then take five pints, and it will make her vent all flegm at her Nostrils.

CHAP. XCIII.
Of the rage of Love in Mares.

IT is reported by some of our English Farriers, that Mares being proudly and high kept, will at the Spring of the year, when their Blood begins to wax warm, if they chance, when they go to the water, to see their own shadows therein, that presently they will fall into extream love therewith, and from that love into such a hot rage, that they will forget either to eat or drink, and never cease running about the pasture, gazing strangely, and looking oft about and behind them. The cure of this folly is, presently to lead the Mare to the water, and there to let her see her self as before, and the second sight will utterly extinguish the memory of the first, and so take away her folly.

CHAP. XCIV.
Of Mares which cast their Foals.

THe occasion why Mares cast their Foals, that is, to foal them either before their times, or dead, are very many, as strains, strokes, intemperate riding, rushings, hard wintrings, or too great fatness, and such like. Now you shall understand, that this aborsement, or untimely casting of a Foal, is most dangerous to the life of

a Mare: For Nature being, as it were, detained from her true and perfect custom, which is the preservation of health, cannot chuse but give way to the contrary, which is Death and Mortality, and the body and pores being set open to the Air, before it be able to defend the cold, cannot chuse but be suffocated with unwholsome Vapours. If therefore you have a Mare at any time which doth cast her Foal, and withal falleth sick upon the same, you shall presently take her into the House, and set her up very warm, then give her two spoonful of the powder of Diapente well brewed in a pint of Muskadine, and feed her with sweet Hay, and warm mashes, for at least a week after.

CHAP. XCV.

Of Mares that are hard of Foaling.

IF it happen by any mischance, or otherwise, that the passages or other conduits, which lead from the Matrix, be so straightned that the Mare cannot Foal, and so be in danger of her life: then it shall be good that you help her by holding and stopping her Nostrils with your hand in a gentle manner, that her breath may not have passage, and she will Foal with a great deal the more ease, and much sooner; and sure the pain is nothing, because a Mare always Foaleth standing. Now if at any time when your Mare hath Foaled, she cannot void her Secundine, which is the skin wherein the Foal is wrapped, in that natural manner as she ought, you shall then take a good handful or two of Fennel, and boyl it in water: then take half a pint of that, and another half pint of old Wine, and put thereto a fourth part of Oyl, and mingle them all together over the fire, and being but lukewarm, pour it into the Mares Nostrils, and hold her Nostrils close with your hand, to keep it in a pretty while after, and no question but she will avoid her Secundine presently.

CHAP. XCVI.

Of making a Mare to cast her Foal.

IF at any time you would have your Mare to cast her Foal, as having present occasion to use her, or in that the Foal is not worthily enough begot, you shall take a bottle of new milk, and two handfuls of Savin chopt and bruised, and putting them together, boyl

boyl them till one half be conſumed; then ſtrain it very hard, and give it the Mare luke-warm to drink, then preſently gallop her a good ſpace, then ſet her up, do thus two mornings, and before the third ſhe will have caſt her Foal. Others uſe with their hands to kill the Foal in the Mares belly, but it is dangerous, and the former Medicine is more ſufficient. And thus much of the infirmities of Mares. Now let us return again to Horſes and Mares in general.

CHAP. XCVII.

Of the Drinking of Horſe-Leaches by Horſes.

IF a horſe at any time drink down Horſe-Leaches, they will ſuck his blood and kill him. The ſigns are, the Horſe will hang down his head to the ground, and abundance of filthy ſlaver will fall from his mouth, and ſometimes ſome blood alſo. The cure is preſently to give a pint of Sallet-Oyl to drink, and that will make them fall away, and kill them. But the beſt is, to give him half an ounce of Diapente brewed in a pint of ſtrong Beer or Ale.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of ſwallowing down Hens-dung, or any Venemous thing whatſoever.

IF a Horſe chance to ſwallow down any Hens-dung with his Hay, it will fret his Guts, and make him to void much filthy matter at his Fundament. The Cure whereof, is, to take a pint of Wine, half a pint of Honey, and two ſpoonfuls of Smallage-ſeed bruiſed, and mixing them well together, to give it the Horſe to drink, and then to walk him well upon the ſame that he may empty his belly. But if the Horſe chance to lick up any other Venemous thing, as Neut, or ſuch like, which you ſhall know by the inſtant ſwelling of his body, and the trembling of all his members, then the cure is, firſt to put him into a ſweat, either by cloaths or Exerciſe, then to let him blood in the palate of the mouth, and look how much he bleedeth, ſo much let him ſwallow down hot: or elſe give him ſtrong Wine and ſalt mixt together. Or elſe take the Root, and leaves, and fruit of Briony, which being burnt to aſhes, give the horſe a good ſpoonful thereof, with a pint of ſweet Wine to drink.

Now for mine own part, I have ever uſed to take a pint of Sallet-

Oyl, and two ſpoonfuls of Sugar-candy beaten to powder, and as much of the powder Diapente, and brewing them together, give it the horſe to drink, or for want of Diapente, ſo much of the ſhaving either of Ivory, or an old Stags horn, eſpecially the tips thereof burnt.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of Purging Medicines in general, and firſt of the Suppoſitory.

PUrging is ſaid of our moſt ancient Farriers, to be an emptying and diſcharging of all and every ſuperfluous humours which diſtemper the body with their evil qualities; for ſuch humours breed evil nutriment, which, when it will not be corrected nor holpen with good diet, alteration, nor the benefit of nature and kindly heat, then muſt it by force either be taken away by purgation, cliſter, or Suppoſitory. Now foraſmuch as a horſe is troubled with many diſeaſes in the Guts, and that nothing can purge the gut with that gentleneſs which a Suppoſitory doth, I will here firſt begin to ſpeak of Suppoſitories.

Underſtand then, that a horſe being ſurfeited, and full of evil humours needing to be purged, it is beſt firſt to give him a Suppoſitory, leſt if you ſhould come to apply a cliſter, the great gut being ſtopped with dry, hard, and hot excrements, the Medicine being not able to work beyond it, loſe both labour and vertue; ſo that I make account a Suppoſitory is but only a preparative to a cliſter, and but only to cleanſe and make looſe the great Gut, which cometh to the Tuel. The gentle Suppoſitory then, and that which purgeth flegm in the beſt manner, is, to take a ſquare piece of cake ſoap, or white new Caſtle ſoap, about five or ſix inches long, and ſhaving it round till it be not above three inches about in the midſt, and a little ſmaller at each end than in the midſt: then anoint it over with Sallet-Oyl, and ſo with your hand thruſt it up more than a full ſpan into his Fundament: then ſuddenly clap his Tail to his Tuel, and hold it hard and cloſe more than half an hour, in which ſpace the moſt part of the Suppoſitory will be waſted, then gently take away your hand, and let him void the Suppoſitory at his pleaſure. The next Suppoſitory to this, and which purgeth choler abundantly, is,

to

to take Savin ſtampt ſmall, Stave-ſaker and Salt, and boyl them in honey till it be thick, then take and knead it, and roul it of a pretty thick long roul, as before you were taught for the hard ſoap, and miniſter it at his Tuel. The next to this, and that which purgeth Melancholly, is, to take a keen Onion, and pilling off the skin, jag it a little croſs-wiſe with your knife, and ſo thruſt it up into the horſes Fundament. There is, beſides theſe Suppoſitories, one other Suppoſitory which is, to take a quart of honey, and boil it on the fire till it come to be thick like a Salve, then pour it forth upon a Table, and knead it like a piece of dough; then when it begins to harden, or grow ſtiff, (*as it will do when it begins to cool*) then roll it up under your hand and make it in the form of a Suppoſitory as it was before ſhewed, and adminiſter it in the ſame manner: this ſuppoſitory is good to purge the gut of any foul humour, and therewithal is comfortable to the body.

Now you muſt alſo underſtand, that as theſe ſuppoſitories are preparative before Cliſters, ſo they are likewiſe to be uſed ſimply of themſelves, where the ſickneſs of the horſe carrieth no great danger: for upon every ſlight occaſion, or ſmall drineſs, which is to be diſſolved with the moſt gentle Medicine, to adminiſter a gliſter, were to bring the horſes body to ſuch an intemperate looſeneſs, as would prove much worſe then the former contrary drineſs: therefore I wiſh every careful Farrier (becauſe the body of a horſe would not be tampered withal too much by Phyſick) firſt, in the caſe of coſtiveneſs, or inflammation of the inward parts, to approve a Suppoſitory: as namely, the firſt preſcribed and naked like a mans fiſt, or elſe like a roul or quantity of Roch-Allom, or elſe four inches of a great tallow candle or Percher of four in the pound; which if it works effectually, and keep the horſes body ſoluble, then to proceed no further; but in caſe it do not, but that the offenſive matter ſtill breedeth and encreaſeth, then to adminiſter a Cliſter, and where that faileth to take away the offence, to adminiſter a purgation. Now by the way, you are to take with you this general rule, and never to fail in the performance, which is, never to adminiſter either Suppoſitory or Cliſter, but firſt immediately before you give it, to rake your horſe, which raking, is in this manner. Firſt you ſhall anoint all your hand and arm over either with Sallet-Oyl, ſweet Butter, or freſh Greaſe, and then thruſt it into the horſes Fundament, and draw out all the Dung, Flegm, and filthy matter that you can feel, even as high up as the great bag: which done, then either adminiſter your

Suppoſitory,

Suppoſitory or Cliſter, which you pleaſe, at your leiſure, and in any caſe, whilſt the horſe is thus in Phyſick, keep him exceeding warm.

CHAP. G.

Of Cliſters, and their Uſes.

THe natures and properties of Cliſters are divers, and therefore it is neceſſary that every careful Farrier learn to know to what end they ſerve, and of what Drugs or Simples they ought to be compounded: For every Cliſter is to be made according to the Diſeaſe. Now of Cliſters, ſome are to eaſe griefs, and to allay the ſharpneſs of the humours; ſome to bind, ſome to looſen, and ſome to purge, and ſome to heal Ulcers. Theſe Cliſters by cleanſing the Guts, refreſh the vital parts, and prepare the way before for every inward and ſtrong purgation. Therefore, whenſoever a horſe, through groſneſs of humours, corruption of blood, or abundance of flegm, choler or Melancholly, is brought unto that evil habit of body, that of neceſſity he muſt be purged, and that eſpecially his pain is in his Guts and Body, you ſhall then, as before I ſaid (having made a probation of a Suppoſitary) firſt of all adminiſter a Cliſter, leſt by purging ſuddenly with any purgation or Potion, you ſtir up a multitude of evil humours, which finding no paſſage downward (becauſe the Guts being ſtopped with Wind and Dregs) do ſtrike upward, and ſo perhaps put the horſe into much greater danger.

Now for the compoſition of Cliſters, you ſhall underſtand, that they be made of four things; that is, of decoctions, of Drugs, of Oyl, or ſuch like unctuous matter, as Butter, or ſoft Greaſe, and fourthly of divers Salts, to provoke the vertue expulſive. A Decoction is the broath of certain herbs and Simples boyled together in water, until the third part be conſumed. Now ſometimes for want of ſuch decoctions, you may if you pleaſe, uſe ſome fat Beef-broth, or the broath of Sheeps-head, or ſuch like, or Milk, or Whey, or ſome ſuch like liquor, mingled ſometimes either with Honey, or with Sugar, according to the quality of the Diſeaſe; the Cliſter being either Lenitive, that is to ſay, eaſing of pain: or Glutinative, which is, joyning of things together; or elſe Abſterſive, which is, wiping away, or cleanſing of filthy matter. Now of this Decoction, or broath, being very clean ſtrained, you ſhall never take above 3 pints

pints at the moſt, and many times but a quart; into which you ſhall put ſuch Drugs as are needful, exceeding not at the moſt, above three or four ounces, according as the ſimples be more or leſs violent: of the Oyl you ſhall never uſe in a Cliſter above half a pint, and of Salt not above three or four Drams. You ſhall alſo continually adminiſter your Cliſter luke-warm, either with ſome long Horn or a large Cliſter-pipe made for the purpoſe, and fixed to the largeſt bladder you can get; and this Cliſter-pipe is of all the beſt, and doth leaſt loſe Labour. When you do adminiſter a Cliſter, you ſhall ſet the horſes hinder-parts ſomewhat higher than the fore-parts, and then you ſhall put the Cliſter-pipe in at his Tuel into his Fundament up to the head and having the confection within the bladder, wring it with a very good ſtrength into his body. A Cliſter ſhould be adminiſtred to a horſe when he is rather empty than full paunched, whether it be in the fore noon or after-noon. Now for the retaining or holding of the Cliſter in the horſes body, three quarters of an hour is ſufficient, of what quality ſoever it be. Now you are to note by the way, that as ſoon as the Cliſter is adminiſtred unto the horſes body, you muſt draw out the pipe with all the gentleneſs that may be, and ſuddenly clap his Tail to his Tuel, and ſo hold it with your hand, without any moving or ſtirring of the horſe, till the Medicine hath his full time of working.

☞Now to come unto particular Cliſters, that you may know which Cliſter is for which purpoſe; the firſt is, take of the pulp of Coloquintida, half an ounce, of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centuary and of Wormwood, of each half a handful, of Caſtoreum a quarter of an ounce, boil them in three pints of water, then being ſtrained you ſhall diſſolve therein of Gerologundinum three ounces, of Salt three quarters of an ounce, and of Oyl-Olive half a pint, and ſo luke-warm adminiſter it Cliſter-wiſe, as hath been before expreſſed: this Cliſter is exceeding ſoveraign for the peſtilence in Horſes, or for any Fever of what nature ſoever.

☞The next is, to take the decoction of Mallows, and to mix therewithal, either freſh Butter, or Sallat-Oyl, and ſo luke-warm adminiſter it: this is of all Cliſters the moſt gentleſt, and as the former Cliſter is abſterſive or cleanſing, ſo this is lenitive and a great eaſer of pain: it is moſt ſoveraign for a horſe that is taken, or that hath any contraction or convulſion, and generally for any coſtiveneſs in a horſe whatſoever, proceeding from inward furfeit or ſickneſs, as from the:

the ſurfeit by Provender, foundring in the body, and ſuch like. The next is, to take of Salt-water, or clean Brine a quart, and diſſolve therein a pretty quantity of Soap, and then luke-warm adminiſter it: this Cliſter is very good for the Cholick, or any other ſickneſs of the guts or belly. And thus from theſe three Cliſters you may compound many Cliſters; but in mine opinion, if you uſe no more than them only, they will be fully ſufficient.

CHAP. CI.

Of Purgations and their Uſes.

THE purging of Horſes is ever by one of theſe two ways, Either by Pills, Or by potion: pills are any ſolid and Subſtantial ſtuff fixed together in one body, and being made into round balls are caſt down the horſes throat. And a potion is, when you give the horſe any liquid purging matter to drink, whether it be purging Powders diſſolved in Wine or Ale, or that it be any other liquid ſtuff. Now for pills, they only purge and make cleah the head and brain, bringing flegm and other groſs humours down into the Excrements: and potions cleanſe the ſtomach, Guts and every other inward Member. Now the art of the true careful Farrier is, in chuſing of the Simples, whereof theſe pills or potions are to be compounded, and in aptly, or artificially applying the ſame. Firſt then, it is needful that every good Farrier (before he go about to purge his horſe) know with what ill humour a horſe is oppreſt, as whether it proceed from Choler, Flegm, or Melancholly, and where the humours do moſt abound; and then what ſimples are beſt to purge thoſe humours, and with what property, quality and temperament they be indued; for ſome ſimples are moſt violent, and next cozens to ſtrong Poyſons, as Scammony, or Coloquintida: ſome again are gentle, and rather nouriſhing than Medicinal, as Manna, Caſſia, Whey, Prunes, and ſuch like: and ſome are neither too violent, nor too gentle, but of a mean, as Rhubarb, Agarick, Sene, and Aloes. Now the antient Farriers did uſe to purge their Horſes with the pulp of Coloquintida, ſometimes with the Roots of wild Cowcumbers, and ſometimes with the broath of a ſodden Whelp mixt with Nitrum and ſuch like, but at this day they are not of our practice, and therefore I wiſh him, that for his experience, ſtill to make a tryal of ſtrong Medicines, or know the working of every

ſimple,

ſimpler, (which is a moſt praiſe-worthy ambition,) firſt to make his proofs upon Jades, whoſe loſs he reſpecteth not, and ſo by that working to adventure on better horſes.

But to return to my purpoſe, the Farrier who goeth about to purge a horſe by purgation, muſt conſider the nature of the horſes Diſeaſe, and the Strength of the horſe, and with them joyn the nature, ſtrength and quantity of the Medicine; he muſt alſo conſider the Climate under which the horſe is bred, the time of the diſeaſe, the time of the year, and the time of the day. For as the Diſeaſes and the humours which cauſe the Diſeaſe, are ſundry, ſo they muſt be avoided by ſundry Medicines, ſundry wayes compounded, according as experience from a continual practiſe ſhall inſtruct you; wherein you are to obſerve and note, that weak, delicate, and tender horſes are not to be purged with that Violence, which ſtrong, ſtubborn and ſturdy horſes are, and therefore in ſuch caſes, the quality and quantity is to be looked unto of every ſimple. The Climate is to be reſpected, as whether it be hot or cold; and the time of the Diſeaſe: for ſome Diſeaſes muſt be purged at the beginning, as Fevers, Peſtilence, Yellows, Staggers, and all violent inward diſeaſes, and ſome not till the water be throughly digeſted, as Cold, Strangles, and Apoſtumations. Now albeit the ſickneſs proceeds from cold humours, yet you muſt not adminiſter as hot ſimples in ſummer as in winter; nor in the contrary caſe, ſo cold things in winter as in ſummer, whereby you ſee the time and the ſeaſon of the year is to be reſpected. Then touching reſpect of the day, you are to obſerve that day to be beſt that is moſt temperate, ſith too much heat maketh a horſe faint, and to much cold doth hinder the Medicine from working. A little regard is to be had in the wind and weather; for a moiſt day with a South Wind, is to be preferred before a North Wind with a dry day. Now the beſt hour of receiving any kind of potion, is ever in the morning, after he hath faſted from meat and drink all the night before. As ſoon as your Horſe hath received any Pill or Potion, let him be walked, or gently ridden up and down one hour at the leaſt, and then ſet up and ſuffered to ſtand on the Bit two hours after, well littered and clothed and ſtopped; but if you perceive that he beginneth to grow ſick or ill (as moſt commonly horſes will) then you ſhall ſuffer him to lie down, and as ſoon as his ſickneſs is paſt, you ſhall offer him to drink a Maſh of Malt, and Water luke-warm: from

any other meat, keep him faſting till his Medicine have done Working.

Now to come to particular Receipts and Medicines themſelves; you ſhall eaſily underſtand, that although the antient Farriers do make but two kinds, that is to ſay, Pills and Purgations, yet I divide them into three, that is to ſay, Scourings, Pills and Purgations, Scourings are thoſe wholſom, natural, and gentle purging Medicines, which ſtirring up no great flux of humours, do only keep the body clean from ſuch evils as would ariſe and grow, being every way as wholſome in health as in ſickneſs, and may moſt properly be termed preparatives, or preparers of the body to entertain more ſtronger Medicines. To ſpeak then firſt of the moſt gentleſt and natural ſcouring, it is only Graſs being giving to a horſe only fifteen dayes together, and no more, for after that it fatteth and not ſcoureth. Next unto Graſs is Forrage, which is only the blades of green corn as Wheat, Rye, Barley, and ſuch like, being given ſeven days and no more. Next is green Thiſtles, being cut up, and given the horſe to eat the ſpace of five days and no more. And the laſt of this nature is the Maſh, made in this manner: Take a peck of ground Malt, and put it into a pail, then take a Gallon and a half of Water boiling hot from the fire, and put it into the Malt, then with a ſtaff, maſh and ſtir them together at leaſt half an hour till taſting the water you feel it as ſweet as honey, then being lukewarm, give it the horſe to drink. ☞ All theſe Scourings do only but cleanſe the Guts, and cool the body, adding comforts to the ſpirits and engendring ſtrength, only the Maſh is to be uſed after labour, or inſtead of drink in the time of any great ſickneſs. Scourings of a little ſtronger nature are theſe: firſt, when you give your horſe any Provender, to mix with half a peck of Oats, a handful or two of clean dreſt Hempſeed: or elſe to take a good quantity of Box-Tree leaves, and put them into a pewter Diſh, then ſet them before the fire, and let them dry leiſurely till they be ſo hard that you may cruſh them into powder, then take as much of the powder of Brimſtone as there is powder of box, and mix them together, and amongſt half a peck of Oats, mix a handful of this powder, and give it the horſe to eat; both theſe ſcourings are to be uſed after labour, eſpecially when the horſe hath ſweat much.

Theſe two ſcourings work upon no matter, but what nature is willing to expel; they purge the ſtomach, head, and intrails, they kill

kill all kind of Worms, and dry up Flegm. Scourings of the ſtrongeſt nature are to take of Sallet-Oyl half a pint, and of new Milk from the Cow a pint, brew it together, and give it the horſe lukewarm: or elſe take a pint of Muskadine, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and being mixt together, give it the horſe to drink: or elſe half a pint of Oyl, and a pint of Sack mixt together, and give the horſe to drink lukewarm.

Theſe ſcourings cleanſe the head, body, and guts, of all Flegm or molten Greaſe, which any violent labour hath diſſolved; they are exceeding good for any manner of cold, or ſtoppings in the Windpipes, and if you add unto them good ſtore of Sugar-candy, it will preſerve and keep the horſe from ſickneſs. Now for Pills, you ſhall very plainly underſtand, that the firſt and eaſieſt are theſe, either to take twenty cloves of Garlick clean pealed and bruiſed, then a quarter of a pound of ſweet Butter, and ſo roul up the Garlick in four or five ball or pellets, as big as two Walnuts apiece; and ſo taking out the horſes tongue, thruſt them down his throat one after another: or elſe to take a quarter of a pound of butter, and as much red Saunders; beat them well together in a Mortar, and then make it into four or five balls, and put them down the horſes throat. Pills of ſomewhat ſtrong nature, are to take a handful of Rotemary-leaves, and chopping them ſmall, mix them with a quarter of a pound of ſweet butter, and then making it into round balls, give them unto the horſe: or elſe take round peices of raw Melons, and thruſt them down the horſes throat: or elſe to take five green Figs, and put them down the horſes throat.

☞ The ſtrongeſt pill is this: Take of Lard two pound, laid in water 2 hours, then take nothing but a quarter of a pound of the clean fat thereof, and ſtamp it in a Mortar, and thereto put of Liquoriſh, of Anniſeeds, and of Fenugreek, of each beaten into powder, one ounce and a half, of Aloes likewiſe in powder one ounce, of Agarick half an ounce, knead all theſe together like a paſte, and make thereof four or five balls, and give it the Horſe. The laſt recited Pill is ſingular good for the dry Cough, and all the other Pills are moſt ſoveraign for all infirmities of the head, which grow either from flegm, Melancholy, or any other cold or moiſt cauſe whatſoever. Now for Purgations, which are the ſtrongeſt cleanſers of the body, they be theſe: take two ounces of Myrrh, and mix it with a pint of Wine, and it will purge all ſickneſs which proceedeth of Choler: the ſigns

whereof are, his belly will ſwell, be very hot, and he can neither dung nor break wind. Take a pint of Wine and beat a raw Egg therein, and add to it a quarter of an ounce of Brimſtone, and half an ounce of Myrrh beaten to powder, and give it the horſe lukewarm, and it will purge all inward Diſeaſes proceeding of Melancholy. Two ſpoonfuls of the powder Diapente, given with half a pint of Swines greaſe, purgeth all Diſeaſes proceeding of Flegm. Take as much black Soap as a Walnut, a quart of new Milk, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-oyl, and give it the horſe lukewarm, and it purgeth all cold infirmities, but maketh the horſe exceeding ſick. Take the guts of a Tench or Barbel, being cut into little ſmall pieces, and give it the horſe in a quart of White wine, and it will purge the horſe from all coſtiveneſs or pain in the Guts. Rye being boiled, ſo that it burſt not, then dried again, and given the horſe inſtead of Provender, purgeth and killeth all manner of Worms. Take of Radiſh roots one ounce, of the Root called Panax, and of Scamony, of each half an ounce, beat all theſe together, and boyl them in a quart of honey, Then give the horſe two ſpoonfuls of this in a quart of Ale lukewarm to drink, and it will purge all groſs humours, from whence proceedeth either the falling evil, or any diſeaſe of the brain.

Take and boyl Elicampane Roots in Milk till they be ſoft, that you may bruiſe them to pap, and then adding thereto half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, give it the horſe to drink lukewarm, and this will purge and cleanſe any kind of Glanders. Take of ſweet Soap a quarter of a pound, and make it into three balls, and give them to the horſe, and it will purge all evil humours whatſoever, both violently, and moſt abundantly.

CHAP. CII.

A moſt excellent rare ſcouring for any horſe, ſick or ſound, and eſpecially for running or hunting horſes, whoſe greaſe muſt neceſſarily be molten.

FOraſmuch as the greateſt Art which doth belong to the Keeper either of Running or hunting horſes, conſiſteth in the taking away from the horſe his groſs glut and fat, which not only offendeth the vital parts, but alſo ſtoppeth up the Condits and Veſſels of wind, and that it cannot any way be done, but by ſcouring after exerciſe; you ſhall underſtand, that the beſt of all ſcourings, which hath hitherto been approved, is this, which I will here ſet down:

You

You ſhall take twenty Raiſins of the Sun, and pick out the ſtones, and ten Figs, which you ſhall ſlit in the midſt round-wiſe, boyl them in a pottle of running water till the water be conſumed, and thickned: then take the powder of Licoras, Anniſeeds, and Sugar-candy finely ſears'd, and mix it with the Raiſins and Figs, ſtamping and working them together till it be brought to a ſtiff paſte, then making round balls thereof of a pretty bigneſs, roll and cover them all over with ſweet butter, and give ſo many of them unto the horſe as you ſhall think meet for his ſtrength; provided that the day before, you muſt give your horſe ſuch exerciſe as will be ſure to melt his greaſe, and that immediately before you give him this Medicine, you alſo warm him throughly, that the humours being again ſtirred up, the Medicine may work more effectually.

CHAP. CIII.

Of Neezing or Fumigation, and the uſe thereof.

THere is yet alſo another manner of purging of a horſe, and eſpecially his head, and that is, by forcing him to Neeze or ſnort violently at his noſe, caſting forth all filthy, and groſs matter which otherwiſe will offend and oppreſs the brain; and this Neezing is wrought ſometimes by fumes or ſmoaks, ſometimes by powders, and ſometimes by Oyls, the ſharpneſs of which, tickling the tender and quick parts of the head, do compel this ſnorting and Neezing: Surely there is no purgation more wholſome, for as it cleanſeth and ſeparateth groſs matter, ſo it comforteth & maketh ſtrong the brain. Now to come unto particular medicines which do procure this neezing, they be theſe: Squirt into a horſes noſtrils either mans urine which is old, or the urine of an Ox which hath had much reſt, and it will force a horſe to neeze, and is moſt wholſome for any quotidian Fever. Take the powder of Gumdragant, Euſens, and damask Roſes well mixt together, and blow it with a Quill into the Horſes Noſtrils, and it is good either againſt the Fever in Summer or Winter, Take warm Vinegar and ſquirt it into his Noſtrils, and it is comfortable againſt the Fever which cometh by raw digeſtion.

Take Garlick ſtalks a handful, being broke into little pieces, and a good quantity of Frankincenſe, and being put upon a Chafingdiſh and Coals, hold the Chafingdiſh under the horſes Noſtrils, ſo that the fume may aſcend up into his head; and this is moſt excellent

cellent against the Head-ach. Take Feathers and Brimstone, and burn them on a Chafing-dish of coals under the horses Nose: or blow Pepper and Perithree beaten to powder up into his Nostrils, either of these are most excellent against the sleeping evil. Take the powder of Mother-wort, and blow it up into the horses Nostrils, and it is good against the falling-evil. Take two Gooses-feathers anointed over with Oil de Bay, and thrust them up and down in the Horses Nostrils: or else take Sage, Penny-royal, and Wheat, long sodden together, and put into a bag as hot as may be, which bag would be so close fastned to the horses head, that all the smoak and savour thereof may ascend up into his Nostrils: Or take a Clout anointed with Sope or Oyl de Bay, and rub it up and down his Nostrils as high as may be. Any of all these, or all these together are most excellent against any cold, poze, or other obstructions in the head. Take Orpiment and Sulphur, and burn them on the coals, and hold it under the horses Nose: or take Oil de Bay, Euforbium, and white Hellebore, and anointing two Feathers therewith, thrust them up into the horses Nostrils: both these are good against the Glanders.

Take of the stalks of Briony, or wild Vine, two handfuls, and bruise them betwixt two stones, and being so bruised, put them into a linnen bag, & fasten the bag so to the horses head that the scent may go up into his Nostrils without touching the herb with his Mouth, and this is excellent against the mourning of the Chine, or any inward Cough. Take of Rosemary, of Nard, and of Sage, dried and beaten into fine powder, of each a like weight, & with a quill blow them up into the horses Nostrils, or take the powder of white Pepper, or of Salt Niter, or of Iris Illirica, or black Eleboris, and blow them with a Quill up into the horses Nostrils: or take Linnen chopt, dipt in the dregs of Oyl, and setting it on fire, then suddenly put it out again, and let the smoak ascend up into the horses Nostrils: or squirt into his Nostrils Aristolochia mixt with wine: or Salt niter mixt with water, or Salt and Roch-Allom mixt with Wine, or take ground Ivy beaten small, and thrust up into his Nose: or Bay-berries beaten small, and burnt on the coals under the horses Nose: Or a coal of fire put into a lump of wet Hay, making a smothering smoak, and held under the horses nose. And all of these are most excellent against any Disease of the Head, especially Staggers, Colds, Glanders, Strangle and such like.

Yet

☞ Yet all these have their several imperfections: The best Fumes then of all others whatsoever, is, to take the best Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamine, and bruising them grosly together, burn them under the Horses Nose.

CHAP. CIV.

Of Frictions and Bathes, and of their several uses.

FRictions or Bathes, are a certain rubbing, anointing, or bathing of a Horses body all over, especially against the hair, because the Medicine may sink in so much the better, with Comfortable and Soveraign Unguents, whose vertues do loosen the skin, chear up the inward spirits, and spread a lively heat and feeling over the whole body: and of Frictions, both according to the opinion of the old Farriers and also of the best of this present age, these are the most soveraign. Take of Damask Roses one pound, of old Oyl one pint, of strong Vinegar a pint and a half, of Mint and Rue, beaten into powder of each one ounce and a half, together with one old dry Nut, beat them, and mingle them well together: then being strained and made lukewarm, if it be in the Summer time, and that the Sun shine hot, take the horse abroad; but if otherwise, keep him in the Stable, and heating a Bar of Iron exceeding hot, hold it over, and on each side the horse, and with the Ointment rub and chafe the horse all over against the hair, until the horse begin to sweat; then cloath the Horse very warm, and let him stand. This Friction is excellent against all Winter Feavers, or any inward sickness that cometh of Cold. Take of black Elleborus two or three handfuls, and boyl it in a sufficient quantity of strong Vinegar, and with that rub and chafe all the horses head and body quite over once or twice a day, and it is most excellent against Frenzie, Madness, or any dryness, or Scalines of the Skin.

☞ Take Oil de Bay, or Dialthea and anoint all the horses body all over therewith, holding a pan of coals, or a hot Bar of Iron near the Oyntment, to make it sink in; or else make him a bathe of Running water, wherein is boiled Rue, Wormwood, Sage, Juniper, Bay-leaves, and Hyssop, and bathe all his body therewith: Either of these are most soveraign for the mourning of the Chine, or any Disease of the Liver, Lungs, or Spleen. Take Wine and Oyl, and having mixt them together, chafe and rub the horses body therewith

with, and it is moſt ſoveraign for any inward ſickneſs, eſpecia lly the Liver. To bathe a horſe in Salt water is very wholſome, b oth for the horſes skin, and alſo for any Diſeaſe in the ſtomach.

Laſtly, take of Mallows, of Sage, of each two or three handfuls, and a Roſe-cake, boyl them together in water, then being boyled till the water be all conſumed, add a good quantity of Butter, or Sallet-Oyl, and mixing them together, bathe all the horſes four Legs therewith, and all the parts of his body alſo: and there is nothing more ſoveraign for a horſe that hath been tyred or over travelled. To let blood, and with that blood, and Oyl, and Vinegar, preſently to anoint his body, helps moſt ſorts of infirmities.

CHAP. CV.

General Drenches or Medicines for all the inward Diſeaſes or Surfeits in Horſes.

THere is no Medicine more ſoveraign for all diſeaſes which breed in a horſes body, then to take half an ounce of the powder called Diapente, and brew it either with a pint of Sack, if it be for Colds, as Muskadine, if it be for heart ſickneſs, and ſo give it the horſe to drink faſting in the morning: and do this at leaſt three mornings together, eſpecially when the Horſe beginneth firſt to droop. The next to this, is, to take of Selladine two handfuls, both Root and Leaves, chop them and bruiſe them: then take of Rue as much, as Red Sage and Mint as much, and of Aloes half an ounce: boyl theſe in a pottle of Beer or Ale till the one half be conſumed, and then give it the horſe luke-warm to drink.

Take four ounces of Diapente, and mix it with four ounces of clarified honey, and keep it in a cloſe Glaſs, and give half an ounce thereof with a pint of ſweet wine to the horſe to drink, and it is an excellent Drench. Take of Liquoriſh on ounce, of Anniſeeds, Cuminſeeds, Elicampane Roots, of each half an ounce, of Turmerick and Bays, of each a quarter of an ounce, of long Pepper and Fenugreek, of each two drams, beat theſe ſmall and ſearſe them, and put five ſpoonfuls thereof into a quart of Ale warmed with a little butter or Oyl, and it is very ſoveraign for any diſeaſe coming of old cauſes, Take a quart of good Ale or Wine, A raw Egg beaten and mingled with twelve ſcruples of quick Sulphur, and four ſcruples of Myrrh made

made into powder, and give it the horſe to drink, it is a good drench. The powder of Brimſtone mixt with ſweet Wine, is a good drench alſo. The Root of the Sea Onion, the Roots of Poplar, called the Greek Rhamnos, mingled with common Salt, given in water, keepeth the Horſe long in health. Take fine powder of Fenugreek, and bruiſe it, ſeeth it in water till it wax thick, add a pound of ſweet Butter, an ounce of Linſeed Oyl, and as much of the Oil of Nuts: mingle them well together, and give it the Horſe in three or four days to drink, by a pretty quantity at a time. Selladine ſimply of it ſelf, or Rue ſimply of it ſelf, boyled in Beer or Ale, and as much Brimſtone as a Walnut, is an excellent drench for any long taken ſurfeit. Garlick and Houſleek beaten together in a Mortar, and then boyled in Beer or Ale from a pottle to a quart, then mixt with Liquoriſh, Anniſeeds, and Surgar-candy, and a pretty quantity of Sallet-Oil, is an excellent drench for any inward ſickneſs, which doth proceed from hot cauſes, as is the Frenzy, the Anticor, and ſuch like. And thus much of general Drenches, and their uſes.

CHAP. CVI.

How to make the Powder called Diapente.

THis word DIAPENTE is as much as to ſay, Compoſition of five ſimples: for the Receipt is thus compounded. Take of Gentian, of Ariſtolochia, of Bayberries, of Myrrh, and of the ſhavings of Ivory, of each a like quantity, beat them into very fine powder, and then ſearſe it. This powder is praiſed to be a Soveraign Preſervative or Medicine againſt all inward Diſeaſes: And therefore I would wiſh every Farrier, and all ſuch as are the Maſters of good Horſes never to be without it.

CHAP. CVII.

A moſt famous Receipt, which is both a ſingular Drench and ſingular Oyntment, called of the Italians Accepum.

TAke of Euforbium half an ounce, of Caſtoreum one ounce, of Adraces half a quarter of a pound, Bdellium half an ounce, and half a quarter, of pepper a quarter of a pound, Fox greaſe half an ounce, Opoponax one ounce, Laſerpitium, three quarters of an ounce,

Amoniacum half a quarter of a pound, Pidgeons dung as much, Galbanum half an ounce, Nitrum one ounce one quarter, Spuma Nitri three quarters of an ounce, Laudanum a full quarter of a pound, Perethrum and Bay-berries, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cardanum two ounces, Seed of Rue, half a quarter of a pound, Seed of Agnus Castus one ounce, Parsley half an ounce, dryed Roots of Ireos, or Flower-de-Luce, one ounce one quarter, Hyssop and Carpobalsamum a quarter of a pound, Oyl of Flower-de-luce a quarter of a pound, and half a quarter, Oyl de bay as much, Oyl of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, Oleum Cyprinum three quarters of a pound, and half a quarter, the oldest Oyl Olive one pound and a half, Pitch a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound, melt every one of these that will melt, severally by themselves, and then mingle them together with the rest of the Simples beaten into fine powder; and after that they have been a little boyled on the fire, take it off, and strain it into a fair Vessel, and whensoever you will give your Horse any thereof, give it him with Wine, or four or five spoonfuls with a pint of Sack or Muskadine: and if with long keeping it waxeth any thing stiff or hard, then soften it with the Oyl of Cypress, so that it may be good and thick.

This Confection is both a Medicine and an Oyntment, if you put it in the Horses Nostrils, it will draw out all noisom Humours, and discharge his head of all griefs: if you anoint his body therewith, it healeth all Convulsions, Colds, and Drineſs, or Withering of the Body; and if you bathe his Limbs therewith, it driveth away all wearineſs and tiring; and if you give it him with Wine to drink, it cureth all kind of inward Maladies.

CHAP. CVIII.

How to make the Oyl of Oats.

TAke of Milk two Gallons, and warming it on the fire, put thereto a quarter of a pound of burnt-Allom, which will make it run of Curds, then take out the Curd and cast it away; Then strain the Whey through a coarse Cloath in a clean Vessel: Then take a quarter of a peck of clean husked Oats that were never dried, and put them in the Whey, and set them on the fire till the Oats burst, and be soft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender that is full of holes, so that the Whey may go gently from them

them without any preſſing (for you muſt keep the Oats as moiſt as may be:) this done, put the Oats in a Frying-pan, and ſet them over the fire, ſtirring them continually till you ſee the Vapour or ſmoak of them not aſcend upwards, but as it were run about the Pan, then ſuddenly take them off, and putting them into a Preſs, preſs them moſt exceedingly, and look what cometh from them, is only the Oyl of them, which you muſt ſave in a cloſe Glaſs. Now there are other more Artifical and curious Ways to diſtil and Extract this Oyl, but this of all other is the moſt eaſieſt and ſureſt for every mean capacity. This Oyl of Oats is of all Medicines, and Simples whatſoever the moſt excelleſt and ſoveraign for a Horſes Body, as being extracted from the moſt natural, wholſome, and beſt Food which doth belong unto a Horſes Body. This Oyl being given by four or five ſpoonfuls at a time in a pint of ſweet Wine, or a quart of ſtrong Ale, or ſome of the whey poured into the horſes Noſtrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other Medicines. It is alſo (given in the ſame manner) the beſt of all Purgations; for it purgeth away all thoſe Venemous and filthy humours, which feedeth the moſt incurable Farcy whatſoever. And for mine own part, as long as I can conveniently come by this Oyl of Oats, ſo long will I never in any Medicine whatſoever, uſe any other Oyl or Unctious matter than it only; I having found by experience, that it is the Soveraign of all Simples of that kind, whatſoever they be.

CHAP. CIX.

Certain brief Obſervations to be obſerved at home and abroad, whilſt the Horſe is in Health.

THeſe Obſervations now following, are gathered from the moſt exact Principles, and infallible grounds of the beſt and ſureſt approved Horſe-men, either of this Kingdom, or any other Nation within Chriſtendom.

Firſt then, for the general feeding of your Horſe when he is in health, you ſhall feed him with Straw, Hay, Oats, fine little wheat, Beans, Barley, bread made of Beans, Peaſe, or Fitches, or any other Meat that ſwells not in the Horſes Body.

It is the Opinion of Camerarius, firſt to give Provender, then Hay and laſtly water; but our Engliſh cuſtom is, firſt Hay and then water, and laſtly Provender.

In your travel feed your Horſe betimes for all night, that thereby the Horſe may ſooner take his reſt.

The quantity of Provender which you ſhall give your Horſe at one time, ſhall be as much as you can hold in the palm of both your hands at ſix times, or three pints by meaſure.

Horſes Bread which is made of clean Beans, clean Peaſe, or clean Fitches, feedeth exceedingly.

Let your Horſes Meat and Drink be exceeding ſweet and clean, yet his water by no means extream cold, running water from the Rock; for it pierceth too much.

To rub your Horſes mouth with Salt and Wine, will make him both eat and drink with a much better Appetite.

Let your Horſe neither eat when he is hot, nor drink when he is hot, nor preſently after his travel.

Labour your Horſe moderately, when the weather is either extream hot, or extream cold, that ſo you may avoid extream heats, or ſudden colds.

Travel not your horſe too late, that your own eye may ſee him well dried, and well fed before you take your own reſt.

Never take your Saddle from your horſes back ſuddenly.

Lend not your horſe, leſt your ſelf walk on foot.

Let your Horſe lye clean and dry, keep your Stable ſweet, let no Swine lye near it, nor let any Pullen come within it.

Let your horſe be ever tied with two Reins.

Let the light of your Stable be ever towards South and North, yet ſo as the North windows may in the winter be ſhut cloſe at pleaſure, and opened in the Summer to give freſh air.

Ride your horſe oft a little on ſtoney ways, that he may the better feel his feet, and harden his hoofs.

Have ever near your ſtable ſome cloſe plain Green, that your horſe being let looſe he may oft tumble himſelf thereon.

Let your horſes bed be of ſoft ſweet Straw, ſomewhat above his knees, of which Wheat ſtraw is the beſt: for though Barley ſtraw be the ſofteſt, yet a horſe will covet to eat it, and it is unwholſom, and Wheat ſtraw is not unwholſome to eat, yet it is hard to lye upon: as for Oat-ſtraw it is the beſt in the Superlative, for it is both wholſom to eat, and ſoft to lie upon.

Curry or dreſs your horſe twice a day, that is before water, and when he is curried, rub him with your hand, and with a Rubber; his

his head would be rubbed with a wet Cloath, and his Cods made clean with a dry Cloath: his Fore-top, his Mane, and his Tail, would be often wet with a wet Main comb, and ever where the horses hair is thinnest, there curry the gentlest.

Let the Plaunches of your Stable lye even and level, that your Horse may stand at his ease, and not prove lame by too much oppressing his hinder parts.

Let not any Mud-wall be within your Horses reach, for he will naturally covet to eat it, and nothing is more unwholsom.

Give your horse plenty of Garbage (which is chopt wheat-straw) both with his Provender, and without.

Let your Hay-bottles be very little, and tied very hard: for so your horse shall eat with the best stomach, and make the least waste.

To sprinkle water upon your Hay, is most wholsom, and to sprinkle Fenugreek upon your Provender, is as soveraign: the first is good for the Wind, the latter for Worms.

Give your Horse daily exercise, for that gets the best stomach to his meat.

Purge your Horse once a year with Grass, or with green blades of Corn, called Forrage, for fifteen days together; yet before you purge him, in any case let him blood; and whilst he is in purging, by no means let him have any Provender.

A Horse after travel hath ever more blood than any Beast whatsoever.

Green grass or Forrage cleanseth the blood, encreaseth strength, healeth Diseases, avoideth Melancholly, helpeth the horses growth, and maketh the skin smooth: whilst the horse is at soyl, by no means let him take cold.

The Northern man watreth two hours before he rideth at the least, then lets the horse eat a little hay, then gives Provender, but not much, and bridleth the horse up a quarter of an hour before he rideth: at Night he watereth two Miles before he taketh his Lodging, then rideth easily; he neither walketh his Horse, nor stuffeth him, nor looseth any Girt, but only rubbeth him very clean, and so lets him bite upon his Bridle half an hour after, with good store of Litter under him; then he gives the horse Hay,, and after Provender, before he goeth to water again (yet but a little) then see the Horse throughly well dressed and rubbed, well littered and most sufficiently meated.

There

There be others which walk after Labour, then rub well, Littereth and unbridleth; both which be good, ſo that the one have not too much walking, nor the other too cold a ſtable. But howſoever, ſtuff not your horſe backwards, but betwixt his fore Legs, and foremoſt girt: For backward ſtuffing is perillous, leſt drawing his Yard when he would ſtale, he draw back in his ſheath any of the Litter that ſtops him. The Northern man's uſe agreeth with the French Principles, which ſaith, Uſe no other walking than your ſelf on your horſ-back by riding him gently till you come at your Inn, and ſo make him cold, then ſhake Litter under him, rub his Legs, his Belly, and every part of his body well, till he be dry, then unbridle him, rub his head well, and give him hay; ſtack no girt till it be night, that the Windows be ſhut; ſuffer the horſe to drink but a little at once, to avoid ſudden cooling of the ſtomach: or driving the horſe into a ſhaking Fever: At night rub and curry well, and feed according to the horſes ſtomach.

Other good Farriers ride gently till the horſes ſinews be chaſed, and never water in travail till the horſe have ſtaled, and forbear to travel him faſt before he hath drank, that he may not drink in his great heat, and they hold the ſtanding water the beſt, after water for a Mile they ride ſoftly till his water be warmed in his Belly, and before they come to their Inn they do not water, nor of an hour after they have unbridled; then they cloath well, and give Provender, having a care that their horſes ſtand not in the wind, and that they have been rubbed dry and clean. Now all theſe Principles are exceeding good, yet I would wiſh every traveller to learn how his horſe hath been uſed, and that cuſtom (if it be not too much againſt reaſon) ſtill to follow.

If you come late to your Inn, and that your Journey be great and earneſt, ſo that your horſe will not eat till he have drank, And yet is hot notwithſtanding, then let his drink be Milk given in the dark, leſt the whiteneſs make him refuſe it: this is both cordial and pleaſant: If you cannot get Milk enough, then mingle Milk with water lukewarm, for no drink ſhould be given a horſe hotter.

If your horſe either by Labour or any ſurfeits be brought low, lean, and weak, you ſhall give him Mares milk to drink many days together, and it will make him ſtrong.

It is not good to waſh your horſe, eſpecially if he be either hot or very fat: Otherwiſe you may waſh his Legs above his knees, ſo

that

that in no caſe you waſh his Belly, and that you ride him a good round pace after his waſhing, then by no means walk him, but ſet him up and dreſs him: the purer the water is wherein you waſh your horſe, the more wholſome it is, ſo that it be not too extream cold.

The beſt hours to waſh your horſe in, (when he lives at reſt) is betwixt ſeven and eight in the morning, and four or five in the Evening.

When you travel at every ſteep hill light, both to refreſh your horſe and your ſelf.

Let a fat or hot horſe have his water at four times, and not ſo much as he will drink at once; give him provender twice at Night, and but once in the morning; let his Cloath neither be too hot, nor with ſtraw to much ſtuffed: when he eateth good hay, let him have leſs Provender then when he eateth ſtraw: give his Meat by little at once to avoid glutting of him, and let him ſtand two hours every day without Meat.

Rubbing much, hard, and well, doth profit, preſerve, and doth keep both Strength of Body and Legs; for in rubbing and combing a horſe doth take much delight, and it doth better than much Meat.

To feed with Barly (according to the opinion of the antient *Italians*) ingendreth good blood, increaſeth ſtrength and courage, and maintaineth health; but with us here in *England*, we find Oats to be much better feeding.

In the Dog-days it is not wholſome to ride your horſe oft in the water to allay his natural heat.

The Maſters eye to ſee his horſe well curried, and with the hand well rubbed, and well meated, and the Stable ſweet and clean kept preſerveth health, and wonderfully feedeth the horſe.

Cleanſe and pick the ſoles and bottoms of your horſes feet oft, and ſtuff them well with Ox-dung, anoint his hoofs with freſh Greaſe, Tar, or Turpentine.

Much reſt is the Mother and Nurſe of many Diſeaſes.

When you Ride look often to your Saddle, and your horſes ſhoes, and you ſhall find more eaſe in your journey.

CHAP.

CHAP. CX.

Certain ſpecial Principles in Foals and in Horſes.

THE Foals whoſe Legs be long will ever be tall; for of all Beaſts their Legs in length ever grow the leaſt, and by the bigneſs of their Legs you ſhall gueſs the Strength and greatneſs of their bodies.

Let your Colts, if you can poſſibly, never be houſed till they be paſt three years old.

The Greek horſe (which we call the Turkey Horſe) is a moſt excellent horſe, ſwift, bold, well headed, tall and ſtrong; many of them be White, ſome Bay, ſome Sorrel, and ſome Black.

The Arabian Horſe is moſt ſwift, and moſt beautiful.

The Horſe of Africa, which we call the Barbary Horſe, is of good courage, ſwift, and nimble, and therefore both the Turky Horſe and he muſt be uſed with all lenity and gentleneſs, and not with beating.

The Friezeland Horſe is fiery, yet the worſt of any.

The Flemiſh Horſe is worſe than the Friezeland.

The Spaniſh Gennet is good, ſwift, and light.

The Neopolitan Courſer for all uſes is moſt excellent and beautiful.

Obſerve to win your Horſe by patience and gentleneſs, and never be angry or mad with your horſe, if he be of great mettle; only the dull horſe muſt with much beating be quickned and inflamed.

Anoint your Bit when you put it firſt into your Horſes mouth, with Honey, and the powder of Liquoriſh, or elſe with Honey and Salt, and at no time put any Bit or Snaffle into your Horſes mouth before you have waſht it.

Never take your Horſes back before you have the Bridle Reins faſt in your hands, and when you walk down any Hill, by no means drive your horſe looſe before you.

If your horſe have a long back, let him have a large Saddle, and if he have a low back, let the Saddle have a high Seat, and if his back be ſhort, let the Bolſters ſtand the nearer and cloſer together.

If your Horſe be dull, you muſt ſpur him ſoundly, and after ſuch ſpurring rub his ſides with Salt.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXI.

Certain general Obſervations concerning Mares.

IN length and height, a Mare groweth till ſhe be five years old, and a *Horſe* till he be ſix.

When a Mare is paſt two years old ſhe may be covered, but the beſt time is after four years old.

Common Mares may bring Foals every year, but let your beſt Mares bring but every ſecond year, eſpecially if they bring horſe-Colts.

After covering by no means travel your Mares.

To get horſe Colts, cover before the full of the Moon, and when the ſign is a Female: and to get Mare-Colts cover after the full, and in the Male ſigns: for note it, there be twelve ſigns, ſix Male, and ſix Female.

To make a Mare ſtand to her horſing, ſet her by the horſe two or three days, that he may much deſire, and be acquainted before he cover her: After bring them out, and let him ſerve her, and have ready a pail of water, which, when the horſe ſhrinketh from her, pour upon the Ridge of the Mares back, then ſet them ſo far aſunder as that the one may not hear the other: do this three mornings, and three evenings together, then let her not come near the horſe after, till ſhe be knit, leſt the deſire of him again, make her to ſhoot out that which ſhe kept before.

To know whether your Mare be with Foal about Chriſtmas, or no, pour a little water into her ear, and if ſhe only ſhake her head, ſhe is then with Foal, but if ſhe ſhake both head and body alſo, ſhe is not with Foal.

When you wean your Foals, take them from the Mares four days before the full of the Moon, and after the Foals have ſo remained four and twenty hours, let them again ſuck till they wax very full; then remove them for altogether, and the next Morning give every one three ſlips of Savin, and ſo after let them have till they be three years old, with all plenty of Meat abroad, rather than in the Stable.

Let your Stallion for Trotters be either Neapolitan Courſer, or Arabian, Turk, or Barbary, and for Amblers, either the Spaniſh Jennet or the Iriſh *Hobby*.

Put your Mares to the horſe, from middle *March* to middle *May*,

or middle *June*, the Moon having newly changed.

It is good to put the Horſe and the Mare for three or four nights together in ſome waſt empty houſe, and in the Morning take the horſe away and feed him well; but feed your Mare ſparingly, eſpecially give her a little water.

At the end of ſix months, by no means chaſe your Mares; for then they are quickning, and may eaſily be made to caſt their Foals.

The Wall-eye either in Mare or Horſe, doth never ſee perfectly, eſpecially when there is any Snow on the ground.

A Mare goeth with Foal eleven Months and ten days.

Let your Mare be of a mean ſtature, large and broad, and of good ſhapes; and the Stallion of like ſhape, but ſomewhat taller; and temper their natures thus: put unto the hot Horſe the cool Mare, and to the hot Mare the cool Horſe: And let your ground wherein you breed, be dry, hilly, and with running ſtreams in it.

CHAP. CXII.

Certain ſpecial Notes to be obſerved in the buying of a Horſe.

FIrſt, mark his colour and his ſhape, that is to ſay, a comely well proportioned head, with an out looking eye, good well raiſed ſhoulders, and a thick large Breaſt, broad brawn, large and broad flat Legs, ſhort Paſterns, and little feet: for long Paſterns ſhew weakneſs, and broad feet ſhew dulneſs; feel if he have no Glanders between his Chaps, no Splents, Curb nor Spaven; look he be not purſick or broken winded, put your hand before his eyes, to know if he ſee well. Look into his Mouth for his age: if he be paſt eight years old, feel all down the ſtrunt of his Tayl with your hand, and if you feel that it be ſmooth, then the horſe is not very old, but if it have any rough knobs towards the end, buy him not for his good days are paſt. Let him run at the halters end, for if he be lame (having that liberty) he would favour that Leg which is amiſs, and not lean upon it. If he turn up the white of his Eye, or lay his ear to his Neck when he is ridden, he is a ſullen Jade, and full of naughty qualities: If when you ſtir him in the ſtable, he ſtare and look back upon you with a ſtout Countenance, it is a Token of good ſtomach in him; and great aptneſs to be taught; if he ſtir the end of his Tail as he paſſeth out, and is ridden, and yet doth not whisk it, it ſheweth that his pace is unperfect; be ſure to ſee him turn as ſhort as may be, that

you

you may know whether he be ſwayed in the back or no: the middle ſtature is the beſt, and the ſhort knit horſe is the ſtrongeſt. The Wall Eye ever ſeeth worſt.

The horſe that is of nature gentle, ſwift, light, nimble, of eaſie pace, and good colour, ſtrong feet, good loyns, ſpeedy in eating, and good at his Provender, is ever the beſt for uſe, and the readieſt money in the Market at all times. See if the hair in the Spurring place be white, for it argueth flowneſs and ſpur-galling.

The Horſe that will paw and beat the ground with his Foot when he is ſtayed from going forwards, is ever like to be good and durable in Travel.

Many other notes there are that are needleſs to rehearſe, which by the obſerving of theſe will eaſily come into your memory.

CHAP. CXIII.

General Notes concerning ſome Simples already ſpoken of.

ALL manner of Marrows or Piths, of what kind ſoever they be, muſt be kept by themſelves in a dry cool place, and preſerved from all filth or uncleanneſs, and from the annoyance either of wind or fire, and ſo they will laſt fully out a whole year.

You ſhall keep no Syrups nor ſweet Electuaries, nor Pills, nor Powders, nor Conſerves of Flowers, nor any Oyntments, Suets, or Emplaiſters, above one whole year, only bitter Electuaries, or conſerves of Fruits or Roots, will laſt fully out two Years.

Of Oyls ſome will laſt long, ſome muſt be new made: Oyls Extracted out of Wood or Metals, will laſt long.

Gather Roots in Autumn, but take the ſmall ſprigs from them, and make them clean and dry.

Dry ſmall Roots in the ſhade and Wind, and great Roots either in the Wind and Sun, or by the fire: lay them in a dry place towards the South, and they will keep long, provided that neither Sun nor moiſture injure nor hurt them.

Gather all manner of Herbs when they do moſt flouriſh, and dry them in the ſhade, except they be very moiſt and apt to putrifie; they laſt for the moſt part a whole year.

Gather Seeds and Fruits when they be fully ripe; they also last but one whole year.

Gather the Rind or bark of any Simple when the herb is ripe: dry them, and they will last many Years.

The End of the First Book.

Markham's Maſter-Piece.

THE

SECOND BOOK.

CONTAINING

All Cures Chyrurgical.

OR,

Such Infirmities as being only outward, crave the Uſe of *Chyrurgery*, and are called in Horſleach-Craft,

HORSES SORANCES.

Newly Imprinted, Corrected and Enlarged with many notable Additions, and moſt certain approved Medicines, never revealed before this Impreſſion.

Written by *Gervaſe Markham*, Gent.

LONDON, Printed by *John Richardſon* for *M. Wotton* and *George Conyers*, at the *Three Daggers* in *Fleet-ſtreet*, near the *Inner Temple-Gate*; and at the *Golden Ring* in *Little Brittain*, 1694.

Markham's Maſter-Piece.

THE SECOND BOOK

CONTAINING

All Cures Chyrurgical, or ſuch Infirmities as being only outward, crave the Uſe of *Chyrurgery*, and are called in Horſe-Leach-Craft, *Horſes Sorances.*

CHAP. I.

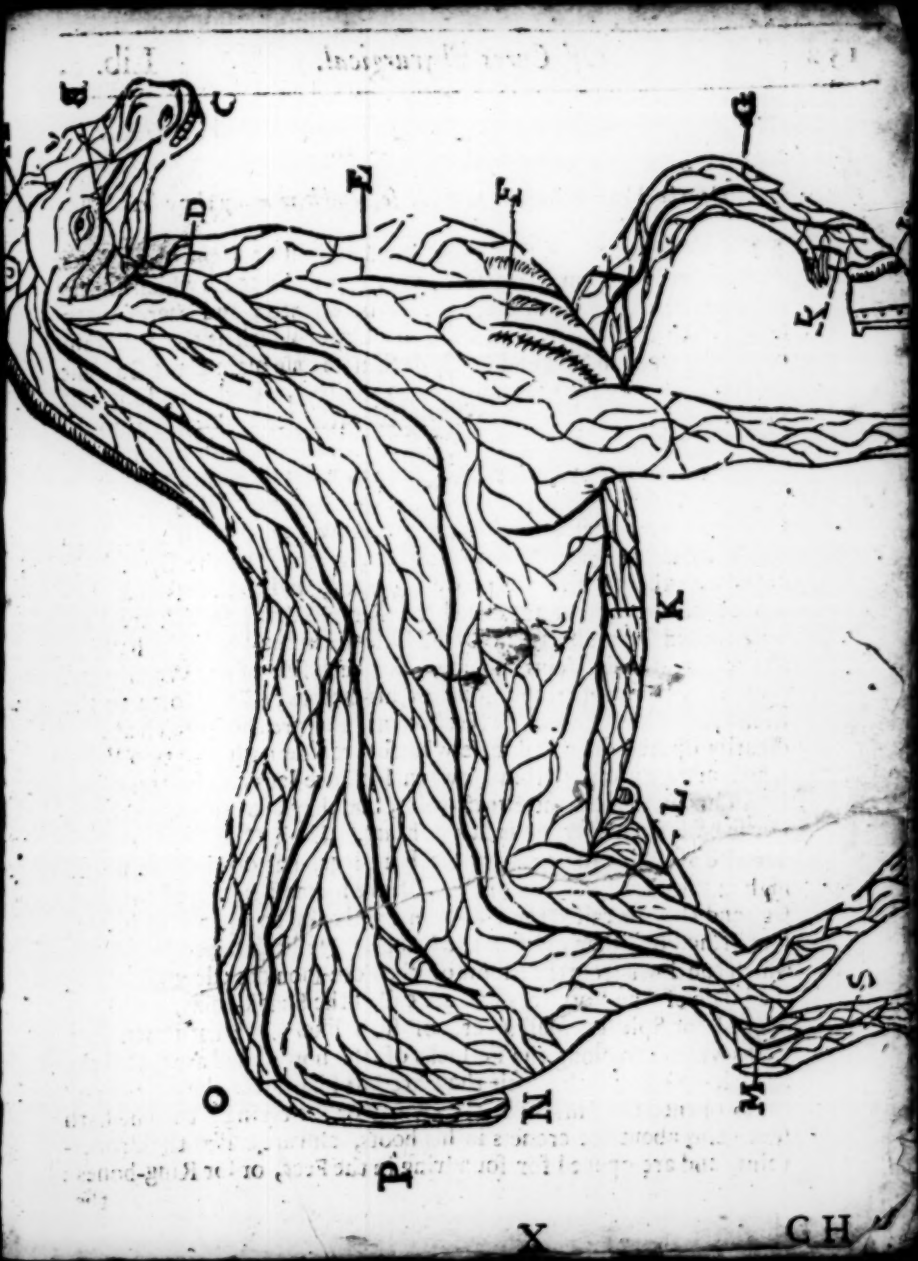
What proportion of meaſure is required in every member of a well ſhapen Horſe.

FOraſmuch as the great ſubſtance of this Art of Chyrurgery, or ſecond part of *Horſe* Leach-craft, applied only unto outward infirmities, conſiſteth of Inciſions, cauteriſings, corrodings, and diſmemberings, as well as of comfortings, incarnating, cleanſing, conglutinating, and binding up Members in their true form, and that all jointly together, go about to make a True and well-formed body: I think it meeteſt that I begin with the true proportion and meaſure which is required in every Member of a well ſhaped *Horſe*, that the careful Farrier thereby underſtanding how, and in what faſhion every Lineament ſhould be placed, or what proportion and quantity they do contain, he may at no time through ignorance either diſmember or diſgrace the ſame: As I have

have many times seen simple Farriers do, when contrary to all Art and Rule, they have cut in sunder the main Cords, Sinews, and Tendons, by which a Horses Limbs are governed.

To begin then, you shall understand, that, according to the Description of the most antient and worthy Farriers: there are in a horses palate of his mouth twelve bars or degrees like steps, one above another, standing, (when his mouth is turned upwards) like a pair of stairs: his tongue would be half a foot long, his upper lip six inches, and his neather lip five inches long; each of his Jaws would be ten inches long, his head from his Eyes downward, full twelve inches long, his ears five inches long, the circuit or compass of his Eye four inches about, his Neck, from the Nape of his head unto the Withers would be seven handfuls, from the Withers to the Fillets twelve handfuls, and from the Fillets to the setting on of the tail six handfuls: The length of the shoulder would be twelve inches, and the length of his shank six inches, the length of his hinder hoof would be twelve inches, and his Cambrel five inches, and the length of the whole body from the head to the tayl would be an hundred inches. Now [illegible] bigger or lesser, so these measures either exceed or are le[illegible] do I confidently build upon these inch-quantities of the antient Farriers, because, I having my self measured many horses, I never yet could find any certainty in the proportions: only this is the most certain Rule that ever I could find, that look what quantity is between the Nape of the horses Neck, and the uttermost part of the Withers, there must ever be twice so much between the Withers and the setting on of the Tail; and look what quantity is between the top of the shoulder blade, or top of the Withers, to the Elbow of the horse, it must be twice so much from the Elbow to the setting on of the hoof; and look how much it is from the top of the hip to the stifling place, it must be twice so much from the stifling place to the setting on of the hinder hoof: And this is the certainest Rule that ever I could find for a horses truest proportion. And therefore for your better satisfaction, behold this picture that is now here placed, which is the Anatomy of a most perfect horse, with lines drawn from every Member, Directing and shewing all the outward diseases or sorances, belonging to a horses body.

CHAP.


B
C
D
E
F
G
K
K
L
M
N
O
P
S
X
GH

CHAP. II.

Of the Veins belonging to a Horſe, and how many there be.

IT is moſt neceſſary, that every good careful Farrier know all the Principal Veins in a Horſes Body, eſpecially thoſe which in the time of need, or in ſickneſs are to be opened; and therefore to begin, you ſhall know that from the Liver, which is the Fountain of Blood, both in Man and Beaſt, doth ariſe one main great Conduit or large Vein, which aſcending into the body, doth divide it ſelf into thus many ſeveral Branches, or leſſer Rivulets. Firſt within the Palate of his Mouth, above the firſt and third burs, are two notable Veins, which the beſt Farriers do touch and ſtrike when the Horſe hath any Diſeaſe in his Head, Brain, or Stomach. He hath alſo other two which deſcend down from the lower parts of his eyes unto his Noſtrils, and are ever opened for any grief in the Eyes. He hath two others which are above the Eyes, and run croſs the Temples of his head, and are called the Temple-Veins, which are likewiſe opened for all manner of cold Diſeaſes in the head; he hath alſo two great main Veins running along each ſide of the Wind-pipe, even from the uppermoſt joint of his neather Chap down to the Breaſt, which are called the Neck veins, and are thoſe which are ordinarily opened for any diſeaſe whatſoever. He hath then two Veins which ariſe upwards from between his Fore legs to the top of his Breaſt, and are called the Breaſt-veins, and they are opened when the Horſe hath any Fever, or is ſick at heart. He hath other two which likewiſe aſcend from between the Fore-legs, but do not amount ſo high as the Breaſt-veins, but reſt upon the formoſt Bough of the fore-leg, and they be called the Plat-veins, and they be opened either for foundring, or other grief in the Limbs. He hath other two Veins which run down from the Elbow of the Fore-ſhoulder, down all along the inſide of the Fore-legs and are called the Shank-veins, which are opened for Splents, Mallander, or ſuch like. He hath then four Veins which run along the Fetlocks of the horſe, and are called the Shackle-veins, which albeit they are but ſmall, yet they are many times opened for ſtiffneſs in the joynts, or for tyring: then he hath four veins about the cronets in his hoofs, and are called the Cronet-veins, and are opened for foundring in the Feet, or for Ring-bones:

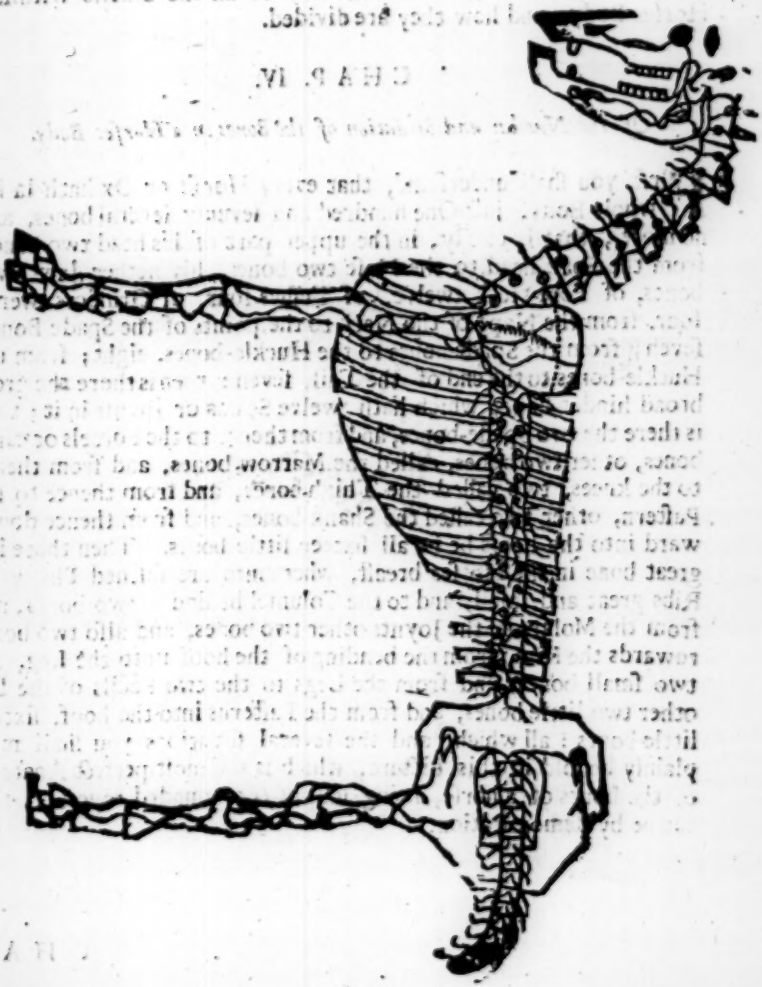
then

then he hath four Veins within his four hoofs, running about his Toes, and are called the Toe-Veins, and are only opened for foundring or frettizing in the Feet: He hath then two main great Veins which deſcend from his Stones along the in-ſide of his Thighs to his Cambrel, and are called the Kidney-veins, which are only opened for Diſeaſes in the Kidneys: He hath then two other Veins which deſcend from above the hinder Cambrels, all along the inſide of the hinder Legs down to the Fet-locks, and are called the Spaven-veins, which are opened for the Blood-ſpaven only: He hath then two Veins in his Flanks, which are called the Flank-veins, and are opened for any grief in the Reins or Fillets: He hath then two veins in his hinder Hanches, called the Hanch-veins, and are opened for any manner of Conſumption of the fleſh, or ſuch like: Then he hath two Veins which run along his ſide, even from the Elbow or the Fore-Leg unto the Flank, and are called the Spur-Veins, and are opened for Feundring or Spur-galling. Laſtly, he hath one ſingle Vein in his Tail, which is called the Tail-vein, and is opened for the ſhedding of the hair or mangineſs. So there is in the Horſe's Body of Principal Veins, which upon occaſion muſt be opened, juſt Thirty ſeven, as you may perceive by this Figure, which is the true Anatomy of all the Principal Veins, and others, in a Horſes Body; where you are to underſtand, that the Letter *A* ſheweth the Temple-vein, *B* the Eye-veins, *C* the Palate-veins, *D* the Neck-veins, *E* the Breaſt-veins, *F* the Plat-veins, *G* the Shank-veins, *H* the Cronet-veins, *I* the Hoof-veins, *K* the Spur-veins, *L* the Kidney-veins, *M* the Spaven-veins, *N* the Flank-veins, *O* the Hanch-veins, *P* the Tail-veins, *Q* and *R* the Fetlock-veins. Now for the other ſmall Threads or Veins, which as it were overſpread the whole Body, becauſe Nature will allow no Part or Member to be empty or void of Blood; they be alſo Veins derived from the other main great Veins, yet of no efficacy or force, but ſuch as upon any neceſſary Inciſion may very well be cut aſunder without any Flux of Blood, or other danger: but for the other Maſter-veins, they may not be cut but with great Peril. And thus much for Veins, which are the Inſtruments of Heat.

CHAP. III.

Of the Sinews in a Horſes Body.

TOuching the Sinews within a Horſes Body, you ſhall underſtand th at from the Brain, which is the principal Fountain or Well-ſpring of Sinews whatſoever, there is derived one great main Sinew or Tendon, which paſſing through the hollowneſs of the neck and back-bone, doth extend it ſelf even to the neathermoſt Joynt of the Horſes ſtrunt: from his main Sinew is derived two ſmall Branches, which paſſing through certain holes in the top of the Horſes Skull, run down along the Horſes Cheeks, even to the point of his Noſtrils: then hath he two other branches, which paſſing through certain holes in his neather chap, knit that and the other together, and ſo run down by his great Teeth, and meet juſt below his neather Lip: Then hath he Twenty eight ſmall Threads, which running through ſo many ſmall holes, in the ſeven Bones of his Neck, knit them faſt together: So likewiſe to knit all his Chine even to the very neather end of his Strunt faſt together, the number whereof is infinite and uncertain: Then hath he two main great Sinews, which extending themſelves over both the Spade-bones, are divided into many Branches, and run down into the Fore-legs, even into the Coffins of the hoofs, and knit every Joynt faſt and ſubſtantially together: Then hath he two other main Sinews, which coming through two holes to the great Columel or flat bones of the Hips or Huckle, do extend themſelves, (being divided into many branches) down both the hinder legs, even within the Coffins of the hoof alſo, and bind all theſe ſeveral Joynts faſt and ſtrongly together. Now laſtly, you ſhall underſtand, that from the ſetting on of the Horſes neck, unto the flat Columel or Huckle-bone, doth extend one great broad Sinew, of three inches broad, being of one only thick and ſmooth ſubſtance, without any one thread or branch derived from it, which not only holdeth together the ſhoulder-blades, but alſo covereth all the horſes Chine quite over, and this of the common Farriers is called Lax-wax: So that a horſe hath in all of main and principal Sinews, from whence a world of other Sinews are derived, juſt thirty eight, as you may more plainly perceive by the Picture aforegoing,



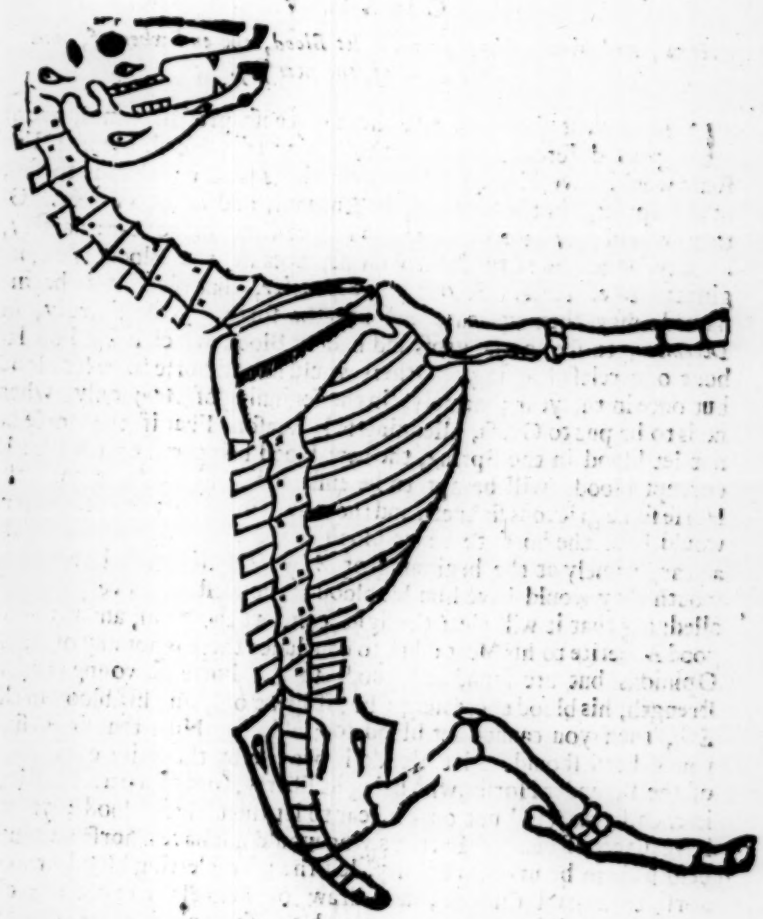
going, which is the perfect Anatomy of all the Sinews within a Horses Body, and how they are divided.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Number and Situation of the Bones in a Horses Body.

First you shall understand, that every Horse or Ox hath in his whole Body, just One hundred and seventy several bones, and no more, that is to say, in the upper part of his head two bones, from the Fore-head to the Nose two bones, his nether Jaws two bones, of Fore-teeth twelve, of Tushes four, of Grinders twenty four, from the Nape of the Neck to the points of the Spade Bones, seven; from the Spade-bones to the Huckle-bones, eight; from the Huckle-bones to the end of the Tail, seven: then is there the great broad hinder-bone, which hath twelve Seams or Joynts in it; then is there the two Spade-bones, and from thence to the Forcels or canal bones, other two bones, called the Marrow-bones, and from thence to the knees, two called the Thigh-bones, and from thence to the Pastern, other two called the Shank-bones, and from thence downward into the hoofs be in all sixteen little bones. Then there is a great bone in the Horses breast, whereunto are fastned Thirty six Ribs great and small, and to the Columel behind be two bones, and from the Molars to the Joynts other two bones, and also two bones towards the Ribs, from the bending of the hoof unto the Leg, are two small bones, and from the Legs to the two Focils of the Leg other two little bones, and from the Pasterns into the hoof, sixteen little bones: all which, and the several situations you shall more plainly behold in this Picture, which is the most perfect Anatomy of the bones of a horse, being simply compounded together, that can be by demonstration.

CHAP.



CHAP. V.

How, and when a Horſe ſhould be let Blood, the end whereof, and the Signs of the neceſſity.

THe ancient Farriers, and thoſe of theſe preſent times, are at great difference touching the letting of a Horſe blood: For ſome would have him let Bloud four times a year; that is to ſay, in the Spring, in the Summer, in Autumn, and in the Winter. Others would only have him let Blood three times in the year: namely, in *May*, when he is turned to Graſs, becauſe the Blood then beginneth to encreaſe. Secondly in *September*, that blood if it be inflamed, may then evacuate and breathe forth. And Thirdly, in *December*, to let go the groſs and knotty Blood which is bred by labour or careleſs keeping. Others would have a horſe to be let blood but once in the year; namely, in the beginning of *May* only, when he is to be put to Graſs, alledging this Reaſon, That if the Horſe be not let blood in the Spring, the new blood being mixt with the old corrupt blood, will be apt to be enflamed, and ſo draw upon the Horſe ſome grievous ſickneſs, and the reaſon is excellent good. Others would have the horſe to be let blood in the Vein not above once in a year, namely at the beginning of *May*: but in the Palate of the mouth they would have him let blood at the leaſt once every month, alledging that it will clear the ſight, comfort the brain, and give him good Appetite to his Meat: but to conclude, there is not any of theſe Opinions but are ſound and good, if the horſe be young and in ſtrength, his blood encreaſing; but if he be old, and his blood in the Ebb, then you cannot let blood too ſeldom. Now that it is fit a young horſe ſhould be let blood, is proved by the daily experience of the Polander Horſes, who being at liberty, (out of natural inſtinct in themſelves) fail not once a year to let themſelves Blood; yet we have divers of our beſt Farriers, who would not have a horſe let blood before there be urgent neceſſity, leſt the uſe of letting blood bring a horſe to an evil Cuſtom, and draw on ſickneſs unexpected; but with that Opinion I cannot agree, becauſe I hold it more vertue to prevent a danger before it come, than to drive it away being preſent. Now that oft letting blood breedeth in a Horſe Weekneſs, and maketh the blood to reſort to the inward parts, cloying the Heart and Intrails, and making the outward parts fat and unweildy, there

is

is no Queſtion but that the letting a Horſe blood twice in the year, namely, at beginning of *May* and the end of *December* (at which times only I would have a Horſe let blood and no other) ſhould be accounted oft, I ſee no reaſon. Now for Stallions the ancient Farriers would by no means have them let blood, becauſe ſay they, the covering of Mares is as great an expence of blood as may be, affirming that one ounce of Seed doth countervail five ounces of blood, and truly I am of that opinion too: but whereas they likewiſe adviſe by no means to let Geldings blood, becauſe the loſs of their ſtones is the loſs of their natural heat; to that I am much contrary, becauſe I have found it by continual experience, that Geldings do as oft dye through the corruption and abundance of blood as Horſes; Nay, and much more oftner, in as much as they want the helps which Horſes have for Purging their blood from uncleanneſs. Now in the letting of Horſes blood, every careful Farrier is firſt to reſpect the Climate under which the Horſe is bred, knowing that thoſe Horſes which are bred in cold Countries, have ever more blood than thoſe which are bred in the hot: then he muſt conſider the time of the year, which would ever be the Spring, or the Fall of the Leaf, both theſe times being moſt temperate, neither exceeding in heat nor in cold. Next he muſt regard the time of the day, which would ever be in the morning faſting, ſo it be not the Horſes waking from ſleep, but at leaſt an hour or two after; then he muſt look unto the ſtate of the Moon, that the Sign be not in that part of the Body where he intendeth to let blood. Next he muſt look to the Horſes age; if he be young, and nor come to his growth, it will hinder his waxing: and if he be old and come to decrepidneſs, his blood had more need be repaired than waſted. Laſtly, he ſhall look to the Horſes ſtrength and ancient cuſtom, and ſo accordingly he ſhall deal with him, obſerving that ſome Horſes may better ſpare two or three pound of blood, than other ſome one pound. Now thus much I have ſpoken touching ordinary and natural letting of blood, without Compulſion of any Sickneſs or Diſeaſe; but in caſe where ſickneſs or infirmity craveth this office of letting blood, there you ſhall neither reſpect Climate, Seaſon of the year, time of the day, Sign, Age, Strength, nor Cuſtom, but ſetting all aſide, apply your ſelf only to the removing of the Infirmity. Now the Signs to know if a Horſe ſtand in need to be let blood are theſe: His Eyes will look red, and his Veins will ſwell more than ordinary;

alſo he will have a certain itch about his Main and his Tayl, and ſtill be continually rubbing them; and ſometimes will ſhed ſome of his Hair alſo: he will now and then pill about the roots of his Ears, or in thoſe places where the Head-ſtall of the Bridle lies: his Urine will be red and high coloured, and his Dung will be black and hard: alſo if he hath red inflammations, or little bubbles on his Back, or doth not digeſt his Meat well, it is a ſign the Horſe would be let blood; or if he hath any apparent ſign or yellowneſs in the whites of his Eyes, or in the inſide of his Lips, either upper or neather, it is a ſign he would be let blood: for after any of theſe ſigns does moſt commonly follow ſome one or other grievous ſickneſs, which to prevent, is the true Art of a skilful Farrier. Now it is meet that when you intend to let a Horſe blood (having leiſure to do the ſame) that you ſuffer him to be thinly dyeted a day or two before he be let blood, to the end that his Body may be quiet, and not troubled with Digeſtion. Now for the manner of letting a Horſe Blood, you ſhall as near as you can, let him ſtand upon even ground, and if it be the Neck-vein which you would ſtrike, you ſhall take a long ſmall Cord with a nooſe, and putting over to the Horſes Neck, as cloſe to the ſetting on of the Shoulder as you can, there draw it as ſtrait as is poſſible, and then faſten it with a running knot, and preſently you ſhall ſee the Veins to appear as big as a Man's little Finger, even from the nether Chap down to the Neck. Now you are to obſerve that the place where you are to ſtrike the Vein, is even within three Fingers or four Fingers at the moſt of the nether Chap: as thus; if your Horſe have a long, fine, thin Neck and Skin, then you may ſtrike the Vein within three Fingers or leſs of the Chap, (ſith the higher is ever the better) but if he have a ſhort chub Neck, with a thick Skin, and many wreaths or rools about the ſetting on of his Chaps, then you ſhall ſtrike the Vein at leaſt four Fingers from the Chap, leſt tho e wreaths, together with the thickneſs of the Skin, do ſo defend the Vein that your Fleim cannot reach it. When you have thus raiſed the Vein up, you ſhall cauſe one to ſtand on the contrary ſide of the Horſe, and with his Fiſt to thruſt the Vein forth hard againſt you: then you ſhall either with a wet Spunge, or with a little Spittle, wet the part of the Vein which you mean to ſtrike, and then ſeparating the Hair, ſet your Fleim even and directly upon the Vein; and then with a good ſmart blow ſtrike it into the Vein: which done, you ſhall cauſe one to put his Finger into the Horſe's Mouth, and tickling him in the Roof there-

of

of, make him chaw and move his Chaps, for that will force the Blood to ſpin forth. Now the Blood which you take from the Horſe, it is very neceſſary that you ſave in divers Veſſels, for divers Cauſes: as firſt, that you may ſee when all the corrupt Blood is come forth, and that when the colour thereof is grown pure, and ſo remaineth being cold, that then you ſuffer the Horſe to bleed no more; or elſe that you ſave it to bathe the Horſe's Body therewith, which is moſt wholſome; or elſe to make a Medicine therewithal, by mingling with the Blood Vinegar and Oil, and ſo bathe the Horſe's Body therewith, eſpecially that place which was let blood. For the ancient Farriers hold an opinion, That it is endued with a certain natural Vertue, and Power to comfort the weakneſs and feeble Members of a Horſe, and to dry up all evil Humours. Now as ſoon as your Horſe hath bled ſufficiently, you ſhall let looſe the Cord, and immediately the Vein will ſtop: then with that Cord you ſtroke down the Vein juſt over the Orifice twice or thrice, which will both cloſe up the hole, and alſo turn the courſe of the Blood. This done, ſet the Horſe up in the Stable, and let him ſtand faſting two or three hours after, and then after dyet him, according as in your diſcretion you ſhall think meet; that is to ſay, if he be a ſick Horſe, then like a ſick Horſe, with good Provender and warm Maſhes: but if he be a ſound Horſe, then like a ſound, either turn him to Graſs, or keep him in the Stable after his ancient Cuſtom.

Now if you would let your Horſe blood either in the Temple-Veins or Eye-Veins, you ſhall then Cord him hard about the midſt of the Neck, and not near his Shoulders, having a care that you touch not his Wind pipe, and ſo throttle him: for it will make both theſe Veins ſhew moſt apparently. If you intend to let the Horſe blood in the Breaſt-Vein, or Plat-Veins, of ſome called therefore Thigh-Veins, you ſhall then Cord him behind the Shoulders, cloſe to the Elbows of the Horſe, and overthwart his Withers, and that will make theſe two Veins ſhew. Now you ſhall underſtand, that not any of theſe Veins laſt ſpoken of, as about the Head or the Breaſt muſt be let Blood by ſtriking them with a Fleim (though it be the manner of our common Smiths) for it is moſt beaſtly and butcherly, and alſo full of much danger by ſtriking through the Vein, (if he be not skilful) but you ſhall with a fine ſharp Lancet open the Vein, even in ſuch ſort as you ſee a skilful Chirurgeon open the Vein in a Mans Arm. Now for the letting of a Horſe blood in the Palate of the mouth

you ſhall but only with a ſharp pointed Knife, prick the Horſe between the ſecond and third Bar, as deep as a Barly-Corn is long, and he will bleed ſufficiently: as for all other Veins in a Horſes Body whatſoever, which are to be opened, you ſhall underſtand, that whenſoever it is needful that they bleed, that then they muſt be taken up and not corded at all Now touching the taking up of Veins, and the manner how to do it, you ſhall read more at large in particular Chapters towards the end of this Book.

CHAP. VI.

Of Outwards Sorantes what they are, and of certain general Obſervations in the Cure of them.

OUtward Sorances, according to my meaning in this place, are taken two manner of ways, that is to ſay, either it is an evil ſtate and compoſition of the body, which is to be diſcerned either by the ſhape, number, quantity, or ſight of the member evil affected and diſeaſed: or elſe it is the Looſening and Diviſion of any unity, which as it may chance diverſly, ſo it hath divers names accordingly. For if ſuch a diviſion or loſing be in the Bone, then it is called a Fracture: If it be in any fleſhy part, then it is called a wound, or an Ulcer: If it be in the Veins, then a Rupture: If in the Sinews, then a Convulſion or Cramp; and if it be in the Skin, then it is called an Excoriation: and of all theſe ſeverally I intend to treat in the following Chapters. Now for as much as in this general Art in Chyrurgery or Sorances, there are certain general Obſervations or Caveats to be held inviolate, I will, before I proceed any farther, give you a little taſte thereof.

Firſt, you ſhall therefore underſtand, that it is the duty of every good Farrier, never to burn or cauterize with hot Iron, or with Oyl, nor to make any inciſion with a Knife, where there be either Veins, Sinews, or Joynts, but either ſomewhat lower or ſomewhat higher.

Item, You ſhall never apply to any Joint or Sinewy part, either Roſalgar, Arſnick, Mercury, Sublimate, nor any ſuch violent Corroſive.

Item, It is ever better to Launce with a hot Iron than a cold, that is, it is better to cauterize than to inciſe.

Item, Blood doth ever produce white and thick matter, Choler a watriſh thin matter, but not much; ſalt Flegm, great abundance of matter, and Melancholy, many dry Scabs.

Item,

Item, When you let blood, you muſt take but the fourth part from a Colt, which you take from a grown Horſe.

Item, You muſt never let Blood, except it be either to divert ſickneſs, and preſerve health, or to refreſh and cool the blood, or elſe to diminiſh blood, or to purge bad humours.

Item, In all Impoſtumes and ſwelling Sores, called Tumors, you muſt obſerve the four times of the ſickneſs, that is to ſay, the beginning of the grief, the increaſe of the grief, the perfection and ſtate of the grief; and laſtly, the declination and ending of the grief.

Item, In the beginning of every ſuch ſwelling Apoſtumes (if you cannot quite deſtroy them) uſe repercuſſive Medicines, if they be not near ſome principal part of the Body; but then not, for fear of indangering life; and in augmentation, uſe Mollifying Medicines, and ſupplying to ripe them; and when they are ripe, launch them and let them out, or dry them up, and in the declination of them, uſe cleanſing and healing Medicines.

Item, All ſwellings are either hard or ſoft, the hard commonly will Corrode, the ſoft will continue long.

Item, If you thruſt your finger upon any ſwelling upon a Horſes Legs, then if it preſently riſe again, and fill, then is the hurt new and recoverable, but if the dent do remain and continue ſtill behind, then is the hurt old, and cometh of cold humours, and asks great Art in healing.

Item, When Sores begin to matter, then they heal, but if the putrefaction be great, then beware they rot not inwardly.

Item, All Cauteriſing or burning with hot Irons, ſtraineth things enlarged, drieth up what is too much moiſtned, diſſolveth things gathered together or hardned, drawe h back things which are diſperſed, and helpeth old Griefs: for it ripeneth, diſſolveth, and maketh them to run and iſſue forth matter.

Item, You muſt ſometimes burn under the Sore, to divert Humours, and ſometimes above, to defend and with-hold humours.

Item, It is ever better to burn with Copper than with Iron, becauſe Iron is of a Malignant Nature, Steel of an indifferent vertue betwixt both.

Item, All actual burnings is to burn with Inſtruments, and Potential burnings is to burn with Medicines, as are Cauſticks and Corroſives.

Item,

Item, If you uſe to blow Powders into a Horſe's Eyes, it will make him blind.

Item, By no means take up any Veins in the Fore-legs, unleſs great extremity compel you: for there is nothing that will ſooner make a Horſe ſtiff and lame. Many other Obſervations there are, which becauſe they are not ſo general as theſe be, and that I ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of them in other particular Chapters, I think it here meet to omit them, and the rather, becauſe I would not be tedious.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Diſeaſes in the Eyes, and firſt of the weeping and watring Eye.

THe Eyes of a Horſe are ſubject to many Infirmities, as firſt to be Rheumatick, or watry, then to be blood-ſhotten, to be dim of ſight, to have the Pin and Web, the Haw, the Wart in the Eye, the Inflammation of the Eyes, the Canker in the Eye, or a ſtroke in the Eye: of all which, ſome come of inward cauſes, as of Humours reſorting to the Eyes, and ſome of outward cauſes, as heat, cold, or elſe by ſome ſtripe or blow.

And firſt to begin with the Rhumatick, or watry Eye, you ſhall underſtand, that, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it doth proceed many times from the Flux of Humours diſtilling from the Brain, and ſometimes from the anguiſh of ſome blow or ſtripe received. The Signs are, a continual watring of the Eye, and a cloſe holding of the Lids together, accompanied ſometime with a little ſwelling. The Cure, according to the Opinion of ſome Farriers, is, to take of Bolearmonick, of Terra ſigillata, and of Sanguis Draconis of each a like quantity; make them into Powder, and then add unto them as much of the White of an Egg and Vinegar, as will make them moiſt: and then ſpread it plaiſter-wiſe upon a Cloath, and lay it to the Horſe's Temples of his Head above his Eyes: and do this three days together. Others uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Veins under his Eyes; then to waſh the Eye twice or thrice in the day with White-wine, and then to blow into the ſore Eye with a Quill, the Powder of Tartar, Sal-gemma, and Cuttle-bone, of each a like quantity: or elſe take the Yolk of an Egg roaſted hard, and mix therewith the Powder of Comen, and bind it hot to the Eye, and ſo let it reſt a night more. Other Farriers uſe to take of Pitch

and

and Rozen, and of Maſtick a like quantity, melt them together: then with a little ſtick, having a Clout bound to the end thereof, and dipt therein, anoint the Temple-Veins on both ſides a handful above the Eyes, as broad as a Shilling, and then clap unto it immediately a few Flocks of like colour to the Horſe, holding them cloſe to his Head with your Hand, until they ſtick faſt to his Head, then let him blood on both his Eye-Veins, if both Eyes be ſore, and then waſh his Eyes with White-wine.

Others uſe only to take a pretty quantity of life Honey, and to diſſolve it in White-wine, and to waſh the Horſes Eye therewith: and ſure if it proceed from any blow, it is Medicine ſufficient enough; but if it proceed from any Rheum, or inward Cauſes, then you ſhall take ground Ivy beaten in a Mortar, and mixt with Wax, and ſo laid to the Eyes like a Plaiſter, or elſe boil Worm wood in White wine, and waſh the Horſes Eyes therewith; alſo to ſpurt Beer or Ale now and then into the Horſe's Eyes, will clear the ſight paſſing well.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoever.

FOr any Blood-ſhotten Eye, proceeding from any cauſe whatſoever, either outward or inward, you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) of Roſe water, of Malmſey, and of Fennel-water, of each three ſpoonfuls, of Tutty as much as you can eaſily take up between your Thumb and your Finger, of Cloves a dozen, beaten into fine powder, mingle them together, and being lukewarm, or cold if you pleaſe, waſh the inward parts of the Eye with a Feather dipt therein twice a day, until the Eye be well: or inſtead thereof, waſh the Eye either with the white of an Egg, or with the juice of Salladine. Others uſe to take the tops of Hawthorns, and boiling them in White-wine, waſh the Eye therewith. Other Farriers take a Dram of Synoper, and as much Life-Honey, as much of Wheat-flower, mix them with fair running Water, ſo they may be liquid and thin, then ſeethe them with a very ſoft fire till they be thick like an Ointment, and therewith anoint the Eye.

But the beſt Receipt that ever I found for this grief, is, to take the Whites of two Eggs, and beat it till it come to an Oil, then put to it

it two ſpoonfuls of Roſe-water, and three ſpoonfuls of the Juyce of Houſleek, mix them well together, then dip therein little round Pleganes or flat Cakes of ſoft Tow, as big as a Horſes Eye, and lay them upon the Horſes Eye, renewing them as oft as they grow hard, and in a day or two it will make the Horſes Eye ſound again.

CHAP. IX.

Of Dimneſs of Sight, or Blindneſs.

DImneſs of ſight, or blindneſs, may happen to a Horſe divers ways, as by ſome ſtrain, when the inward ſtrings of the Eyes are ſtretched beyond their powers, or by the violence of great labor, or by the ſupporting of a great burden beyond the Horſes ability, or by ſome blow or wound: any of theſe are mortal enemies to the Eyes or ſight. The ſign is the apparent want of ſight, and an evil affected colour of the Eye. Now for the Cure it is thus:

☞ If the ſight be gone, and yet the ball of the Eye be ſound, Then you ſhall take, according to the Opinion of ſome Farriers, a pretty quantity of May-Butter, with as much Roſemary, and a little yellow Rozen, with a like quantity of Selladine, then ſtamp them and fry them with the May-butter, then ſtrain it and keep it in a Cloſe Box (for it is a Jewel for ſore Eyes) and anoint your Horſes Eyes therewith at leaſt twice a day; it is alſo good to heal any wound. Other Farriers do uſe to let the Horſe blood in the Eye veins, and then waſh his eyes with Red Roſe-water. Others uſe to take the Gall of a black Sheep and beat it, and ſtrain it, then to waſh the Eyes therewith: others uſe to burn the Horſe under the Eye, that the ill Humours may diſtill forth, and then to anoint his Eye, either with the Marrow of a Sheeps ſhank, and Roſe-water mixt together, or elſe with the Juyce of ground Ivy. Other Farriers uſe to take a Mould-warp and lapping her all over in Clay, burn her to aſhes, and then to take of that powder and blow it into the Horſes eyes. Others uſe to take an empty Egg-ſhell, and fill it with Bay Salt, then burn it till it be black: Then add to it of burnt Allum the quantity of your Thumb, beat them together to fine powder, then mix ſome of this Powder with freſh Butter, and wipe it into the Horſes Eye with a feather, then clap the White of an Egg dipt in Flax over his Eyes: doe this once a day for a Seven-night, and after but once in two days: This is moſt excellent for any Film, and alſo for a Pearl.

Others

Others uſe to take two dry Tile-ſtones, and rub them together, and blow the Powder of it with a Quill into the Horſes Eye four Days together.

CHAP. X.

A moſt rare approved Medicine for any deſperate Blindneſs in a Horſe, proceeding from any Rheumatick Cauſe, Surfeit, Strain, Stroke, or ſuch like.

TAke of Vermillion, Betony and Lavender, and beat them in a Mortar with the beſt Venice-Turpentine, till they come to a thick Salve like Paſte: Then make it into Cakes or Troches, each as broad as a Groat, and dry them: then lay one or two of them upon a Chafingdiſh and Coals: And then covering them with a Tunnel, let your Horſe receive the Smoak up into his Noſtrils, and this do Morning and Evening: and every time you thus Fume him, you ſhall alſo waſh his Eyes inwardly, either with the Water of Eye-bright ſimply, or with the Water of Eye-bright, and the Juice of Ground Ivy mixt together. Now I have known many to miſtake this Ground Ivy, and ſuppoſe that the Ivy which is common, and runs along on the Ground to be Ground Ivy, but it is not ſo: For Ground-Ivy is a Weed which commonly grows in bottoms of Hedges by Ditch-ſides, in good big tufts, it hath a little round rough Leaf, and is jagged on the Edges, and of all Simples none is more Soverain for the Eyes.

CHAP. XI.

Another moſt excellent and approved Receipt for any deſperate Blindneſs in a Horſe or any Beaſt whatſoever.

TAke the Shells of half a dozen Eggs, and cleanſe away the inner Film from them ſo clean as may be, then lay thoſe ſhells between two clean Tiles, and ſo lay them in hot glowing Embers, and cover them all over, and on every ſide, and ſo let them lye a good ſpace till the Shells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the Shells to fine Powder, then ſearce it through a Laun to fine Duſt, then with a Gooſe-quill blow this Powder into the Horſes Eye that is offended with Pin, VVeb, Film, or any thickneſs or foulneſs, and it is a certain Cure, and this do Morning, Noon, and Night.

But if it be for any watred or inflamed Eye, for any Bruiſe, Stripe, Lunatick, or deſcending Humours, then take a ſpoonful and a half of fine ſearced Powder of white Sugar-Candy, and mix it with the former Powder of Shells: then with as much May-butter, (if you can get it) or for want thereof, the beſt Sweet-Butter, without Salt. Work all into a gentle Salve, and therewith anoint the Horſes Eye, Morning, Noon, and Night, for it cleanſeth, purgeth, comforteth and cooleth.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Pearl, Pin, Web, or any ſpot in a Horſes Eye.

THe Pearl, the Pin, the Web, or any unnatural ſpot, or thick Film over a Horſes Eye, proceedeth, for the moſt part, from ſome ſtroke received, yet the Pearl, which is a little round, thick, white Spot like a Pearl, growing on the ſight of the Horſes Eye, comes many times from natural cauſes, and even from deſcent of Syre and Dam, as I have often found by experience. The ſign is, the apparent ſight of the Infirmity, and the Cure according to the Opinion of the moſt Ancient Farriers is, To take ſix Leaves of ground-Ivy, and a bunch of Selladine, and bray them in a Mortar, with a ſpoonful or two of Womans Milk, and then ſtrain it through a clean Linnen-Cloth, and put it into a cloſe Glaſs, and then drop of it as much into the Horſes Eye at a time, as will fill half a Hazle-Nut-ſhell; and it is the fitteſt to be done at Night only. Do this thrice at the leaſt, and for three Days after, keep the Horſe as much as may be from any Light. Other Farriers uſe to anoint the Horſes Eyes with the Marrow of Goats Shanks, and Deers Shanks, and Roſe-water mixt together, or elſe to waſh his Eyes with the Juice of the Berries and Leaves of Ground Ivy, or other Ivy mixt with White-wine; and to blow into his Eyes the Powder of Black Flint, or of Land-Oyſters: but that Powder muſt be made ſo exceeding fine, as by Art of Searcing can any ways be brought to paſs: And for the taking away of any Film or Pearl, there is no Medicine more Soverain. There be other Farriers which uſe to take the lean of a Gammon of Bacon, and dry it, and thereof make a Powder and blow it into the Horſes Eye. Others uſe to take white Ginger made into very fine Powder, and blow it into the Horſes Eyes; yet before you do ſo, if the Web have continued any long time, it ſhall

not

not be amiſs, Firſt to anoint the Horſes Eye with Capons greaſe. Others uſe to blow into the Horſes Eye, the Powder of Elder-leaves dryed, or elſe the Powder of Mans dung dryed; or the Powder of a Grey Whet-ſtone mixt with the Oyl of Honey, and put into the Horſes Eye: others uſe to take the Yolk of an Egg with Salt burnt and beaten to Powder, and blow into the Horſes Eye: or elſe the Powder of the Cuttle-bone. Others uſe to take either Elder-leaves dryed, or Mans dung dried, and mix it with the Powder of the Shell or Bone of the Crab-Fiſh, and blow it into the Horſes Eye. Others take Tutte beaten to Powder, and with a Quill blow it juſt upon the Pearl.

Other Farriers uſe to take (and ſure it is not inferiour, but better than any Medicine whatſoever) a good quantity of white Salt, and lapping it round up in a wet Cloth, put it into the Fire, and burn it to a red Coal: then taking it forth and breaking it open you ſhall find in the midſt thereof a white Coar as big as a Bean, or bigger: Then pick out that Coar and beat it to Powder, and mix it with a little White-wine, then after it hath ſtood a while, take the thickeſt of that lieth in the bottom, and put it into the Horſes Eye, and with the thin, waſh his Eye; do thus once a Day till the Pearl be conſumed.

Others uſe to take the Juice of Rue, and put it into the Horſes Eye: or elſe to make an hole in an Egg, and put forth all that is within it, and fill the Shell with Pepper, and cloſing it in an Earthen Pot, put it into a hot burning Oven till it be quite hot, then take it forth, and beat the Pepper to Powder, and blow thereof into the Horſes Eye. Others uſe to take of Pumiſtone, of Tartarum, and Sal-gemma, of each a like weight, and being beaten into very fine Powder, to blow a little of that into the Horſes Eye, continuing ſo to do till the Eye be well. Others uſe only to blow the powder of Sandevoir into the Horſes Eye, affirming that it alone hath ſufficient force and vertue to break any Pearl or Web in a ſhort ſpace, without any other compoſition: But ſurely I have found the powder of Flint, and the Powder of white Salt burnt, to be much ſtronger.

CHAP. XIII.

A moſt excellent and infallible Cure for any Pin, Web, Pearl, or Spot in a Horſes Eye.

℞ TAke an Egg, and make a hole in the top, put out half the White, then fill up the empty place with Salt and Ginger finely mixt together, then Roaſt the Egg extream hard, ſo as you may beat it to fine Powder, having formerly lapt it in a wet Cloath, then Morning and Evening, after you have waſht the Horſes Eye with the Juice of Ground-Ivy, or Eye-bright water, you ſhall blow of this Powder therein, and it is a certain Remedy.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Haw in a Horſes Eye.

THe Haw is a Griſtle growing betwixt the nether Eye-lid and the Eye, and it covereth ſometimes, more than the one half of the Eye. It proceeds of groſs and tough Flegmy humours, which deſcending down from the Head, and knitting together, do in the end, grow to a Horn or hard Griſtle. The ſigns thereof are a watring of the Eye, and an unwilling opening of the nether Lid, beſides an apparent ſhew of the Haw it ſelf, if with your Thumb you do put down the nether Lid of the Horſes Eye. The Cure is, take a Needle and a double Thread, put it through the tip of the Horſes Ear, which done, put the Needle likewiſe through the upper Eye-lid of the Horſe upwards, and ſo draw up the Eye-lid, and faſten it to the Ear, then with your Thumb put down the nether Lid, and you ſhall plainly ſee the Haw: Then thruſt your Needle through the Edge of the Haw, and with the Thread draw it out, ſo as you may lap it about your finger, then faſten the Thread about your little finger, to hold it conſtantly, and then with a very ſharp Knife, cut croſs the Griſtle of the inſide next the Horſes Eye, and ſo ſeparating the Skin and the Fat from the Griſtle, cut the Griſtle quite out; then cutting your Threds draw them clean out, both of the Eye-lids, and out of the Haw: then waſh all the Horſes Eye either with Ale, Beer, or White-wine, and pluck away all the long Hairs from about the Horſes Eyes, being ſure to leave no Blood within the Horſes Eye. And in this manner of Cure, you muſt obſerve, that by no means you cut away too much

much of the wash or fat by the Haw, or any part of the black that groweth about the end of the Haw, for that will make the Horse Blear-eyed; there be other Farriers which use after they have cut out the Haw, to Anoint the Eye six Days after with Sallet-Oyl, the Marrow of Sheeps Shanks and salt mixt together.

Others do take the Juice of Ground-Ivy stampt in a Mortar, with the Juice of Ivy-berries, and mix them either with Water or White-wine, and so Plaister-wise lay it to the Horses Eye, renewing it Morning and Evening, and it will eat away the Haw. Others use after the Haw is cut away, to lay to the Eye a Plaister of Camomil and of Honey beaten together; any of all which is sufficient enough. Now you are to note by the way, that the Horse which hath one Haw, commonly hath two, for they continually go together.

CHAP. XV.

Of Moon-Eyes, or Lunatick-Eyes.

THe Moon-Eyes, or Lunatick-Eyes, are of all sore Eyes the most dangerous and noisome, and do proceed from hot Humours, descending from the Head, and stirred up by the extremity of over-riding or compelling a Horse to do more then nature will give him leave; as I have seen a Slothful and Heavy Horse brought to be Moon-eyed by the Folly of his Rider, who would force him to stand and Trot, contrary to the vigour of his Spirit: So likewise I have seen delicate Metl'd Horses brought to be Moon-eyed, when the Riders would not temper the frenesis of their Natures, but have given them leave to run with all violence. Now they be called Moon-eyes, because if the Farrier do observe them, he shall perceive that at sometimes of the Moon the Horse will see very prettily, and at sometimes of the Moon he will see nothing at all. Now the signs hereof are, when the Horses Eyes are at the best, they will look yellowish, and dim, and when they are at the worst, they will look red, fiery, and angry.

The Cure is, To lay all over the Temples of the Horses Head, the Plaister of Pitch, Rozen, and Mastick, mentioned in the Chapter of Watry-Eyes: then under each of his Eyes with a sharp Knife make a slit of an Inch long about four Fingers beneath his Eyes, and at least an Inch wide of the Eye-Veins; then with a Crochet loosen the Skin about the breadth of a Groat, and thrust therein a round piece of Leather

Leather as broad as a two-pence with a hole in the midſt, to keep the hole open: and look to it once a Day, that the matter may not be ſtopped, but continually run the ſpace of Ten Days; then take the Leather out, and heal the Wound with a little flax dipt in this Salve. Take of Turpentine, of Honey, and of VVax, of each a like quantity, and boyl them together, which being a little warmed will be liquid to ſerve your purpoſe; and take not away the Plaiſters which are upon his Temples until of themſelves they fall away; which being fallen, then with a ſmall hot drawing Iron make a Star in the midſt of each Temple-vein, where the Plaiſters did lye, which Star would have a hole in the midſt, made with the Button-end of your hot drawing Iron in this ſort.

Now there be other Farriers, which inſtead of the ſlits under the Eye, and the pieces of Leather, which is a plain Rowel, only take a ſmall blunt hot Iron, and about an Inch and an half beneath the nether Lid, do burn ſome five holes all of a row, according to the compaſs of the Horſes Eye, and do burn thoſe holes even unto the Bone, and then, once a Day anoint them with freſh Greaſe, or Sweet Butter.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Canker in the Eye.

A Canker in the Eye cometh of a rank and corrupt Blood, deſcending from the Head in the Eye, where it congealeth, and breedeth a little VVorm in manner, as it were, the head of a Piſmire, which growethin the nether end of the Horſes Eye next to his Noſeward; it proceedeth many times into the Griſtle of the Noſe, which if it chance to eat through, it will then paſs into the Head, and ſo kill the Horſe. The ſigns hereof are, you ſhall ſee red Pimples, ſome great and ſome ſmall, both within and without the Eye, upon the Eye-lids, and alſo the Eye it ſelf will look red, and be full of very corrupt matter. The Cure, according to the Ancient Farriers, is, to take as much burnt Allum as an Hazle-Nut, and as much of green Copperas, and bake them both together upon Tile-ſtone, and then grind them into powder, and put thereto a quarter of a ſpoonful of Honey, and mix them together, and then with a Clout dipt therein, rub the ſore till it bleed; and do thus ſeven Days together it will cure the Canker. There be other Farriers that for this

Canker

Canker in a Horſes Eye, will firſt let the Horſe Blood in the Neck-Vein of the ſame ſide the ſore Eye is, and take away the quantity of a Pottle of Blood: Then take of Roch-Allum, and of green Copperas, of each half a pound, of white Copperas one ounce, and boyl them in three points of running Water, until the half be conſumed: then take it from the Fire, and once a Day waſh his Eye with this VVater, being made Luke-warm, with a fine Linnen Cloth, and cleanſe the Eye therewith, ſo as it may look raw, and do this till the Eye be whole.

CHAP. XVII.

For a ſtripe or blow upon a Horſes Eye.

IF a Horſe ſhall catch any ſtripe or blow upon his Eye, either with VVhip, Rod, Cudgel, or any ſuch like miſchance, or by one Horſes biting of another when they either play or fight: then for the Cure thereof (if you take it when it is new done) you ſhall only blow into his Eye either the Powder of Sandevoir, or the fine Powder of white Salt, after the Eye hath been waſht with a little Beer: but if the Eye be more ſore, and have continued longer, then you ſhall take a ſmall Loaf of Bread, and pull out all the Crums; then fill the Loaf full of burning Coals, until it be well burned within, then take of that Cruſt and put it in VVhite-wine, and after it is well ſoaked, lay to the Sore, then take Sope-water and cold VVater mixt together, and waſh all the Eye-brows therewith, and if for all that it go not away, then you ſhall let him Blood on the Temple-Veins; and if he do rub or chafe his Eye, you ſhall let him Blood on the Veins under his Eyes, and waſh his Eyes with cold Sope-water; but if his Eyes do chance to look red with the blow, then you ſhall lay unto them a Plaiſter of Red Lead and Sallet-Oyl beaten well together. Others alſo take the Juice of Plantain, ſtamp and mint with VVhite-wine, and ſo laid to the ſore Eye. Others uſe both for this Diſeaſe, or any other ſore Eye, to ſtamp ſtrong Nettles with a little Beer, and then ſtraining it, to ſquirt thereof into the Horſes Eye, twice or thrice together: then to put of the fine Powder of Sandevoir a little in his Eyes, and then be careful to keep the Horſes Eye from VVind or Cold; but if you muſt needs Ride him, then put a VVoollen Cloth before the Horſes Eye; alſo it is not amiſs to let him Blood on his Eye-Veins, and then [illegible] will be ſufficient.

Others

Other Farriers use first to Anoint the sore Eye three Days together with Hens or Capons-grease, to mollifie it: then take a little live Honey, and warming it, wipe it into the Horses Eye with a Feather. Others take the Juice of Plaintain mixt with Honey, or else the Juice of Thyme mixt with Honey, and put it into the Eye. Others use to take the Ashes of an old Shooe-sole burnt in an Oven, and put into the Horses Eye; or else the powder of a Grey Whetstone blown into the sore Eye; both are speedy Remedies. Others use to take the Juice of Smallage, and of Fennel, and mixing them with the White of an Egg, put it into the Horses Eye once a Day till the Eye be whole.

CHAP. XXIII.

For a Wart in the Eye.

A Wart in a Horses Eye, is a Fleshy excrescion, or a Fleshy knot growing either upon the Eye, or upon the edge or inside of the Eye-lids; it proceedeth from a thick Flegm, which descendeth to the Eye, by means that the Horse is too much kept in a dark Stable without light: and this infirmity will make a Horses Eye consume and grow little. The Cure is, To take Roch-Allum, and burn it on a Tile-stone, and then put as much white Copperas thereunto not burnt, and grind them to Powder, then lay some of that Powder just upon the Head of the Wart, and do this once a Day till the Wart be consumed away.

CHAP. XXIV.

For an Inflammation in a Horses Eye.

HOrses may diversly have Inflammations in the Eyes; as by long standing in the Stable, with foul feeding and no exercise, or by Moats falling into his Eyes, or by rubbing, or ab Blood, and such like, any of each will breed an Inflammation or Soreness in the Eye. The signs are itching, and rubbing of the Eyes, and little swelling, with some inability to open the Eye-lids. The Cure is, First to let him Blood upon the Temple-veins, and upon the Eye-veins, and then to wash his Eyes in Milk and Honey mixt together. Others after Blood-letting, will wash the Horses Eyes with Honey and Aloes Epatica mixt together: And others will wash Eyes with Aloes dissolved in White-wine, any of which is approved to be most excellent for sore Eyes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Impoſthume in the Ear of a Horſe.

IMpoſthumes which breed in the Ear of a Horſe, proceed from divers cauſes, as from ſome great blow about the Head, or ſome wringings with a hard Halter, or from ſome evil Humour congealed in the Ears by ſome extream Cold. The ſigns whereof appear plainly by the burning and painful ſwelling of the Roots of the Ears, and the other parts thereabout. The Cure thereof is, Firſt to ripen the Impoſthume with this Plaiſter: Take of Linſeed beaten into fine Powder, and Wheat-flower, of each half a Pint, of Honey a pint, of Hogs greaſe, otherwiſe called Barrows greaſe, one pound; warm all theſe things together in an Earthen Pot, and ſtir them continually with a flat Stick or Slice, until they be throughly mingled and incorporated together, and then ſpread ſome of this Plaiſter being warm, upon a piece of Linnen Cloth or ſoft white Leather, ſo broad as the ſwelling and no more, and lay it warm unto it, and ſo let it remain one whole Day, and then renew it again, continuing ſo to do, until it either do break, or elſe grow ſo ripe that you may Launce it downwards, ſo that the Matter may have paſſage out, then tent it with this tent of Flax dipped in this Salve even to the bottom, that is to ſay, Take of Mel Roſatum, of Sallet-Oyl and Turpentine, of each two ounces, and mingle them together, and make the Horſe a biggen of Canvas to cloſe in the Sore, ſo as the tent with the Oyntment may abide within the Sore, renewing the tent once a Day until it be whole: but if the Horſe have pain in his Ears, without any great Pain or Inflammation, then thruſt into his Ear a little black Wool, dipt in the Oyl of Camomile, and that will eaſe him: But if the Impoſthume be broken before you perceive it, and that you ſee Matter run from the Horſes Ears, then you ſhall take of Oyl of Roſes, Venice Turpentine, and Honey, of each a like quantity, and mixing them well together, warm it luke-warm upon a few Coals, and then dipping black Wool therein, thruſt it down into the Horſes Ear that runneth, renewing it once a Day till the Ear leave running.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Pole-Evil.

THe Pole-Evil is a great Swelling, Inflammation, or Apoſthume in the Nape of the Horſes Neck, juſt between his Ears, towards his Mane, and proceedeth ſometimes from the Horſes ſtrugling or ſtriving in his Halter, eſpecially if the Halter be of hard new twin'd Hemp; ſometimes it proceedeth from evil Humours gathered together in that place, or elſe from ſome ſtripe or blow given to the Horſe by ſome rude Keeper, Carter, or Man of little diſcretion; for that part being the weakeſt and tendereſt part about the Head, is the ſooneſt offended and grieved with Sorances. The ſign of this Diſeaſe is an apparent ſwelling between the Horſes Ears, and on each ſide his Neck, which in continuance of time, will break of its own accord, yet doth ever rot more inwardly than outwardly, from whence it comes that this Diſeaſe is more commonly called of our common and Ignorant Farriers, the Fiſtula in the Neck, than the Pole-Evil; and in truth it is an Ulcer ſo hollow and ſo crooked, and ſo full of ſharp matter, like unto like, that if differeth very little from a Fiſtula, and is of all Impoſthumes, except the Fiſtula it ſelf, the hardeſt to Cure: Therefore I would wiſh every careful Farrier to take this Cure in hand ſo ſoon as is poſſible, that is to ſay, before it break, if it may be.

Now for the general Cure (according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers) it is thus; Firſt, if it be not broken, ripen it with a Plaiſter of Hogs-greaſe, laid unto it ſo hot as may be, and make a Biggen for the pole of his Head to keep it from Cold, which Biggen ſhould have two holes open, ſo as his Ears may ſtand out, and renew the Plaiſter every Day once until that break, keeping the ſore place as warm as may be; and if that you ſee it will not break ſo ſoon as you would have it, then look where it is ſofteſt, and moſt meet to be opened, take a round hot Iron, or a Copper Iron (for that is the better) as big as a Mans little Finger, and ſharp at the point, made like an Arrow-head, and then about two Inches beneath the ſoft place, thruſt it in a good deepneſs upwards, ſo as the point of your Cauterizing Iron may come out at the ripeſt place, to the intent that the Matter may deſcend downward, and come out at the nearer Hole, which would always be kept open: And therefore tent it with a

tent

tent of Flax dipt in Hogs greaſe warm, and lay alſo a Plaiſter of Hogs greaſe upon the ſame, renewing it every day once for the ſpace of four Days, which is done chiefly to kill the heat of the fire: Then at the four Days end, Take of Turpentine half a pound, clean waſhed in nine ſundry Waters, and after that throughly dryed, by thruſting out the Water with a Slice on the Diſhes ſide; then put thereunto two Yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and mingle them well together: That done, ſearch the depth of the hole, either with a Quill or a Probe, and make a tent of a piece of dry Spunge never wet, ſo long as it may near reach the bottom, and ſo big as it may fill the Wound, and anoint the tent with the aforeſaid Cyntment, and thruſt it into the Wound either with that Quill, or elſe by winding it up with your Finger and Thumb by little and little, until you have thruſt it home, and then lay on the Plaiſter of Hogs greaſe made luke-warm, renewing it every day once until it be whole: but if the ſwelling ceaſe, then you need not uſe the Plaiſter, but only to tent it; and as the Matter decreaſeth, ſo make your tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until the Wound be perfectly cured.

Now if this Diſeaſe of the Pole evil have broke of its own ſelf, and by neglecting looking into, have continued ſo long that it is turned to a Fiſtula, which you ſhall know both by the great and crooked hollowneſs inwardly, and by a ſharp thin Water which would iſſue out there outwardly, then you ſhall take (according to the Opinion of the Farriers) of unſlackt Lime, and of Arſnick, of each a like quantity, beat them together into very fine Powder, put thereto the Juice of Garlick, of Onions, and of Wall-wort, of each a like quantity, and of Holly as much as all the reſt, boyl them upon a ſoft Fire, and ſtir them all well together until they be as thick as an Oyntment; then waſh the Sore with very ſtrong Vinegar, and fill the hole full of the aforeſaid Ointment, by dipping a tent therein twice a day; then lay a Plaiſter of Hogs greaſe upon the tent to make it keep in, and uſe this until the Horſe be whole.

Our Farriers uſe to take Orpiment, unſlackt Lime, and Verdigreaſe, of each a like quantity, temper them with the Juice of Pellitory, black Ink, Honey and ſtrong Vinegar, of each a like quantity, boil them and ſtir them well together, until they be very thick, then make thereof ſmall Rouls, and put them into the hollow place of the ſame Sorance. Now you are to note, that both theſe and the laſt

recited Salve before this, are only to kill the Rankerous and ſharp Humour which brings the Sore unto a Fiſtula, which as ſoon as you have killed, which you ſhall know by the Matter, which will be white and thick, then you ſhall heal up the Sore either with the Powder of Savin, or the Powder of Honey and Lime baked together, or elſe by Anointing it with Tar and Sallet Oyl, or freſh Hogs greaſe mixt together. There be other Fariers which for this Sorance do firſt open the Sore with a hot Iron, and then take red Lead and black Soap, and mixing them well with Water till they be good and thick, tent the Horſe therewith till it be whole.

Others uſe to take a quart of Water, half a pound of Roch Allom, four Penny-worth of Mercury, a quarter of a pound of Verdigreaſe, and mixing them well together, waſh the Horſes Sore with this Water till it begin to dry up, and then heal it with the Powders before-named. See further in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, marked thus ☞.

CHAP. XXII.

A true and certain approved Cure for any Pole-Evil whatſoever.

Firſt ſhave off the Hair from the ſwelling, then lay on a Plaiſter of black Shoemakers Wax, ſpread upon white Allom'd Leather, and let it lye till it have ripened and broke the Impoſthume: then take a pint of Wine-Vinegar, and when it is boiling hot, mix with it as much Clay-lome with the Straws and all in it, as will bring the Vinegar unto a thick Poultis, then apply this as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it to the Sore, and renew it once a Day till the Impoſthume be whole.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a Horſe that is Lave-Ear'd, and how to help him.

For a Horſe to be Lave-Ear'd, is as foul a diſgrace and as much deformity to his Beauty, as to want the true proportion and uſe of any outward Member whatſoever. It proceedeth from a natural Infirmity, and is ingendred even from the firſt Conception, and although few of our Farriers either have endeavoured themſelves, or know how to help it; yet there is nothing more certain than that in this ſort it may be Cured. Firſt, take your Horſes Ears, and place them

them in ſuch manner as you would have them ſtand, and then with two little Boards, or pieces of Trenchers three Fingers broad, having long ſtrings knit unto them, bind the Ears ſo faſt in the places where they ſtand, that by no means or motion they may ſtir; then betwixt the Head and the root of the Ear, you ſhall ſee a great deal of empty wrinkled Skin, which with your Finger and your Thumb you ſhall pull up, and then with a very ſharp pair of Scizars you ſhall clip away all the empty Skin cloſe by the Head, and then with a Needle and red Silk you ſhall ſtitch the two ſides of the Skin cloſe together, and then with a Salve made of Turpentine, Deers ſuet, and Honey, of each a like quantity melted together, and made into an Oyntment, heal up the Sore; which done, take away the ſplents which held up his Ears, and you ſhall ſee within a ſhort time that his Ears will keep the ſame place ſtill as you ſet them, without any alteration: and this you ſhall ever find to be as certain and true, as the healing of a cut Finger.

CHAP. XXIV.

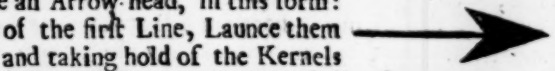
Of the Vives or hard Kernels between the Chaps and the Neck.

THe Vives are certain great Kernels which grow from the Root of the Horſes Ears, down to the lower part of his nether Jaw, between the chap and the neck, they are in proportion, long, narrow and round, and are natural things, proper and due to every Horſe: but when either through rankneſs of Blood, or abundance of corrupt Humours reſorting to that place, they begin to be inflamed, then they become very foul Sorances and Impoſthumations moſt dangerous: they are inwardly very full of little white Salt Kernels, and they breed great pain in the Horſes Throat. This Diſeaſe as far forth as I can find by any demonſtration, is the Diſeaſe which in Men we call the Squinancy or Quinzy, and not as ſome of the old Farriers ſuppoſe, the Strangle, for that hath no coherence with the Infirmity. For the ſigns of the Diſeaſe, there needs ſmall repetition inſomuch as the grief is apparent to the Eye: and the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Oldeſt Farriers, is thus; if you ſee the Kernels begin to rankle and ſwell, you ſhall take the Horſes Ear, and laying it down alongſt the Neck of the Horſe, at the very end or tip of the Ear, cut a hole through the Skin of the Neck, the length of an Almond, or better; and then with a crooked Wire, pick out all thoſe Kernels which you

find

find inflamed: Which done, fill the hole full of Salt: then about the end of three Days, you shall find the sore begin to Matter; then wash it either with Bark-water, or with the Juice of Sage: then take of Honey, of sweet Butter, and of Tar, of each half a spoonful, and melt them together, and as soon as you have washt the Sore clean, put into it of this Oyntment the quantity of a Bean, and so dress the Horse once a Day until it be whole.

There be others of our most Ancient English Farriers, which for this Sorance use First to draw the Sore right down in the midst with a hot Iron from the root of the Ear, so far as the tip of the Ear will reach, being pulled down, and under the root again draw two strikes on each side, like an Arrow-head, in this form:



then in the midst of the first Line, Launce them with a Launcet, and taking hold of the Kernels with a pair of fine thin Pinsons, pull them so far forward as you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the Vein: that done, fill the hole with Salt, and heal it up as is aforesaid. Now most of the Italian Farriers use this Cure: First, take a Spunge steeped well in strong Vinegar, and bind it unto the Sore place, renewing it twice a Day, until the Kernels be rotten: that done, Launce it then in the nethermost part, where the Matter lieth, and let it out, and then fill up the hole with Salt finely brayed, and the next day wash all the filth away with warm Water and a Spunge, and then anoint the place with Honey and Fitch Flower mixt together; but in any case beware, during this Cure, you touch not the Kernels with your bare Finger, for fear of venoming the place, which is very apt for a Fistula to breed in. Now there be other English Farriers, which use either to ripen the Sore by laying to a Plaister of hot Hogs grease, or a Plaister of Barley Meal mixt with three ounces of Raisins, sod well together in strong Wine; or else they cut out the Kernels: now whether you cut them out, burn them out, or rot them out, (of all which, I hold rotting the best,) you shall ever fill the Hole with Nettles and Salt being chopt and mixt together, or else rent it with rents dipt in Water and mixt with Sallet-Oyl and Salt. Others use to burn them downwards with a hot Iron in the midst from the Ear to the Jaw Bone, drawing two cross Strokes, and then Launce it in the midst, and pluck out the Kernels, and fill the Hole with Bay-Salt, and the Crops of Nettles well chopt and mixt together. Or else put only Salt into the Hole, and take the Crops of Nettles well

chopt

chopt and mixt with Bay-Salt; and two ſpoonfuls of ſtrong Vinegar, and ſtrain it, and put in either Ear a ſpoonful thereof, and put ſome black Wool after it, and ſo bind up his Ears.

Others uſe to ripen them, either by laying to the Sore wet Hay, or wet Horſe-litter; and as ſoon as they are ripe, (which you ſhall know by the ſoftneſs) to Launce the Skin, and take out the Kernels, and then fill the Hole with the Powder of Honey and unſlackt Lime mixt together, and burnt upon a Tile-ſtone. Others uſe likewiſe after the Kernels are ripened and taken out, to take of Agrimony, Honey, and Violet-leaves, of each a like quantity, and ſtamping them well together, to Plaiſter the Sore therewith, till it be whole. Others uſe after the Kernels are taken out, To waſh the Sore with Copperas Water, and then to tent the Hole with Flax dipt in the white of an Egg, and after to heal it with Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs greaſe molten well together.

CHAP. XXV.

A more rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives without either burning, melting, rotting, or any ſuch violent extremity.

TAke a Penny-worth of Pepper beaten to fine Powder, of Swines greaſe one ſpoonful, the Juice of a handful of Rue, of Vinegar two ſpoonfuls, mix them all well together, and put it equally into both the Horſes Ears, and tye them up with two ſtrings, or elſe ſtitch them together; then ſhake the Ears that the Horſe medicine may ſink downwards: which done, you ſhall let him Blood in the Neck-Vein, and in the Temple-Veins. And this Cure is infallible.

CHAP. XXVI.

Another Cure for the Vives, moſt certain and approved.

IF in any of the former Receipts you can find either difficulty or doubt, then to make certain and ſpeedy Work: Firſt, ſhave off the Hair from the ſwelled place, and then clap upon it a Plaiſter of Shooe-makers Wax, and remove it not till the Sore break, then renew the Plaiſter, and it will both heal and dry it.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Strangle.

THe Strangle (howſoever our old Farriers make a long Diſcourſe thereof) is not (as they ſuppoſe) a kind of Quinzy, but a mean Inflammation of the Throat, proceeding from ſome Cholerick or Bloody Fluxion, which comes out of the Branches of the Throat-Veins into thoſe parts, and there breedeth ſome hot Inflammation, being ſtirred up either by ſome great Winter-cold, or cold taken after Labour: it is a great and a hard ſwelling between the Horſes nether Chaps, upon the Roots of the Horſes Tongue, and about his Throat, which ſwelling, if it be not prevented, will ſtop the Horſes Wind-pipe, and ſo ſtrangle or Choak him: from which effect, and no none other, the name of this Diſeaſe took its derivation. The ſigns of this Diſeaſe, beſides the apparent ſign thereof, and the palpable feeling of the ſame, is, the Horſes Temples of his Head will be hollow, and his Tongue will hang out of his Mouth, his Head and Eyes will be ſwoln, and the paſſage of the Throat ſo ſtopt, that he can neither Eat nor Drink, and his Breath will be exceeding ſhort. The Cure thereof according to the moſt Ancient Farriers, is, with a round ſmall hot Iron to thruſt a hole through the Skin on both ſides the Wezand, and then after it beginneth to Matter, to mix Butter, Tanners Water and Salt together, and every Day anoint the ſore therewith till it be whole. Others of the Ancient Farriers uſe firſt to Bathe the Horſes Mouth and Tongue with hot Water, and then anoint the ſore place with the Gall of a Bull, that done, give him this Drink, Take of old Oyl two pound, of old Wine a quart, nine Figs, and nine Leeks-Heads well ſtamped and brayed together, and after you have boyled theſe a while, before you ſtrain them, put unto them a little Nitrum Alexandrinum, and give him a quart of this every Morning and Evening. Alſo you may if you will, let him Blood in the Palate of the Mouth, and pour Wine and Oyl into his Noſtrils, and alſo give him to drink the decoction of Figs and Nitrum ſodden together, or elſe to anoint his Throat within with Nitre, Oyl, and Honey, or elſe with Honey and Hogs-dung mixt together. Other Farriers uſe to rowel the Horſe under his Throat, and to draw the rowel twice or thrice a Day, anointing it with freſh Butter, and keeping his Head warm. Other of our later and better experienced Farriers, uſe firſt

(if his years will permit him) to let the horſe blood in the Neck-vein, then to lay to the ſore this ripening Plaiſter: Take of Mallows, Linſeed, Rue, Smallage and Ground-Ivy of each a like quantity, boil theſe together in the grounds of Beer; then put to it ſome Oyl de Bay. and a little Dia Althea, then take it off the Fire, and make of it a Plaſter, and lay it to the ſore, ſuffering the horſe to drink no cold water: after the ſore is broken, lay Bran ſteept in Wine unto it, till it be whole. Others uſe to cut the Kernels out between the Jaws, and then to waſh the ſore with Butter and Beer, giving the horſe to drink new milk and garlick, and the juyce of the leaves of Birch, or in Winter the Bark of Birch, or elſe to anoint it with Tar and Oil till it be whole. Now, for mine own part, the beſt Cure that ever I found for the Strangle, was this.

As ſoon as I found the ſwelling begin to ariſe between his Chaps, to take a Wax Candle, and holding it under the horſes Chaps, cloſe unto the ſwelling, burn it ſo long till you can ſee the Skin be burnt through, ſo that you may as it were raiſe it from the fleſh; that done, you ſhall lay unto it, either wet hay, or wet horſe-litter, and that will ripen it, and make it break, then lay a Plaiſter unto it only of Shoemakers-wax, and that will both draw and heal it. Now if it break inward, and will not break outward, and ſo avoideth only at his Noſe, then you ſhall twice or thrice every day, perfume his head by burning under his Noſtrils, either Frankincenſe or Maſtick, or elſe by putting a hot coal into wet hay, and ſo making the Smoke thereof to aſcend up into the horſes head; or elſe to blow the Powder of Euforbium with a Quill into his Noſe, and ſo note, that whatſoever cureth the Vives, cureth the Strangle alſo.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Cankerous Ulcer in the Noſe.

THat which we call the Cankerous Ulcer in the Noſe, is only a fretting humour, eating and conſuming the fleſh, and making it all raw within, and not being holpen in time, will eat through the Noſe. It cometh of corrupt blood, or elſe of a ſharp hunger ingendred by means of ſome extream cold.

The ſigns are, The horſe will often bleed at the Noſe, and all the fleſh within his Noſe will be raw, and filthy ſtinking ſavours, and matter will come out at the Noſe.

The Cure thereof, according to the ancient Farriers, is; Take of green Copperas and of Alom, of each a pound; of white Copperas one quartern, and boil theſe in a pot le of running Water until a pint be conſumed: then take it off, and put thereto half a pint of Honey, then cauſe his Head to be holden up with a dre ching-ſtaff, and ſquirt into his Noſtrils with a ſquirt of Braſs or Pewter, ſome of this Water being lukewarm, three or four times one after another; but betwixt every ſquirting give him leave to hold down his Head, and to ſnort out the filthy matter; for otherwiſe perhaps you might choak him: and after this it ſhall be good alſo without holding up his Head any more, to waſh and rub his Noſtrils with a fine Clout bound to a ſticks end and dipt in the foreſaid Water, and do thus once a day until the Horſe be whole. Other Farriers uſe, if they ſee this Canker to be of great heat, and burning in the ſore with exceeding great pain, then you ſhall take the juice of Purſlane, Lettice, and Night-ſhade, of each a like quantity, and mix them together, and waſh the ſore with a fine Cloath dipt therein, or elſe ſquirt it up into his Noſtrils, and it will allay the heat.

Others take of Hyſſop, Sage, and Rue, of each a good handful, and ſeeth them in Urine and Water to the third part of them: then ſtrain them out, and put in a little white Copperas, Honey, and Aquavitæ, and ſo either waſh or ſquirt the place with it; then when the Canker is killed, make this Water to heal it: Take of Rib-wort, Betony, and Daſies, of each a handful; then ſeeth them well in Wine and Water, and waſh the ſore three or four times a day therewith until it be whole. Others uſe alſo to take Chryſtal, and beating it into fine Powder, to ſtrow it upon the Canker, and it will kill it.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of Bleeding at the Noſe.

MAny Horſes (eſpecially young Horſes) are oft ſubject to this bleeding at the Noſe, which I imagine proceedeth either from the much abundance of Blood, or that the Vein which endeth in that place is either bro en, fretted, or opened. It is opened many times by means that blood aboundeth too much, or that it is too fine or too ſupple, and ſo pierceth through the Vein. Again, it may be broken by ſome violent ſtrain, cut, or blow; and laſtly, it may be fretted

fretted and gnawn through by the ſharpneſs of the blood, or elſe by ſome other evil Humour contained therein. The Cure is, according to the ancient Farriers, to take the juice of the Roots of Nettles, and ſquirt it up into the Horſes Noſtrils, and lay upon the nape of the Horſe's Neck a wad of Hay dipt in cold Water, and when it waxeth warm, take it off, and lay on a cold one. Other Farriers uſe to take a pint of red Wine, and put therein a quartern of Bole-Armoniack beaten into fine Powder, and being made lukewarm, to pour the one half thereof the firſt day into his Noſtril that bleedeth, cauſing his Head to be holden up, ſo as the Wine may not fall out, and the next day to give him the other half.

Others uſe to let the Horſe blood on the Breaſt-Vein, on the ſame ſide that he bleedeth, at ſeveral times: Then take of Frankincenſe one ounce, of Aloes half an ounce, and beat them into fine Powder, and mingle them throughly with the Whites of three Eggs until it be as thick as Honey, and with ſoft Hair thruſt it up into his Noſtrils, filling the hole full of Aſhes, Dung, or Hogs-dung, or Horſes-dung mixt with Chalk and Vinegar.

Now for mine own part, when none of theſe will remedy or help (as all have failed me at ſome time) then I have uſed this; Take two ſmall whip-cords, and with them garter him exceeding hard about ſome ten or twelve Inches above his Knees of his Fore legs, and juſt beneath his Elbows, and then keep the nape of his Neck as cold as may be, with moiſt Cloths, or wet Hay, and it will ſtaunch him preſently.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Bloody Rifts, or Chops in the Palat of the Horſes Mouth.

THeſe Chops, Clefts, or Rifts, in the Palat of a Horſes Mouth, do proceed (as ſome Farriers ſuppoſe) from the eating of rough Hay, full of whins, thiſtles, or other prickling ſtuff, provender full of ſharp Seed, which by continual pricking and fretting the Furrows of the Mouth, do cauſe them to rankle, ſwell and breed corrupt blood and ſtinking matter, and without ſpeedy prevention that Ulcer will turn to the fouleſt Canker.

The Cure thereof is, (according to the Opinion of the ancient Farriers) to waſh the ſore places very clean with Salt and Vinegar mixt together, then to anoint it with Honey and Allom mixt toge-

ther. Other Farriers use (especially if the palate be much swelled) to prick the roof of the mouth with a hot Iron, that the Humours may issue out abundantly, and then to anoint the place with Honey and Onions boiled together, till they be whole.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Giggs or Bladders in a Horse's Mouth.

THese Giggs, Bladders, or Flaps in a horses mouth, are little soft Swellings, or rather Pustules with black heads, growing in the inside of the horses Lips, next under his great Jaw teeth: They will sometimes be as great as a Wall-nut, and are so painful unto him, that they make him let his meat fall out of his mouth, or at least keep it in his mouth unchawed, whereby the horse can in no wise prosper: they do proceed either of eating too much grass, or haughty rough pricking Hay or Provender, they are most apparently to be felt: And the Cure is (according to the Opinion of the oldest and most experienced Farriers) first to draw out the Horses Tongue of the one side of his Mouth, and then take a Launcet and slit the Swellings the length of a Date, and then with a Probe pick out all the Kernels like Wheat-Corns very clean: then take the Yolk of an Egg, and as much Salt as will temper it thick like leven: then make it into little Balls, and thrust into every hole, and fail not to do so once a day, until it be whole.

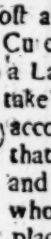
Others Farriers use, after they have slit them with an Incision-Knife, and thrust out the Corruption, only to wash the sore places either with Vinegar and Salt, or else with Allom-Water. Others use with a small hot Iron to burn the Swellings, and then wash them with Beer and Salt, or Ale and Salt, and it will heal them. Now that you may prevent this Disease before it come, it shall be good to pull out the Horses Tongue often, and to wash it with Wine, Beer and Ale, and so shall no Blisters breed thereon, nor any other Disease.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the Lampaſs.

THe Lampaſs is a ſwelling or growing up of the fleſh, which overgroweth the upper Teeth, which are the ſhears in the upper Chap, and ſo hindreth the Horſe from eating. They do proceed from abundance of blood, reſorting to the firſt Furrow or Bar of the Mouth, I mean that which is next to the upper Fore-teeth; it is moſt apparent to be ſeen, and therefore needeth no other ſigns. The Cure is (according to the Cuſtom of the oldeſt Farriers) firſt with a Lancet to let him blood in divers places of the ſwelling fleſh; then take an Iron made at one end broad and thin, and turned up according to this Figure, and heating it red hot, burn out all that ſuperfluous ſwell'd fleſh which overgrows the fore-teeth, and then anoint the ſore place with freſh butter until it be whole: Others uſe, after it is burnt out, only to rub the ſore place with Salt only, or waſh it with Salt and Vinegar till it be whole. Others uſe to take a hooked Knife made very ſharp and very hot, and therewith cut the ſwoln places in two parts, croſs againſt the teeth; but if they be a little ſwelled, then cut but the third rank from the teeth, and ſo let him bleed well: then rub it with a little Salt, and the horſe will be well: but if you find afterwards that either through too much burning, or cutting, or through the eating of too coarſe meat, that the wound doth not heal, but rather rankle, then you ſhall take a Saucer full of Honey, and twelve Pepper-corns, and bray them together in a Mortar, and temper them up with Vinegar, and boil them awhile, and then once aday anoint the ſore therewith, till it be whole.



CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Camery, or Frounce.

THe Camery, or Frounce in Horſes, are ſmall Pimples, or Warts in the midſt of the Palate of the mouth above, and they are ſoft and ſore, they will alſo ſometimes breed both in his tongue and in his lips: it proceedeth ſometimes from the eating of frozen graſs, or by drawing frozen duſt with the graſs into their mouths: ſometimes by eating of moiſt hay, that Rats or other Vermine have

piſt

pitt upon, and sometimes by licking up of Venom. The signs are the apparent seeing of the Pimples, or Whelks, and a forsaking of his Food, both through the sore eis of them, and through the unsavorines and rankness of the Food that he hath eaten before.

☞ The Cure (according to the Opinion of the oldest Farriers,) is, first to let him blood in the two greatest Veins under the Tongue, and then wash all the sore places with Vinegar and Salt: Then get the Horse new Bread, which is not hot, and give it him to eat, and the Horse will do well enough. But take heed you give but a small quantity of such Bread for fear of Surfeit, which is both apt and dangerous.

Others use with a hot Iron to burn the Pimples on the Head, and then wash them with Wine and Salt, or Ale and Salt, until they bleed, and they will soon heal. Other Farriers use to take out his Tongue, and to prick the Veins thereof in seven or eight places, and likewise under his upper Lip also; and let him bleed well: then rub every sore place with Salt well; then the next day wash all the sore places with White-wine warm, or else with strong Vinegar, and rub it again with Salt; then for two or three days let the Horse drink no cold Water, and he will do well.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Canker in the Mouth.

A Canker is said of the ancient Farriers to be nothing but the rawness of the Mouth and Tongue, which is full of very sore Blisters, from whence will run a very hot and sharp Lye, which will fret and corrode, or rot the Flesh wheresoever it goeth. The signs are, the apparent sight of the sore, besides the forsaking of his Meat, because he cannot swallow it down, but lets it lye half chewed between his Jaws, and sometimes when he hath chewed his Meat, he will thrust it out of his Mouth again, and his breath will savour very strongly, chiefly when he is fasting.

This Disease proceedeth oftest from some unnatural heat coming from the Stomach, and sometimes from the venom of filthy Food.

The Cure is, (as the oldest Farriers instruct us) to take of Alom half a pound, of Honey a quarter of a pint, of Columbine-Leaves, of Sage, of each a handful, boil all these together in three pints of running water, until one pint be consumed, and wash all the sore places

places therewith, ſo as they may bleed, and do thus once every day until it be whole. Other Farriers uſe firſt to caſt the Horſe, and with a Rolling pin to open his Mouth, then with a crooked Iron wrapt about with Tow or Flax, to take out all the ſtinking Graſs, or other Meat that lyeth in his Jaws and under the Root of his Tongue; then when you have cleanſed it thus you ſhall heat ſtrong VVine Vinegar ſomewhat warm, and then with the ſame Iron wrapt in Tow, and dipt in Wine-Vinegar, you ſhall waſh all the ſore places till they bleed; then waſh all his Tongue and Lips with the ſame Vinegar, and ſo let him riſe; and then feed him at leaſt ſeven days with warm Maſhes and hot Grains; but in no wiſe with any Hay, and he will ſoon be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to take of the Juice of Daffodil-Roots ſeven drams, of juyce of Hounds-tongue as much, of Vinegar as much, of Allom one ounce; mix theſe well together, and waſh the Canker therewith once a day until it be whole. Others uſe to take of Savin, of Bay-Salt, and of Rue, of each a like quantity, and ſtamp them together with as much Barrows Greaſe, and anoint the ſore places therewith until the Canker be killed, which you may know by the whiteneſs, and then healing it up only with Allom-water.

Others uſe firſt to waſh the Canker till it bleed with warm Vinegar, to take a good quantity of Allom beaten into very fine powder, and mix it with ſtrong Vinegar till it be as thick as a Salve; then to anoint all the ſore places therewith, and do not fail thus to do twice or thrice a day until the Canker be whole.

Now for mine own part, the beſt Cure that ever I found for this Sorance, is, to take of Ginger and of Alom, of each a like quantity, made into very fine powder; then with ſtrong Vinegar to mix them together till they be very thick like a Salve; then when you have waſht the Canker clean, either with Alom-water, or with Vinegar, anoint it with this Salve, and in twice or thrice dreſſing, the Canker will be killed, and after it will heal ſpeedily.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Heat in the Mouth and Lips of a Horſe.

THe unnatural and violent Heat which aſcendeth up from the Stomach into the Mouth, doth not always breed a Canker, but

but ſometimes only heateth and inflameth the Mouth and Lips, making them only ſwell and burn, ſo as the Horſe can take no joy in his Food, but through the grief refuſeth his Meat. The Cure thereof is, firſt to turn up his upper Lip, or that which is moſt ſwelled, and with a Lancet jag it lightly, ſo that it may bleed, and then waſh both that and all his Mouth and Tongue with Vinegar and Salt.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Tongue being hurt with the Bit, or otherwiſe.

IF the Tongue of a Horſe be either hurt, cut or galled by any accident or miſchance whatſoever, the beſt Cure is (as the oldeſt Farriers ſuppoſe) to take of Engliſh Honey, and of ſalt Lard, of each a like quantity, a little unſlackt Lime, and a little of the Powder of Pepper; boil them on a ſoft Fire, and ſtir them well together till they be thick like unto an Ointment: then waſh the Wound with White-wine warmed: after that, anoint the Wound with the ſaid Ointment twice a Day, and by no means let the Horſe wear a Bit till it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the Sore with Allom water, and then to take the Leaves of a black Bramble, and to chap them together ſmall with a little Lard; that done, to bind it with a little Clout, making it round like a Ball; then having dipped the round end in Honey, to rub the Tongue therewith once a day until it be whole.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Barbes or Paps underneath a Horſes Tongue.

THe Barbes are two little Paps which naturally do grow under every Horſes Tongue whatſoever, in the nether Jaw; yet if at any time they ſhoot out, and grow into an extraordinary length, or by the overflow of Humours become to be inflamed, then they are a ſorance, and with the extremity of their pain, they hinder the Horſe from feeding. The Cure of them is, both according to the opinion of the ancient and late Farriers, abſolutely to clip them away with a pair of Shears cloſe to the Jaw, and then to waſh the ſore either with water and ſalt, or elſe with tartar and ſtrong vinegar mixed together, or elſe with vinegar and ſalt. Any of all which will heal them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the pain in a Horſes Teeth, of Wolfs-Teeth, and Jaw-Teeth.

A Horſe may have a pain in his Teeth through divers occaſions, as partly by the deſcent of groſs humours from the head down unto the teeth and gums, which is very proper to Colts and young Horſes, and plainly to be ſeen by the rankneſs and ſwelling of the gums; and alſo he may have pain in his teeth by having two extraordinary teeth, called the Wolfs-teeth, which be two little teeth growing in the upper Jaws, next unto the great grinding teeth, which are ſo painful to the horſe, that he cannot endure to chaw his meat, but is forced either to let it fall out of his mouth, or elſe to keep it ſtill half chewed. Again, a horſe will have a great pain in his teeth, when his upper Jaw-teeth be ſo far grown, as they over-hang the neither Jaw-teeth; and therewith alſo be ſo ſharp, as in moving his Jaws they cut and raze the inſides of his cheeks, even as they were razed with a Knife. Laſtly, a horſe may have great pain in his teeth, when either by corruption of blood, or ſome other natural weakneſs, the horſes teeth grow looſe & ſore, in ſuch manner, that through the tenderneſs thereof, he is not able to chaw or grind his Food. Now for the ſeveral Cures of theſe Infirmities, you ſhall underſtand, that firſt as touching the general pains in a horſes teeth which do come by means of the diſtillation of humours, it is thought fit by the ancienteſt Farriers, firſt to rub all the outſide of the Horſes gums with fine Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar well mixt together.

Other ancient Farriers uſe after they have ſo waſhed the gums, to ſtrow upon them the powder of Pomegranate pills, and to cover the temples of the head with the plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, and Maſtick molten together, as hath been before ſufficiently declared.

Now for the Cure of Wolfs teeth, or the Jaw-teeth (according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers) it is thus: First, cauſe the Horſes Head to be tyed up high to ſome Poſt or Rafter, and his Mouth to be open'd with a Cord ſo wide, that you may eaſily ſee every part thereof: Then take an Inſtrument of Iron made in all the points like unto a Carpenters gouge, and with your left hand ſet the edge of the tool at the foot of the Wolfs-teeth on the outſide of the Jaw, turning the hollow ſide of the tool downwards, holding

your hand ſteadily, ſo as the tool may not ſlip nor ſwerve from the aforeſaid teeth: then, having a Mallet in your right hand, ſtrike upon the head of the tool a good ſtroke wherewith you may looſen the tooth and make it bend inward, then ſtraining the midſt of your tool upon the Horſes neather law, wrinch the tooth outward with the inſide or hollow ſide of the Tool, and thruſt it clean out of his head; which done, ſerve the other Wolfs teeth on the other ſide in like manner, and then fill up the empty holes with Salt finely brayed.

Other ancient Farriers uſe, (and I have in mine experience found it the better practice) only when the horſe is either tyed up or caſt, and his mouth opened, to take a very ſharp File, and to file the VVolfs-teeth ſo ſmooth as is poſſible, and then waſh his mouth with a little Alom-water. Now if the upper Jaw-teeth over-hand the neither Jaw-teeth, and ſo cut the inſide of the mouth as is aforeſaid, then you ſhall take your former tool or gouge, and with your Mallet ſtrike and pare all thoſe teeth ſhorter by little and little, by degrees, running alongſt them even from the firſt unto the laſt, turning the hollow-ſide of your tool towards the Teeth, by which means you ſhall not cut the inſides of the horſes cheeks; then with your File, file them all ſmooth without any raggedneſs, and then waſh the horſes mouth with Vinegar and Salt. Laſtly, if the pain do proceed from the looſeneſs of the Teeth, then the Cure is, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, firſt to caſt the horſe, and prick all his Gums over with a Lancet, making them bleed well, then rub them all over with Sage and Salt, and it will faſten them again.

Others uſe to let the horſe blood in the vein under the Tail, next the Rump, and then to rub all his Gums with Sage, and to give him in his Provender, the tender crops of Black Briers; or elſe waſh all his mouth with Honey, Sage, and Salt beaten together, and by no means let the horſe eat any moiſt meat, for cold, moiſt, and Mariſh feeding in the VVinter, only breedeth this Diſeaſe of looſeneſs in the Teeth, and it is of all other, moſt proper to the Sorrel Horſes.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of Diſeaſes in the Neck and Withers, and firſt of the Crick in the Neck.

THe Crick in the Neck of the Horſe, is, when he cannot turn his Neck any way, but holds it ſtill right forth, in ſo much that he cannot bow down his head to take up his meat from the ground, but with exceeding great pain; and ſurely it is a kind of Convulſion of the Sinews, which proceedeth from cold cauſes, of which we have ſpoken very ſufficiently before; it alſo proceedeth ſometimes from over-heavy Burthens that be laid upon a Horſes ſhoulders, or by over-much drying upof the ſinews of the Neck. The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, firſt to thruſt a ſharp hot Iron through the fleſh of the Neck in five ſeveral places, every one diſtant from the other three inches, (but in any caſe beware of touching any ſinew) then rowel all the aforeſaid places either with Horſe-hair, Flax, or Hemp, for the ſpace of fifteen days, and anoint the Rowels with Hogs-greaſe, and the Neck will ſoon be reſtored. Others uſe, if the Crick cauſeth the Horſe to hold his Neck ſtrait forward, which ſheweth that both ſides are equally perplexed, to take a hot drawing-iron, and draw the horſe from the root of the ear, on both ſides the neck, from the midſt of the ſame, even down the breaſt, a ſtraw deep, ſo as both ends may meet on the breaſt: then make a hole through the skin of the forehead, hard under the foretop, and thruſt in a Cornet upward between the skin and the fleſh, a handful deep; then either put in a Gooſe feather doubled in the midſt, and anointed with Hogs-greaſe, or elſe a rowel of either Horn or Leather with a hole in the midſt; any of which will keep the hole open, to the intent the matter may iſſue forth: and this you ſhall keep open the ſpace of ten days, but every day during the time, the Hole muſt be cleanſed once, and the Feather or Rowel alſo cleanſed and freſh anointed and put in again; and once a day let him ſtand upon the bit an hour or two, or elſe be ridden abroad two or three miles, by ſuch an one as will beat the Horſes head, and make him bring it in; but if the crick be ſuch that it maketh the horſe to hold his head awry upon the one ſide, which ſheweth that but one ſide of the neck is troubled, then you ſhall not draw the Horſe with a hot Iron on

both ſides of the neck, but only on the contrary ſide, as thus; If he bend his head towards the right ſide, then to draw him, as is aforeſaid, only on the left ſide, and to uſe the reſt of the Cure as is aboveſaid, and if neceſſity do require, you may ſplent the Horſes neck alſo ſtrait with ſtrong ſplents of Wood.

I have cured this crick in the neck only by bathing the horſes neck in the Oyl of Peter, or the Oyl of Spike very hot, and then rolling it all up in wet Hay, or rotten Litter, and keeping the horſe exceeding warm, without uſing any burning, wounding, or other violence.

CHAP. XL.

Of the Wens in the Neck.

A Wen is a certain Bunch or Kernel on the Skin, like a tumor or ſwelling: The inſide whereof is ſometimes hard like a griſtle, and ſpongeous like a skin full of ſoft warts; and ſometimes yellow like unto Ruſty Bacon, with ſome white grains amongſt. Now of Wens, ſome are great, and ſome be ſmall; alſo ſome are very painful, and ſome not painful at all. They proceed, as ſome imagine, of naughty, groſs, and flegmatick humours, binding together in ſome ſick part of the body. And others ſay, they proceed from taking of cold, or from drinking of waters that be moſt extream cold; but I ſay, that albeit they may proceed from theſe cauſes, yet moſt generally they proceed from ſome pinching, bruiſing, biting, ripping, or galling, either of girths, halter, collar, or any other thing whatſoever.

The certainest Cure thereof is this, take of Mallows, Sage and red Nettles, of each one handful: boyl them in running water, and put thereunto a little Butter and Honey, and when the herbs be ſoft, take them out, and all to bruiſe them, and put thereunto of Oyl de Bay two ounces, and of Hogs-greaſe two ounces, and warm them together over the fire, mixing them well together: that done, plaiſter it upon a piece of Leather, ſo big as the Wen, and lay it too ſo hot as the Horſe can endure it, renewing it every day in ſuch ſort the ſpace of eight days, and if you perceive it will come to no head, then launce it from the midſt of the VVen downward, ſo deep, that the matter in the bottom may be diſcovered and let out: which done, heal it up with this Salve; Take of Turpentine a quartern, and waſh it nine times in fair VVater, then put thereunto the yolk

yolk of an Egg, and a little Engliſh Saffron beaten into powder, and make a Tent or Roul of Flax, and dip it in that Oyntment, and lay it to the ſore, renewing the ſame every day once or twice, until the Wen be cured.

Others uſe in this caſe, with a hot Iron to burn and ſear away all the ſuperfluous fleſh, and then to heal up the Sore either with the Oyntment laſt rehearſed, or elſe with the Powder of Honey and Lime mixt together; and this manner of Cure is by much the ſpeedier.

CHAP. XLI.

Of Swelling in the Neck after Blood-letting.

THe Swelling of a Horſes Neck after Blood-letting, may come through divers occaſions, as namely, by ſtriking through the Vein, ſo as ſome of the Blood being gotten betwixt the fleſh and the Vein, it there corrodeth and turneth to an Impoſthume, or elſe by ſtriking the Vein with a ruſty Fleam, whereby the Vein rankleth, or by ſome cold Wind ſtriking ſuddenly into the hole, or laſtly, by ſuffering the Horſe too ſoon to thruſt down his head, and graze or feed, whereby humours reſorting to that place, breed a great Impoſthumation: The Cure is, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, to take Hemlock and ſtamp it, and then to mingle it with Sheeps-dung and Wine-Vinegar, and ſo making a Plaiſter thereof, to lay it to the Swelling, renewing it once a day untill it be whole. Other Farriers uſe firſt to anoint the place with the Oyl of Camomile warmed, and then to lay upon it a little Hay wet in cold Water, and bind it about with a Cloath, renewing it every day for the ſpace of a Week, to ſee whether it will grow to a head, or elſe vaniſh away: if it grow to head, you may then launce it, and thruſt out the matter; then heal it up by tenting it with Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, dreſſing it once a day until it be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLII.

How to Staunch Blood.

IF your Horſe either by wound or other accident, or by the ignorance of any unskilful Farrier that letteth him blood when the Sign is in that place, bleedeth ſo exceedingly that he will not be ſtaunched, you ſhall then according to the opinion of old Farriers, lay unto the wound a little new horſe-dung tempered with Chalk and ſtrong Vinegar, and not to remove it from thence the ſpace of three days; or elſe to lay unto it burnt Silk, burnt Felt, or burnt Cloath, any of which will ſtaunch blood. Others uſe to pour into the Wound the juyce of Coriander, or elſe to let the Horſe chew in his Mouth the leaves of Perwinkle. Others uſe to take of bruiſed Nettles, and lay them to the Wound; or elſe wild Tanſey bruiſed, or hot Hogs-dung. Others uſe to take bruiſed Sage and lay to the Wound: or elſe the Coame about the Smiths Forge; or elſe a clod of Earth, or bruiſed Hyſſop; or the ſoft crops of Hawthorn bruiſed; or elſe to take two ounces of the Horſes blood, and boyl it till it come to a powder, and then put that powder into the Wound.

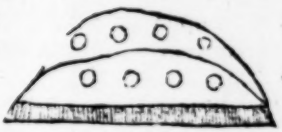
But when all theſe fail, as in ſome extremities I have found them do; then for your only refuge, you ſhall take the ſoft down either of Hares Skin, or a Coney Skin, and ſtop the Wound well therewith, holding it to with your hand till the blood ſtaunch: if it be a grievous ſore Wound, then as ſoon as the blood is ſlaked, ſpread a plaiſter of Bole-Armoniack and Wine-Vinegar mixt over the Wound.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the falling of the Creſt.

THe falling of the Horſes Creſt, is, when the upper part of a Horſes Neck which is called the Creſt, leaneth either to the one or the other ſide, and will not ſtand upright as it ought to do. It proceedeth moſt commonly from poverty and very hard keeping, and eſpecially when a fat Horſe falleth away ſuddenly upon any inward Sickneſs. The Cure (according to the oldeſt Farriers) is, firſt to draw his Creſt well a full ſtraws breath deep on the

the contrary ſide with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron would be half an inch broad, and make both your Beginning and Ending ſomewhat beyond the fall, ſo as the firſt Draught may go all the way hard upon the edge of the main, cloſe by the roots of the ſame, bearing your right hand down-ward into the Neck-ward: Then anſwer that with another draught beneath, and ſo far diſtant from the firſt, as the fall is broad compaſſing as it were all the fall: but ſtill on the contrary ſide, and betwixt thoſe two draughts, right in the midſt, draw a third draught; then with an Iron Button of almoſt an Inch about, burn at each end a Hole, and alſo in the ſpaces betwixt the Draughts, make divers Holes diſtant three fingers one from another, as this Figure doth plainly ſhew you. That done, to kill the Fire, anoint it every Day once with freſh Butter for a week or more; Then take of Mallows and of Sage, of each one handful, boyl them well in running water, and waſh the burning away till it be raw fleſh, and then dry it up with the Powder of Honey and Lime.



Other Farriers uſe for this Infirmity, firſt to caſt the Horſe upon ſome ſoft Dunghil, or other eaſie place, and with a Knife to cut away the fleſh on the hanging or under-ſide of the Creſt, even from the fore-end thereof to the hinder-end, ſix Inches broad and two Inches thick, or ſomewhat more in the middle thereof where it is the thickeſt, then groping the Creſt with your hands, to pare the thickeſt part thereof, till it come all to one thinneſs, then holding the Horſe ſtill faſt bound, to cover all the place with great handfuls of ſwines-dung prepared for the purpoſe, and hold it to the ſore place an hour together, until the blood be ſtaunched: Then let the Horſe ariſe, and lead him into the Stable, tying him in ſuch ſort, that he may neither rub his Neck nor lye down; then the next morning take good ſtore of burnt Alom beaten to Powder, and ſtrow it all over the ſore place, and ſo let him ſtand for two days after, without any ſtirring, leſt the Wound ſhould bleed again; then at the end of theſe two days you ſhall bathe the ſore gently with a fine Linnen Cloath, dipt in warm Urine, and then drying the Sore, again throw more burnt Alom upon it, and after anoint all about the outſide of the Edges of the Sore with Unguentum

quentum Album Camphoratum, more than an Inch broad: thus you ſhall dreſs him every day once on that ſide of the Creſt which did fall; then for the contrary ſide you ſhall draw his main thereon, and plat it in many Flats; which done, you ſhall to thoſe Plats with thongs of Leather, faſten a Cudgel of a foot and a half long: then to the midſt of that Cudgel you ſhall hang a piece of Lead with a hole in it, of ſuch weight as will poize the Creſt up even, and hold it in his right place. Then ſhall you draw his Creſt on that ſide the weight hangs with a hot drawing-iron, even from the top of the Creſt, down to the point of the ſhoulder, making divers ſtreaks one an Inch and an half from another: Then ſhall you lay upon the burnt places a Plaiſter of Pitch, Tar, and Rozen molten together, and ſo let the weight hang till all the ſore places be healed, and there is no queſtion but the Creſt will ſtand both upright and ſtrongly.

CHAP. XLIV.

A certain and approved way, how to raiſe up the Creſt that is fallen.

THe moſt infallible and certain way to raiſe up, and to keep when it is ſo riſen, a Creſt that is faln, is, firſt, to raiſe up the faln Creſt with your hand, and to place it in ſuch wiſe as you would have it, and it ought to ſtand; then having one ſtanding on the ſame ſide the Creſt falleth from, let him with one hand hold up the Creſt, and with the other thruſt out the bottom or foundation of the Creſt, ſo as it may ſtand upright: then on that ſide to which it falleth, with an hot Iron (ſomewhat broad on the Edge) draw his Neck firſt at the bottom of the Creſt, then in the midſt of the Creſt, and laſtly, at the ſetting on of the hair, and be ſure to draw it through the skin, but be ſure no deeper, for this will inlarge and open the Skin.

Then on the other ſide (from whence the Creſt falleth) gather up the skin with your hand, and with two plaiſters of Shoe-makers Wax laid one againſt another at the edge of the Wound, and with ſmooth ſplints to ſtay the skin, that it may ſhrink neither upward nor downward, then with a pair of ſharp Scizars clip away all the ſpare skin which you had gathered up with your hand, then with a needle and ſome red ſilk, ſtitch the skin together in divers places, and

and to keep the skin from breaking, ſtitch the edges of the plaiſter together alſo, then anoint the ſore with Turpentine, Honey and Wax molten together, and the places which you drew with the hot iron, with peece-greaſe made warm. And this do twice a day, till all be whole, and have great care that your Splints ſhrink not.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the Mangineſs in a Horſe's Mane.

THe Mangineſs which is in the Mane of a Horſe, and maketh him ſhed his Hair, proceedeth either from the rankneſs of blood, poverty, or louſineſs, or elſe of rubbing where a mangy Horſe hath rubbed, or elſe of fretting duſt lying in the Mane for want of good dreſſing. The Signs are, the apparent rubbing and itching of the Horſe about the Mane and Neck, and the Scabs fretting both the fleſh and the skin, beſides the ſhedding and falling away of the hair. The cure (according to the opinion of ſome of our old Farriers) is, firſt let him blood on the Neck-vein, and cut away all the hair from the Scabs, then with a hot Iron as big as a mans finger, ſear all the ſore place even from the one end to the other: Then anoint all the place you ſo burnt, with Black Sope, and now and then waſh it with ſtrong Lye and Black Sope mixt together.

Other good Farriers for this Mangineſs only take of freſh greaſe one Pound, of Quick-ſilver one ounce, of Brimſtone one ounce, of Rape-Oyl half a pint, mingle them together, and ſtir them continually in a pot with a ſlice, until the Quick-ſilver be ſo wrought with the reſt, as you ſhall perceive no Quick-ſilver therein: that done, take a blunt Knife, or an old Horſe-comb, and ſcratch all the Mangy places therewith untill it be raw and bloody, and then anoint it with this Oyntment in the Sun-ſhine, if it may be to the intent the Oyntment may ſink in, or elſe hold before it either a hot fire-pan, or a hot Bar of Iron, to make the oyntment melt into the fleſh, and if you ſee that within three days after thus once anointing him he leave not rubbing, then mark in what place he rubbeth, and dreſs that place again, and queſtionleſs it will ſerve.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of the ſhedding of Hair in the Main.

HAir, for the moſt part, ſheddeth or falleth from the Main of a Horſe, by reaſon of certain little Worms which eat and fret the roots of the hair aſunder. The Cure whereof is, firſt, to anoint the Main and Creſt with black Soap, and then to make a ſtrong lye, either of running water, and Aſh-aſhes, or elſe of Urine and Aſh-aſhes, and with that to waſh the Main all over, and it will help him.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of the Pain and Grief in a Horſes Withers.

BOth to a Horſes Withers, and alſo to his Back, do happen many Infirmities and Sorances, ſome proceeding from inward Cauſes, as of the Corruption of Humours, and ſometimes of outward Cauſes, as through the galling, pinching, and wringing of ſome naughty Saddle, or ſome heavy Burthen laid on the Horſes Back, or ſuch like. And of theſe griefs ſome be ſmall, and ſome be great. The ſmall are only ſuperficial Blifters, Swellings, Light-galls, or Bruiſings, and are eaſily cured; but the great are thoſe which pierce to the very Bone, and be moſt dangerous, eſpecially if they be nigh to the back Bone. Then to ſpeak firſt to the ſmaller gallings, whenſoever you ſhall ſee any ſwellings to ariſe, either about your Horſes Withers, or any other part of his Back, the Cure is, (according to the opinion of ſome of the old Farriers) firſt of all if the place be much ſwoln and feſtred, then to pierce it with a ſharp hot Iron in many parts on both ſides of the Neck, and then put into the ſame tents of Linnen Cloth, dipt in warm Sallet-Oyl, and then after to dry and heal it up with the powder of Honey and Lime mixt together.

Others uſe to take Butter and Salt, and to boyl them together until they be black, then to pour it hot on the ſwelling: and then to take warm Horſe-dung, and lay it on the ſore Back until it be whole, dreſſing it once a day.

Others (eſpecially the beſt of the ancient Farriers) uſe as ſoon as they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe, to bind unto it a little hot Horſe dung

dung, to ſee if that will aſſwage it; which if it will not, then to prick it round about the ſwelling with a Fleim, Knife, or Lancet, yet not too deep, but ſo as it may pierce the Skin, and make the Blood iſſue forth; that done, take of Mallows, of Smallage, two or three handfuls, and boyl them in running-Water untill they be ſo ſoft as Pap; then ſtrain the Water ſoftly from it, and bruiſe the Herbs in a treen-diſh, putting thereunto a little Hogs-greaſe, or elſe Sallet-Oyl, or Sheeps-ſuet, or any other freſh greaſe; boyl them and ſtir them together, not frying them hard, but as they be ſoft and ſupple, and then with a clout lay it warm upon the ſore, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling be gone, for it will either drive it away, or bring it to an head, which lightly chanceth not in theſe ſmall ſwellings, except ſome Griſtle or Bone be perithed. Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, when they ſee any ſwelling to ariſe about a horſes back, firſt to ſhave the place with a Razor, and then to lay thereto this plaiſter; take a little wheat flower, and the white of an Egg beaten together, and ſpread it on a linnen cloth, which being laid unto the ſwelling two or three days, and not removed, will bring it to an head; and when you come to take it off, pull it away ſo ſoftly as you can poſſibly, and where you ſee the Corruption gathered in a head together, then in the loweſt place thereof, pierce it upward with a ſharp Iron ſomewhat hot, that the matter or corruption may come out, and forget not to anoint the ſore place every day once with freſh Butter and Hogs-greaſe until it be whole.

Others of our late Farriers uſe, when they ſee any ſwelling, only to lay wet Hay unto it, for that either will drive it away, or bring it unto a head, and then when it is broken, you ſhall lay upon it a Plaiſter of Wine-Lees, renewing it as often as it grows dry, and if your Lees be too thin, you may thicken them with wheat-flower: or if you like not this Medicine, then you may make a Plaiſter of thick Barm, as great as the Sore, and renew it once a day until the ſwelling be aſſwaged, but if you ſee that any Corruption be knit together, then you ſhall launce it in the nethermoſt part, and let out the matter, then waſh the ſore either with Urine, Ale, or Beer, made ſcalding hot: then dry up all the moiſture from the ſore, either with a Linnen Cloth, or with a Spunge: then cover all the ſore over with burnt Alom beaten to Powder: And thus dreſs the Horſe once a day until the fleſh be grown up ſo high as you would

have it, then ſhall you dreſs the ſore but once in two or three days. But if you ſee it skinneth but ſlowly, then may you anoint the edge of the ſore all about after it hath been waſhed as aforeſaid, with Unguentum Album, for that will make the skin come faſt: but if you do perceive that by dreſſing it too ſeldom, there doth begin to grow any proud fleſh, then you ſhall take a dram of Mercury, and mingle it with an ounce of Unguentum Album, and anoint all the ſore places therewith once in two days: This will correct the proud Fleſh, and cauſe it to skin and heal ſuddenly.

Others uſe for the abating of theſe ſwellings, to boyl mallows in the grounds of Ale, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling: and if the ſwelling do break, waſh it with Piſs, and pour hot molten Butter upon it. Others uſe to ſhave away the hair, and then to lay very hot unto it a handful of Leeks ſtampt and mixt with Boars-greaſe, or elſe to take a turf of earth burned red, and laid to as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it. Others uſe to take Nettles beaten to pieces, and mixt with hot Urine, and ſo lay it on hot, and then ſet on the Saddle: and then if after two or three days dreſſing the ſwelling break, then look if there be any dead flesh within the ſore, and either eat or cut it out: then take a pound of freſh greaſe, and a pound of Sallet-oyl, three ounces of white Wax, one ounce of Turpentine, and three drams of Verdigreaſe, melt all theſe together, and tent the ſore therewith till it be whole, for this will both eat away the ill flesh, and incarnate good. Others take green Coleworts and ſtamp them in ſwines-greaſe, and lay it plaiſterwiſe on the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, eſpecially if you ridethe horſe a little to make the medicine enter in. Now if there be no great ſwelling, but only the skin chafed off, then you ſhall wash the raw place with water and Salt, or elſe with warm wine, and ſprinkle upon it the powder of Honey and Lime; or elſe the powder of Mirrh, or the powder of burnt ſilk, or felt, or cloath, or of any old poſt.

Other Farriers uſe when only the skin is galled off, to take a ſpoonful of thick Cream, and to put as much Chimney-ſoot into it as will make it thick like an Oyntment, and then to lay it upon the ſore, and queſtionleſs it will heal it preſently if the Wound be not very deep.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of any Galled Back or Withers, how great ſoever the Swelling or Inflammation be.

IF the Swelling, Pinch, Wringing, or Gall, either upon the Withers, or any part of the Back of a Horſe be extraordinary great, and much inflamed, ſo that there is now no apparent hope that it can be got away without much Apoſthumation: then the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancienteſt Farriers, is, to take Barm, and mix it with ſo much Soot of a Chimney, and make it ſo thick therewith that it ſhall ſeem like Tar, and with that make a Plaiſter, and lay it to the ſore place, renewing it twice a day, and it will very ſuddenly both draw and heal it perfectly.

Others uſe to take a handful of Bay-Salt, and a handful of great and ſmall Oat-meal, and put a quantity of old ſtale Urine thereto, and ſtir them all together, and temper it like pap, or paſte, and then make round balls thereof then throw them in a Fire, and make them red hot; then take them forth and beat them to fine powder, and then ſtrow of that powder all over the ſore, ſo oft as you ſhall ſee any part thereof bare, and it will heal it. Other Farriers uſe if they ſee the ſwelling to be any thing great, firſt to draw round about the ſwelling with a hot Iron, and then croſs him with the ſame Iron, in manner of this Figure: then take a round hot Iron, having a ſharp point, and thruſt it up into the ſwelling on each ſide upwards towards the point of the Withers, or top of the Back, to the intent that the matter may iſſue downwards at both the holes; that done, tent both the holes firſt with a tent dipt in Hogs-greaſe to kill the Fire, and alſo anoint all the burnt places therewith, continuing ſo to do until the ſwelling be aſſwaged, renewing the tent every day once until the fiery matter be fallen away; then tent him again with waſhed Turpentine, mingled with the yolks of three or four Eggs, and Saffron, renewing the tent every day once until it be whole.

But if for all this the ſwelling do not go away, then it is a ſign of ſome inward Impoſthumation, and then it ſhall be good that you launce it, and let out the corruption; then take of honey half a pint, of Verdigreaſe two ounces beaten to powder, and mix it together with Honey,

Honey, then boyl them in a pot until they look red, then being luke-warm, make either a tent or a plaister, according as the wound shall require, renewing the same every day once until it be whole. But the sore may be so vehement, that for want of looking to in time, if it be on the Withers, it will pierce downwards betwixt both the shoulders, even unto the body, which is most dangerous and very mortal; therefore whensoever you shall fear any such hollowness, you shall tent the hole with the Salve last mentioned, and thrust after it a good piece of dry spunge, as well to keep the hole open, as also to suck out the corruption, and this you shall renew once a day until the sore be whole.

Others of our late Farriers use to take Butter, Vinegar, and Bay-Salt, and melting them together, lay it to the sore warm until it break, then strow upon it either Soot, or the Powder of Clay-Wall, but if it be much fetted, then take a pottle of Verjuyce, two penny-worth of green Copperas, and boyl it unto a pint and a half: Then wash and search the hollowness therewith, then fill the hole with red Lead, and so let it remain three days untouched, then wash it with the same water again, and fill the hole again with red Lead, and to every other day wash it with that Water, and lay red Lead thereon, and it will heal the sorest Back whatsoever. Now all these Medicines already rehearsed are sufficient enough for the healing of any gall'd back whatsoever; yet forasmuch as divers Farriers hold divers opinions, and think what they know to be only best approv'd, and inasmuch as you shall not be ignorant of any mans skill or knowledge, which beareth any ground of reason in it; I will repeat you a Catalogue of other Medicines, which assuredly are all good in their kinds, and you may use them as occasion shall be administred.

First then know, that the powder of Briar-Leaves will dry and heal up any galled back. Also Rye flower, the White of an Egg, Honey, Barley straw burnt, and Soot, will dry up, and heal a sore Back: the powder of Honey and unslackt Lime will skin any gall: the powder of wild Cucumbers dried in an Oven, will heal any Gall, provided the Sore be first washt with Vinegar. Onions boyled in Water and laid hot to a swoln horses back, will asswage the swelling; and the yolk of an Egg, Salt, and Vinegar beaten together, will heal it when it is broken, provided that you wash the sore first with Ale, wherein Rosemary hath been sod. The Soot or Grime of a Brass Pot, the powder of the bone of Crab-fish, or the

powder

powder of oyſter ſhels, any of theſe will dry and skin a galled back.

Laſtly, (and beſides if a man needeth no more medicines) for this purpoſe, take clay and work it ſtrong in Urine, and lay it to the ſwelled place and it will either aſſwage it, or bring it to a head, then launce it, and let out the matter; then ſtop the hole with Rozen, Wax, and freſh Greaſe molten together; but if you find any dead fleſh to grow within the ſore, then eat it out with either Verdigreaſe beaten to powder and ſtrewed thereon, or elſe with Mercury calcined, called of ſome precipitate, being likewiſe ſtrowed on the proud fleſh; and when the proud fleſh is gone, you may dry up the ſore only with the powder of Rozen, and nothing elſe. See further of this Diſeaſe in the new Addition for the Fiſtula, marked thus ☞

CHAP. XLIX.

Of a Canker in the Withers of a Horſe.

IF a Horſe after he hath been violently wrung upon the Withers, be ſuffered to go unlooked to, and that the ſore breaketh upward through its own violence, yet the greateſt ſubſtance of the matter or corruption deſcending and rotting ſtill downward, it cannot chuſe but breed a Cankerous and Vile Ulcer, as dangerous as is any Fiſtula, which you ſhall know by theſe ſigns: Firſt, the matter that iſſueth from the ſore will be ſharp, hot, and waterish lye, fretting the hair away where it runneth down, and about the hole of the ſore will be a kind of ſpongeous, proud, dead fleſh, which ſtoppeth the paſſage of the groſs matter. Now the cure of this Cankerous ſore is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take a Razor, and cut open the hole of the Ulcer, ſo that you may ſee into the hollowneſs; then cut out all the dead fleſh till you come to the quick, then take a quart of old ſtale Urine, and put thereto a handful of Salt: then boyl it well on the fire, then having cleanſed the ſore either with a Cloth or a wiſp of Hay, waſh it well with the Liquor: then take the yolks of four eggs, and a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, and a ſpoonful of flower, and make a plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the ſore, dreſſing him in this ſort once a day until it be whole.

Others of our ancient and latter Farriers uſe to take of the ſtrongeſt Beer a pint, put into it a quarter of a pound of Alom, and half a handfull

handful of Sage, ſeeth it to the one half, then take out the Sage-leaves, and with the reſt dreſs the horſe once a day, and it will heal any Cankerous ſore in any part whatſoever.

CHAP. L.

Of the Stick-faſt, or Sit-faſt, Horns, or hard Bones growing under the Saddle.

THeſe Stick-faſts, Sit-faſts, or Horns, that grow in a Horſes skin under the Saddle, is a certain dead Skin like a hard piece of Leather, growing faſt in the fleſh: It cometh of ſome old bruiſe, which not impoſthumating, the skin falleth dead, and ſticketh hard and faſt to the fleſh.

☞ The cure is, Take either a ſharp crooked inſtrument made for the purpoſe, or elſe a long nail, with the point turned inward, and catching hold on the edge of the dead skin, or horn, which will clap or riſe from the ſound skin, and with a ſharp knife cut away all the dead hard skin from the ſound fleſh: and if when it is cut out, the hollowneſs be ſomewhat deep, then you ſhall heal it up by pouring hot molten Butter into it evening and morning: then when the fleſh is made even, dry and skin it either with the powder of Honey and Lime, or with Soot and Cream mixt together. Others uſe firſt to anoint the Stick-faſt or hard Skin with freſh Butter or Hogs-greaſe, until it be mollified and made ſoft, ſo as you may either cut them or pull them away, and then waſh the wound either with mans Urine, or with white-wine, and then dry it up with the powder of Oyſter-ſhels, or Bole-Armoniack.

CHAP. LI.

Of Wens or Knobs growing about the Saddle-Skirts.

THe Wens or Knobs which grow about the Saddle-Skirts, do moſt commonly grow betwixt two Ribs, and do ever proceed of old bruiſes. And the cure is, firſt to mollifie them by anointing them twice or thrice a day with Hogs-greaſe, for more than a week together, and ſometimes to bathe them with hot wine-lees: but if in that ſpace it will come to no head, then launce it from the middle downwards, and tent it with waſhed Turpentine, yolks of Eggs, and Saffron mingled as well together as is before ſhewed, renewing the

the Tent every day once, until the Sore be ſufficiently and perfectly healed. Look unto the Cure for the Splent, and what cureth that, helpeth this.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Navel-Gall.

THe Navel-Gall is, when a Horſe at any time is bruiſed on the top of the Chine of the Back, behind the Saddle, right againſt the Navel, whence it taketh the name: It cometh either by ſplitting of the Saddle behind, or for lack of ſtuffing, or by means of the Crupper buckle ſitting down in that place, or through ſome hard weight or knobs lying directly behind the Saddle: of all bruiſings on the back, it is the moſt vile and dangerous, and you ſhall perceive it by the puffed up and ſpongy fleſh, looking like old rotten Lights about the mouth of the ſore. The cure thereof is, according to ſome of the ancient Farriers, firſt to cut away all the dead or proud fleſh even to the bone, then burn a hole four Inches lower than the navel gall, and put a Rowel of Horſe hair through it: then take the powder of Oyſter-ſhells, or of any old ſhoe-ſole burnt, and ſtrow it on the ſore, and ever as it waxeth moiſt, put on more powder.

Other Farriers for the Navel-gall, do take the white of an Egg, wheat-flower, honey, muſtard and ſoap, of each a like quantity, and mixing them together, make a plaiſter thereof, and after the dead fleſh is taken out, and the ſore waſh'd with Ale, Butter, and Urine, then lay on the plaiſter: and if the proud fleſh begin to grow again then the powder of an old burnt ſhoe, or Nerve Oil, or Verdigreaſe will kill it, and the powder of Oyſter-ſhells will skin it. Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, after they have cut out all the rotten and dead fleſh, to take the white of an Egg and Salt beaten together, and lay that plaiſter-wiſe to the ſore upon a little Tow, renewing it once a day the ſpace of two days; then take of Honey a quarter of a pint, and of Verdigreaſe one ounce beaten into powder, and boil them together in a pot, ſtirring it ſtill, until it look red, and being luke-warm, make a plaiſter with Tow, and clap it to the Wound, waſhing and cleanſing well the Wound firſt with a little warm Vinegar or White-wine, continuing ſo to do once a day until it begin to heal and to skin; then dry it up with ſprinkling thereon this

powder following: Take of Honey a quartern, and as much of unſlackt Lime as will thicken the Honey, and make it like a Paſte, and in a Fire-pan over the Fire, ſtir it ſtill untill it be hard baked; ſo as it may be beaten into powder: but ever before you throw on the powder, waſh the wound firſt with warm Vinegar, continuing ſo to do until it be perfectly skinned. Others uſe to heal this Gall by laying on the ſore, a Plaiſter of Chimney-Soot and Barm mixt together, or elſe mix Nettle Seeds and Sallet-Oyl together, and anoint the Sore therewith.

There be others which uſe only to waſh the ſore with warm Urine and Salt, and then to anoint the place with freſh Greaſe and Salt mixt together, or elſe to take of Bettony, Powder of Brimſtone, Elebor, Pitch, and old greaſe, of each like quantity, and ſtamp them together, and when you have waſhed the Sore with old Urine, then anoint it with this Ointment until it be whole. See alſo for this Diſeaſe in the new Additions for the Fiſtula, thus marked ☞

CHAP. LIII.

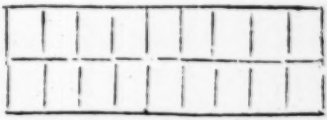
Of the Swaying in the Back.

A Horſe is ſaid to be ſwayed in the Back, when either by too great a burthen, or by ſome ſlip, ſtrain, or over-haſty and ſtrait turning, he hath taken an extreme Wrench in the lower part of his Back below his Short Ribs, and directly between his Fillets; the ſigns whereof are continual reeling and rolling of the Horſes hinder parts in his going, and alſo he will falter many times, and ſway ſometimes backwards, and ſometimes ſide-long, and be ready to fall even to the ground; beſides, the Horſe being laid, will with a great deal of difficulty riſe up again.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Italian Farriers, is, to take of the Fat of the Fruit of the Pine-tree two ounces, of Olibanum three ounces, of Rozen four ounces, of Pitch four ounces, of Bolearmonick one ounce, and of Sanguis Draconis half an ounce: incorporate all theſe well together, and lay it plaiſter-wiſe all over the Reins of the Horſes back, not taking it by any means away until it fall off.

Others of our own Farriers uſe firſt to cover the Horſes back with a Sheep-skin coming hot from the Sheeps back, laying the fleſhy ſide next to his Back, and then lay a warm houſing cloath upon the ſame, to keep his Back as hot as may be, and ſo let it continue until it

it begin to ſmell; then take the old Skin away, and apply a new unto it, continuing ſo to do the ſpace of three Weeks, and if he amend not with this, then draw his Back with a hot Iron right out on both ſides of the ridge of his Back, from the pitch of the Buttock unto a handful within the Saddle: and then again overthwart, according to this Figure, and let every Line be an inch one from another, neither let the ſtroke be deep, and burned no more than that every one may look yellow: Then lay upon the burning this charge or Plaiſter; Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a pound, of Bole-Armonick half a pound made into Powder, and half a pint of Tar, and boil all theſe together in a pot, and ſtir it till every thing be molten, and throughly mingled together, then being lukewarm, daub all the burning therewith very thick, and thereupon clap as many flocks of the Horſes Colour as you can make to abide on, and remove it not before it fall away of it ſelf, and if it be in Summer, you may turn the Horſe to Graſs.



CHAP. LIV.

Of ſpecial Weakneſs in the Back.

ACcording to the Opinion of our oldeſt Farriers (though my ſelf have taken little notice of the infirmity) there is another kind of Weakneſs belonging to a Horſe's Back, which they call the fretting, or bitting of the Reins, which doth proceed from abundance of humours reſorting to that place, whereby all the hinder Parts of the horſe do loſe their feeling and ſtrength, and ſuch a horſe falleth down to the ground; yea, and the humours many times reſorting to the heart, do ſuffocate the ſame, and in two or three hours do cauſe the horſe to dye. The Cure, according to the opinion, is, Firſt to let the horſe blood abundantly in the Neck-vein, and to draw his back with a hot Iron, in ſuch ſort, as is declared in the laſt Chapter, and then to make him ſwim a pretty while in ſome River; then rowel him upon the haunches near unto the huckle-bones, and

then to anoint the ſore place with Hogs greaſe, and three-leaved graſs, ſtamped together, until he be whole.

CHAP. LV.

Of the Swelling of the Cods or Stones.

THis kind of Swelling or Inflammation of the Cods cometh either by ſome wound received, or by the ſtinging, or elſe biting of ſome venemous Beaſt, or elſe by ſome great ſtrain either in running or leaping, or by the biting of one Horſe with another. The Cure is, according to the Opinion of the moſt ancient Italian Farriers, firſt to bathe the Cod with water, wherein hath been ſodden the roots of wild Cucumbers and Salt, and then to anoint it with an Ointment made of Oil, Goats greaſe, and the white of an Egg, or elſe to bathe the Cod in warm Water, Nitrum and Vinegar mingled together, and alſo to be anointed with an ointment made of Chalk, or of Potters-Earth, Ox-Dung, Comin-Water and Vinegar mingled together; or elſe to be anointed with the juice of the herb called Night-ſhade, or with the juice of Hemlock, which grows on Dunghils; and if need require, to let him blood on the flank-veins. But our latter Farriers, who hold that this Diſeaſe cometh oftеſt after ſome ſickneſs, or ſurfeit with cold, being a ſign of amendment from that ſickneſs, do cure it in this ſort; Take of Bean-flower, Wheat-meal, Comin, and Hogs greaſe, of each a like quantity, and making a Plaiſter thereof, ſpread it all over the Horſes Cods and Stones. Others boil Groundſel in Wine Vinegar, and ſo bathe the Horſes Cods therewith; or elſe take a quart of good Ale-wort, and ſet it on the Fire with Crumbs of Brown-bread ſtrongly leavened, and better than a handful of Comin made into Powder: Then with Bean-flower make a plaiſter of them all, and apply it to the grief as hot as can be ſuffered; or if this help not, take Cows Dung, and ſeethe it in Milk, and lay it upon the Swelling as hot as may be, and it will aſſwage it. But if this Inflammation proceed from rankneſs of Seed, which you ſhall ſee by the much moiſt ſlimineſs of his Yard, then you ſhall firſt make him cover a Mare, then keep him without Provender, and let him Blood above the great Vein, which is between his Lips, and lay thereto hard Eggs beaten in his own Dung, and make a Plaiſter of the ſame, and lay it to his Cods, and once a day waſh his Cods with cold water.

Other

Other ancient Farriers uſe to let the Horſe blood in his flank-veins, and then take Oil of Roſes and of Vinegar, of each half a pint, of Bole Armoniack half a quartern beaten to powder, mix them together in a Cruze, and being luke warm, anoint the Cods therewith, with two or three Feathers bound together; and the next day ride him into the water, ſo as his Cods may be within the water, giving him a turn or two therein, and ſo return fair and ſoftly home unto the Stable; and when the Horſe is dry, anoint him again as before, and do this every day until the Horſe be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which hold that this Diſeaſe may come by means of evil humours, and corrupt Blood, which reſort unto the Cods; and the Cure is, To cover all the Cods over with a charge made of Bole-Armonick and Vinegar wrought together, renewing it every day once until the ſwelling go away, or that it break of it ſelf, and if it break, then to tent it with Mel Roſatum, and make him a Breech of Canvaſe to keep it in, renewing the tent every day once, until it be perfectly well.

CHAP. LVI.

Of Incording, or Burſting, or the Rupture in Horſes.

THis Rupture, as our old Farriers call it, this Incording or Burſtneſs in Horſes, is, when the rim or thin film which holdeth the Guts up in a Horſes Body is broken, ſo that the Guts fall down either into the Cods of the Horſe, or into the Horſes flank, as I have ſeen divers. Now this Burſtneſs cometh either by ſome ſtripe or blow of another horſe, or elſe by ſome ſtrain in leaping over a hedge or a ditch, or by teaching a horſe to bound when he is too young, or when a horſe goreth himſelf upon ſome pole or ſtake, or by forcing a Horſe when he is full to run beyond his ſtrength, or by ſtopping a horſe too ſuddenly upon naughty and hollow ground, whereby the ſtradling and ſlipping of his hinder-feet, may ſtretch or tear the rim.

The Signs to know this Sorance before it be apparent to the eye, are, The Horſe will forſake his Meat, and ſtand ſhoaring or leaning always on that ſide he is hurt; and on that ſide, if you ſearch with your hand betwixt the Stone and the Thigh, upward to the Body, and ſomewhat above the Stone, you ſhall find the Gut it ſelf big and hard in the feeling, whereas on the other ſide you ſhall find no ſuch thing.

Now

Now for the Cure, although for mine own part I both do and ſhall ever hold it uncurable as long as a Horſe is a Beaſt without reaſon, yet for your ſatisfaction, I will not ſtick to repeat what the beſt Farriers, and my ſelf have practiſed, in as much as it worketh much good, though no abſolute Cure.

The Cure then is, to bring the Horſe into ſome houſe or place which hath over-head a ſtrong baulk or beam going overthwart, and ſtrow that place thick with ſtraw, then put on four ſtrong paſterns, with four rings on his Feet, and faſten one end of a long rope to one of thoſe rings then thread all the other things with the looſe end of the rope, and ſo draw all his four Feet together, and caſt him on the ſtraw; that done, caſt the rope over the baulk, and hoiſt the horſe ſo as he may lye flat on his Back, with his Legs upward without ſtrugling, then bathe his Stones well with warm water and butter molten together, and the Stones being ſomewhat warm and well mollified, raiſe them up from the Body with both your hands, being cloſed by the fingers cloſe together, and holding the Stones in your hands in ſuch manner, work down the Gut into the Body of the horſe, by ſtriking it downwards continually with your two thumbs, one labouring immediately after another, until you perceive that ſide of the Stone to be ſo ſmall as the other; and ſo having returned the Gut into his right place, take a Liſt of two fingers broad, throughly anointed with freſh butter, and tye his Stones both together with the ſame, ſo nigh the Body as may be, yet not over hard, but ſo as you may put your finger between: that done, take the horſe quietly down, and lead him gently into the Stable, where he muſt ſtand warm, and not be ſtirred for the ſpace of three Weeks: But forget not the next day, after you have placed his Gut in its true place, to unlooſen the Liſt and take it away, and as well at that time, as every Day once or twice after, to caſt a Diſh or two of cold water up into his Tods, and that will make him to ſhrink up his Stones, and thereby reſtrain the Gut from falling down; and at the three weeks end, to make your Cure ſo much the ſurer, it were not amiſs to geld the Stone on that ſide away, ſo ſhall he hardly be burſten again on that ſide; and during the Cure, let him not eat much, nor drink much, and let his drink be always warm.

CHAP.

CHAP. LVII.

Of the Botch in the Groins of a Horſe.

IT is the opinion of the beſt Horſleaches, that if a groſs Horſe which is full of humours, be ſuddenly and violently laboured, that then the humours will reſort into the weakeſt part, and there gather together and breed a botch, and eſpecially in the hinder parts betwixt the Thighs, not far from the Cods: The ſigns are, the hinder Legs will be all ſwoln, eſpecially from the Cambrels or hoofs upward, and if you feel with your hand, you ſhall find a great knob or ſwelling, and if it be round and hard, it will gather to a head.

The Cure according to the general practice, is, firſt, to ripen it with this Plaiſter; take of Wheat-flower, of Turpentine, and of honey of each like quantity, ſtirring it together to make a ſtiff plaiſter, and with a Cloath lay it to the Sore, renewing it once every day, until it break or wax ſoft: and then launce it, ſo as the matter may run downward, then Tent it with Turpentine and hogs-greaſe molten together, renewing it every day once, until it be perfectly whole.

CHAP. LVIII.

A moſt certain and approved Cure for the Botch in the Groins, or any Impoſthumation.

AS ſoon as you perceive the ſwelling to appear, lay upon it a plaiſter of Shoe-makers Wax, ſpread upon Allom-Leather, and let it lye until the Sore grow ſoft: then open it with a Lancet, or let it break of it ſelf; when the filth is come out, waſh the Sore very well with ſtrong Allom-water, then Tent it with the Oyntment called Ægyptiacum till it be whole.

CHAP. LIX.

Of the Itch, Scab, or Mangineſs in the Tail, or general falling of the Hair.

HOrſes, through the Corruption of blood, or the fulneſs of Rank feeding, or through over heating and labouring, or by the infection of other Horſes, do many times get the general Scab, Itch, or Mangineſs in the Tail, and ſometimes in the Spring-time horſes are often

often troubled with the Truncheon-worms in their Fundament, which will make them rub their Tails, and fret the hair, yet are free both from Mange and Scurf. Wherefore if then you only rake the horſe with your hand, anoint it with Soap, and pull out the Worms, you ſhall cauſe the horſe to leave his rubbing; but if you perceive the hair to ſhed and fall from the tail, through ſome ſmall Worms that grow at the roots of the hair, or through ſome little fretting ſcurf, then you ſhall anoint all the tail with ſoap even to the ground, and then waſh it with very ſtrong lye after, and that will both kill the Worms, and ſcour out the ſcurf; but if much of the tail be fallen away, then you ſhall keep the tail continually wet with a ſponge dipt in fair water, and that will make the hair to grow very faſt. Now if in the horſe-tail ſhall grow any Canker, which will conſume both the fleſh and bone, and make the joynts to fall away one by one, then you ſhall waſh all his tail with Aqua-fortis, or ſtrong Water made in this ſort; Take of green Copperas and of Alom, of each one pound, of white Copperas a quartern, boil all theſe together in three quarts of running-water, in a very ſtrong earthen pot, until one half be conſumed; and then with a little of this Water being made luke-warm, waſh his Tail with a little clout or flax bound to the end of a ſtick, continuing ſo to do every day once till it be whole. But if, as I ſaid before, through the corruption of Blood, Food, or Labour, this Scab, Itch, or Mangineſs, ſpread univerſally into many parts of the tail, you ſhall then likewiſe wash it with the ſame ſtrong water until it be whole.

CHAP. LX.

Of the general Scab, Mangineſs, or Leproſie, over the whole Body.

THe general Mangineſs, or Leproſie, which runneth all over the horſes body, is a cankered filthy ſcurf which covereth the ſame, proceeding from abundance of melancholy corrupt blood, ingendred by infection or unwholeſome Food, or elſe by indiſcreet labour. The ſigns whereof are, the horſe will be all mangy, and covered over with a white filthy ſcurf, full of ſcabs, and raw plats about the neck and flanks, and ill-favoured to look on, and rubbing, ſcratching, and biting: of all diſeaſes there is none more infectious, nor will more certainly kill a horſe if it be not prevented.

Now

Now the Cure, according to the opinion of skilful Farriers, is, Firſt to let the Horſe blood in the one ſide of the Neck-vein, and within two days after on the other ſide of the Neck, and within two days after that, in the Flank-veins, and laſt of all, in the vein under the tail: then waſh all the ſore places with Salt brine, and rubbing them hard with a wiſp of ſtraw hard twiſted, ſo as they may bleed well, and be all raw: that done, anoint the places with this ointment, Take of Quick-ſilver one ounce, of Hogs-greaſe one pound, of Brimſtone beaten into powder a quartern, of Rape-oil a pint, mingle theſe things well together, untill the Quick-ſilver be throughly incorporated with the reſt, and having anointed all the raw places with this Oyntment, make it to ſink into the fleſh, by holding and waving up and down over it, a hot broad Bar of Iron, and then touch him no more again the ſpace of two or three days: During which time, if you ſee that he rubbeth ſtill in any place, then rub that place again with an old Horſe-comb, or a hair-cloth, to make it raw, and anoint it with freſh Oyntment. But if all this will not help, then with a hot Iron round and blunt at the point, ſo big as a Man's little finger, burn all the mangy places, making round holes, paſſing only through the skin and no further: For which intent it ſhall be needful to pull the skin firſt from the fleſh with your left hand, holding it ſtill until you have thruſt the hot Iron through it, and let every hole be a ſpan one from another, and if need be, you may anoint thoſe holes with a little Sope, and let the Horſe be very thin dieted, during his Curing time.

Now for mine own part, I do utterly diſlike this burning, for it is a foul manner of Cure, and breedeth much Eye ſore in the Horſe, and therefore other of our latter Farriers uſe for this Diſeaſe, after the Horſe is let blood in the Neck-vein, to take a good quantity of freſh Greaſe, and mix it well with the powder of Chalk, then put thereto a good quantity of the powder of Brimſtone and Elicampane roots, and ſtir them all well together, and take a pretty quantity of Quick-ſilver, and kill it with your faſting ſpittle, or Sallet-Oil, and mix it with all the reſt very well together, and ſo anoint all the ſore places about the Horſe with this Ointment. Others uſe to take of Lamp-oil, the fine powder of Brimſtone, of black Sope, of Tar, of Hogs-greaſe, and the Soot of a Chimney, of each like quantity, and then mix them all well together, by boiling them on the fire, and then anoint all the ſore places therewith, as hot as

the horſe can endure or ſuffer it, always provided that the horſe be let blood before you uſe the oyntment.

Others uſe, after the horſe is let blood, to take of Oyl de Bay a pound, and of Quick-ſilver one ounce, and mixing them together never leave ſtirring thereof, till the Quick-ſilver be killed and incorporated with the Oyl, then anoint all the ſore places therewith, after you have made them raw by rubbing them.

Other Farriers uſe firſt to let the horſe blood, then to waſh all the ſore places within two days after with Water wherein young Broom, or the Herb Arſmart hath been well ſodden and ſmally chopt and mixt with a little Soot, and rub him well untill the ſore places bleed; then take a pound of black Soap, a pottle of keen muſtard, four penny-worth of Brimſtone made into powder, three penny-worth of Quick-ſilver well killed with freſh Greaſe, two penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, a quarter of a pint of Greaſe, ſtir all theſe together in a Veſſel till the Greaſe and other things be molten with labour, and without fire, and therewithal anoint all the ſore places, and with once anointing, and twice waſhing, this will cure him.

Other Farriers uſe, if the Horſe be young, to let him blood on both ſides the neck, and then to cut the skin down the midſt of his fore-head two fingers in length; then with a cornet open the skin an inch wide on both ſides the ſlit, and put therein thin ſlices of the green root of Elicampane, or Angelica, which is better: ſo let them remain under the skin till the matter rot, then cruſh it forth after two or three days, and in twelve days the roots will fall out as it healeth; but this will cure the Mange, provided that you anoint all the ſore places with the powder of Brimſtone, Verdigreaſe, and Oyl-Olive mixt upon a fire very well together. Others uſe after blood-letting, to rowel the horſe under the neck, that the evil humours may iſſue forth, then to rub all his body quite over with an hard hair-cloth, or with an old curry-comb, until the horſe bleedeth, after that, take of Sulphur, Salt and Tartar, of each a like quantity, beat them and temper them with very ſtrong Vinegar, and as much common Oyl, and therewith anoint all the ſore places: or elſe take very ſtrong Wine-Vinegar, the Urine of a Boy under twelve years of age, and the juyce of Hemlock, mix them together, and waſh the horſe therewithal.

Other Farriers uſe after blood-letting, to anoint the Horſe with one

one of theſe Oyntments, the ſore having been before rubbed till it bleed, either with Brimſtone, Oyl, Vinegar, Salt, Soot, Swines-dung, and unſlackt Lime, of each a like quantity, well mixt and boyled together; or elſe with Brine-Water ſod with Nettles, or elſe with Vinegar, Alom, and Salt-nitre boyled together, or elſe waſh the ſore with Beef-broth, then boyl Pepper beaten to powder, Verdigreaſe, and Chervel in freſh Greaſe, and anoint the horſe all over therewith, holding a Chafing-diſh and Coals, or a hot Bar of Iron to his body, to make the oyntment ſink in.

Laſtly, and as good as any of the reſt, after the Horſe hath been let blood, take an old Curry-comb, or a Wool card, and rub every ſore place about the Horſe till it bleed; then take of the oldeſt Piſs you can get, a Pottle, and of green Copperas three quarters of a pound, mix and ſtir them well together; then ſet them on the fire, and boyl them a while, then as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it wash him with the ſame: After his waſhing is a little dryed, take of Oyl one ounce and a half, of Quick-ſilver two ounces, of white Elleborus one ounce with a good quantity of Swines-greaſe, mingle all theſe well together, till no part of the Quick-ſilver can be ſeen, and then anoint the Horſe all therewith: and if the firſt time doth not cure him, the ſecond will moſt aſſuredly; provided, that during the time of cure, you keep the Horſe with a very thin diet.

CHAP. LXII.

Two moſt excellent and approved Medicines, (eſpecially the latter) for the foulеſt Mange or Leproſie that can poſſibly happen to any Horſe.

TAke Hogs-Greaſe, Bay-Salt, Wormwood, and Rue, of each a pretty quantity, ſtamp them together well in a Mortar, and when it is brought to one entire Salve, ſtop it hard into the Horſes Ears, then either bind them up, or ſtitch them together, that the Medicine may not fall out: and do thus three or four days together, and it will not only cure the Mangy, but any foul Farcy whatſoever.

The ſecond Medicine, and moſt aſſured for the Mange, is, To take freſh Greaſe, yellow and white Arſnick, and mix them very well together till it come to a pale yellow ſalve, then your horſe having been let blood, and all the ſcurf taken away, either with an old

Curry-comb, or ſuch like hard thing, ſo as the ſore places may lye raw, then anoint them all over with this ointment, and let the Horſe ſtand ſo tied, that he may by no means touch any part of his Body with his Mouth, and when he hath ſtood thus two or three hours, then take old Urine warmed, and waſh away all the ointment, and then give the Horſe his meat: thus dreſs the Horſe twice or thrice at the moſt, and it is ſufficient for any Mange whatſoever.

CHAP. LXII.

How to know when a Horſe halteth before, and in what part his grief is.

THere is nothing more neceſſary for any Mans underſtanding, that ſhall have occaſion at any time to uſe a Horſe, eſpecially for the skilful Farrier, than to know the reaſon why a Horſe halteth, and where the grief remaineth, as well becauſe thoſe griefs lye moſt concealed, as alſo becauſe our Kingdom is ſo very full of ſubtle unconſcionable Horſe-coorſers, that they are careful moſt to conceal that which may ſooneſt cozen their Neighbours: you ſhall know then that no Horſe halteth before, but his grief muſt be either in his ſhoulders, in his legs, or in his feet: if it be in his ſhoulders, it muſt either be on the top of his ſhoulder-blade, which we call the withers, or the bottom of the ſhoulder-blade joyning to the Marrow-bone, which is the fore pitch of the breaſt, or in the Elbow of the Horſe, which joyns the nether end of the Marrow-bone and the leg together.

Now for the general knowledge whether the grief be in the ſhoulder or no, look if the Horſe do not lift up his Leg, but traileth it upon the ground, then it is in the ſhoulder, and is a new hurt: If he caſt his Leg more out in his going than the other, and that almoſt with an unbended knee, then it is alſo in the ſhoulder, and it is an old hurt: If you take him by the head-ſtall of the Bridle, and turn him as ſhort as you can poſſibly with both hands, if then you ſee him when he is turned on the lame ſide, to favour his leg very much (as he cannot chuſe but do) then alſo his grief is in his ſhoulder: or if when a Horſe ſtandeth in the Stable, he ſtretcheth out his fore-

leg

leg, and ſetteth it more forward than the other, it is partly a ſign the grief is in the ſhoulder, but not abſolutely.

Now when you know generally that the grief or pain is in the ſhoulder, then you ſhall learn to know in what part of the ſhoulder, as thus: if the Horſe halteth more when the Rider is upon his back, than when he is off, then the grief is in the top of the Withers; if when with your hand you gripe and handle him upon the top of the ſhoulder-blades you find that he ſhrinketh much, and offereth to bite at you (not having any galled back before, for that may deceive you) then aſſuredly the grief is on the Withers. If the Horſe goeth bowing unto the ground, and tread his ſteps very thick, then it is a ſign the grief is in his breaſt, between the nether part of the ſpade-bone, and the upper part of the Marrow-bone, and therefore if with your thumb you preſs him hard in that part, you ſhall ſee him ſhrink, and be ready to fall down.

Now if when you take his Elbow in your hand betwixt your finger and your thumb, and gripe it, the Horſe preſently taketh his foot from the ground and lifts up his Leg, offering therewithal to bite or ſnap at you, then the grief is only in the Elbow.

Now if the grief whereof a Horſe halteth be in his Leg, it is either in his Knee, in his Shank, or elſe in the Paſtorn joynt: If it be either in his Knee or paſtorn joynt, he will not bow them in his going like the other, but will go very ſtiffly upon them: if the pain or grief be in the Shank, then it is by means of ſome Splent, Screw, Windgal, or ſuch apparent grief, moſt apparent to be beheld.

Now if the grief of this halting be in his foot, then it is either in the Cronet, in the Heel, in the Toe, in the quarters, or in the ſole of the foot; if it be in the Cronet, either the grief will be apparent, the skin be broken or ſwoln ſome manner of way, or elſe laying your hand upon the Cronet it will burn and glow exceedingly, and then he hath got ſome ſtrain of the joint within the hoof; if it be in the heel, as by over-reach, or otherwiſe, then it is to be ſeen, and he will tread altogether upon the Toe: If upon any of the quarters, which is to be underſtood from the middle hoof to the heel, then going on the edge of a bank or hilly ground, he will halt more than on the plain ground, and by the Horſes coming toward you, and going from you upon ſuch edge or bank, you ſhall perceive whether his grief be in the inward quarter or outward quarters: Alſo he may halt upon his quarters by the pricking of a Nail, and then you ſhall

with a pair of Pinſons nip the head of every Nail and his hoof together, and where he complaineth, there draw the Nail; and if the Nail ſink, then there is his pain. If he halt in the Toe, which is ſeldom or never ſeen, then he will tread altogether upon his heel: If his grief be in the Sole of his Foot, as by the treading upon ſome nail or ſtub, or by ſurbayting, or ſuch like, then he will halt all after one ſort, upon any ground whatſoever, unleſs it be upon the ſtones, and then he will halt the moſt.

Now to be ſure in what part of the foot the grief is, it ſhall be good, firſt to make him go upon the plain ground, and then upon a hard and ſtony way, and after upon a banky ground; and by taking careful notes, and careful handling him, you ſhall eaſily ſee of what member he halteth.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of Halting behind, and where the Grief is.

IF a Horſe halt behind, his grief of neceſſity muſt either be in his hip, (of ſome called the huckle-bone) or in the hiff, in the hough in the ham, in the leg, in the nether joynt, in the paſtorn, or in the Foot. If he halt in the hip of any new hurt, the horſe will go ſidelong, and not follow ſo well with that Leg as with the other, neither will he be able to turn upon that ſide without much ſavouring of his Leg: But if it be any old hurt, then the ſore hip will ſhrink, and be lower than the other; and it is beſt ſeen when he goeth up a hill, or upon the edge of ſome bank, ſo as the worſt Leg may go on the higher ſide, for then he will halt ſo much the more, becauſe it is very painful unto him to go ſo unevenly wrinching his Leg; if the grief be in the ſtiff, then the horſe in his going will caſt the ſtiff joynt outward, and the bone on the inſide will be ſomewhat bigger than the other, neither can he any more than touch the ground with his Toe: If his grief be in his hoof, then it is by means of ſome Spaven, which is apparent both to be ſeen and felt, or elſe ſome ſtrain or blow, and then the ſwelling will moſt evidently appear: and the like is to be ſaid of the Ham, wherein may be ſeen the Sellander, or ſuch like apparent Sorance, cauſing the Horſe to halt: If the grief be either in the Leg, Paſtorn, or Foot, you ſhall find it by ſuch ſigns as have been taught you in the former Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXIV.

How to know if a Horſe hath any hidden Grief in him that maketh him to halt when he cometh to Travel, and whence it proceeds.

NOw foraſmuch as there are ſome Horſes which through long reſt and running at Graſs will wear out the worſt of their Griefs, ſo that when they come to be but gently ridden, they will cover their halting, and through a natural awe they bear unto the Man, will, whilſt he is on their Backs, go as if they were as ſound as might be, yet be truly of themſelves very unperfect: in this caſe, both to keep your ſelf from cozening, and to diſcover the moſt hidden infirmity; you ſhall firſt take the Horſe out of the Stable in a long ſtring, and caſing one to run him in his hand, at the length of the halter, mark how he ſets down his Legs, for if any be imperfect, then that he will favour: but if at firſt he go upright and favour no Leg, then take his back, and ride him a while roundly up and down a Road; then alight from his back, and let him ſtand ſtill an hour; then as before, let him run in a Mans Hand, at the halters length, without any Man on his back, and believe it is a moſt certain Rule: If he have the leaſt Grief that may be, he will then ſhew it, and favour that Limb which is moſt pained or grieved; for by this Rule only, are many bad Horſe-Courſers diſcovered.

Now to know whereof theſe Griefs proceed, you ſhall underſtand, that if the grief proceed from a hot cauſe, then the horſe halteth moſt when he travelleth or is chafed. But if it proceed from cold cauſes, then he halteth moſt when he is cold, and leaſt when he is hot and much travelled.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXV.

Of the grief and pinching in the Shoulder.

THE grief or pinching of the Horſes Shoulder, cometh either by labouring and ſtraining the Horſe too young, or by the carriage of too great burthens. Its to be known by the narrowneſs of the breaſt, and by the Conſumption of the fleſh of the ſhoulders, inſomuch that the fore part of the ſhoulder-bone will ſtick out and be much higher than the fleſh, and if it be of any longer continuance he will be very hollow upon the brisket towards the fore-booths, and he will go wider beneath at the feet than at the knees. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of ſome Farriers, is, to make a ſlit of an inch long, with a ſharp knife, upon both ſides, an inch under the ſhoulder-bone, and blowing the skin well from the fleſh with a Swans-quill, both of the one and the other ſhoulder, even up to the top of the withers, and ſtroaking the wind up equally with your hand into both the ſhoulders, and then when they are full, ſtick the windy places with a Hazle Stick over all the ſhoulder, then loo'ening the skin from the fleſh again, Rowel both the ſlits, either with tampins of Horſe-hair, or with round pieces of the upper Leather of an old ſhoe, with an hole in the midſt, which is called a French Rowel, for the matter to iſſue forth at, and let the tampins be at leaſt two handfuls long in the skin, and the round Rowel at leaſt three inches broad, and being ſo put as they may lye plain and flat within the Gut, then once a day you ſhall turn the Rowels into the skin, and thruſt out the matter; but if the hole grow ſo ſtrait that the matter cannot eaſily come out, with a sharp knife you shall enlarge it, then put a pair of Paſtorns on his fore-legs, and ſo let him ſtand fifteen days, at the end whereof walk him abroad, and try how he goeth, and if he doth not go to your liking, then continue him in the ſame manner other fifteen days, and he will go ſound.

But our beſt Farriers uſe, after they have Rowled the horſe, as is aforeſaid, then to lay this charge or plaiſter all over his withers, ſhoulders, and breaſt: Take of Pitch and Rozen, of each a pound, of Tar, half a pint, boil all theſe together in a pot, and when it is ſomewhat cooled, take a ſtick with a woollen cloth bound to the end of it, and dip it into the charge, and cover or daub all the

shoulder

ſhoulder therewith: that done, clap flocks of the colour of the Horſe (or as near as you can get it) upon the charge, and every other day make your Rowels clean, and put them in again, continuing to do thus the ſpace of fifteen days; then take out the Rowels, and heal up the wounds with two tents of Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, renewing the ſame every day once, until the wounds be whole, but let the charge lye ſtill untill it fall away of it ſelf; and if you let the Horſe run at Graſs till he hath had a froſt or two, there is no queſtion but he will be a great deal the ſounder.

There be other Farriers which uſe to Rowel the Horſe, as is aforeſaid, yet croſs wiſe, that is, one over-thwart the other, then draw all the ſhoulder over with a hot drawing Iron in the comlieſt wiſe you can, making many ſcratches down his Shoulders, then anoint both them and the Rowels once a day with ſweet butter, and walk the Horſe up and down Evening and Morning, that the humours may flow to the ſore places, and iſſue forth, and with your hands once a day at the leaſt, thruſt out the matter; this Cure is likewiſe to be continued the ſpace of fifteen days, and then the Horſe will be whole; yet for mine own part, in ſo much as the Cure is foul, I do not much affect it.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of the Wrench in the Shoulder.

THE Wrench or ſtrain in the Shoulder, cometh of ſome dangerous ſlipping or ſliding, either in the Stable or abroad, or of too ſudden ſtopping, when a Horſe gallops, or by falls either on the planks, or on ſlippery ground, or by too ſudden turning on unſure ground, or by going too raſhly out of ſome door, or by the ſtroak of another Horſe; you ſhall perceive it by his trailing his Leg upon the ground cloſe after him.

The Cure is, To let him blood upon the plait-vein, and take away the quantity of three pints of blood, which blood you muſt ſave in a pot, and put thereunto, firſt of ſtrong Vinegar a quart, and half a dozen broken Eggs, Shells and all, and ſo much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the Liqour; that done, put thereunto of Bole-armonick beaten into fine Powder a pound, of Sanguis Draconis two ounces, and mingle them together ſo as the flower may not be

perceived, and if it be too ſtiff, you may add a little more Vinegar; then with your hand daub all the ſhoulder from the Main downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels, all againſt the hair, and let not the horſe depart out of that place untill the charge be ſurely faſtened unto the skin; that done, carry him into the Stable, and tye him up to the rack, and ſuffer him not to lye down all the day; and give him a little meat, dieting him very moderately the ſpace of fifteen days, during which time he may not ſtir out of his place, but only to lye down; and every day once refreſh the ſhoulder point with this charge, laying ſtill new upon the old, and at the fifteen days end lead him abroad to ſee how he goeth, and if he be ſomewhat amended, then let him reſt without travelling the ſpace of one month, and that will bring his ſhoulder to perfection: But if he mend nothing at all, for all this that is done, then you ſhall rowel him, as is before ſhewed in the former Chapter, juſt upon the ſhoulder point, and ſo keep him rowled the ſpace of fifteen days, not forgetting to ſtir the rowel, and cleanſe the wound each other day, and then walk him up and down fair and ſoftly, and turn him always on the contrary ſide to the ſore: And when he goeth upright, pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with Turpentine and Hogs Greaſe molten together, as is before ſaid.

But if all this will not ſerve, then it ſhall be very requiſite and needful to draw him Chequer-wiſe with a hot Iron, over all the ſhoulder point; and alſo to make him to draw a Plow every day two or three hours at the leaſt, to ſettle his Joynts, for the ſpace of three weeks or a month: and if any thing will help, theſe two laſt remedies will ſet him ſound.

Now there be other Farriers which for this grief, firſt let the horſe blood in the Breaſt-vein, and then rowel him from the neither part of the ſpade bone down to the point of the ſhoulder, which done, you ſhall ſet a patten ſhooe upon the ſound foot, and ſo turn the horſe to graſs for the ſpace of a month, not forgetting every other day to ſtir and remove the rowels, and ſo thruſt out the matter. Then as ſoon as you ſee him go ſound, you ſhall take off his Patten ſhooe, and pull out the Rowels, and then let him run ſtill at graſs, till he hath taken a froſt or two, and no doubt but he will continue ſound.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of the Wrench in the Nether joint.

THis Wrench cometh by treading his Foot in ſome hole, or in ſome rough or ſtony way. The ſigns whereof are chiefly theſe, the Horſe will halt, and the top of his Back upon the points of his Shoulder will be ſwoln, and ſomewhat hard to handle.

The Cure is, Take of Black Soap half a pound, and having made it hot in a pan, take a handful or two of Tow, and dip it into the Soap, then lay it very hot over all the Horſes Withers; then clap a Plaiſter of Wax, Turpentine, and Hogs-greaſe molten together over it, then cover it with two or three warm Cloaths, and keep the Joynts as warm as may be: thus let him ſtand twenty four Hours e're you dreſs him again, and continue this manner of dreſſing for fifteen days, and the Horſe will go ſoundly.

Now there be other ancient Farriers, that inſtead of this Black-Soap will take Wine-Lees, and Wheat-flower mingled together, and making a plaiſter thereof, lay it very hot to the grieved place, and ſo renew it once a day until the Horſe go ſound.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of ſplating the Shoulder, or of Shoulder torn.

THE ſplating of the Shoulder, is, when by ſome dangerous ſlip or ſlide, either upon the ſide of ſome bank, or upon the plaun-chers, the Horſe hath his Shoulder parted from his Breaſt, and ſo leaves an open cliſt, not in the Skin, but in the Fleſh and Film next the Skin, whereby the Horſe halteth, and is not able to go; it is to be ſeen by the trailing of his Leg after him in going.

The Cure whereof is thus, firſt put a pair of ſtrait paſtorns on his Fore-feet, keeping him ſtill in the Stable without diſquieting of him; then take of Dialthea one pound, of Sallet-Oyl one pint, of Oyl de Bay half a pound, of freſh Butter half a pound; melt all theſe things together in an earthen pot, and anoint the grieved place therewith, and alſo round about the inſide of the Shoulder, and within two or three days after, both that place and all the Shoulder will ſwell, then either prick him with a Lancet or Fleam in all the ſwelling places, or elſe with a ſharp hot iron, and then anoint it

ſtill with the Oyntment beforeſaid; but if you ſee it will not go away, but ſwell ſtill, and gather to a head, then Launce it where the ſwelling doth gather moſt, and is ſofteſt under the Finger; and then tent it with Flax dipt in Turpentine, and Hogs-greaſe molten together, as is before ſhewed, renewing that tent twice a day till the ſorrance be whole.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Shoulder-Pight.

THE Shoulder Pight is, when a Horſe by reaſon of ſome great fall, ruſh or ſtrain, hath the point of his Shoulder thruſt out of joynt, which is eaſie to be ſeen, in that the point of the ſore Shoulder will ſtick out much further than the other, and the Horſe will halt downright. The Cure whereof, as the old Farriers hold it, is, firſt to make him ſwim in a deep water, up and down a dozen turns, for that will make the joynt return into his true place; then make two tough pins of Aſhen-wood as big as your little Finger, being ſharp at the points, each one five Inches long; that done, ſlit the Skin an Inch above the point, and an Inch beneath the point of the Shoulder, and thruſt in one of theſe pins from above downward, ſo as both the ends may equally ſtick with the Skin; and if the pin of Wood will not eaſily paſs through, you may make its way firſt with an Iron Pin; that done, make other two holes croſs to the firſt holes, ſo as the other Pin may croſs the firſt Pin aright in the midſt, with a right croſs; and the firſt Pin ſhould be ſomewhat flat in the midſt, to the intent that the other being round, may paſs the better without ſtop, and cloſe the juſter together; then take a piece of a little line ſomewhat bigger than a Whip-cord, and at one end make a loop, which being put over one of the Pins end, wind the reſt of the line good and ſtraight about the Pins ends, ſo as it may lye betwixt the Pins ends and the Skin, and faſten the laſt end with a packneedle and a pack thread unto the reſt of the Cord, ſo as it may not ſlip; and to do well, both the Pins and the Cord ſhould be firſt anointed with a little Hogs-greaſe; then bring him into the Stable, and let him reſt the ſpace of nine days; and let him lye down as little as may be; and put a Paſtorn on the ſore Leg, ſo as it may be bound with a Cord unto the foot of the Manger, to keep that Leg always whilſt he ſtandeth in the Stable, more forward than the other, and

at

at the nine days end take out the Pins and anoint the ſore place with a little Dialthea, or with Hogs-greaſe, and then turn him to Graſs. Other of our late Farriers uſe, firſt to lay good ſtore of ſtraw under the Horſe, and then put a pair of ſtrong Paſtorns on his fore legs, and another on his hinder, then having thrown him upon his Back, to hang him up by the Legs from the ground, with two Ropes drawn over ſome Beam or Balk, which will put the Bone into his true place again; then having let him down again fair and ſoftly, looſe the fore Paſtorn of the ſound Leg, and with a Cord before you let him riſe, tye the ſame Leg to the foot of the Manger, ſo ſhort, as in his riſing he ſhall be forced to hold his Leg before him, for fear of putting his Shoulder out of Joynt, and let him ſtand ſo tyed for the ſpace of three days; and preſently when he is up, burn all the point of the Shoulder with a hot Iron, drawing it Chequer-wiſe, a full Foot ſquare at the leaſt, and let every ſtroke be no more than an Inch diſtant one from another: and having burned him well, charge all theſe burned places, and all the reſt of his Shoulder with Pitch, Rozen, and Tar molten together, and laid on ſomething hot with a Cloath tied to a ſticks end; then clap Flocks of the colour of the horſe upon it, then charge him again over the flocks, and at three days end looſe his Foot, and put a pair of Paſtorns upon his Feet, and let him neither lye down nor ſtir out of the Stable for the ſpace of fifteen or twenty days: then you may lead him abroad, and ſee whether he goes well or no, and if he be not perfect, you may then give him as much more reſt, and that will recover him.

CHAP. LXX.

A general and certain Cure for any deſperate and curable Strain in the Shoulder, or any other hidden parts.

TAke a large earthen Veſſel, and fill it full of the Herb of Arſmart and Brook-lime, equally mixt together, then put to them as much of the oldeſt and ſtrongeſt Urine that can be got, as will cover the Herbs all over, then cover the pot cloſe, and keep it in ſome ſafe cool place.

Now when you have occaſion to uſe it, take an Earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto both of the Urine and the Herbs, ſo much as ſhall be convenient for the Grief, and boyl it well, then if it be for a Shoulder

der ſtrain, you ſhall take an old Boot and cut off the foot, that you may draw it over the Horſes Foot, and above his knee almoſt to the Elbow of his ſhoulder, keeping the nether part of the boot as cloſe about his Legs as may be, but the upper part wide and ſpacious; into this boot thruſt all your mixture as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, and lay it faſt and cloſe about the ſhoulder, eſpecially before and behind, then drawing up the upper part of the boot, ſo faſten it to the mane of the Horſe that it may not ſlip down, and thus do once a day till the grief depart; for this Medicine is ſo violent that if there be any foul matter that muſt come forth, it will bring it to an head, ripen, break and heal it; if there be no ſuch thing, then in a ſhort time it will draw away the offending humours, and give preſent eaſe

CHAP. LXXI.

Of the ſwelling of the Fore-Legs after great labour.

HOrſes not much uſed to travel, will after great labour ſwell upon their Fore-Legs, becauſe heat and violent exceſs will cauſe humours to reſort down into the Legs, eſpecially if ſuch horſes ſhall be inwardly fat; for the indiſcreet labour will melt that inward greaſe, and make it deſcend down into the Legs.

The Cure, according to the practiſe of ſome Farriers, is, to take a pound of Nerve Oil, a pound of Black Soap, and half a pound of Boars-greaſe molten, and boil them all well together, and then ſtrain it and let it cool; then anoint your horſes Legs therewith, being made luke-warm again, and then keep his Legs clean from duſt. Other Farriers uſe to bathe his Legs in Butter and Beer, or in Vinegar and Butter, ſome with Sheeps-foot Oyl, ſome with Neats-foot Oyl, ſome with Train Oyl, and ſome with Piſs and Salt-peter boyled together, of all which, Piſs and Salt-peter is the beſt; and after any ſuch bathing, you muſt roll up the horſes Legs with Hay-ropes wet in cold water, even from the Paſtorn to the Knee, but in any wiſe not too ſtrait, for fear of doing hurt, ſo let him ſtand continually when he reſteth.

☞ Now other Farriers ſomewhat more curious, uſe for the ſwelling of the Legs this Bath; take of Mallows three handfuls, a Roſe-cake, of Sage one handful, boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of water, and when the Mallows be ſoft, put in half a pound of Butter,

ter, and half a pint of Sallet Oyl, and then being ſomewhat warm, waſh the ſwelling therewith every day once, the ſpace of three or four days; and if the ſwelling will not go away with this, then take Wine Lees and Cumin, and boyl them together, and put thereunto a little Wheat-flower, and charge all the ſwelling therewith, and walk him often; and if all will not ſerve, then take up the great vein above the knee on the inſide, ſuffering him not to bleed from above, but all from beneath, and it will take away the ſwelling.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of a Horſe that is Foundred in his Feet.

A Horſe is ſaid to be foundred of his Feet, when he hath ſuch a numbneſs, and pricking or ringing within his Hoofs, that he hath neither ſenſe nor feeling of his Feet, but is in all reſpects like a man, that by hard or crooked ſitting hath both his Feet aſleep (as we call) during which paſſion we know we can neither well go nor ſtand; and even ſo it fareth with a Horſe in this caſe; for the courſe of the Blood being ſtopped, thoſe Obſtructions cauſe this torment. It cometh moſt commonly when a Horſe is very fat, and hath his greaſe molten within him, and then ſuddenly cooled by taking his Saddle off too ſoon, or by ſtanding up in the cold unſtirred, or elſe by letting him ſtand in ſome ſhallow Water little higher than his ſet-lock.

A Horſe alſo may be foundred by wearing ſtrait and uneaſie Shoes, eſpecially in the Summer ſeaſon, when a Horſe travelleth upon the hard ground.

The ſigns to know it, is, the Horſe goeth crouching, and drawing all his fore-feet within the compaſs almoſt of a peck, and will ſtand ſo fearfully as though he ſtood upon Needles.

Now you ſhall underſtand, that a Horſe will ſometimes be only foundred of his Fore-feet, and not of his hinder, which you ſhall know in that the Horſe will tread only upon his hinder Feet, and not on his fore-feet, and go as though his Buttocks would touch the ground; and ſometimes he will be foundred upon his hinder feet, and not upon his fore-feet, and that you ſhall perceive by this fearfulneſs

neſs to ſet his Feet to the ground, being alſo ſo weak behind, that he will ſtand quivering and quaking and covet always to lye down; and ſometimes he will be foundred of all his four Feet, the ſigns whereof were firſt declared.

Now foraſmuch as the Cures are all of one and the ſelf-ſame Nature, and what cureth the firſt cureth alſo the reſt; I will joyn them all together, with this Advice, that if you find the Horſe to be foundred on the Fore-feet only, then to apply your Medicine to the Fore-parts only; if on the Hinder-feet, then to the hinder-parts; but if of all four Feet, then to lay your Medicine to all the ſeveral parts of the Body, as ſhall be preſently declared.

To come then to the Cure, (according to the opinion of a worthy Knight well experienced in this diſeaſe) if your Horſe be foundred of all his Four Feet, you ſhall cauſe him to be let blood on his two Breſt-veins of his two Fore-legs, ſomewhat above his Knees; alſo you ſhall let him blood on his two Spur-veins, and on the veins of his two Hinder-feet a little above the hoof, between the hoof and the paſtorn: you ſhall let theſe veins bleed well, to the quantity of a quart or three pints, which blood you muſt ſave in ſome Veſſel, and ſtir it with a ſtick to keep it from clearing: and when it hath bled as aboveſaid, put it all into one Veſſel, then ſtop the wounds with ſome Horſe dung, or ſome earth, and make a charge with the blood in this ſort: Take as much Wheat-meal, Bran and all, as will make the blood ſomewhat thick, and put it into the blood, take eight or ten Eggs, and break them alſo into the blood, ſhells and all; take a pint of ſtrong Vinegar, and a quantity of Bole-armonick brayed, and put them into the blood alſo; which done, you ſhall ſtir them all together; then ſhall you with your hand lay the ſaid charge all along upon the reins of the Horſes Back, upon his Buttocks and down his Shoulders: when you have laid on this charge thus, you ſhall take two long Linnen rags dipped in the ſame charge, with which ſo dipped, you ſhall garter the Horſe above the knees of his Fore legs ſomewhat hard; and likewiſe with two other like rags, ſo dipped, you ſhall garter him hard above both his Hinder Hoofs alſo: that done, cauſe him to be walked upon the hardeſt ground you can find for the ſpace of two or three Hours; if he be loath to go, as commonly he will be, let one follow him and beat him with a ſtick or a wand to force him to go, then after his walking let him be ſet up and tyed to the rack, that he lye not down, and there let him reſt

reſt two or three hours; which done, let him be walked again two or three hours more aforeſaid, then ſet him up, and let him feed, and when you give him drink, which you may do within two or three hours after his feeding, let it be a warm Maſh of Malt and Water, then let him feed a little after it, then ride him a little; and if you let him ſtand an hour or two in a pool or ſtanding water up to the Belly, and one upon his Back, it is good alſo, and after that ride him again a little: then let him be ſet up well dreſſed and covered, ſo by little and little ride him a day or two, and then you may boldly journey him; for it is riding that brings the Horſe to the perfectneſs of his Feet, and you ſhall find your Horſe as ſound as ever he was.

Now during this Cure, you are to take theſe Obſervations into your memory.

Firſt, You ſhall not need to remove or ſtir the Horſes ſhoes: then you muſt after twenty four hours, rub off the charge from the Horſes back.

Item, You ſhall take away his garters after twelve hours, and rub his Knees and Houghs with your Hand, and with wiſps, to take away the numbneſs.

Item, If you cannot get Wheat-meal, you may take Oaten-meal.

Item, If he will not bleed in the veins before-named, then you may take your blood from the neck-vein.

Laſtly, If you take the Horſe in hand to Cure within twenty four hours after he is foundred, he will be ſound again within twenty four hours after; ſo if he go longer, the Cure will be longer in doing.

Now the ancient Farriers of this Kingdom, and amongſt the Italians, differ not much in their practice from this already rehearſed, only into the charge they add of Sanguis Draconis half a quartern, and as much Bean-flower as Wheat-flower, and of Turpentine half a pound; then if they did ſee that within four days the Horſe did not recover, then they did know that the hurtful humors did only lye in the Horſes Feet, and there you ſhall ſearch his Feet with your Butteriſs, paring all the ſoles of his Feet ſo thin, that you may ſee the Water iſſue through the ſole: that done, let him Blood at the Toes, and let him bleed well; then ſtop the Vein with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and laid upon a little flax, and then tack on his Shoes, and cram the place where you did let him blood, hard with tow, to the intent it may be ſurely ſtopt; then fill all the ſoles of his Feet with Hogs greaſe and Bran boiled or fried

together, ſo hot as is poſſible, and upon that ſtopping, clap a piece of Leather, and two croſs ſplints, to keep in the Stopping; and immediately after this, take two Eggs, and beat them in a diſh, and put thereunto as much Bole-armonick and Bean-flower as will thicken the ſame, and mix them well together, and make thereof two Plaiſters, ſuch as may cloſe each Foot round about ſomewhat above the Cronet, and bind it faſt with a Liſt or a Rowler, that it may not fall away nor be removed for the ſpace of two days, but let the ſoles of his Feet be cleanſed and new ſtopped every day once, and the Cronets to be removed every two days until the Horſe be ſound; during which time, let him reſt unwalked, for fear of looſning his hoofs: but if you ſee that he begins to amend, you may walk him fair and ſoftly once a day upon ſome ſoft ground to exerciſe his Legs and Feet, and let him not eat much, nor drink cold Water; but if his foundring break out above the hoof, which you ſhall perceive by the looſneſs of the Coffin above the Cronet, then when you pare the ſole you muſt take all the fore-part of the ſole clean away, leaving the Heels whole, to the intent the humors may have the freer paſſage downward, and then ſtop him, and dreſs him about the Cronet, as is before ſaid. Now if the Horſe during this Cure chance to fall ſick, or grow ſo dry in his body that he cannot dung, then you ſhall firſt rake him, and after give him a Gliſter of Mallows, three handfuls boiled in Water from a Pottle to a Quart: then after it is ſtrain'd, put to it half a pound of Butter, and a quarter of a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and ſo adminiſter it, then when the Horſe hath emptied his Belly, give him this comfortable drink. Take of Malmeſey a quart, and put thereunto a little Cinamon, Mace and Pepper beaten into fine powder, and of Oyl a quarter of a pint, and give the Horſe to drink of that luke-warm; that done, let him be walked up and down, a good while together, if he be able to go, if not, then tye him up to the Rack, and let him be hanged with Canvas and Ropes, ſo as he may ſtand upon the ground with his Feet, for the leſs he lyeth down the better: but theſe extremities do ſeldom happen. Now there be other Farriers, which, for the foundring of a Horſe, only take Verdigreaſe, Turpentine, Sallet-oyl and Hogs greaſe, of each like quantity, of Wax one ounce; boil all together, and ſo dip flax or tow in it: then having pared his Feet thin, and let him blood on the Toes, ſtop all his Feet with that Ointment very hot: or elſe they take the roots of Nettles, and Hemlock, with Eldern peels, of each

each a handful, and boil them tender in Bears greaſe, or Hogs greaſe, ſo let him blood in the midſt of the Foot on the Toe-vein, then bathe and chaſe his Joynt and Leg therewith all about from his Knee unto the Fetlock, and then clap it too, and bind a cloth faſt to it, as hot as you can. So uſe this once a day till it be well.

Now for mine own part, although there is not any of theſe former recited practices but are found perfectly good in their kinds, yet I have not found any ſo abſolute either from old or new founders, as this which I ſhall rehearſe, Firſt, you ſhall with a very ſharp Drawing-knife, draw every part of the Soles of the Horſes Feet ſo thin as poſſible, even till you ſee the very Water and Blood iſſuing forth, and being ſure to draw or pare every part alike, which can hardly be done with a Butteriſs; then at the very ſharp end of the trush of the Horſes Foot you ſhall ſee the vein lye, then with your knife's end lift up the Hoof, and let the vein bleed, (which as long as you hold open the hoof will ſpin a great way forth) when it hath bled better than a pint, you ſhall cloſe the hoof, and ſo ſtop the vein: then tack on his Foot a hollow ſhooe made for that purpoſe: that done, clap a little tow dipt in Hogs-greaſe and Turpentine upon the vein very hard: then take two or three hard Eggs roaſted, and coming burning hot out of the fire, and burſt them in the ſole of the Horſes Foot: then pour upon them Hogs-greaſe, Turpentine, and Tar boiling hot, and as much flax dipt therein as will fill up the hollow ſhooe, then lay on a piece of Leather to keep all the reſt in, and ſplent it ſure: and in this manner dreſs his four Feet, if all be foundred, otherwiſe no more than are foundred; and thus you ſhall dreſs the Horſe three times in one fortnight, and without any further trouble, you ſhall be ſure to have the Horſe as ſound as ever he was.

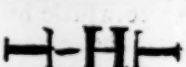
Now if the Horſe be foundred through the ſtraightning of a ſhoe, which in truth is not a founder, but a frettizing, which is a degree leſs than foundring; then you ſhall for that Sorance, firſt take off his ſhooe, and let him blood on the Toes, then ſtopping the place with bruiſed Sage, tack on his ſhooe again, and ſtop it with Hogs-greaſe and Bran boiled together, as hot as is poſſible; and do this twice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

CHAP. LXXIII.

Of the Splent as well on the inside of the Knee, as of any other part of the Leg.

A Splent is to the outward feeling a very griſtle, or rather a hard bone, ſometimes as big as a Hazle-nut, ſometimes as big as a Walnut, according to the age thereof, growing upon the inſide of the ſore Leg, between the Knee and the upper Paſtorn joynt, and ſometimes juſt underneath, and cloſe unto the Knee, which is of all other the moſt dangerous Splent, and doth the ſooneſt make a Horſe lame: it cometh by travelling a Horſe too young, or by overpreſſing him with heavy burthens, whereby the tender Sinews of his Legs ☞ are offended. Now for the knowledge thereof it is eaſie, becauſe it is apparent unto the Eye, and moſt palpable to be felt. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take an Onion, and picking out the Core, put into it half a ſpoonful of Honey, and a quarter of a Spoonful of unſlackt Lime, and four penny weight of Verdigreaſe; then cloſing up the Onion, roaſt it in hot embers untill it be ſoft; then bruiſe it in a Mortar, and as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, lay it to the Splent, and it will take it away: But in any caſe cut no skin. Other of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the Splent with warm Water, and then ſhave off the hair, and lightly to ſcarifie or prick the skin with the point of a Razor, ſo as the blood may iſſue forth: Then take of Cantharides half a ſpoonful, and of Euforbium as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a ſpoonful of Oyl de Bay, and then melt them in a little pan, ſtirring them well together, ſo as they may not boil over, and being ſo boiling hot, take two or three feathers and anoint all the Sore places therewith: that done, let not the Horſe ſtir from the place where you ſo dreſs him for an hour after, to the intent he ſhake not off the Ointment: then carry him fair and ſoftly into the Stable, and tye him ſo as he may not reach with his Head beneath the Manger: For otherwiſe he will covet to bite away the ſmarting and pricking Medicine, which if it ſhould touch his Lips, would quickly fetch off the skin; and alſo let him ſtand without Litter all that day and night: the next day anoint the Sore place with freſh Butter, continuing ſo to do every day once for the ſpace of nine days, for this will allay the heat of the Medicine, and cauſe

cauſe both that and the cruſt of the Splent to fall away of it ſelf. There be other Farriers which uſe with a fine hot drawing Iron to burn the Sorance down in the midſt, the full length of the Splent, and then over-thwart like this Figure ; then four hours after ſuch burning, take Cows dung new made, and Sallet Oyl mixt and well beaten together, and therewith anoint all the Sore places ; and this muſt be done when the Splent is very young.



Others uſe to ſlit the Sorance with a Knife the whole length of the Splent, and then with a Cornet to open the ſlit, and lay the Splent bare, then to make about the Wound a Coffin of Clay all open to the top ; then take Boars-greaſe made ſcalding hot, and pour it into the Wound until the clay Coffin be full, then let it reſt until the Greaſe be cold : after that, let the Horſe riſe, and this with once dreſſing will take the Splent clean away without any blemiſh or Eye-ſore. Others uſe to beat the Splent with a ſtick, and to bruiſe it well, then prick it with an Aule, and thruſt out the blood, then lay on a piece of white Leather, and with a hot Iron make the Greaſe ſcald it, or elſe melt into it Pitch and Verdigreaſe, and then lay a Plaiſter of Pitch over it, not removing it until it fall off by it ſelf ; or elſe after you have beaten and prickt the Splent, take out the Core of an Onion, and fill it with Bay-Salt, then roaſt it ſoft, and lay it hot to the Splent, and inſtead of the Onion, you may if you will, bind too a hard roaſted Egg, being fire-hot. Other Farriers uſe to ſlit the Skin the length of the Splent, then to dip a little piece of Linnen in warm Wine, and ſprinkle Verdigreaſe thereon, and ſo lay it to the ſlit, renewing it once a day until the Splent be gone. Others uſe to ſhave off the hair, and to rub the Splent twice a day with Tar very hard, until the Splent be gone ; but the Splent muſt be very young and tender ; for faſting Spittle is as good as Tar. Other Farriers uſe to take a Black Snail and ſlit her, and put in Bay-Salt, and lay it to the Splent being opened, renewing it once a day until the Splent be gone : then let the vein above the Knee be taken up, and let it bleed from below, leſt it feed the Splent again. Others uſe, if the Splent be upon the Knee, to burn it, as is before ſaid ; then take Wormwood, Smallage, Pellitory of the Wall, Brank-Urſine ſtampt with Swines greaſe, and lay it to the burnings, provided that firſt the Hair be ſhaved off, and if the Splent be below the Knee, this Cure is good alſo, and much the ſafer.

Now

☞ Now after all these former recited practices, you shall understand that the cleanliest way to take away a Splent, is first, after you have cast your Horse with a Hazle-stick of a pretty poise and bigness, gently to beat the Splent at the first, and then by degrees a little harder and harder, till the Splent grow soft in every part, then with the point of your Launcet let out all the Blood and Water; then take a Brick-bat, and having laid it on the fire, when it is exceeding hot, fold it in a Red cloth, and therewith rub the Splent, and smooth it upon the top till you have dried away the blood, and that no more moisture cometh out; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and Mastick, of each a like quantity, melt them well together, and being very hot lay it over and all about the Splent: then clap flocks of the colour of the Horses Leg upon it, and so let it rest upon the Splent until it fall away of it self: and if when it is fallen away, you perceive that any part of the Splent remain behind, which hardly will be, if it be orderly beaten; then you shall dress that remainder as you ☞ did the other before, and the Splent will be perfectly Cured. Now for the surest and most certain way to take off a Splent, it is thus: With the point of a sharp Knife, make a slit of more than a Barley-corn length, just upon the top in the midst of the Splent, and let it be so deep that you may be sure that the bone of the Splent is bare, then put into that slit with the point of your Knife, as much Mercury Sublimate as the quarter of a Hazel-nut-kirnel, and within three or four days, it will so have eaten the Splent, that it will fall out of it self: then you shall heal up the Sore either with fresh Butter molten, or with a Plaister of Hogs-grease, and Turpentine mingled and melted together; only in this Cure you must beware, that you tye the Horse so, as for Four and twenty Hours he may not touch the Sore place with his Mouth, Now in conclusion, I am to give you this small Precept, to bear ever in your mind, that is both for the healing of this, and for all other humors whatsoever: You must first stay the falling down of the new humors to the place troubled, as by binding Plaisters, as Pitch, Rozen, Mastick, Red Lead, Oyl, Bole-armonick, and such like; then to draw out Matter which is there gathered with drawing Simples, as Wax, Turpentine, and such like: and lastly, to dry up the relicks with drying Powders, as Honey and Lime, Oyster-shells, Soot, and such like; and also you must know, that all Splents, Spavens, or Knobs, must either be taken away at the beginning, or after the Full of the Moon.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXIV.

An approved and certain way to take away any Splent without breaking any Hair.

TAke the Root of Elicampane well waſhed and cleanſed, and lap it in a brown Paper, wet it and roaſt it in the hot Embers, as you would roaſt a Warden; then as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, (for I would not have you ſcald) after you have rubbed and chaft the excreſcion, clap this unto it, and bind it faſt on, and in two or three dreſſings it will conſume away the Splent.

Alſo, if Morning and Evening you rub the Splent with the Oyl of Origanum, it will take it away.

CHAP. LXXV.

Of the Screw, or thorow Splent.

ALthough divers of our Farriers do diſtinguiſh and make a difference betwixt a Screw and a Splent, ſaying, that the Screw is ever of the out-ſide of the Leg, as the Splent is of the inſide; yet it is moſt certain that the Diſeaſe and Infirmity is all one, and may as well be called a Splent on the out-ſide of the Leg, as a Splent on the inſide of the Leg, and this Splent on the out-ſide is ever leaſt dangerous. Now a Horſe many times will have both theſe Splents at one times; and upon one Leg; nay, I have ſeen them ſo juſt oppoſite one to another, that one would have thought they had gone through the Horſes Leg; whence it hath come to paſs, that many fooliſh Farriers being of that mind, have intitled them a thorow Splent, and I have ſeen my ſelf, ſome well reputed Farriers, that having the Cure brought unto them, have refuſed the ſame, ſaying it was a thorow Splent, and therefore moſt incurable: But the opinion is moſt abſurd and ridiculous: for the Shin-bone being hollow, and full of Pith and Marrow, there can nothing grow through it, but it muſt confound the Marrow, and then the bone cannot hold, but muſt preſently break in ſunder, eſpecially when ſuch a weak ſpungy ſubſtance as a Splent, ſhall poſſeſs the whole ſtrength of the Leg. Now for the Cure, as the Splent and it are all one, ſo they have all one Cure, and what helpeth the firſt, with more eaſe helpeth the latter, in as much as it is not full ſo dangerous, nor ſo near the main Sinews.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXVI.

Of the Mallander.

A Mallander is a kind of a dry Scab, growing in the form of lines or ſtreaks overthwart the very tough or inward bent of the Knee, and hath hard Hair with ſtubborn roots, like Swines briſtles, which corrupteth and Cankereth the Fleſh like the Roots of a Childs ſcabbed Head; and if the Sore be great and deep, it will make the Horſe go ſtiff at his firſt ſetting forth, and halt much. It doth proceed either from the Corruption of Blood, or from negligent keeping, when the Horſe wanteth clean dreſſing: for you ſhall know that ſome Horſes naturally are given to have long hair from the top to the bought of the Knee down to the fetlock, and that Hair in the bought of the Knee is oft apt to curle; whereby thoſe Horſes, if they be not very carefully and clean kept, are much ſubject to this Diſeaſe.

Now for the Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus. Take a barrel'd Herring out of the pickle with a ſoft row, and two ſpoonfuls of Black Soap, and ſo much Allom; beat all theſe in a mortar well together, and then lay it to the Sore, renewing it once a day for three days, and it will kill the Mallander, provided always that before you lay any thing unto the Mallander, you ever pull off the dry Scab firſt, and leave no Hair growing within the Sore. Other Farriers uſe to take a paring of a Cheeſe, and toaſting it very hot, anoint it with Honey, and ſo lay it hot to the Mallander, and renewing it once a day till the Mallander be whole: or elſe beat Hens dung and Gilliflowers well together, and lay it to the Sore till it be whole.

Others Farriers uſe, after they have waſhed the Sore clean with warm Water, and ſhaved off the Hair and the Scabs, to take a ſpoonful of Sope, and as much lime; mingle them together that it may be like paſte, then ſpread as much on a clout as will cover the Sore, and bind it faſt on with a liſt, renewing it every day once, the ſpace of two or three days; and at the three days end take away the Plaiſter, and anoint the Sore with Oyl of Roſes, made luke-warm, and that will fetch away ſcurf or cruſty asker, bred by means of the burning Plaiſter; which ſcurf being taken away, waſh the ſore place well every day once with his own ſtale, or elſe with Man's Urine, and then immediately ſtrow upon it the powder of burnt Oyſter-ſhell, continuing ſo to do every day once until it be whole.

Others

Others of our later Farriers uſe to take a quart of water, half a pint of Oyl, and as much flower as will thicken it with ſeething: then lay that hot to the ſore twice a day, for four days together; then take Maſtick, Frankincenſe beaten into fine powder, Quick-ſilver, killed either in the juice of Lemons, or in ſtrong Vinegar, of each an ounce; then of Liturgy half an ounce, of Cerus ten ounces; and as much of Swines greaſe clarified: incorporate and mingle all theſe together with Vinegar and Oyl, and lay it to the ſore until the Mallender be killed; then heal it up as is afore ſhewed. Others uſe, after they have waſhed it and ſhaved it, to rub it with Piſs and Soap until it be raw; then lay to it Nerve-oyl, Honey, and ſtrong Muſtard, until it be whole. Others uſe to take Sulphur, Vitriol, Sal-nitre, Sal-gem, mixed with Oyl de Bay, and to rub the Mallender well therewith. Now to conclude, you ſhall underſtand, that ſome Horſes will have two Mallenders upon one Leg, one above another, and ſometimes one a little above the inward bending of the Knee, and another a little below the inward, bending of the Knee, but the Cure is all alike; and as you dreſs one, ſo you may dreſs two or three.

Now for mine own part, I have not found any thing better for a Mallender, than after the ſore is cleanſed, to take the ordure or dung of a Man, and anoint the ſore therewith, and it will kill it and heal it.

CHAP. LXXVII.

Of an Upper Attaint, or Over-reach upon the Back ſinew of the Fore-leg, ſomewhat above the Paſtorn-joynt.

THis which we call an Upper-attaint, is nothing elſe but a painful ſwelling of the Maſter-ſinew, or back ſinew of the ſhank-bone, by reaſon that the Horſe doth ſometimes over-reach and ſtrike that ſinew with the Toe of his hinder Foot, and thereby cauſeth the Horſe to halt much. Now the ſigns are both the ſwelling and the halting; and the Cure, according to ſome of the old Farriers, is, to dreſs the ſore place with a Plaiſter made of Wine lees and Wheat flower, laid hot to; or elſe to take of black Soap and Bores-greaſe, of each a like quantity ſcalding hot;

make a Plaiſter of Sear-cloth thereof, and clap it all about the ſore place; or elſe if the ſwelling by no Salve will diſſolve, take a fine thin hot drawing Iron, and draw his Leg all downward with the hair in many ſmall ſtrikes from the one end of the ſwelling to the other, and make the ſtrikes very thick together, and ſomewhat deep, then anoint his burning for two or three days with black Soap, and ſo turn the horſe to graſs; but if he will not run at graſs, then every day give him ſome moderate exerciſe; but this burning I fancy not much, for it is foul, and albeit it take away the ſwelling, yet the ſeams of the burning, when they are cured, will keep the member big, as if it were ſtill ſwelled. Now other of the ancient Farriers uſe firſt to waſh the Leg with warm water, then to ſhave off the hair as far as the ſwelling goeth, then to ſcarifie the ſore place with the point of a razor, that the blood may iſſue forth: then take of Cantharides and Euforbium of each half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of Soap, and with a ſlice ſpread ſome of this oyntment over all the ſore, ſuffering him to reſt there where you dreſs him for one half hour after, and then you may carry him into the Stable, and there let him ſtand without Litter, and ſo tyed as he may not touch the ſore with his Mouth; and then the next day uſe him in the ſame manner again; then the third day anoint the place with freſh butter, continuing ſo to do the ſpace of nine days, and at the nine days end make him this Bathe, Take of Mallows three handfuls, a Roſe-cake, of Sage an handful, boyl them together in a ſufficient quantity of Beer; and when the Mallows be ſoft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet-Oyl; and then being ſomewhat warm, waſh the ſore places therewith every day once till it be whole. Others uſe to cleave a Chicken or a Pigeon, and to clap it hot to the ſwelling, and it will abate it; or elſe take Dialthea, Agrippa, and Oyl, and mixing it together, lay it to the ſwelling. Others uſe to take of Frankincenſe, of Rozen, of Tar, of Euforbium, of Turpentine and Fenugreek, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Suet one ounce, of Oyl an Ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh; mix and melt them all together, and Plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the ſore place till it be whole; or elſe take for this Sorance, three quarters of an ounce of Sanguis Draconis, an ounce of Bole-armony, as much Oyl, three ounces of Maſtick, and as much Suet, and as much Swines Greaſe, the whites of half a dozen of Eggs, melt and mix them together, and lay them together, and lay

it

it to the ſwelling, and it will take it away; then make the ſhooes of his hinder feet ſhorter than the horns of his toes by a quarter of an inch, and let the horn hang over uncut away, and make the fore-ſhooe no longer than his heel, but rather ſhorter.

CHAP. LXXVIII.

An excellent approved Medicine for any Sinew ſtrain whatſoever.

TAke of Vinegar a pint, the whites of three or four Eggs, and as much Bole-armonick, and Bean-flower, as will bring it to a thick ſalve over the fire; then when it is very hot, lay it Plaiſter-wiſe upon the ſtrain, and round about the Leg, and do this not only till the grief be gone, but alſo till the ſwelling be taken away.

CHAP. LXXIX.

Of a Neather Attaint, or Over-reach on the Paſtorn-Joynts.

THe Neather attaint, or Over-reach on the midſt and in the hollow of the Paſtorn-joynt, is a little Bladder full of Jelly, like unto a wind-gall; and though it be not apparent to the eye, yet it is eaſie to be felt, and may come as well by ſome wrench or ſtrain, as by an over-reach, and it will make a horſe halt much; the ſigns are, the neather Joynt towards the Fetlock will be very hot, and ſomewhat ſwelled, and the little ſoft bleb will eaſily be felt.

The Cure, after the opinion of the old Farriers, is, Take a ſmall cord, and rowel him ſomewhat ſtrait from the Knee to the neather joynt, and then in the Paſtorn, between the hoof and the joynt with a fleam ſtrike him in the midſt of his ſwelling, and let out the matter; then take the white of an Egg, and beat it with a little Salt, and then dipping flax therein, lay it unto all the ſwelling, and then unrowel his Leg, and renew the Salve twice a day until the grief be gone. But in any caſe let him not be laboured or ridden whilſt he is in curing.

CHAP. LXXX.

Of an Attaint or over-reach on the Heel.

AN Attaint or over-reach upon the heel, is, when a Horſe ſtriketh the toe of his hinder ſhoe into the heel, juſt upon the ſetting on of the hoof, and this over-reach, if it be not looked unto, will fret and rankle ſo much inward, that it will endanger the horſes hoof, and you ſhall commonly ſee by the cut the skin hang over the horſes heel, and it will make a horſe halt. Now the Cure is, Firſt to cut away the skin, and alſo the hoof, and the fleſh, till you have made the ſore even and plain without any hollowneſs; then waſh it very well with Beer and Salt, then bind unto it a little flax dipt in the white of an Egg, mingled with a little Bole-armonick, renewing it every day once, the ſpace of three or four days, and that will heal it.

CHAP. LXXXI.

Of the Mellet on the Heel.

A Mellet is a dry Scab that groweth upon the heel, ſometimes through the corruption of blood, and ſometimes for want of clean rubbing and dreſſing, when he is wet ſet up: It appeareth like a dry Chap without any moiſture, and it will be ſometimes as well on both heels as on one. The Cure, according to the practice of the old Farriers, is, to take half a pint of honey, and a quarter of a pound of black Sope, and mix them together; then put thereto four or five ſpoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allom unburnt as a Hens Egg, and two ſpoonfuls of Rye-flower; mix them all well together, and then take it away, and waſh all his leg and foot with ſalt beef broth, and then rope his Leg all the day with wet hay-ropes, and he will be ſound; provided always, that before you dreſs him, you ever take off the dry Scab or Scurf, and make the Sore as clean and as plain as is poſſible.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXII.

Of False Quarters.

A False Quarter is a rift or open back ſeam, ſometimes in the out-ſide, but moſt often in the inſide of the hoof, becauſe the inſide is ever the weaker part, which ſides are ever called Quarters, whence this ſorance taketh this name, and is called a falſe quarter, as much as to ſay, a ſick and unſound Quarter; for it is as if it were a piece ſet unto the hoof, and the hoof not all of one entire piece as it ought to be. It cometh many times by evil ſhooing, and evil paring; and ſometimes by pricking the horſe, and ſuch like hurts. The ſigns to know it are, the horſe will halt much, and the rift will bleed; and when the ſhooe is off, the whole ſorance is apparent to be ſeen. The cure, according to the ancient Farriers, is, to take off the ſhooe, and cut away ſo much of the ſhooe on that ſide where the ſorance is, as the ſhooe being immediately put on again, all the whole rift may be uncovered; then open the rift with a drawer, and fill all the rift with a rowel of Tow dipt in Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, renewing it every day once till it be whole; and the rift being cloſed in the top, draw him betwixt the Hair and the Hoof with a hot Iron overthwart that place, to the intent that the hoof may ſhoot all whole downward; and when the horſe goeth upright, ride him either with no other ſhooe than this, or elſe with ſuch a ſhooe as may bear in every part but only upon the falſe quarter until the hoof be hardened. Others uſe to anoint it once a day with Sheep-ſuet and Oyl mixt together, and that will cloſe the riſt.

Others uſe to cut away the old corrupt hoof, and then take ſeven whites of Eggs, the powder of Incenſe, of unſlackt Lime, of Maſtick, of Verdigreaſe, and of Salt, of each three ounces; mix them well together, then dip in as much hurds as will cover the ſore hoof, lay it on, and then about it lay Swines Greaſe an inch thick; and likewiſe below it alſo: Bind this on in ſuch ſort that it may remain unſtirred a Fortnight, then renew it ſo again, and it will make perfect his hoof. But if there be any corrupt matter gathered within the falſe quarter, and thereby cauſeth the horſe to halt, then you ſhall lay your finger upon it, and if the Horſe ſhrink thereat, then it is ripe; then open it with a drawing knife, and let out the matter,

matter, then lay on Horſe-dung, Oyl, Salt, and Vinegar mixt together, Plaiſter-wiſe, and that will heal it, and make the Hoof good; yet however, you muſt have care in ſhooing him till his Hooſs be hardned, as is before ſhewed you.

CHAP. LXXXIII.

Of a Horſe that is Hipped, or hurt in the Hips.

A Horſe is ſaid to be hipped, when either by ſtrain, blow, or other accident, the hip-bone is removed out of his right place. It is a Sorance as hard to be cured as any whatſoever; for if it be not taken even at the firſt Inſtant, there will grow within the pot of the huckle-bone, ſuch a thick hard ſubſtance, that it will leave no place for the bone, and then it is utterly incurable. The ſigns to know the Sorance are, the Horſe will halt much, and go ſide-long, and will trail his legs a little after him; the ſore hip alſo will be lower than the other, and the fleſh will fall away on the ſide of his Buttock. The cure is, according to the beſt Farriers, if you take him in good time, firſt to caſt him on his back, and then having a ſtrong Paſtorn on his grieved Leg, with a Rope draw that Leg upright, and with your hands on each ſide his thigh-bone, guide it directly into the pot: that done, let him down gently, and ſo ſuffer him to riſe with all meekneſs; then go with him into the Stable, and there charge all his hip and back with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on warm, and then ſome flocks of his own colour to be clapt upon the ſame, and ſo turn the horſe to graſs until he go upright.

But if the horſe be not hipped, but only hurt in the hip, and that newly, then firſt take of Oyl de Bay, Dialthea, of Nerve Oyl, and of Swines greaſe, of each half a pound; melt them all together, ſtirring them continually until they be throughly mingled together, then anoint the ſore place therewith againſt the Hair, every day once the ſpace of a fortnight, and make the Oyntment ſink well into the fleſh, by holding a hot Bar of Iron over the place anointed, weaving your hand to and fro till the Oyntment be entred into the skin: and if at the fortnights end you ſee the horſe not any thing amended, then ſlit a hole downward in his skin an inch beneath the hip bone, making the hole ſo wide, as you may eaſily thruſt in a rowel with your finger; and then with a Cornet and a quill blow the skin from the fleſh above the bone, and round about the

the ſame, ſo broad as the rowel may lye flat and plain within the skin and the fleſh: and this rowel will be made of ſoft Calves Leather; with a hole in the midſt, and a thread tied unto it, to pull it out when you would cleanſe it, and the hole; and if the rowel be rolled about with flax faſt tyed on, and anointed with the Oyntment under-written, it will draw ſo much the more.

Now you muſt thruſt in your rowel firſt double, and then ſpread it abroad with your finger: that done, tent it with a good large tent of flax dipt in a little Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together and made warm, and cleanſe the hole and the rowel every day once; and alſo renew the tent for the ſpace of a fortnight, and before you dreſs him, cauſe him every day to be led up and down a foot-pace a quarter of an hour, to make the humours come down; and at the fortnights end pull out the rowel, and heal up the wound with the ſame Salve, making the tent every day leſſer and leſſer, until it be whole: and ſo ſoon as it is whole, with a hot drawing Iron draw croſs lines of eight or nine Inches long, right over the hip bone, ſo as the rowelled place may be in the very midſt thereof, and burn him no deeper but as the skin may look yellow; and then charge all that place, and over all his Buttocks with this charge: Take of Pitch one pound, of Rozen half a Pound, and of Tar half a pint, boyl them together, and then being good and warm, ſpread it on with a Clout tyed in a riven ſtick, and then clap on a few flocks of the horſes colour; and if it be in Summer, let the horſe run to graſs a while, for the more he travelleth at his own will, the better it is for him.

CHAP LXXXIV.

Of Stifling, and Hurts in the Stifle.

THat Horſe is ſaid to be ſtifled, when the ſtifling bone, which is a little bone of two inches in length, lying between the nether end of the thigh-bone, and the upper end of the great hough-bone of the hinder Leg, is by any ſtrain, ſtroke, ſlip, or ſuch like, thruſt out of his right place; but if the ſtifling bone be not removed nor looſened, and yet the horſe halteth by means of ſome grief in that place, then we ſay the horſe is hurt in the ſtifle, and not ſtifled. The ſigns are theſe; If the horſe be ſtifled, the ſtifle-bone will ſtick out more of the one ſide than of the other, and it is apparent to the

eye

eye, and in his halting he will no more but touch the ground with his Toe.

The Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to thruſt two round pins croſs the ſtifling bone, through the skin, in ſuch ſort as you were taught for the ſhoulder pight; but the pins would not be any thing near ſo big, nor ſo long, becauſe the ſtifling bone is not ſo broad as the ſhoulder: and ſtanding in the Stable, let him have a paſtorn and a ring upon his ſore Leg, and thereunto faſten a Cord, which Cord muſt go about his Neck, and let it be ſo much ſtrained, as it may bring his ſore Leg more forward than the other, to keep the bone from ſtarting out: But this Cure is foul and troubleſom, wherefore other Farriers of better experience, uſe only to ſet a patten ſhooe upon his ſound foot, and ſo turn him abroad, that he may be compelled to tread upon his lame Foot, and that ſtraining of it will in a dayor two make him as ſound as ever he was, and put the ſtifling bone into its true place again. But if you cannot readily get a patten-ſhooe, then you ſhall take either a plain ſurcingle, or any other broad binding web that will go three or four times about the horſes Leg, and with it you ſhall garter up the horſes ſound Leg three fingers above the ham, even upon his main great ſinew, ſo ſtrait as your ſelf and another man can draw it, and then turn the horſe abroad where he may go up and down, and in eight and forty hours the horſe will be as ſound as ever he was: then take off the garter, and rub the place that was gartered up, with Freſh Butter, for it will be much ſwelled.

Now if this miſchance of ſtifling happen unto your Horſe in your travel, and that your occaſions will not ſuffer you to ſtay for any of theſe Cures, then you ſhall take your Horſe either to ſome deep Pond, or deep River, that hath eaſie going in and out, and there ſwim him up and down a dozen turns; which done, you may after travel him at your pleaſure: for the more he is laboured the ſounder he will go. Now if your horſe be not ſtifled, but only hurt in the ſtifle, either with ſome ſtripe or ſome ſtrain, then the bone will not ſtand out, yet perhaps the place will be much ſwelled. The cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, is, to make a little ſlit in his Skin, a handful below the ſore place, and then with a quill blow all the skin from the fleſh upwards, and then with your hand preſs out the wind again, and then thruſt in a rowel of Horſe-hair, from the firſt ſlit to the upper part of the ſtifle-bone: this

this done, take a pottle of old Piſs and boyl it to a quart, and cleanſe it well; then take a handful of Mallows, and half a pint of Sallet-oyl, and add them to the Piſs, and then boyl them well together; then Bathe all the ſore place therewith every day once, the ſpace of ſeven or eight days, and let him not ſtir out of the Stable during the Cure, and in twenty one Days he will be ſound.

Other Farriers uſe only to take a pound of Bole-armony, a quart of red Wine-Vinegar, ſix Eggs beaten, Shells and all, two penny-worth of Engliſh-Honey, and as much Venice-Turpentine, one quart of Flower, and one good handful of Bay-ſalt; put all theſe in a Pot, and incorporate them well together, then keep them cloſe one night, and the next day anoint the ſore place with ſome of it, and thus dreſſing it once a day the ſpace of nine days, it will make the Horſe ſound.

CHAP. LXXXV.

Of the bone Spavin, or the dry Spaven.

THE bone Spaven, or dry Spaven, is a hard knob as big as a Walnut, growing in the inſide of the hoof hard under the Joynt near unto the Maſter-vein; it groweth at the firſt like a tender Griſtle, and by proceſs of time, it cometh to be a hard Bone, and cauſeth the Horſe to halt much. This Sorance will come ſometimes by nature, or deſcent, as when either the Sire or Dam of the Horſe have had the ſame Diſeaſe; and ſometimes (which is moſt generally) it cometh when a Horſe is laboured too young; for a Horſe in that part of his hinder Leg hath ſmall Bones knit altogether upon one cluſter, which being preſſed before they be naturally hardened, cannot chuſe but thruſt forth theſe unnatural excretions. Otherwhiles it proceedeth from extream labour and heat, diſſolving humours which do deſcend through the Maſter-vein, continually feeding that place with evil Nutriment, and cauſes the place to ſwell, which ſwelling in continuance of time becometh ſo hard as a Bone, and therefore is called the bone Spaven. The ſigns are the apparent ſight of the Sorance; and truly for my own part, I am of the mind of other Farriers, that it is very hard abſolutely to Cure it, yet that the Eye-ſore may be taken away, and the halting much eaſed, is not hard, for I have done it many times. Then to proceed to the Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers, is thus; Firſt, Ai-

ſlit the Skin juſt over the head of the Spaven or Excretion, and open it with a Cronet, and in any caſe have a care that you touch not the Maſter-vein, but put it by: then with your Launcet lay the Spaven all bare, then with a fine Chizel about a quarter of an Inch broad, or a little more, ſtrike off the dead of the Spaven, to the quantity of a quarter of an Almond, or according to the bigneſs of a Spaven: then take two penny-weight of Verdigreaſe beaten to fine Powder, and two penny-weight of Nerve-oyl, and beat them all well together: then laying ſome of it upon fine Lint, lay it upon the Spaven; then lay dry Lint betwixt the Medicine and the Vein, that the Medicine may not touch the Vein; then lay a Plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine, and Hogs greaſe molten together, all over the Hough, both to comfort the Joynt, and to keep in the Medicine. And thus dreſs him the ſpace of three days, and it will cleanſe away the Spaven even to the bottom; at the end of three days you ſhall waſh away the Corroſive and the Matter, either with Tanners Water, or with Vinegar, and lay no more of that Salve thereto for hurting the bone; then make a Plaiſter of Diaculum, and lay it upon a Linnen Cloath and lay that Plaiſter upon the Spaven, renewing it every day once for the ſpace of ſeven days, and it will heal him up.

Others of the Old Farriers uſe, Firſt to waſh the Spaven with warm Water, and ſhave off the Hair ſo far as the Spaven extendeth, and then ſcarifie the place and make it bleed: Then take of Cantharides one dozen, and of Euforbium half a ſpoonful; beat them into Powder, and boyl them together with a little Oyl de Bay, lay this boyling hot upon the Sore, and let all his Tail be tied up from wiping away the Medicine; and then within half an hour after, ſet him up in the Stable, and tie him ſo as he may not lie down all that night, for fear of rubbing off the Medicine; and the next day anoint it with freſh Butter, continuing thus to do every day once the ſpace of five or ſix days; and when the Hair is grown again, draw the ſore place with an hot Iron in this ſort, juſt upon the Spaven: then take another hot Iron like a Bodkin, ſomewhat bowing at the point and thruſt it in at the neather end of the middle Line, and ſo upward betwixt the Skin and the Fleſh, an Inch and an half, and then tent it with a little Hogs-greaſe and Turpentine molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once, the ſpace of nine days; provided that firſt immediately after his burning, you take up the Maſter-vein, ſuffering him to bleed a little

from

from above, then with a red ſilk tie the upper end of the Vein, and leave the neather end open, to the intent that he may bleed from beneath until it ceaſe of it ſelf; and this will diminiſh the Spaven, but not take it clean away.

Now there be other Farriers which uſe it after they burn it in manner aforeſaid, and taken up the Maſter-vein, to anoint it with freſh Butter, till the burning begin to ſcale; and then take of Sage, or Nettles, of each a handful, and boyl them with four handfuls of Mallows in fair VVater, and then put thereto a little Butter, and with that, Bathe him every day once for three or four days till the burning be whole, and let him not wet his Feet during the Cure.

Others uſe to prick the Spaven with a ſharp pointed Knife, then take a piece of Candle, and lay a piece of brown Paper upon it, and with an hot Iron melt the Tallow, and after anoint it with Butter. Others uſe firſt to prick the Spaven well, then to lay upon it, for three or four days together, every day, Mans-dung: after that, lay to it Galbanum till the ſore-matter and rheum, and the humour come forth, then waſh it with Urine; and laſtly, heal it up with Oyl and Honey boyled together, for that will bring on the Hair.

Now to conclude, that which I have ever found to be the ſureſt and the cleaneſt way to take the bone ſpaven quite away, if it be uſed with diſcretion and care, Is to take of Unguentum Apoſtolorum, and of white Mercury, of each a little quantity, but of Mercury rather the more; mix them well together: then after you have caſt your Horſe, make a ſlit juſt the length of the Spaven, ſo that you touch not the Maſter-vein, then opening it, and laying all the ſpaven bare, with a ſharp Inſtrument ſcale the Spaven a little; then make a plegant of Lint juſt ſo big as the excretion or bone ſpaven is; then ſpreading ſome of the Salve thereon, lay it upon the Spaven; then with dry Lint defend all other parts of the Member, eſpecially the Maſter-vein from the corroſive: then lay the Plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe before ſpoken, round about his Hoof, and ſo let him reſt four and twenty Hours: then take away all that Medicine, and ſcaling the bone a little, if you find the corroſive have not gone deep enough, then dreſs it in the ſame manner the ſecond time, and that will be altogether ſufficient: then take of Turpentine, of Deers-ſuet, and of VVax, of each a like quantity, and mix and melt them well together, then dreſs the ſore place therewith, being warm-

ed, and Lint or Tow dipt therein, and within a day or two you ſhall ſee the whole cruſt of the Spaven come clean away, then may you with the ſame Salve, heal up the Wound; and this Bathe never failed me in any practice. Alſo underſtand, that whatſoever taketh away the Splint, taketh away the Spaven alſo.

CHAP. LXXXVI.

Of the blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven.

THE blood Spaven, wet Spaven, or through Spaven, (for all is one Diſeaſe) is a ſoft ſwelling growing on both ſides the Hoof, and ſeems as though it went through the Hoof, whereby it is called a through Spaven; but, for the moſt part, the ſwelling on the inſide (becauſe it is fed continually of the Maſter-vein) is greater than the ſwelling on the out-ſide. It proceedeth from a more fluxible and flegmy Humour, and not ſo viſcous and ſlimy, as the other Spaven doth; and therefore this never waxeth hard, nor groweth to a Bone, and therefore it is a much eaſier Cure than the other. The ſigns thereof are like the other, the apparent ſight thereof; and for the Cure, it is according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers, in this manner: Firſt, waſh the Spaven with warm Water, and then dreſs it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in ſuch ſort as was at large ſhewed in the former Chapter; only you ſhall not boyl them, but only mix them together, and dreſs the ſore therewith two days together: then anoint it with Butter, and after burn it with a hot Iron both without and within, in manner as is ſhewed alſo in the former Chapter; but you ſhall by no means tent it: then immediately you ſhall take up the Maſter-vein, and let it bleed, as was ſhewed before; and then for the ſpace of nine days, anoint him every day once with Butter, until the burning begin to ſcale, and then waſh it with this Bath: Take of Mallows three handfuls, of Sage one handful, and as much of red Nettles; boyl them in Water until they be ſoft, then put thereto a little freſh Butter, and Bathe the place every day once for the ſpace of three or four days, and until the burning be whole, let the Horſe come in no wet.

Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſhaved off the Hair, and taken up the Vein, To take of Muſtard-ſeed, of the great Mallow-root, and of Ox-dung, of each a like quantity, and as much ſtrong Vinegar as will

will mix them together like a Salve, then beat them all well together and make thereof a ſoft Plaiſter, or elſe an Ointment, and lay it upon the Spaven; change it Evening and Morning, and bind it in ſuch ſort to the Sorance with ſome piece of Cloth, that it may not fall off or be removed; and when the Spaven is clean gone, lay upon the place a Plaiſter of Pitch very hot, and take it not off, until it fall away of its own accord. Other Farriers uſe unto this former Medicine to add Oyl de Bay, Turpentine, and Bole-armonick.

And other Farriers uſe but only to take up the Vein, both above and below the Spaven, and ſuffering it to bleed well; then to knit up the Vein, and anoint it with Butter till it be whole, and it will conſume the Spaven.

CHAP. LXXXVII.

A moſt rare and well approved Medicine, which will take away any blood Spaven whatſoever.

AFter you have taken up the Vein, knit it faſt above, and then cut it in ſunder, you ſhall take of Linſeed two or three handfuls, and bruiſe it well in a Mortar; then mix it with new Cow-dung, and putting it in a Frying-Pan, heat it well upon the Fire, and very hot apply it to the Spaven, renewing it Morning and Evening till it bring the Spaven like a Boil to Impoſthumation, and to break it; then after it hath run a day or two, you ſhall only apply to the ſore a Plaiſter of Pitch, till it be whole.

CHAP. LXXXVIII.

Of the Sellender.

THE Sellender is a certain kind of dry Scab, growing in the very bent of the Ham of the hinder Leg; and it extendeth out into ill favoured chaps or chinks, which if it be not prevented by Medicine, it will fret in ſunder the Sinews of the Hoof. It is in all points like unto a Mallander, and it proceedeth from the ſelf-like Cauſes, and requireth the ſelf-ſame Cures; therefore look into the Chapter of the Mallander, and whatſoever you find there, that will Cure the Mallander, the ſame will alſo Cure the Sellender.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXXIX.

Of the Hough Bonny.

THE Hough Bonny is a round ſwelling like a Paris Ball, growing upon the very tip or elbow of the Hoof, and cometh ever of ſome ſtripe or bruiſe; but eſpecially when he beateth his Hoof either againſt the Poſt which ſtandeth behind him, at the nether end of his Stall, or againſt the Bar which doth divide him from another Horſe, which many Rammiſh Jades will do, when they ſeek to ſtrike at the Horſe which ſtandeth next them.

Now the Cure thereof is thus, according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers, Take a round Iron ſomewhat ſharp at the end, like a good big Bodkin, and let it be ſomewhat bending at the point; then holding the ſore with your left Hand, pulling it ſomewhat from the Sinews, pierce it with the Iron, being firſt made red hot, thruſting it beneath in the bottom, and ſo upward into the Jelly, to the intent that the ſame Jelly may iſſue downward out of the hole: and having thruſt out all the Jelly, tent the hole with a Tent of Flax dipt in Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together; and alſo anoint the out-ſide with Hogs-greaſe made warm, renewing it every day once until the hole be ready to cloſe up, making the tent every day leſſer and leſſer until it be whole. Now for my own part both for this Sorance, or any other bruiſe in this part, I have found this Cure ever the beſt: Firſt, either with rotten Litter or Hay boyled in old Urine, or elſe with a Plaiſter of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower boiled together, to ripen the ſwelling, and bring it to putrefaction, or elſe to drive the ſwelling away; but if it come to a head, then to Launce it in the loweſt part of the ſoftneſs, with a thin hot Iron, and ſo let out the matter: then to tent it with Turpentine, Deers-ſuet, and VVax, of each a like quantity molten together, laying a Plaiſter of the ſame Salve over it, to hold in the tent until it be perfectly well.

CHAP.

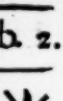
CHAP. XC.

Of the Curb.

A Curb is a long ſwelling a little beneath the Elbow of the Hoof of the great ſinew behind, hard above the top of the Horn, which cauſeth the Horſe to halt after a little Labour: for the more his ſinew is ſtrained, the greater is his pain, and the more he hath reſt, the leſſer is his grief; it cometh as the Spavens come, either from deſcent, or from great burthens when the Horſe is young, or elſe from ſome ſtrain or wrench. The ſigns are, the apparent view thereof; and the Cure according to the Old Farriers, Is firſt to ſhave off the Hair, then prick it with a Fleam in three or four places, and for three or four days together, lay unto it twice a day Mans-dung; then lay Galbanum to it likewiſe twice a day until it rot, and that the matter doth iſſue forth; then waſh it with Urine: and laſtly, heal it up with Honey and Oyl boyled together, renewing the ſame twice a day till the Curb be gone; and in any caſe let all your Salves be applied warm and new made, and if you make an Iſſue with a hot Iron in the bottom of the Curb, it will not do amiſs.

Others uſe to take a very hot Iron, and hold it as nigh the ſore as may be, but not touching it: then when it is warm, vent it in ſix or ſeven places; then take a a ſpoonful of Salt, half a ſpoonful of Nerve-oyl, and a penny-weight of Verdigreaſe, and the white of an Egg; mix theſe well together, and dipping Flax in the ſame, lay it to the Curb, and this in few dreſſings will take it away. Other Farriers uſe to chafe and rub the Curb well with their Hands: then take red Wall-wort leaves, and Burrage, and braying them well together, lay it to the Curb, renewing it once a day for a ſeven-night together. Others uſe to ſlit the Curb all the length, then take a piece of Linnen cloth, and wet it in Wine made warm: then ſtrow Verdigreaſe thereupon, and bind it to the Sore, renewing it once a day until the Curb be gone. Others of the Ancient Farriers take of Wine-lees a pint, of Cummin half an ounce, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and ſtir them well together; and being made warm, charge the ſore place therewith, renewing it every day once, the ſpace of three or four days, and when the ſwelling is almoſt gone, then

then draw it with a hot Iron made very thin, in this ſort, and cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and laid on good and warm, and clap thereon ſome flocks of the Horſes colour, or ſo nigh as may be gotten, and remove them not until they fall away of themſelves; and for the ſpace of Nine Days let the Horſe reſt, and come in no wet. Now there be other Farriers which to this laſt recited Salve, will add Tar, and it is not amiſs, only it will not ſtick ſo well.



Now for mine own part, I have ever found this practice the beſt.

First, With a broad Incle to bind the Hoof ſtrait a little about the Cod: then with a ſmooth hazel Stick to beat, rub, and chafe the Curb; then with a Fleam ſtrike it as deep as you can in two or three places of the Curb; then thruſt out the corrupt Blood; and after upon the point of your Knife, put into every hole as deep as you can thruſt it, the quantity of two Barley-Corns of white Mercury, and ſo let the Horſe reſt four and twenty Hours after; then after, only anoint the ſore place with hot molten Butter till it be whole, once a day at the leaſt. And likewiſe here underſtand, that whatſoever Cureth the Splint or the Spaven, that Cureth the Curb alſo.

CHAP. XCI.

Of the Pains.

THE Pains is a certain Ulcerous Scab growing in the Paſtorns of a Horſe, betwixt the Fetlock and the Heel, full of fretting materiſh Water, and cometh only for want of good rubbing and clean dreſſing, after the Horſe hath been Journied in the Winter ways, by means whereof the ſand and durt remaining in the Hair, fretteth the Skin and Fleſh, and ſo breaketh to a Scab; and therefore your Friſons, and Flanders-Horſes and Mares, which are now ſo much in uſe with us for the Coach, are the ſooneſt troubled with this Diſeaſe, if the Keeper be not much the more careful. The ſigns hereof are, his Leg will be ſwoln and hot, the Scab will be palpable to be felt, and the Water will iſſue out of the Scab; which Water is ſo hot and fretting, that it will ſcald off the Hair, and breed Scabs where it goeth. The Cure, according to the Ancient Farriers, is, Take of Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, Honey and black Sope, of each a like quantity, and

and having molten them upon a soft fire, take it off, and put in a little Bole-armonick, finely beaten into powder; then work all these things well together with a stick in your right Hand, and a dish of Wheat-flower by you, that with your left Hand you may put it in by a little at once, till you have made it thick like an Oyntment, or soft Salve; then spread it upon a Linnen cloth, as big as the Sore, having first cut away the hair, and made the Sore raw, apply to the Salve, and dress him thus once a day until it be whole.

This Medicine is well approved to Cure all sorts of Pain, Scratches, Mouldy Heels, or any other skirvy scalls whatsoever, that may breed in Horses Legs or Heels, whether they come by means of evil Humours, or for lack of good Dressing or clean Keeping, whether they be Mattry or filthy running Sores, or else dry Scabs. Others of the old Farriers use for this Sorance to take a pint of Red-Wine Lees, and a handful of Wheat-bran, a saucer full of Honey, and half a pound of the powder of powdred Beef burnt, and as much of Bark dust, and half a pound of Allom, and a quarter of a pound of Swines-grease, and half a handful of Vervine: beat all these together in a Mortar, and then fry them over the fire, and make a hot plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, as hot as the horse can suffer it, letting it abide there the space of three days; and in once or twice this dressing him, it will make him sound; yet some hold, if you do with a hot drawing Iron sear the great vein over-thwart, a handful above the fetlock, and then put a spoonful of Tar, a spoonful of Butter, and a spoonful of Honey, and warming them well together, anoint the vein therewith every day till the Cure be perfected, and it is much available.

Other Farriers use, First to wash all the Horses Pastorns with Butter and Beer well warmed together, and then his Leg being somewhat dryed, clip away all the hair that doth annoy the sore: then take of Turpentine, of Hogs-grease, and of Honey, of each a like quantity; mingle them well together in a pot, and put thereunto a little Bole armonick, the yolks of two Eggs, and as much Wheat-flower as will thicken the things aforesaid, and so by long working it, make it like a Plaister; then spread it upon the Linnen cloth, and lap it round about the Horses Pastorn, and bind it fast on with a rowler, renewing it once a day till the Horse be whole, and in no wise let the Horse come in any wet during the Cure. Others use, First to chafe the fore place with a hay-rope, or with a hair-cloth, till it either bleed or be raw; then take a little strong Mustard,

Bean-

Bean-flower, and freſh greaſe, with a little Fenugreek; then mix all together in a diſh, and make thereof a Salve, and therewith anoint the ſore, until it leave mattering; then take Honey, the white of an Egg, and freſh Butter; mix them together, and anoint the ſore place therewith untill it be whole. Others uſe only to bathe the ſore with Beef-broth, and then for four or five days after, to anoint it with Soap; or elſe firſt to plunge his Feet in ſcalding water twice or thrice; and then bathe the ſore in ſcalding water; then have ready a hard roaſted Egg, cleave it in the midſt, and lap it too as hot as you can, and let it lye bound all night; uſe this once or twice, and you may adventure to ride him.

☞ Others uſe to take Pepper, Garlick ſtampt, Coleworts, and old Hogs-greaſe, of each a like quantity; then beat them in a mortar till they be come to a Salve, and ſo lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day till it be whole.

☞ Others uſe firſt to take up the Shackle-veins on both ſides, then take the ſoft row of a Red-herring, and Muſtard, and black Soap, and when they are well beaten together, boil them in Vinegar till they come to a Salve, and apply it to the ſore; this will Cure the Pains, albeit you do not take up the Shackle-veins. If you cannot readily get this Salve, you may take Butter and Honey molten together; and it will help them, or elſe take a pound of Hogs-greaſe, a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, two ounces of Muſtard, half a pound of Honey, half a pound of Engliſh Wax, one ounce of Arſnick, two ounces of Red-lead, and half a pint of Vinegar; boil all theſe together and make an Ointment of it: then having clipt and made the ſore all bare, apply the Medicine thereunto very hot, and renew it once a day until it be whole. Others uſe to take five ounces of Orpiment, five of Tartar, one of Verdigreaſe, half an ounce of Sulphur, as much of Vitriol made into powder, the juice of four Citrons, the whites of two Eggs, with three ounces of Sallet-oyl; let all theſe be very well beaten together, and applied once a day to the Sore, and it will not only heal this Diſeaſe, but any ſalt humour whatſoever: Mingle with ſoft Greaſe, Vinegar, Honey, Orpiment, and Arſenick; but let Arſnick be the leaſt, and it will Cure this Diſeaſe: ſo will alſo White-wax, Turpentine and Camphire mixt together. Others uſe to take an Hundred Black-Snails in the Month of *May*, ſlit them, and put them in a bag with a pint of Bay-ſalt, then hang them over the

the fire, with a Veſſel ſet under to receive what drops from them, and keep it in a cloſe glaſs: then anoint the ſore every day therewith, and it will heal this Sorance. Others take Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and Suet of a Hee goat, of each alike, alſo boil them with a ſoft fire and ſtir it well: when it waxeth red, add of Verdigreaſe and Vitriol, of each a like quantity made into powder, ſtirring it till it be red and thick: then being warm, anoint the ſore place therewith once a day, after it hath been waſhed with warm water: and this not only helps the the pains, but alſo any Sorance what ſoever of like nature about the Legs.

Alſo green Copperas and Roch-allom, of each half a pound, and a handful of Bay-ſalt boiled in a gallon of running-water, will heal it; or elſe unto it add a pint of Honey, and boil it over again, and it will be the better; then when you have anointed the ſore therewith, rub it with the powder of Glaſs, Muſtard and Vinegar mixed together, and afterward skin it with Cream, and the inner rind of Elder beaten to a Salve, which muſt be applied to the Sore twice a day at the leaſt.

CHAP. XCII.

Of the Mules or Kibt-Heels.

THeſe Mules, or Kibed-Heels, are certain dry ſcabs or chaps breeding behind upon the Heels of a Horſe, and ſo a little inward even to the Fetlock, in long chaps and chinks; it proceedeth either from corruption of blood, or from being bred in wet marriſh grounds, or elſe from unclean and negligent keeping, in ſuch manner as the Pains are bred; this Sorance will make the Horſes Leg to ſwell much, eſpecially in the Winter, and about the Spring-time, and he will go ſtifly, and halt much.

Now for the Cure, you ſhall underſtand, that whatſoever healeth the Pains, the ſame will in like ſort heal thoſe Kibed Heels; yet for more particularity, you ſhall know, that the old Farriers did uſe for this Sorance, if they took it at the beginning, but only to anoint it for two or three days with Soap, and then after to waſh it with ſtrong Urine, or Beef-broth till it were whole; but if it were of any long continuance, then firſt to cut away the hair and lay the ſore open and plain; then take two ounces of unſlaked Lime, one ounce

of Soap, and the White of an Egg, or else an ounce of unslaked Lime, and as much Salt, and three ounces of Soot, and mingling them with strong Vinegar, anoint the sore therewith, and it will heal and kill them.

Others Farriers use to calcinate Tartar, and dissolve it to Water; then congeal it like Salt, and mingle it with Soap like an Oyntment, and then dress the sore therewith, and this will in eight and forty hours heal any Mules, Pains, or Scratches whatsoever. If you take the juice of the leaves and roots of Elder, it is very good to dry up any of these evil humours.

CHAP. XCIII.

Of Wind-galls.

THE Wind-gall is a little Bleb or Bladder full of corrupt jelly, and like the white of an Egg growing on each side of the Master-sinew of the Leg, hard above the Pastorn. Now of them some will be big, and some will be little, and there will be sometimes more than one or two of a cluster, and they are so painful, especially in the Summer-season, when the Weather is hot, and the Ways hard, that the Horse is not able to travel, but halteth down-right; they proceed commonly from extream labour in the Summer-time upon hard Ways, whereby the Humors being dissolved, do flow and resort into the hollow places about the nether Joynts, which are most beaten and feebled with travel, and there are congealed and covered with a thin skin like a bladder; they are most apparent to be seen and felt.

The Cure thereof, according to the old Farriers, is, to Take a Knife, and open it in the length of a Bean, piercing no further into it than through the skin of the Bladder, and then thrust out the Jelly, which as I said before, will be like the white of an Egg; then take the yolk of an Egg, and as much Oyl de Bay as a good Nut, and mixing them together, make a Plaister thereof, and lay it to the sore, and in two or three days it will heal it. Others of the old Farriers dress it with Euforbium and Cantharides, in such sort as is shewed for the taking away of the Splent: but if that will not serve, then with a hot drawing Iron to draw the wind-gall in this sort: then to open the middle Lane with a Launcet, the length of a Bean and

and thruſt out the jelly, then lay Pitch and Rozen molten together upon it, and then a few flocks, and that will take it clean away. Other Farriers uſe to take up the Maſter-veins on the inſide of his Legs, and ſuffer him only to bleed from below: Then having put up the Vein, cover all his Leg over with a Plaiſter of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower mingled together, and rowl it with a long rowler; dreſs him in this ſort once a day till it be whole.

Others uſe to open the skin and put out the jelly, then take a ſpoonful of Oyl de Bay, a ſpoonful of Turpentine, a penny-worth of Verdigreaſe, the white of an Egg, and a quarter of an ounce of Red Lead, boil them together till it come to a Salve; then lay it to the Wind-gall, and it will Cure it; or elſe, after you have let out the jelly, take Rozen, Sheeps-ſuet, and Brimſtone, of each alike, and melt them together, and lay that upon the Wind-gall, ſo it be not too hot, and it will Cure it. Others take the Roots of Cummin, and beat them well with a little Salt, and lay that to the Wind-gall; or elſe anoint them with the juice of Onions or Leek-blades, and that will allay them, or elſe Ground-ivy and Worm-wood with the roots ſod in Wine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take them away. Others of our later experienced Farriers, Take an ounce of White-wax, an ounce of Rozen, two ounces of raw Honey, three ounces of Swines-greaſe, two ounces of Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, five ounces of Oyl de Bay; mix all theſe well together, and ſtrain them; then rub them into the Wind-gall, by holding a hot bar of Iron againſt the Oyntment and it will take the Wind-gall away. Now for the making of the Oyl of the yolks of Eggs, it is thus: Firſt, ſeeth the Eggs hard, then ſtamp them, and ſeeth them in an earthen pot with a ſoft fire, and ſo ſtrain them. Now this Medicine will not only heal the Wind-gall, but the Ring-bone alſo; it is very good for the abating of the Wind-gall, and for making the Medicine to work the better, to let the Horſe ſtand in a cold running ſtream an hour, morning and evening. The ſcum of the four Salts ſod in mans Urine, and laid to the Wind-gall, will take it away.

There be others which take a pottle of Vinegar, a pound of Orpiment, a quarter of a pound of Galls, and as much of the herb Molleyn ſtamped ſmall; mingle theſe well together, and put them into a pot, then every day therewith bath the Wind-gall; and in three weeks it will dry them clean up; it will alſo take away a Curb, or a Spaven, or a Ring-bone, if you take them at the breeding. Other

ther Farriers take of Sevil-oyl and Brimſtone, of each a like quantity, and ſeeth them in Mans Urine, and ſtir them well together; after put in the quantity of a Walnut of Soap, to keep the hair from ſcalding off; then bath the Wind-gall with this hot, thrice together, rubbing it well in; then anoint it above with Nerve-oyl, and Oyl de Bay, and make it, by holding to it a hot Bar of Iron, or a hot Fire-pan, to ſink into the fleſh, and in three days it will dry up any Wind-gall.

Now for mine own part, the beſt Medicine I have found in my Practice for this Sorance, and the eaſieſt, is, with a fine Launcet to open the Wind-gall, making the hole no bigger than that the jelly may come forth; then having thruſt it clean forth, lap a woollen wet cloath upon it, and with a Taylors hot preſſing Iron, rub upon the cloath till you have made the cloath ſuck in all the moiſture from the Wind-gall, and that the Wind-gall is dry; then take of Pitch, of Rozen, and of Maſtick, of each a like quantity, and being very hot, daubt it all over the VVind-gall, then clap good ſtore of flocks of the colour of the Horſe upon it, and ſo let the Horſe reſt or run at graſs till the Plaiſter fall off by its own accord, and be ſure the VVind-gall will be gone.

Now I would give you this for a Rule, that by no means you uſe to a VVind-gall, either Arſenick, or Roſalgar; for commonly then the VVind-gall will come again; neither muſt you burn much; nor make any great inciſion: For any of theſe will turn the ſoft ſubſtance of the VVind-gall to hardneſs, and then the Horſe will be lame without Cure.

CHAP. XCIV.

Of a Strain in the Paſtorn-joynt, or Fetlock.

A Horſe may be ſtrained in the Fet-lock, or Paſtorn-joynt, either by ſome wrench in the Stable, when the Planchers are broken under him, or by treading awry upon ſome ſtone, or upon ſome Cartrut, as he travelleth by the way. The ſigns whereof be theſe; The joynt will be ſwoln and ſore, and the Horſe will halt; and the Cure, according to the old Farriers, is, Take a quart of ſtale Urine, and ſeeth it till the ſome ariſe; then ſtrain it, and put thereto a handful of Tanſie, and a handful of Mallows, and a Sauçer full of Honey, and a quarter of a pound of Sheeps ſuet; then ſet it on the

the fire, and ſeethe them all together till the Herbs be ſodden ſoft; and then being very hot, lay this Poultis to the Joynt, and cover it over with a Blue cloath; and in three times dreſſing it will help the ſtrain.

Other Farriers take of Dialthea half a pound, and as much Nerve-oyl, mingle them well together, and anoint the ſore place therewith, chafing it well with both your Hands, that the Oyntment may enter in; continuing ſo to do every day once until the Oyntment be all ſpent, and let the horſe reſt; but if this will not prevail, then they will uſe Cantharides, as in caſe of the Splint; but I do not hold that Cure convenient, becauſe it will make a double grief. Therefore I had rather you ſhould take Pompilion, Nerve-oil, and Black-ſoap, of each alike, and heat them hot on the fire, and then anoint the Sore place therewith, and it will make the Horſe ſound.

CHAP. XCV.

To remedy any manner of Halting that cometh by Strain, Stroak, or any other Accident.

NOW foraſmuch as Halting is ſuch a general Sorance amongſt Horſes, that not any Man that is Maſter of a Horſe, but even in his ſmalleſt travel, is at one time or other vexed with the ſame, I will here, before I do proceed anyfurther, ſet you down certain general Receits, ſelected and culled out of the private practice and experiment of the beſt Farriers in *Chriſtendom*, of which I may give the bolder Teſtimony, becauſe I have made practice of their Vertues.

If then your Horſe have taken any halt, either by ſtiffneſs of Sinews, Strain, Wrench, Stroak, or any other accident, if the grief be in his Leg, you ſhall take Smallage, Ox-eye, and Sheeps ſuet, of each a like quantity, chop them all together, and boil it in Men's Urine, and bathe all the Leg therewith; then with Hay-ropes wet in cold water, rowl up his Leg, and he will be able to travel the next day.

If you ſeethe a pound of Black-Soap in a quart of ſtrong Ale till it look like Tar, and anoint the Leg therewith, it will ſupple the ſinews, and bring them to their true courſe. If you waſh his Limbs with the grounds of Beer or Ale made warm, and then rope them up with Hay-ropes wet in the ſame, it will recover a ſtrain. If you take

take of the flower of Linſeed, of Turpentine, and Life-honey, of each alike, and boil them with White-Wine until they be thick like unto an Ointment; then ſpread it on a cloth, and lay it to the grief, and it will take away any Ach or Pain in the Sinews; likewiſe a Plaiſter of Wine-lees and Wheat-flower, or a Plaiſter of Black-Soap and Boars-greaſe will do the like.

If you mix Nerve Oyl, Oyl de Bay, and Aquavitæ together, and warm it, and chaſe it in, and upon, and about the ſtrain, it will take the anguiſh quite away. If the grief be in the Shoulder, or the hinder Leg, then burn him upon the very Joint, by taking up the skin with a pair of Pinſors, and thruſt the skin through with a hot Iron overthwart; and if this Cure him not, then his pain is betwixt the thin skin and the bone, which muſt then be rowelled. If the grief be in the Shoulder, or in the Hip, or elſe where, then let him blood, and ſaving the blood, mix therewith the powder of Frankincenſe, and anoint the Horſe with the ſame. If the grief be only in the ſinews, then take the Plaiſter called Sologliatium, made of Gum-dragant, new Wax, Pitch and Turpentine mixed together, or elſe take the yolks of two Eggs, an ounce of Frankincenſe, and a little Bran, and beat them well together, and lay it to the Pain. If the Grief do proceed from a hot Cauſe, then let the Horſe blood, and with that blood mix Vinegar and Oyl, and anoint him, and chaſe it well. But if it proceed from a cold Cauſe, then let him bleed a little; and with Figs ſoaked a day in warm water, and as much Muſtard-ſeed, make a Plaiſter, and lay it to the Grief. If it come either by any ruſh or ſtripe, let the Horſe blood, and with that blood mingle ſtrong Vinegar, Eggs, ſhells and all, three ounces of Sanguis Draconis, four of Bole-armony, and five of Wheat-meal, and daub it all over the ſore place. If the Grief be in the Shoulder, and the skin broken, take Galls of Soria punned, and mingle them with Honey, and lay it to the ſore. If his pain come from the ſtiffneſs of his Joynts, Take a pound of Black Soap, and boil it in a quart of Ale till it be thick, and it will comfort the Joynts. If the Joynts be ſwelled, then take Rozen, Pitch, Turpentine, and Sanguis Draconis molten together, and lay it to the ſwelling warm, and it will either take away the ſwelling, or elſe ripen it and make it run. If you take of the Oyl of Camomil, Oyl of Dill, Butter and Agrippa, of each a like quantity; or elſe make a Paiſter of an ounce of Turpentine, half an ounce of Verdigreaſe, and the marrow of a Stag; or bathe the

Horſe

horſe with warm water, wherein Roſemary hath been ſod, and it will eaſe any pain whatſoever. If the horſes pain be in his ſhoulder, firſt with a Lancet prick the skin through between the ſpade-bone and the marrow-bone; then putting in a quill, blow the skin from the fleſh, even all about; then thruſting out the wind with your hand, put in a rowel; then take a pottle of ſtale Urine, ſeeth it with a pound of Butter, and as much Swines-greaſe, and a handful of Mallows, a handful of Tanſie, a handful of Vervin, a handful of red Nettles, a handful of Southernwood, and a handful of Balm leaves; then beat them all well together, and ſo anoint his ſhoulder therewith, and let him not go forth of the Stable for ſeven days. If his grief be in any nether joynt, then take a handful of Lawrel-leaves, and of Primroſe leaves, of Ground-Ivy, of Crowfoot, of Mallows, of red Fennel, and of fine Hay, of each of them ſeveral as much; ſeeth them well together, and then let them ſtand fourteen days, then bath the joynt once a day, and bind on the herbs unto it four days together; then after chaſe into the joynt freſh greaſe and oyl mixt together, and it will eaſe all his pain. Now to conclude, if any joynt or member about the horſe be by any flux of humours ſwelled, and grown out of ſhape, whereby the horſe goeth ſtiff and halteth: then to diſſolve thoſe humours, take Wormwood, Sage, Roſemary, the bark of the Elm-tree, and of a Pine, together with Linſeed, and boiling theſe together, make a Bath or Poltis thereof, and lay it to the ſick member, and it will diſſolve the humours; and ſo likewiſe will Figs, being ſtamped with Salt, and applied to the ſore.

CHAP. XCVI.

Three Rare and Well approved Medicines, which will cure any manner of Strain or Swelling whatſoever, be it hard or ſoft, by what Accident ſoever it ſhall come.

IF the Strain be newly taken, you ſhall then take Vinegar of the beſt, a pint, and of ſweet Butter better than a quarter of a pound, and melt them over the fire; then with fine Wheat Bran, make it into a Poltis upon the fire, and lay it as hot to the ſtrain as the horſe is able to endure it without ſcalding, and do thus morning and evening until the ſtrain be aſſwaged. But if the ſtrain be of no longer continuance, then take Mallows, and Chickweed, and boyl them either

in the grounds of Ale or of ſtrong Urine, and lay them very hot to the ſtrain. Laſtly, if your ſtrain, by length of time, or evil Medicines, be grown, in mens imaginations, paſt cure, the ſinews and ſwelling being bony, hard, and knotted; then you ſhall take Peece greaſe which is made of Shoo-makers threads, and melting it on the fire, anoint and bathe the ſtrain therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but alſo holding a hot bar of Iron againſt it to make the Ointment ſink in; then take a fine Linnen rowler, and rowl up the Leg gently; do thus once a day, and it will take away the greateſt and moſt deſperate ſtrain that may be.

CHAP. XCVII.

Another certain approved Cure for any Strain whatſoever.

TAke Boars-greaſe, Bole-armony, Black Soap and Nerve Oyl, of each a like quantity, boyl them well together, and then apply it hot to the grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and alſo heating it in very well, either with a hot brick-bat, a hot fire-ſhovel, or a hot bar of Iron. And thus do once a day till the Pain depart.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of Enterfearing.

ENterfearing is either when a horſe through a natural ſtraitneſs in his pace, or through evil and too broad ſhooing, goeth ſo narrow behind with his hinder feet, that he heweth the one againſt the other upon the inſide of his Legs, even with the Paſtorn Joynt; and by means of his hewing, there groweth hard mattery ſcabs, which are ſo ſore, that they many times make the horſe to halt much. The ſigns are the ſtraitneſs of his going, and the apparentneſs of the ſcabs. Now the Cure conſiſteth as much in prevention, as in ſalve. For the prevention, which is, to keep a horſe from hewing one Leg upon another, it conſiſteth only in the Office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder ſhooes, whereby he may go wider, and not touch: Of which we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we treat of paring and ſhooing of each ſeveral foot. For the ſalve, which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus: You ſhall take of May-butter (if

(if you can get it) or elſe freſh greaſe, or freſh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve Oyl; then fry them all together in a pan, and then let it ſtand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow-dung; and then Plaiſter-wiſe apply this unto the ſore, renewing it once a day, and it will not only heal this ſore, but alſo any prick by a nail whatſoever.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of the Shackle-gall, or Gall in the Paſtorn, either by Shackle or Lock.

IF a Horſe be galled in the Paſtorn, on the Heel, or upon the Cronet, either with ſhackle or lock, as it many times happens in the Campaign Countries, where the Farmers uſe much to teather their Horſes; then for ſuch a ſore you ſhall take Honey and Verdigreaſe, and boyl them together till the one half be conſumed, and that it look red; then after it is a little cooled, you ſhall anoint the ſore place therewith twice a day, and then ſtrow upon it a little chopt flocks to keep on the ſalve. This is excellent for any gall whatſoever, and chiefly for the ſcratches.

CHAP. C.

Of Hurts in the Legs, which come by Caſting in the Halter.

THe hurts which a horſe getteth by being caſt in the halter, are many, and proceed from divers Accidents, as when the reins of the Collar are ſo long, and will not run to and fro, that the horſe gets one or both his fore-legs or hind-legs over them, and then with ſtrugling, woundeth and galleth them much; or elſe when a horſe having a deſire to ſcratch his ear with his hinder foot, rubbing it to and fro, in the end faſteneth his foot either in the collar, or the reins, and then the more he ſtriveth to looſen it, the more he galleth and woundeth it, even ſometimes to the very bone. Now for the Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, Take of Oyl Olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little wax, and working them all well together, lay it plaiſter-wiſe unto the ſore, renew-

in the grounds of Ale or of ſtrong Urine, and lay them very hot to the ſtrain. Laſtly, if your ſtrain, by length of time, or evil Medicines, be grown, in mens imaginations, paſt cure, the ſinews and ſwelling being bony, hard, and knotted; then you ſhall take Peece greaſe which is made of Shoo-makers threads, and melting it on the fire, anoint and bathe the ſtrain therewith very hot, not only chafing it exceedingly with your hand, but alſo holding a hot bar of Iron againſt it to make the Ointment ſink in; then take a fine Linnen rowler, and rowl up the Leg gently; do thus once a day, and it will take away the greateſt and moſt deſperate ſtrain that may be.

CHAP. XCVII.

Another certain approved Cure for any Strain whatſoever.

TAke Boars-greaſe, Bole-armony, Black Soap and Nerve Oyl, of each a like quantity, boyl them well together, and then apply it hot to the grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and alſo heating it in very well, either with a hot brick-bat, a hot fire-ſhovel, or a hot bar of Iron. And thus do once a day till the Pain depart.

CHAP. XCVIII.

Of Enterfearing.

ENterfearing is either when a horſe through a natural ſtraitneſs in his pace, or through evil and too broad ſhooing, goeth ſo narrow behind with his hinder feet, that he heweth the one againſt the other upon the inſide of his Legs, even with the Paſtorn Joynt; and by means of his hewing, there groweth hard mattery ſcabs, which are ſo ſore, that they many times make the horſe to halt much. The ſigns are the ſtraitneſs of his going, and the apparentneſs of the ſcabs. Now the Cure conſiſteth as much in prevention, as in ſalve. For the prevention, which is, to keep a horſe from hewing one Leg upon another, it conſiſteth only in the Office of the Smith, and the making of his hinder ſhooes, whereby he may go wider, and not touch: Of which we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we treat of paring and ſhooing of each ſeveral foot. For the ſalve, which is to cure the hurt being once received, it is thus: You ſhall take of May-butter (if

(if you can get it) or elſe freſh greaſe, or freſh butter, with a quantity of Rozen, and as much Nerve Oyl; then fry them all together in a pan, and then let it ſtand till it be cold, and put it in a pot, and put to it a little Cow-dung; and then Plaiſter-wiſe apply this unto the ſore, renewing it once a day, and it will not only heal this ſore, but alſo any prick by a nail whatſoever.

CHAP. XCIX.

Of the Shackle-gall, or Gall in the Paſtorn, either by Shackle or Lock.

IF a Horſe be galled in the Paſtorn, on the Heel, or upon the Cronet, either with ſhackle or lock, as it many times happens in the Campaign Countries, where the Farmers uſe much to teather their Horſes; then for ſuch a ſore you ſhall take Honey and Verdigreaſe, and boyl them together till the one half be conſumed, and that it look red; then after it is a little cooled, you ſhall anoint the ſore place therewith twice a day, and then ſtrow upon it a little chopt flocks to keep on the ſalve. This is excellent for any gall whatſoever, and chiefly for the ſcratches.

CHAP. C.

Of Hurts in the Legs, which come by Caſting in the Halter.

THe hurts which a horſe getteth by being caſt in the halter, are many, and proceed from divers Accidents, as when the reins of the Collar are ſo long, and will not run to and fro, that the horſe gets one or both his fore-legs or hind-legs over them, and then with ſtrugling, woundeth and galleth them much; or elſe when a horſe having a deſire to ſcratch his ear with his hinder foot, rubbing it to and fro, in the end faſteneth his foot either in the collar, or the reins, and then the more he ſtriveth to looſen it, the more he galleth and woundeth it, even ſometimes to the very bone. Now for the Cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus, Take of Oyl Olive one ounce, of Turpentine two or three ounces, melt them together over the fire, and then put thereunto a little wax, and working them all well together, lay it plaiſter-wiſe unto the ſore, renew-

ing it once a day until it be whole. Now there be other Farriers which only anoint the ſore with the Whites of Eggs and Sallet-oyl mixed together; and then when the ſore cometh to a ſcab, anoint it with Butter, being molten until it look brown.

Now for mine own part, the Cure which I principally uſe for this Sorance, is, to take of Wax, of Turpentine, and of Hogs greaſe, of each one ounce, and having mingled and molten them well together, put them into a pot; then take an ounce of Verdigreaſe beaten to powder, and an ounce of Hogs-greaſe, and mix them very well together, and put that into another pot; then when you dreſs the ſore, take of the firſt ſalve two parts, and of the latter a third part, and mix them well together in the palm of your hand, anoint all the ſore place therewith, doing thus once a day until it be whole.

CHAP. CI.

Of the Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tails.

THE Scratches, Crepanches, or Rats-tayls, being all but one Sorance, are long, ſcabby and dry chaps or rifts, growing right up and down, and overthwart on the hind Legs, juſt from the Fetlock unto the end of the Curb; and as the pains are under the Fetlock, ſo the ſcratches are above the Fetlock, and do proceed either from dry melancholy humours ingendred by outward filth, or elſe by fuming of the horſes dung, lying either near or under him. The ſigns are both the apparent ſight and the eaſie feeling of the ſame, beſide the ſtarting, dividing, and curling of the hair; as alſo that the Sorance will ſtink much. The cure is, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, to take any of thoſe former Medicines whatſoever, which are already recited, either for the Pains or Mules: yet for your more particular underſtanding you ſhall know, theſe Medicines are moſt proper for this Sorance. Firſt, you ſhall ſhave away the hair, and make the ſore raw; then take of Turpentine half a pound, of Honey half a pint, of Hogs greaſe half a quartern, and three yolks of Eggs, and of Bole-armony a quartern beaten into powder, of Bean flower half a pint; mix all theſe well together, and make a ſalve thereof, and then with your finger anoint all the ſore place therewith, and let the horſe come in no wet during the cure.

☞ Other Farriers uſe (and ſure it is the better practice) firſt after they

they have ſhaved away the hair, and laid the ſore raw, to waſh it well with old Urine very warm, then take black Soap, Muſtard, and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, and mix therewith ſome of an Ox gall; then ſtir them well together, and chaſe and rub the place therewith, and bind thereto a cloth, ſo uſe it once a day till it be whole; then after anoint it with Neats-foot-Oyl to ſupple the ſinews again. Others uſe to take the fineſt hay, and burn it to aſhes upon a fair board; then mix it with Neats-foot Oyl and make a Salve thereof; then rub the Sores until they bleed; and then anoint them with the ſaid Salve, and rope his Legs, and keep them from wet. Others uſe after they have waſhed the ſore with old Stale, then to take a quantity of ſtrong Muſtard, Vinegar, Gray-ſoap Barrows greaſe, and ſome Quick-ſilver; mix them together, and therewith anoint the ſore.

Other Farriers take a quantity of unſlacked Lime, half ſo much ℔ black Soap, and ſo much of ſtrong Vinegar as ſhall ſuffice to make it like an Oyntment; then the hair being cut away, and the ſore waſhed with Urine, lay to this Oyntment, renewing it not the ſpace of two days, and it will kill the Sorance; then waſh the place once or twice with warm wine; then after heal it with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together; and in no wiſe let the Horſe come in any wet. Others uſe after they have waſhed the ſore place with Urine, and clipt away the hair, and made the wound raw, to take Butter and Tar, of each alike, and boyling them together, anoint all the ſore place therewith every day till it be whole.

Others take of Honey and Verdigreaſe of each alike, and boyl them together until half be conſumed, and then anoint the ſore ℔ therewith once a day until it be whole. Others of our later Farriers uſe either to ſhave off the hair, or ſcald it off with Orpiment and unſlacked Lime boyled in ſtrong Lye; then waſh it with warm Vinegar or White-wine, then when it is dry anoint it with this Ointment.

Take of Orpiment one ounce, of Verdigreaſe three ounces, of Soot five ounces, a little unſlackt Lime, and of Honey one pound; mingle them all well together upon a ſoft Fire, and being made like an oyntment, uſe it as aforeſaid once a day to the ſore; or elſe take Honey, Soap, Verdigreaſe, unſlackt Lime and Vinegar, and boyl them with Allom, Galls, and Mail, till it come to a Plaiſter, and then apply it unto the ſore; or elſe boil Sallet-oyl, with a little ſuet and ſoap, then ſkim it and take it from the fire; then add an ounce

of

of Quick-silver dissolved, two ounces of Verdigrease, three ounces of unslackt Lime, and one ounce of white Wax; when all these are well mixt together, and made into a salve, then apply it once a day unto the sore, until it be whole.

Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place, to boyl Vinegar and the skin of Lard or Bacon together; and apply that to the sore three days together; then take Lard, molten Lithargy, Mastick, Verdigrease and Soot mingled together with Goats Milk, and lay it too, renewing it once a day until the sore be healed. The scraping of a pans bottom, mixt with the inner pills of Elder, are also good for the scratches; or new man's dung applyed for five days, and after anoint the sore with oil and soap mixt together. Others take of unslackt Lime, the powder of Glass, and of Verdigrease, of each an ounce; of Orpiment an ounce; of oyl and of fresh grease, of each four ounces; mix all these well together, and apply it to the sore until it be whole: If you take black Snails and Bur-roots and beat them together, it will also help this Sorance. Other Farriers take an ounce of Soap, two ounces of unslackt Lime, and as much Lye, or strong Vinegar as will temper it, and so dress the sore until it be whole. Others take Fenugreek and beat it, three Oranges cut in pieces, half a pound of Sheeps Suet, new Sheeps Dung; boyl all these in the ground of good Ale, and then bath the horse therewith as hot as may be: then rope him up with hay ropes, and so let him stand three days, then bath him so again.

☞ Others take Hogs-grease, Soap, Brimstone, Soot and Honey, boyl them and lay them to cool, you may also add Verdigrease; but before you lay on this oyntment, scrape the scabs off, and make them bleed, and rub them with Soap, Mustard, and Vinegar mixt together.

CHAP. CII.

A most certain and approved Cure for the Scratches.

☞ After you have cut away the hair, rub off the scabs, and wash the sore with old Urine, Allom and Salt mixt together, and applyed as hot as the horse can suffer it; then take the tops and tender buds of Elder, and the green brier Berries, and boyl them in a pottle of new wort, and put there to good store of Allom, and with this

this hot, wash the horses Leg once, twice, or thrice a day; and it is a certain Cure.

CHAP. CIII.

Of the Ring bone.

THe Ring-bone is a Sorance, which appeareth above, upon the Cronet of the foot, being a certain hard gristle growing sometimes round about the same. It proceedeth, as some Farriers hold opinion, either from some blow of any Horse, or by striking the Horses foot against some stub or stone, or such like accident: But surely I hold, That also it proceedeth from some imperfection in nature, for as much as I have seen many Foals foaled with Ring-bones on their feet; These Ring-bones do breed a viscous and slimy humour, which resorting to the bones that are of their own nature cold and dry, waxeth hard, and cleaveth to some bone, and so in process of time becometh a bone. The signs of this Sorance are, the apparent sight of the Sorance, being higher than any part of the corner, the staring of the hair, and the halting of the horse.

The Cure, according to ancient Farriers, is, first to scarifie the skin above the Ring-bone with a Lancet; then take a great Onion and pick out the core; then put into it Verdigrease and unslackt Lime, then cover the hole, and roast the Onion soft, then bruise it in a mortar, and so very hot lay it to the Ring-bone; do thus four days together, and it will cure it. Others of the old Farriers use first to wash the Sorance with warm water, and shave away the hair: then scarifie it lightly with the point of a Razor, so as the blood may issue forth; then dress it with Cantharides and Euforbium, in such sort as hath been taught for the splent, using him, and curing him after the same manner; but when the hair beginneth to grow again, then draw the sore place with a hot drawing-iron in strait lines, from the Pastorn down to the coffin of the hoof, in this manner: and let the edge of the drawing Iron be as thick as the back of a meat knife, and burn him no deeper than that the skin may look yellow: that done, cover the burning with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and clap thereon flocks of the horses own colour, and about three days after, lay again some of the last mention'd Plaister, and also new flocks upon

on the old, and there let them remain till they fall away of themſelves. Others uſe to ſhave off the hair, and to ſcarifie the ſore with a Lancet till it bleed: then ſtrow upon it the powder of Tartar, and Salt, of each alike, mixt together, and bind it ſtrait; then after anoint it with freſh greaſe, or elſe ſoften the Ring-bone with the skin of old Bacon, the fat being ſcraped off, that you may ſee through the skin, and laid to after it is ſhaven and made bleed; after launce it, and let out the Ring-bone. Others uſe to launce the skin with a Razor, then opening the skin with a Cronet, prick the Ring-bone. Laſtly, ſtrow upon it the powder of Vitriol, and bind it on ſo as it may not ſtir in nine days; then thruſt out the matter which is diſſolved. Laſtly, VVaſh it with Salt, Urine and Vinegar, mixt together. Other Farriers do uſe after they have ſhaved it, to lay unto it a Plaiſter made of Bran and Honey, with the young leaves of Vvormwood, Pellitory, and Brank-Urine mingled with Swines greaſe, beaten together, and boyled, and uſed as hot as the horſe can ſuffer it. This Medicine will not only cure the Ring-bone, but any other ſwelling whatſoever. Alſo a Plaiſter of the Leaves of Smallage being beaten to pieces, is not only good for this Sorance, but for any VVind-gall alſo. To waſh a Ring-bone continually with ſtrong Vinegar will abate it: or elſe to ſhave away the hair, and take half a Lemmon, and ſprinkle Arſnick thereon, and lay it to the Ring-bone, and it will eat it away; if twice or thrice a day you bind a hard Egg burning hot unto the Ring-bone, it will take it away. Laſtly, if you take Euforbium, and mingle it with Oyl of Juniper, Salt and Pepper, and ſo apply it to the Ring-bone, it will in a very ſhort ſpace conſume the Ring-bone quite away; always provided that you keep the horſe from any VVet during his Cure.

CHAP. CIV.

Of Hurts on the Cronet, by croſſing one Foot upon another.

IF your horſe by croſſing one foot upon another, chance to wound or hurt the Cronet of his hoof, you ſhall then, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, firſt waſh it well with VVhite-wine, or with warm Urine, and then lay unto it the white of an Egg mixt with Chimney ſoot and ſalt; and that, if it be renewed once a day, will in two or three days dry up the ſore. Other Farriers uſe firſt

to

to pare or cut away the Hoof, that it touch not the hurt, and keep it clean from filth by waſhing it with Urine: then ſeethe two Eggs hard, and take off the Shells, then preſs them with your hand long, and firſt roaſt one hot and tye it hard too; when that is cold, uſe the other: after make a Plaiſter of Soot, Salt and Oyl boiled together, and lay it to the Sore, renewing it once a day until it be whole.

CHAP. CV.

A moſt certain and approved Cure for any hurt upon the Cronet whatſoever.

TAke of Soap and Salt, of each a like quantity, and mix them together like a Paſte, then having cut out the over-reach or hurt, and laid it plain, Firſt waſh it with Urine and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and with a Cloth dry it; then bind on the mixt Soap and Salt, not renewing it in twenty four hours, and thus do (if the Wound be great) for three or four days together: Then, having drawn out all the venom (as this Salve will quickly do) take a ſpoonful or two of Train-oyl, and as much Ceruſe, which we call White-lead, and mix it together to a thick Salve, then ſpread that upon the Sore, morning and evening till it be whole, which will be effected ſuddenly: for nothing doth dry up ſooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new Hoof.

CHAP. CVI

Of the Crown-ſcab.

THE Crown-ſcab is a ſtinking and filthy Scab, breeding round about the corners of the Hoof, and is a cankerous and painful Sorance, it cometh oft-times by means that the Horſe hath been bred in a ſenny marſh Ground, where the cold ſtriking corrupt Humours up to his Feet, ingendreth this Sorance, which is ever more painful in the Winter than in the Summer. The ſigns are, The hairs of the Cronet will be very thin and ſtaring like Briſtles, and the Cronets will be always mattering and run on Water. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of many Farriers, is, To take the Skin of Bacon, and lay thereon Soot and Salt beaten together, mingled with Greaſe

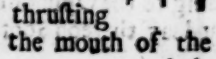
or Suet, Wax, and Pitch molten together; and if the Flesh chance to grow proud, eat it away either with Verdigrease beaten to Powder, or with the scrapings of a Harts horn, or an Ox-horn made into fine Powder.

☞ Other Farriers use to take of Soap, and of Hogs grease, of each half a pound, of Bole-armonick a little, of Turpentine a quartern; mix them well together, and make a Plaister, and bind it fast on, renewing it every day until it leave running; and then wash it with strong Vinegar being luke-warm, every day once, until the Sore be clean dried up, and let the Horse come in no wet until the Sorance be whole. Others use only to bathe it continually with old Stale sod with Salt, and that will dry up the Humour and heal it.

CHAP. CVII.

Of the Quitter-bone.

THE Quitter-bone is a hard round swelling upon the Cronet of the Hoof betwixt the Heel and the quarter, and groweth most commonly on the inside of the Foot, it breeds most commonly by means of Gravel gathered underneath the Shoe, which fretteth inward, and forceth an Ulcer to break upward; or else it cometh, by the cloying or pricking of some Nail driven by an Ignorant Smith, the anguish whereof loosneth the Gristle, and so breedeth evil humours whereof the Quitter-bone springeth: the signs are, The Horse will halt much, and the swelling is apparent to the Eye, which in four or five days cometh to a head, and will break out with matter at a little deep hole like a Fistula; and surely than this Quitter-bone there is no outward Sorance whatsoever more dangerous to a Horse. The Cure thereof, according to the Opinion of some of the Ancient Farriers, is, First to cut the Hoof to the quick, then seethe a Snake or an Adder till the Flesh part from the Bone, and be molten as an Unguent; then anoint the sore place therewith very warm even to the bottom, and during the Cure, keep the Foot clean from any filth: for this both drieth and killeth the Quitter-bone. ☞ Others of the Old Farriers, first burn about the Quitter-bone with a hot Iron in manner of a half Circle, and then with the same Iron draw another right through the midst thereof in this sort: then take of Arsnick the quantity of a Bean beaten into fine Powder, and put it into the Hole, thrusting it down to the bottom with a Quill, and stop the mouth of the hole



hole with a little Tow, and bind it ſo faſt with a Cloth and a Rowler, that the Horſe may not come at it with his Mouth, and ſo let it reſt for that day; and the next day if you ſee that the Sore looketh black within, then it is a ſign that the Arſnick did work well; then to allay the burning of it, tent the hole with Flax dipt in Hogs-greaſe, and Turpentine molten together, cover the tent with a Plaiſter of Pitch, Rozen, Wax and Turpentine molten together, but there muſt be as much Turpentine as of all the reſt: and thus you muſt continue to do until you have gotten out the Core, which the Arſnick did eat; then you ſhall ſee whether the looſe Griſtle in the bottom be uncovered or not: and if it be not uncovered, then feel with your Finger, or with a Quill whether you be nigh it or not; and if you be, then raiſe the Griſtle with a little crooked Inſtrument, and pull it clean out with a pair of ſmall Nippers, or Mullets made for the purpoſe: that done, thruſt it again with a full tent, dipt in the aforeſaid Ointment to aſſwage the anguiſh of the laſt dreſſing, and ſtop it hard, to the intent that the hole may not ſhrink together or cloſe up; and the next day take out the tent, and tent it anew with Honey and Verdigreaſe boiled together till they look red, renewing it every day once until it be whole, keeping always the mouth of the Sore as open as you may, to the intent that it heal not up too faſt, and let not the Horſe come to any wet, nor travel until he be perfectly whole. Other Farriers uſe to cut the Hoof open to the quick; then take Galbanum, Sagapenum, Pitch of Greece, Olibanum, Maſtick, Oyl and White-wax, of each one ounce, with half a pound of Sheeps-ſuet, melt them upon a ſoft fire, and incorporate them well together, and therewith dreſs the ſore place until it be whole. Others uſe, after the Sore is opened, to put in Salt of Tartar, and when it hath eaten away the Quitter-bone, to heal it up with Honey and Verdigreaſe boiled as aforeſaid. Others, take of Goats dung two ounces, of Sheeps-tallow three ounces, and as much ſtrong Vinegar as will ſuffice to boil them well in, and therewith to dreſs the Quitter-bone until it be clean whole.

CHAP. CVIII.

Of Gravelling a Horſe.

GRavelling is a certain fretting of Gravel, Sand, or Dirt, under the Foot, betwixt the ſole and ſhooe, ſometimes on the

ſide, ſometimes on the cut-ſide of the Foot, and ſometimes on both ſides of the Heel. It cometh, as I ſaid, by means of little gravel-ſtones getting between the Hoof, or calking or ſponge of the Shooe, which by continual labour and travel of the Horſe, doth eat through the Hoof into the quick of the Foot; and the rather, if the Horſe's Heels be ſoft and weak, or that the Shooe do lie flat to his Foot, ſo as the Gravel being gotten in it, cannot get out again.

The ſigns whereof are theſe, The Horſe will halt much, and covet to go moſt on his Toe to favour his Heel, and the ſofter the way is, the more is the Horſe's eaſe. Now for the Cure, according to the Old Farriers, it is thus; Firſt pare the Hoof till you may ſee the Sore, then take an ounce of Virgins-wax and a quarter of an ounce of Rozen, and a quarter of Deers ſuet, and half an ounce of Boars-greaſe, and beat them all well together in a Mortar, and then melt them together on the Fire; that done, dip good ſtore of Flax therein, and ſo ſtop up the Sore cloſe and hard, and then you may travel the Horſe whither you pleaſe: and do thus once a day until the Foot be ſound. Others of the Old Farriers uſe, Firſt to pare the Hoof, and to get out the Gravel with a drawing Knife, leaving none behind; then ſtop the Sore place with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, and laid on with a little Tow or Flax, and then clap on the Shooe, to keep in the ſtopping, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and ſuffer the Horſe to come in no wet until it be healed. Now you muſt underſtand, That if a Gravelling be not well ſtopt to keep down the Fleſh, it will riſe higher than the Hoof, and ſo put the Farriers to much more pains both in bolſtring it, and abating that ill-grown ſubſtance.

Others uſe only to pare the Foot, and pick out all the Gravel clean, then waſh it well with Beer and Salt; then melt into it Tallow, Rozen, and Pitch: then covering it hard and cloſe with Flax, ſet on the Shooe again, and do thus once a day. Others uſe, after they have cleanſed the Sore, to lay hards into it, being dipt in the whites of Eggs: then after heal it with Salt beaten ſmall and mixt with ſtrong Vinegar, or elſe with the Powder of Galls, Salt, and Tartar mixt together, which alſo is good for any Cloying or Pricking.

CHAP. CIX.

Of Surbating.

SUrbating is a continual beating of the Hoof againſt the Ground, and it cometh ſometimes by means of evil Shooing, lying too flat to his Foot, or by going long bare-foot; and ſometimes by the hardneſs of the Ground, and the high lifting of the Horſes Feet, either in his trot or in his amble; and the Horſes which are moſt ſubject to this Sorance, are thoſe which have either great round Feet, or ſuch as are flat-footed, the Coffins whereof are weak and tender, and alſo thoſe which have weak Heels. The ſigns of the grief are, The Horſe will halt much, and go creeping and ſtiff, as if he were half foundred.

The Cure, according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers, is, To roaſt a couple of Eggs exceeding hard, and then in the very violence of their heat, to burſt them in the Horſes Feet, and then pour hot boiling Sallet-oyl amongſt them, and ſo ſtop the Shooe up cloſe with a piece of Leather, and two croſs Splents of Wood; and do thus thrice in one fortnight, and it will help him.

Other of the Ancient Farriers take off the Horſe's Shooes, and pare him as little as may be; and if the Shooes be not eaſie, that is to ſay, long, large, and hollow enough, then make them ſo, and tack them on again with four or five Nails: that done, ſtop his Feet with Hogs-greaſe and Bran boiled together ſo hot as may be, and alſo cover all the Coffin round about with the ſame, binding all in together with a Cloth, and a Liſt faſtened about the Joint, renewing it every day once until it be ſound; and give the Horſe during the Cure, warm Water to drink, and let him ſtand dry, and not have much travel.

Now if your Horſe ſurbait in your Travel, if every Night you ſtop his Feet well with Cows-dung, or with Cows-dung and Vinegar, it will make him endure out his Journey: or Cows-dung and new laid Eggs beaten together.

CHAP.

CHAP. CX.

Of the Prickle in the Sole of the Foot, either by treading on a Nail, or any other ſharp thing.

IF a Horſe in his Travel chance to tread either on a Stub, Nail, Thorn, or any other ſharp thing whatſoever, by means whereof he is prickt in the ſole of the Foot, the Rider ſhall perceive the ſame by the ſudden faultring of the Horſe, who will inſtantly ſtand ſtill and lift up his Foot, as deſiring help: And if it chance at any other time, then the halting of the Horſe, and the diligent ſearching of a careful Farrier muſt find out the miſchief.

Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is, Firſt to pull off the Shooe, and pare the Foot, and with a drawing Knife uncover the whole, making the mouth ſo broad as a two pence: then tack on the Shooe again; that done, doſt it by pouring into the hole Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, and lay ſome Flax or Tow upon it; and then ſtop all the Horſes Feet with Cows-dung, and ſo covering it with a piece of Leather, ſplint it with two croſs Sticks, ſo as the ſtopping may abide in, renewing it every day once until it be whole, and let the Horſe tread in no wet.

Now you muſt be very careful in the curing of this Sorance; for if it be not healed from the bottom, beſides, that it is dangerous to the life of the Horſe, it is alſo a great hazard that the Sore will break out at the top of the Hoof, and ſo looſen the Hoof round about, and perhaps make it to fall clean away; but if you ſee that it begin to break out above, then make a greater iſſue beneath, by opening the hole wider, and taking more of the ſole away, that the Fleſh may have the more Liberty; then take of Bole-armonick half a quartern, and of Bean-flower as much, and two Eggs; beat them, and mingle them well together, and make a Plaiſter thereof upon Tow, and lay it round about the Coronet, bind it faſt on, and ſo let it remain the ſpace of two days, and then renew it again, not failing to do ſo every two days until you ſee it wax hard and firm above: for this Plaiſter being reſtrictive, will force the humours to reſort always downward; which humours muſt be drawn out with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe as before, until it leave Mattering, and then dry it up with burnt Allom beaten into Powder, and ſtrowed upon the Sore, with a little

Flax

Flax laid again upon that, continuing ſo to do every day once until it be hardned; and let not the Horſe come in any wet until it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe to tent the Sore with Tallow, Tar, and Turpentine being molten together, and anoint all the Coffin and Cronet of the Hoof with Bole-armonick and Vinegar beaten together, till the Sore be whole, eſpecially if the thing which did prick the Horſe was venomous or ruſty.

CHAP. CXI.

To draw out either Stub, Thorn, or Iron, either out of the Foot, or any other part of the Body.

IF either the Stub, the Thorn, the Iron, or any thing whatſoever, wherewith your Horſe is wounded, be gotten ſo deep into the Fleſh, that you cannot get hold upon it to pull it out; then according to the Opinion of the Old Farriers, (if you find that albeit it be too deep, yet it is not much too deep) you ſhall take a good quantity of Black-ſoap, and lay it to the Sore for a whole night, and it will make it to appear, ſo as you may pull it out with a Pair of Nippers: but if it lie very deep, then you may open the place with a Launcet, and thruſting in your Mullets or Nippers, pull it out by ſtrength, and afterwards heal up the Wound as was before taught in the laſt Chapter.

Other Farriers ſay, That the roots of Reeds being ſtampt and mixt with Honey, will draw out any Stub or Nail; ſo will alſo Black-ſnails, being ſtampt and wrought with freſh Butter. Now if the place be much ſwoln, then it is good to mollifie it with a Plaiſter made of Worm-wood, Parietary, Bears-foot, Hogs-greaſe, and Honey well boiled and mixed together, which will aſſwage any new ſwelling that cometh by Stripe, or otherwiſe. Now when you have gotten out that which you ſought for, then you ſhall pour into the Wound ſcalding Oyl of Olive; when that is cold, pour into it as hot Turpentine; when that is cold, ſtrow on the Powder of Sulphur, and then bolſter his Foot or the Sore with hurds, and keep it from all wet and filthineſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXII.

Of the Fig.

IF a Horſe having receiv'd any hurt, as is before ſaid, either by ſtub, great nail, thorn, bone, ſplent or ſtone, either in the ſole or any other part of the Foot, and be not well dreſſed, and perfectly Cured, there will grow in the place a certain ſuperfluous piece of Fleſh like unto a Fig, full of little white Grains, as you ſee are in a Fig. The Cure whereof, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is, Firſt with a hot Iron to cut the Fig clean away, and keep the Fleſh down with Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, and a little Wax molten together, and laid on with a little Tow, ſtopping the hole hard that the Fleſh riſe not, renewing it once a day until the Sore be whole.

☞ Now other of our latter Farriers uſe after they have, as before is ſaid, cut away the Fig, then to take the crops of young Nettles, and chopping them very ſmall, lay them upon a Cloth juſt as big as a Fig; then take the Powder of Verdigreaſe, and ſtrow it thin upon the chopt Nettles, and ſo bind it to the Sore, renewing it once a day until the Hoof have covered the Sore: and this is a moſt certain Cure.

CHAP. CXIII.

Of a Retrait.

A Retrait is, when a Horſe by the ill government of the Smith, is pricked in the Foot with ſome ill driven Nail, yet in ſuch ſort, that it is immediately eſpied, and the Nail drawn back again; and although it proceedeth oftеſt from the negligence of the Smith, yet it may alſo come by reaſon of the weakneſs of the Nail, and the hollowneſs of the Shank: for when the Nail is a little too weak, the point many times bendeth awry into the quick, when it ſhould go right forth; and when it is hollow, it ſhivereth in the driving into two parts, whereof one part razeth the quick in pulling out, or elſe perhaps breaketh aſunder, and ſo remaineth ſtill behind. And this kind of pricking is the worſt of all other, becauſe it will rankle worſt, in as much as the flaw cankereth, and remaineth ſtill in the Foot. The ſigns hereof are, Firſt the apparent ſhrinking and ſtrug-

ling

ling of the horſe, ſo ſoon as the quick is touched; and next, his much halting: Laſtly, you ſhall ſearch his foot with a Hammer, by knocking on the clench of every nail: for when you knock upon that nail where the grief is, the horſe will ſhrink up his Foot; and if that will not ſerve, then grope the foot with a pair of pinſons round about, until you have found the place grieved. Now the Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, Firſt to pull off the ſhooe, and then open the place grieved, either with a Butteriſs, or with a drawing-knife, ſo that you may perceive either by feeling or ſeeing, whether there be any piece of nail, or not; if there be, then pull it clean out: After take of Nettles half a handful, and bruiſe them in a Mortar, and put thereto a ſpoonful of red Vinegar, and a ſpoonful of black Soap, and two ounces of Boars greaſe, or the fat of ſalt Bacon, and bray all theſe well together, and ſtop well the hole of the ſore with this, and then tack on the ſhooe again, and you may ſafely adventure to travail him. Other Farriers uſe, after they have opened the ſore, to ſtop the hole with Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and ſo poured hot into the hole; and then lay a little tow upon it, and clap on the ſhooe again, renewing it thus once every day until it be whole; during which time, the Horſe muſt not come in any wet, and it muſt be ſtopped in this ſort, though it be but a prick, without any piece of nail remaining; and if for lack of looking to in time, this Retrait cauſes the horſe to break out, then you ſhall cure it either with a reſtrictive Plaiſter of Bole-armony, Bean-flower and Eggs, mentioned in the 78th. Chapter, or elſe with chopped Nettles and Verdigreaſe ſpoken of in the laſt Chapter.

Now there be many Farriers, which not only for this Retrait, but for any prick on the horſes foot, uſe after they have laid open the Wound, to take of Turpentine one ounce, of Tar one ounce, of Pitch one ounce, of Beef-ſuet one ounce, and one head of Garlick, boyl them all together, and lay them to it ſo hot as may be ſuffered: and if it chance to break out above the hoof, then apply alſo the ſame Medicine unto it, and it will cure it.

CHAP. CXIV.

Of Cloying.

A Horſe is ſaid to be cloyed with a Nail, or pricked with a Nail, when the whole Nail is ſtricken into the quick of the foot, and ſo remaineth ſtill in the ſame, and is clenched as other Nails be, by means whereof the horſe halteth extremely. Now this grief is known by ſearching the grieved place with a hammer or pinſons, as is before ſaid. Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the old Farriers, it is thus; If the horſe halt immediately, then pull off his ſhoe, and open the hole until it begin to bleed, and then ſtop the hole with Turpentine, VVax, and Sheeps Suet molten together, and poured in very hot, renewing it once a day until it be whole, and let the horſe tread in no wet; and let his ſhoe be tacked on again as ſoon as he is dreſt. Others uſe only to pour into the hole hot ſcalding butter, and that will heal it; or elſe to burn the hole with another nail, and that will heal it. Other Farriers uſe, after they have open'd well the ſore, to take half a pound of Frankincenſe, a pound of Rozen, a pound of pitch of *Greece*, half a pound of black pitch, a pound of new Wax, a pound of Goats greaſe, half a pound of Varniſh, half a pound of Turpentine, two ounces of Oyl Olive, and melt them all together, and lay this to the hoof plaiſter-wiſe, and it will not only heal any prick whatſoever, but alſo any cracks, chinks, or cliſts in the hoofs, howſoever they breed; provided that you let the horſe tread in no wet during the cure: But if the ſore chance to break out on the top of the hoof, then you ſhall take two or three yolks of Eggs, Whites and all, beaten together, and add thereunto an ounce of Bole-Armony, and as much Bean or Wheat-flower as will thicken the ſame: then make a plaiſter thereof two fingers broad, and as long as will go round about on the top of the Horſes hoof; bind it faſt on with a rowler, and renew it once a day until it be whole.

Other Farriers uſe, after they have ſearched and laid open the Wound, to put into it hurds dipt in the white of an Egg; then ſtop the hole with Salt beaten very ſmall, mingled with Vervine and ſtrong Vinegar, and cover it with flax dipped in ſtrong Vinegar; or elſe holding up the horſes foot, pour into the wound hot ſcalding Oyl Olive; and when that is cold, pour in hot Turpentine, and that being cold

cold, ſtrow upon it the powder of Sulphur, then lay on the bolſter of flocks, then ſhooe him, and keep him from treading in any wet.

Others uſe to take Tallow, the powder of Sulphur, Mallows, and very ſtrong Vinegar; boyl them together until they be thick like an Oyntment; then lay the ſame to the ſore as hot as the horſe can endure it, renewing it once in twelve Hours till it be whole.

Others uſe to take of Honey and Vinegar, of each a like quantity, a little Oyl, and ſuet of a Hee-Goat, boyl them with a ſoft fire, and ſtir it: when it waxeth red, add Verdigreaſe and Vitriol, of each a like, made into powder, ſtill ſtirring it till it be thick and red; then ſtop the ſore every day therewith until it be whole, after you have waſhed it well with Salt and Vinegar. Others take Pepper, Garlick, and Cabbage leaves beaten with Swines greaſe, and lay that to the ſore; or elſe take Tallow and Horſe-dung, and mixing them well together, ſtop the ſore therewith, and in ſhort ſpace it will cure it.

Other Farriers uſe to take off the ſhooe, and having open'd the ſore, to waſh it with Wine: then lay upon it the inner rind of elder, and through that melt in greaſe with a hot Iron: then tack on the ſhooe again, and do thus divers days together, and it is a certain cure.

CHAP. CXV.

General Obſervations for the Feet and Hoofs of a Horſe.

FOraſmuch as the Feet and Hoofs of a Horſe are the only inſtruments of labour, and that a ſmall grief in that part deprives a man of the benefit and uſe of the reſt; I think it not amiſs before I ſpeak of particular Diſeaſes of the Hoofs, to ſhew you ſome general Notes and Obſervations which you ſhall obſerve for the benefit of the feet. Know then, that firſt it is meet that you let your ſhooes before, be rather too ſhort than too long, with ſtrong Spunges, but no cawkins, and your nails to have ſpecial good Heads.

Let your ſhooes behind have no cawkins on the out-ſide; but if he enter-fere, let the cawkin be on the in-ſide, to make him caſt outward, and let the in-ſide of that ſide inward have a welt an inch deep, or be twice as thick as the out-ſide; but if all this help not his enter-fering, then bring him unto an Amble; but if he will not amble, burn him with a hot Iron between the Legs, that the foreneſs thereof may make him go wide behind, which is an ordinary practice amongſt the Italians and Frenchmen.

Let your ſhooes be made of Iron that will not break, of which our Engliſh is the beſt, the Spaniſh next, and the Dansk worſt. Let them alſo be light, yet ſo, as they may be able to bear the burthen of the horſe, being broader at the toes, than at the cawkin or ſpunges.

Let your cawkins be ſhort, and blunt at the points, and your ſpunges long and thick.

Let your ſhooe be full as ſtrait as the horn of the hoof, ſo far as the Nails go, and from the two heel nails backward, let the ſhooe be broader than the hoof, that the ſhooe may be without the horn.

☞ Give unto every ſhooe nine nails, on each ſide four, and one in the midſt, and let the ſhanks of the nails be very flat and thin, that if the hoof be naught, they may yet keep the ſhooe firm with little hold: and the nearer that your nails are driven backward towards the heel, (ſo it be without danger) the faſter the ſhooe will ſit, and the harder to be pull'd away.

Let your cawkins ſit a ſtraws breadth behind the corner of the coffin, and let your nail head enter into the ſhooe, eſpecially on the out-ſide, and by all means hollow your ſhooe ſo little as poſſible you can.

Pare very little or nothing at all from the heel of a horſe: yet open his heels as ſufficiently as may be, becauſe ever the heel muſt be thick and the toe thin.

In fair ways pare the ſole thin, but in Froſt, or ſtony ways, pare as little as may be.

To conclude, when the hoof is higher on the out-ſide than on the in-ſide, it will make a horſe enter-fere; and when it is higher on the in-ſide, it will make a horſe ſtraddle, ſo that a fair ſmooth table is of all moſt convenient. After travel, ever ſtop the inſide of the hoof ☞ with Cows-dung, and rub the out-ſide and the Cronet with the ſward of fat bacon: For that will keep a tough, ſmooth, and a ſound hoof. As your Nails have ſtrong heads, ſo let them have thin ſhanks, for that will beſt prevent hurting, and keep the ſhooe cloſe unto the hoof.

CHAP. CXVI.

Of looſning the Hoof, and how to make the Hoofs grow.

A Horſe is ſaid to be looſned where there is a diſſolution or parting of the horn or Coffin of the hoof from the fleſh, at the ſetting

ſetting on of the Cronet. Now if this diſſolution or parting be round about the Cronet, then it proceedeth by means of ſome foundring; but if it be but in part, then it proceedeth from ſome anguiſh, cauſed either by the pricking of ſome channel nail, or other nail piercing the ſole, or quarters of the foot; or by ſome Quitter-bone, retrait, gravelling, or cloying, or ſuch like accident. The ſigns of the diſeaſe be theſe: When it is looſened by foundring, then it will break firſt, and the diſſolution will appear on the fore-part of the Cronet, right againſt the toe, becauſe the humour doth covet always to deſcend towards the toe; but if it proceed from pricking, gravelling, or ſuch like, then the hoof will looſen round about equally, even at the firſt; but when it proceeds from ſome Quitter-bone, or hurt from the Cronet, then the hoof will break right about the place that is offended, and moſt commonly will go no further.

Now the cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, of what cauſe ſoever the looſening proceed, firſt to be ſure to open the hoof in the ſole of the Foot, ſo as the humour may have free paſſage downward; and then to bind about the top of it the reſtrictive plaiſter ſpoken of in the ſeventy eighth Chapter, and in the 117th. Chapter, and in ſuch ſort as is there written; and then heal it up with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together. Others of the ancient Farriers take three ſpoonfuls of Tar, and a quarter of a pound of Rozin, and a handful of Tanſie, and half a handful of Rue, and half a handful of Red Mint, and half a handful of Southern-wood, and bray all theſe together in a Mortar; then add half a pound of Butter, and a penny-worth of Virgins-Wax; then melt them all together over the fire, until it come to a thick Plaiſter or Salve: then ſpread ſome of it upon a cloth, and lay it to the ſore, renewing it once a day for ſeven days, and it will heal it.

Others uſe to take the brains of a Swine, or a Pig, and to ſtop his hoof very well therewith three days together, renewing it twice or thrice a day, and it will grow faſt, and endure as well, or rather better than ever it did. Other Farriers uſe to cut out the ſole below, letting it bleed well; after ſtop it with hurds dipt in the Whites of Eggs: tye this too for twenty four hours, then waſh it with ſtrong Vinegar warm, after fill it with Tartar and Salt, of each a like quantity; let that remain two days; then anoint it with the oyntment made of Olibanum, Maſtick, Pitch of *Greece*, of each a like, and

a

a little Sanguis Draconis, and of new Wax and Sheeps ſuet as much as of the firſt, and melt and boyl them very well together, and let this oyntment be applyed once a day till the ſore be whole. But if you perceive that any new hoof come, then cut away the old, leſt the hardneſs of the one hinder the tenderneſs of the other; and then anoint the new hoof with ſuet, oyl, and wax, of each alike, boyled together, to make it grow; or elſe with the pitch of *Greece*, Maſtick, Olibanum, Sanguis Draconis, and Galbanum, of each alike, being molten with ſuet; for this will make the new Hoof to grow alſo.

☞ So will alſo new VVax, Honey, Oyl, Swines greaſe, and Sheeps ſuet, being boyled together; and when it is cold, add Maſtick, Sanguis Draconis, and Frankincenſe, and incorporate them all together, for nothing ſooner than this will make either new or old hoofs grow. Others uſe to take Shell-ſnails, and ſtamp them and lay them twice a day to the ſore, and it will either faſten the old hoof, or quickly bring forth a new. Now there be other Farriers, which firſt fill the ſore with Turpentine, and after it hath lain twenty four hours, then waſh the ſore with Urine and Coperas-water, then fill it either with Verdigreaſe, or with Sheeps tallow, Pitch, and Rozen boyled together; in which, having dipt hurds, lay it to the ſore very hot twice a day till it be whole.

CHAP. CXVII.

Of Caſting the Hoof.

THe caſting of the hoof, is, when the whole coffin thereof falleth in clean away from the foot, which cometh of all the former cauſes rehearſed in the laſt Chapter, and is ſo apparent to the eye, that it needeth none other ſigns. Now for the cure, it is thus; Take of Turpentine one pound, of Tar half a pint, of unwrought VVax half a pound, of Sheeps ſuet half a pound, and of Sallet oyl half a pint: boyl all theſe things together, and ſtir them continually until they be throughly mixt together; then make a boot of Leather, with a ſtrong ſole fit for the horſes foot, to be laced faſt about the paſtorn; then dreſs his foot with the Salve aforeſaid laid upon flax or tow, and helſter and ſtop his foot with ſoft flax, ſo that the boot may ☞ grieve him no manner of ways, renewing it every day once until the new hoof come; then as the hoof beginneth to harden, if it grow either thick, crumple, or out of order; with a fine Rape-file keep

it

it ſmooth, and plain, until the hoof be perfect, and then put him to graſs, that there it may take a kindly hardning and toughneſs.

CHAP. CXVIII.

Of the Hoof-bound.

THe Hoof-bound is nothing elſe but a ſhrinking in of the whole hoof in the upper part thereof, and at the heels, making the skin to ſtare above the hoof, and to grow over the ſame. It proceedeth from keeping the horſes hoofs too dry in the ſtable, or from ſtrait ſhooing, or from ſome unnatural heat after foundring; and the ſigns of the diſeaſe are, that the Horſe will halt much, and his hoofs will be hot; and if you knock upon them with a Hammer, they will ſound hollow like an empty bottle; and if both his feet be not Hoof-bound, then the ſore foot will be ever the leſſer: and you ſhall alſo underſtand, that this diſeaſe of ſome Farriers is called a dry foundring. Now for the cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take a pound of the Sward of Bacon, and a quarter of a pound of white Sope, and a handful of Balm, and a handful of Bay-leaves, and four or five branches of Rue, and ſtamp them well together; and then fry them, and lay them about the cronet of the hoof very hot, ſuffering it ſo to abide the ſpace of five or ſix days, and then renew it; but in no caſe let him tread in any wet place, and this will help him.

Others of the ancient Farriers uſe, firſt to pull off his ſhooes, and to ſhooe him with Half-moon ſhooes, called Lunets, or Lunet, the ſhape whereof you ſhall ſee in another place; then raze both the quarters of the hoof with a drawing-knife, from the Cronet unto the ſole of the foot, ſo deep that you may ſee the dew come forth: and if you make two Raſes on each ſide, it ſhall be ſo much the better, and enlarge the hoof the more; that done, anoint all the hoof above, next to the Cronet round about, with the oyntment deſcribed before in the laſt Chapter of caſting the hoof, continuing ſo to do every day once until he begin to amend; and let him be ridden upon ſome ſoft ground an hour or two every day once for the ſpace of a month; and if he go not well at the months end, then take off the half ſhooes, and pare all the ſoles, fruſhes, and all ſo thin, that you may ſee the dew come forth, and tack on a whole ſhooe, and ſtop all the foot within with Hogs greaſe and bran molten together, and laid very hot to the

the foot, renewing it every day once the ſpace of nine days, to the intent the ſole may riſe; but if this will do no good, then take away the ſole clean, and clap on a whole ſhooe, and ſtop the foot with Nettles and Salt brayed together; yet ſtop it not too hard, to the intent the ſole may have liberty to riſe; and let this be renewed every day once till the ſole be grown again: and let him be ſhod with Lunet, and ſo ſent to graſs. Other Farriers uſe only to raze the hoof from the Cronet to the verge of the hoof in four or five places, and rub it twice or thrice a day with Salt, and that will open the hoof. Others uſe only to open the horſe exceeding much at the heels once a Week, and to ſhooe him with very wide open ſhooes, and then for a month or two to draw him in ſome Cart, that being forced to ſet his foot hard on the ground, he may thereby ſtretch forth and widen his hoof. Now to prevent this Sorance, it is good to anoint his hooſs with Neats-foot Oyl, or Turpentine, and ſtop them underneath with Cow-dung.

CHAP. CXIX.

Of the Running, or Rotten Fruſh.

THe Fruſh, which of ſome is called the Frog of the foot, is the tendereſt part of the hoof toward the heel, and is faſhion'd like a forked Arrow head, being only that part of the foot which Farriers cut forth when they ſay they cut forth the ſole of the horſes foot. Now this Fruſh breedeth many times a rottenneſs or corruption proceeding of humours, which come out of the Legs, by which the Leg is kept clean from Wind-galls, and all other humours or ſwellings, by means that the humours have paſſage that way: notwithſtanding the miſchief of this Sorance is greater than the benefit, becauſe it maketh the horſes foot ſo weak and tender, that he is not able to tread upon any hard ground. The ſigns of the Sorance are, the horſe will halt much when he travelleth either upon looſe ſtony ground, or upon ſtiff dirty ways, and goeth ever beſt upon green Swarth; but above all, he halteth moſt when the paſſage of the humour is ſtopped with any Gravel gathered into the Fruſh, and not being ſtayed or ſtopped, it will continually run, and ſtink ſo extreamly, that a Man can hardly endure the ſcent of it; beſides in ſome places it will look raw.

Now

Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is thus; Firſt, take off the Shooe, and pare away all the corrupt places, and make them raw, ſo as you may ſee the water iſſue out of the raw places; then tack on the Shooe again, being firſt made wide and large enough; that done, take of Soot one handful, of Salt as much, bruiſe them well together in a Diſh, and put thereto the Whites of three Eggs, and temper them all together; and with a little Tow dipped therein, ſtop all the Foot, and eſpecially the Fruſh, and Splent it in ſo, as it may not fall out, renewing it once a Day the ſpace of Seven Days, and certainly it will Cure him. Now during the Cure, the Horſe muſt reſt, and come in no wet; and at the Seven Days end leave ſtopping him, and ride him abroad, and always when he cometh in, let his ſore Foot be clean waſhed; for there is no greater Enemy unto the Sorance than gravel and dirt. Others of our latter Farriers only take off the Shooe, and pare him well, and keep the ſore clean both from dirt and his own dung, by waſhing it three or four times a Day with Urine, and that only will Cure him as well as any Medicine.

CHAP. CXX.

An approved and certain Cure for the running and rotten Fruſh.

AFter the Foot is cleanſed, take a quart of old Urine, and boil it with a quarter of a pound of Allom beaten to powder, and keep it in a cloſe Veſſel by it ſelf; then take a good handfull or two of green Nettles ſtrong and keen, and ſpread them on ſome Plate or other Veſſel, and dry them either before the Fire, or in an Oven after houſhold bread is drawn, then cruſh and bruiſe them into a very fine Powder, then look what quantity of Powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten to as fine Powder, and mix them both very well together, then keep this Powder in a cloſe Gally-pot or Bladder.

Now, when you have occaſion to uſe it, firſt waſh the ſore place with the Urine and Allom made very warm, and the ſores throughly ſcoured, after dry them well by drawing through them a fine Rag of Lawn, Camebrick, or fine old Linnen, and ſtrow or pounce the Powder upon them, ſo much as may cover all the Sores, and thus do ever after Travel, as once a Day in the time of reſt.

CHAP. CXXI.

Of the Evil-Hoofs.

HOrſes partly through a natural inclination, partly through the theſtonineſs of the Soil wherein they are bred, and partly through miſchance or ill-government, will have ill-favoured and naughty Hoofs, as either wrinkled or crumpled, or elſe moulded awry, or ſuch like; all which needs no ſigns, becauſe of the apparent ſign thereof: Then to amend them, the beſt Cure is, with a fine Rape file to ſmooth the wrinkles away, and to anoint the Cronet of the Hoof with a fat ſward of Bacon rubbed in Soot; then let the Horſe ſtand for at leaſt a Fortnight upon his own dung, whereon you ſhall caſt good ſtore of Water, only remove away the dung every Night; and then preſently after the change of the Moon, Shooe the Horſe with ſtrong Shooes, keeping the ſole of the Foot by paring, ſo hollow as you can poſſible, and it will ſhape his Hoof to your pleaſure.

CHAP. CXXII.

Of Brittle Hoofs.

IF a Horſe either through the heat of his own Nature, or in that he hath been either heated on his Foot by labour, or foundred, and evil Cured, ſhall happen to have his Hoofs ſo brittle and ſhort, that they will hardly bear a Shooe: The ſigns whereof are, the Hoof will be white and crumbling: Then the beſt Cure, according to the Opinion of the beſt Farriers, is, To take Ox-dung and Vinegar, and mixing them very well together, warm them on the fire, and ſo bind it both under and above round about the Horſes Foot, and then lace on his Boot of ſtrong Leather, as is aforeſaid in the Chapter of caſting of the Hoof. Other Farriers uſe to let the Horſe ſtand upon his own dung, and anoint all the upper part of his Hoof with the Fat of Bacon ſod and mixt with Turpentine: And this you muſt do every Day once till you ſee his Hoofs come to ſome toughneſs.

Others uſe to take Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, and Honey, of each alike; melt them well together, and being warm, anoint all the Hoof therewith: then dip Tow therein, and fold it all about the Horſes

Foot

Foot both under and above; and then put on his Boot, dreſs him once a Day, and once in two Days let him ſtand four Hours without his Boot, that his Hoof may grow as well hard as tough.

CHAP. CXXIII.

How to preſerve Hoofs.

IF you mean to preſerve your Horſes Hoofs, either from any of the former Sorances, or any other grief whatſoever, you ſhall, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, take three heads of Garlick, a little bundle of Rew, ſix ounces of Allom beaten into Powder, two pound of Old Greaſe, and the Dung of an Aſs; boil them all very well together, and ſtop your Horſes Hoof therewith once a Day. Other Farriers take of Vinegar a quartern, of Tar half a pint, of Hogs greaſe half a pound, of Oyl a pint, and a good handful of Wormwood, and four or five heads of Garlick; boil all theſe together to a thick Ointment and therewith anoint all the Horſes Hoofs. Others uſe to boil Beans till they burſt, and then temper them with Honey, and therewith anoint all the Hoofs: or elſe waſh all the Hoofs with warm Vinegar, and then anoint them with Horehound, Wormwood, and Greaſe molten together.

Other Farriers take of Olibanum, and New Wax, of each one ounce, of Dialthea and Turpentine, of each three ounces, of Butter four ounces, and of Old Oyl ſix ounces, and of Sheeps-ſuet and Plaintain, of each a pound; boil them all well together, and therewith anoint the Hoofs twice a day. Other Farriers uſe to anoint his Hoofs with Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, and Honey warmed and molten together, of each a like quantity; then pare the Foot well, and ſhooe him in the New of the Moon two or three Days after the Change.

Others uſe to take Chalk and White-lead mingled together, or elſe Bark-duſt and Honey mixt together, and being heated in a poſnet, laid hot on the bare Fleſh, is moſt excellent to make any Hoof grow: To conclude, if a Horſe ſtand upon his own dung, (being wery well watred) ſo he do not lye in it, it is moſt ſoverain for the preſerving of Hoofs.

CHAP. CXXIV.

For any hurt upon the Hoofs.

IF your Horſe ſhall receive any hurt upon his Hoofs, either outwardly, or inwardly, as either by any falſe treading, or croſſing one Foot upon another, or by any bruiſe upon cogle Stone, Flint, or ſuch like, then for the Cure thereof, you ſhall firſt ſtop the Hoof with Honey and Vinegar mixt together, for the ſpace of three Days at the leaſt; and then afterwards with leaves of Tamarisk well bruiſed and beaten together, until the Hoof be ſound again.

☞ Other Farriers uſe only to ſtop the Hoof with Sheeps-greaſe and Horſe-dung mixt together, renewing it once a day until it be well.

CHAP. CXXV.

How to ſoften the Hoofs.

THE Hoofs of Horſes will by long and dry ſtanding upon dry Plaunchers, grow ſo hard, that they will not be pared, nor cut by any Butteriſs: beſides, they will ſo take from the Horſe the ſenſe and feeling of his Feet, that the Horſe will go very ſtiff and unnimbly: Wherefore, when you ſhall perceive any ſuch defect, which is beſt known by offering to pare the Hoof, then preſently you ſhall take an ounce of Sope, two ounces of unſlakt Lime, with as much ſtrong Lye as will make it ſoft like a Lenwick Salve, then with that, ſtop the Horſes Feet daily till they come to a convenient ſoftneſs. Hot glowing Embers put upon the Hoof will ſoften it.

CHAP. CXXVI.

How to harden Hoofs.

AS dry ſtanding, and dry keeping doth harden the Hoofs too much, ſo wet and moiſt keeping, as continual going in Marriſh grounds, or continual ſtanding either upon dirt, or the Horſes own dung, or too hot ſtoppings will make a Horſes Hoofs too ſoft; inſomuch that the Horſe through the tenderneſs thereof, will neither be

be able to go, nor bear any Shooe, which you ſhall perceive by the ſoft and eaſie cutting of the Hoof. The manner then to harden and Cure them, is, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, Firſt to burn an old Shooe Sole, then ſeethe it well in Vinegar, and therewith bathe the Horſes Hoofs at leaſt twice a Day, and it will harden them.

Other skilful Farriers uſe to take of the Powder of Galls, or Bran, and of Salt, of each a handful; boil theſe well in a Pottle of ſtrong Vinegar, and therewith bath the Hoofs and in a ſhort ſpace it will harden them,

CHAP. CXXVII.

Of the Malt-long of the Hoof.

THE Malt-long, or as ſome Farriers call it, the Malt-worm, is a Cankerous Sorance above the Hoof, juſt upon the Cronet, which will break out into Knobs and Branches, and out of the ſame will run a watriſh ſharp lye or humour, which will venom the whole Foot: as for the ſigns, they are the apparent ſight of the Sorance, and the continual running out of the thin Water. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is, if it be in the Summer-time, to take Black-ſnails, and Bur-roots, and beating them well together, lay them unto the Sore, and renew them once in 24 Hours. But if it be in the Winter, then take the ſcrapings of a Pans bottom, or of a Cauldron, and put thereto a handful of the inner Green-bark or Pills of the Elder-tree, and having beaten them well together in a Mortar, lay it unto the Sore, and renew it once a Day, and it will heal it. Others uſe to take Garlick, Pepper, and Honey, of each a like quantity, ſtamp them very well together, then anoint his Tongue with a little thereof, and then lay ſome to his Paſtorns, and that will Cure the Sorance.

CHAP. CXXVIII.

How to skin any ſore Foot.

THere is nothing better to skin any ſore Foot, of what Accident or Sorance ſoever it proceed, then to take Turpentine ſimply of it ſelf, and therewith every Day to anoint the ſore Foot, and it will

not

not only gather skin but hoof alſo, if it be in a place where any need requireth. Alſo White-lead, and Train-oyl beaten together, will do the like.

CHAP. CXXIX.

Of gourded or ſwoln Legs.

THE Gourge, or Gourded Legs, is an ill Sorance, being a grievous ſwelling in the nether part of the Legs, proceeding either from the melting of the Greaſe by immoderate labour, and then wanting wherewith to avoid that Greaſe out in excrements, it falleth down into the Limbs, and there breedeth this Swelling; or elſe when a Horſe is exceedingly heated, and then without care ſet up, and taketh cold, inſomuch that the Blood falleth down into his Legs and there congealeth and maketh his Legs to ſwell. To conclude, they do ſometimes proceed from hard Beating, in hard Ways, in the Summer-time, which firſt raiſeth up Wind-galls, and then thoſe Wind-galls offending the Sinews, make them to ſwell, and this is the worſt gourding, becauſe ever for the moſt part, Lameneſs doth follow it.

The ſigns are, the Horſes Legs will ever be moſt ſwoln when he ſtandeth ſtill in the Houſe, and leaſt when he is in Travel, eſpecially if he Travel in much Water: and the ſwelling moſt commonly is accompanied with ſome ſmall Scabs, and in the end it will break out into the Scratches. The Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is, To draw him with a hot Iron a handful above the Knee, and then Rope his Legs with a ſoft Rope of Hay wet in cold Water, and let it ſo remain a Day and a Night, and it will take away all the ſwelling. Other Farriers take two pound of Nerve oyl, two pound of Black-Sope, a pound of Boars greaſe and melt and boil all theſe well together; then ſtrain it, and ſo let it cool; then when you have any need, anoint and chafe your Horſes Legs therewith, and to make it ſink in the better, anoint him firſt with Nerve-oyl, and hold a hot Iron againſt his Legs to make it melt, then uſe the other Ointment in the ſame manner, which done, keep his Legs clean from Duſt by lapping a linnen Rowler about them.

Others of our latter Farriers uſe to take up the Veins beneath the Knee and let him Bleed well: then knit the Vein both above and below, and then anoint his Legs with this Ointment: Take of Frankincenſe, Rozen

Rozen and freſh Greaſe, of each a like quantity, and having boiled them well together, then ſtrain it, and uſe it once a Day as you ſhall have occaſion, and it will heal any Gourge whatſoever; only for the taking up of the Veins, you may, if you will, forbear it, ſith, if it be not done with great cunning it will make the Horſe ſtiff ever after. See further in the new Additions, for any ſtrain general Noted thus ☞.

CHAP. CXXX.

A certain and approved Cure for any Surded or ſwell'd Legs by what Accident ſoever.

FIrſt with a Fleam prick the ſwell'd parts; then take a pint of Wine-lees, an ounce of Cummin-ſeeds, and a handful or more of Wheat-flower, and boil them till they be thick, then apply this Poultis very hot to the ſwell d part, and renew it but once in 24 Hours, and if this in two or three Days draw it to an head, then Launce it, and heal it either with a Plaiſter of Shooe-makers Wax, or elſe with the Yolk of an Egg, Wheat-flower and Honey beaten together to a Salve.

But if it do not draw to any head, and yet the ſwelling continue, then take of Pitch a quarter of a pound, and as much Virgins wax, of Rozen half a pound, of Juice of Hyſſop half an ounce, of Galbanum half an ounce, of Myrrh Secondary half a pound, of Bdellium Arabicum half an ounce, of Deers-ſuet half a pound, of Populeon half an ounce, of the drops of Storax half an ounce, boil all theſe together in an Earthen-pot, and after it is cooled, take of Bitumen half a pound, of Armoniack an ounce and a half, and of Coſtus as much, beat theſe into fine Powder, and then incorporate them with the other and boil them all over again, which done, pour the whole mixture into cold Water, and then Roll it into ſeveral Rolls Plaiſter-wiſe; after ſpread this Plaiſter upon Sheeps leather, and fold it about the ſwell'd Member, and this will both aſſwage it, and give much ſtrength to the Sinews. You ſhall by no means remove this Plaiſter ſo long as it will ſtick on.

This Plaiſter is wonderful ſoverain, and of a ſingular uſe: for the Horſe that is continually kept therewith, I mean, that hath it apply'd to his Limbs, ever when he cometh from Travel; he ſhall never be troubled with ſwell'd Legs, nor yet ever put out Wind-gall.

Now if you will neither go to this coſt, nor endure this trouble, yet

yet would have your Horſe Cured of his infirmity, then know, there is not any thing better, or more approved, than continually both before and after Travel, and in the Houſe many times in the Day, to lave and waſh your Horſes Legs, or other ſwell'd parts, with the coldeſt and cleareſt Fountain Water that you can get, and ſometimes let the Horſe ſtand in ſome cold running ſtream the ſpace of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees and Cambrels, but in any caſe no farther.

This Medicine, how poor ſoever it look, is of much vertue, and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery: Only this you muſt take to your remembrance, that this application appertains not to Impoſthumations, but unto Strains, Swellings, and Bruiſes, which are without much anguiſh.

CHAP. CXXXI.

Of the Farcy, or Faſhions.

THE Farcy (of our Ignorant Smiths called the Faſhions) is of all outward Sorances the vileſt, the moſt poyſonous, infectious and the moſt dangerous, (being any whit neglected) or otherwiſe the moſt eaſie, and with the leaſt coſt or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping Ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongſt ſome one Vein or other, and ſometimes alongſt divers or ſundry Veins, according to the ſtrength of the infections. It proceedeth ſometimes from corrupt Blood ingendred in the Body, ſometimes from outward Wounds or Hurts receiv'd by cankerous or poyſonous Inſtruments, as ruſty Spurs, ruſty Forks, biting of Dogs or Horſes, biting of Ticks, Hogs-lice, or ſuch like; ſometimes by the rubbing of Swine againſt the Legs of the Horſe, or by lying in the litter where Swine have lain, or by inter-fering, or hewing one leg upon another; but generally it proceedeth from an evil habit of the Body, being ſurfeited by diſorderly and unruly Travel, whereby the Blood being heated, the Greaſe melted, and ſudden cold taken, there groweth ſuch obſtructions in the blood, and ſuch putrefaction in the Body, that can in no way evacuate or avoid, but by theſe ſmall Knots, Puſtules, or Ulcers, which are ſo infectious, that as many Horſes as do gnaw or gnap upon the Horſe infected will within one Month have the ſame Diſeaſe, or if the Horſe infected do bite any other, he will infect him alſo; and this infection without preſent Cure is Mortal, and will kill any Horſe:

Horſe: therefore, whenſoever you have any Horſe troubled with this Sorance, ſee that you ſeparate him from other Horſes to prevent the danger.

Now for the ſigns, they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the Knots, which Knots are never but accompanied with great ſwellings and ranklings, running along as the Veins run, and dividing themſelves as the Branches of the Vein divide, the number of the Knots multiplying and encreaſing, until the Body be univerſally covered over, or elſe that the number (if it be in a member) be utterly deformed and miſ-ſhapen.

Now the Cure, (according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers) is, Firſt let him Blood on the Neck Vein, and on both his Spur Veins, then give the Horſe this Drink: Take a Gallon of Water, and put into it a good handful of Rue, and a pound of Hemp-ſeed, both being firſt bruiſed in a Mortar; then boyl them in Water till the one half be conſumed, and give the Horſe this to drink in the Morning faſting, being cold, for divers Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the Ancient Farriers uſe firſt to let the Horſe Blood in that Vein where the ſorance firſt riſeth, as nigh the ſore place as may be, and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every Knot one by one, taking the Knot in your left Hand, and pulling it ſo hard as you can from his Body, to the intent you may the better pierce the Knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the bigneſs of a Man's fore-finger, without doing the Body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned, being little or much: That done, anoint every Knot ſo burned, with Hogs-greaſe warm'd every day once, until the Cores be ready to fall; and in the mean time, prepare a good quantity of old Urine; and when you ſee the Cores ready to fall, then boyl the Urine, and put therein a little Copperas and Salt, and a few ſtrong Nettles, and with that Water being warm, waſh out all the Cores, and all the Corruption: that done, fill every hole immediately with the Powder of unſlak't Lime, continuing thus to do every Day once, until the holes be cloſed up; and if any be more rank than others, fill thoſe with Verdigreaſe; and during this Cure, let the Horſe be thinly dieted, that is to ſay, with Straw and Water only, unleſs it be now and then to give him a Loaf of Bread, or a little other Provender: for the lower he is kept in fleſh, the ſooner he will heal; and in any wiſe let his Neck either be yoaked in an old bottomleſs Pail, or elſe faſtened with Straws in ſuch ſort, that he may [illegible]

yet would have your Horſe Cured of his infirmity, then know, there is not any thing better, or more approved, than continually both before and after Travel, and in the Houſe many times in the Day, to lave and waſh your Horſes Legs, or other ſwell'd parts, with the coldeſt and cleareſt Fountain Water that you can get, and ſometimes let the Horſe ſtand in ſome cold running ſtream the ſpace of a quarter of an hour or more, up to the Knees and Cambrels, but in any caſe no farther.

This Medicine, how poor ſoever it look, is of much vertue, and though I write of cold Water, yet is the operation hot and fiery: Only this you muſt take to your remembrance, that this application appertains not to Impoſthumations, but unto Strains, Swellings, and Bruiſes, which are without much anguiſh.

CHAP. CXXXI.

Of the Farcy, or Faſhions.

THE Farcy (of our Ignorant Smiths called the Faſhions) is of all outward Sorances the vileſt, the moſt poyſonous, infectious and the moſt dangerous, (being any whit neglected) or otherwiſe the moſt eaſie, and with the leaſt coſt or trouble to be helped. It is a kind of creeping Ulcer, growing in knots, ever following alongſt ſome one Vein or other, and ſometimes alongſt divers or ſundry Veins, according to the ſtrength of the infections. It proceedeth ſometimes from corrupt Blood ingendred in the Body, ſometimes from outward Wounds or Hurts receiv'd by cankerous or poyſonous Inſtruments, as ruſty Spurs, ruſty Forks, biting of Dogs or Horſes, biting of Ticks, Hogs-lice, or ſuch like; ſometimes by the rubbing of Swine againſt the Legs of the Horſe, or by lying in the litter where Swine have lain, or by inter-ſering, or hewing one leg upon another; but generally it proceedeth from an evil habit of the Body, being ſurfeited by diſorderly and unruly Travel, whereby the Blood being heated, the Greaſe melted, and ſudden cold taken, there groweth ſuch obſtructions in the blood, and ſuch putrefaction in the Body, that can in no way evacuate or avoid, but by theſe ſmall Knots, Puſtules, or Ulcers, which are ſo infectious, that as many Horſes as do gnaw or gnap upon the Horſe infected will within one Month have the ſame Diſeaſe, or if the Horſe infected do bite any other, he will infect him alſo; and this infection without preſent Cure is Mortal, and will kill any Horſe:

Horſe: therefore, whenſoever you have any Horſe troubled with this Sorance, ſee that you ſeparate him from other Horſes to prevent the danger.

Now for the ſigns, they are the appearance and palpable feeling of the Knots, which Knots are never but accompanied with great ſwellings and ranklings, running along as the Veins run, and dividing themſelves as the Branches of the Vein divide, the number of the Knots multiplying and encreaſing until the Body be univerſally covered over, or elſe that the number (if it be in a member) be utterly deformed and miſ-ſhapen.

Now the Cure, (according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers) is, Firſt let him Blood on the Neck Vein, and on both his Spur Veins, then give the Horſe this Drink: Take a Gallon of Water, and put into it a good handful of Rue, and a pound of Hemp-ſeed, both being firſt bruiſed in a Mortar; then boyl them in Water till the one half be conſumed, and give the Horſe this to drink in the Morning faſting, being cold, for divers Mornings together, and it will cure him.

Others of the Ancient Farriers uſe firſt to let the Horſe Blood in that Vein where the Sorance firſt riſeth, as nigh the ſore place as may be; and let him bleed well: then fire or cauterize every Knot one by one, taking the Knot in your left Hand, and pulling it ſo hard as you can from his Body, to the intent you may the better pierce the Knot with a round blunt hot Iron, of the bigneſs of a Man's fore-finger, without doing the Body any hurt, and let the matter out, leaving none unburned, being little or much: That done, anoint every Knot ſo burned, with Hogs-greaſe warm'd every day once, until the Cores be ready to fall; and in the mean time, prepare a good quantity of old Urine; and when you ſee the Cores ready to fall, then boyl the Urine, and put therein a little Copperas and Salt, and a few ſtrong Nettles, and with that Water being warm, waſh out all the Cores, and all the Corruption: that done, fill every hole immediately with the Powder of unſlakt Lime, continuing thus to do every Day once, until the holes be cloſed up; and if any be more rank than others, fill thoſe with Verdigreaſe; and during this Cure, let the Horſe be thinly dieted; that is to ſay, with Straw and Water only, unleſs it be now and then to give him a Loaf of Bread, or a little other Provender: for the lower he is kept in fleſh, the ſooner he will heal; and in any wiſe let his Neck either be yoaked in an old bottomleſs Pail, or elſe ſolented with Staves in ſuch ſort, that he may not come to lick any of his Sores; and the leſs he hath, the better will be his

amendment. Now there be other latter Farriers, which for the Sorance take a good quantity of Mistleto, Honey, and black Sope, and boyl them very well in old Urine, and being very warm, wash your Horse all over therewith, every Day once for the space of five or six Days, and it will help it. Others use to cut the Horse two Inches long down the forehead, and upon it on the midst thereof on both sides two Inches, and put thereto a tampin made of the inner rind of Elder Bark which is green, and look that it lye cross the Cut; for so it will destroy all the venomous Humour in his Body; and it will heal him very perfectly, having been very oft approved. Others use to take a very sharp Bodkin, and to thrust it cross-wise through the nether part of the Horses Nose, even through the small Gristle, so that he may bleed well; or else to let him Blood in the Neck Vein; then feel the Knots, and as many as are soft, Lance them, and let them run; then take strong Lye, Lime, and Allom, and mixing them well together, Bathe all the sore therewith, and it will cure him.

☞ Others take a sharp Lance-knife, and in the top of the Horses Forehead, somewhat above his Eyes, make a long slit even unto his Skull; then with a blunt Instrument for that purpose, loose the Flesh from the scalp a good compass, then take Carret Roots cut into little thin round pieces, and put them between the Skin and the Skull; or, for want of Carret-roots you may take red Dock-roots, and see that they be a little beaten or bruised before you put them in, and once a Day see that you thrust out the matter, but by no means thrust out the Roots: but if the Roots do not stay in, then with a Needle and Silk stitch the VVound together that it may hold in the Medicine; then once a Day anoint the VVound with fresh Butter: This is held a very certain Cure for the Farcy; for look how this VVound made shall rot, waste, and grow sound, so shall the Sorance break, dry up, and be healed; only the fault of the Cure, is, that it will be somewhat long in healing, and is a foul Eye sore until it be whole.

Now there be other Farriers, which, after the putting in of Roots, as is aforesaid, use to burn all the sore place round about with a hot Iron; and then with another blunt hot Iron as big as a Man's finger, to burn the Sore in the midst till the white matter come forth, then with a pair of Pinsons pluck out the Knots; this done, anoint all the sore place with Sope, and then dress him no more the space of four or five Days, in which time you must prepare a good quantity of strong Piss, with the which you must wash him every Day, the Piss being first made scalding hot, and rub the Sores well that they be

gin to bleed; then having dried all the sore places, throw on the Powder of unslaked Lime, or of Burnt Allom, which will heal better than Lime. Now if you see that in any of the Sores through negligent dressing there riseth proud Flesh high, that you cannot correct it sufficiently with the aforesaid Powder, then you may burn any such place so sore or sorer as you did at the first, and dress it as before. Now there be other Farriers, which, when they see the Farcy to have been old and long gone, and that it is so far entred into one Member or other, that the Member is disfigured, they will then first purge the Horse with some strong purgation, of which you may find choice in a Chapter before written; and then under his Belly, put in one rowl either of Hair or Leather; or on the pitch of his Shoulder of his grieved Leg, (if it be before) or else in the stifling places, if his grief be behind, put in another Rowel, and so keep those two places together, with the issue in his Fore-head open, until the Cure be finished; then with another hot Iron burn all his Leg down with long strikes, even from the Body to the Hoof, not above an Inch one strike from another, the edge of the Iron being not above a Straws breadth, and draw your stroak ever downward with the Hair, and burn him no deeper than that the Skin may look brown. Now, when by this practice you have cured the disease; if then the Member be unfashionable, or by Swellings out of all form, then you shall lay unto the Member a Plaister made of Wine-lees, and Wheat-flower, and Rowl it with a Woollen Rowler, renewing it once in Twenty four Hours, till the Member be asswaged; and this practice will heal any great swelled Leg, if it be applyed and continued with Patience; but if by former dressings, burnings, manglings, or cuttings of some Ignorant Farriers, there be any extraordinary, hard, or horny substance grown about the Member, which the Plaister aforesaid will not dissolve, then you shall take of Virgins-Wax half a pound, of Myrrh one pound, of Raisins a pound, of Galbanum half a pound, of Costus six ounces, of Armoniack six ounces, of Swines grease two pound; put your Swines grease first in an earthen Pot, and having placed it in a broad Cauldron full of Water; then make a soft fire under it, to the end that your Water may boil; and when you do perceive your Swines grease is almost melted, then shall you put in all the other Simples, except the Costus; and when they are all molten, which will ask five or six Hours boiling at the least; then your Costus, which is a White Root, being beaten into fine Powder, you shall add to the aforesaid things, from it is taken from the fire, and incorpo-

rate them all very well together, then make a Plaister thereof upon a piece of Sheeps Leather, somewhat bigger then the Sore, and this Plaister without renewing, will serve for at the least Thirty Days, with a very little refreshing, only you must once a Day take it off, and rub his Leg very well for fear it itch, which may cause the Horse to beat and stamp with his Foot, and so rather increase than decrease the swelling; and you must regard, that you do not rowl him too strait, for that is most hurtful. It shall not be amiss now and then to ride him into the Water, and walk him an Hour after, then bringing him into the Stable, rub his Leg well; then warm his Plaister over a Chasing-dish of Coals, and so lay it to again: and this practice in two or three Months will take away any deformity of swelling, be the Member never so uncomely.

Now there be other Farriers, which for this Farcy, if it be but young, and especially if it be about the Head or Face of a Horse, will take only of Aquavitæ two spoonfuls, of the Juice of Garlick two spoonfuls, and of the Juice of Rew, or Herb of Grace, two spoonfulls; mix them well together, then take Plegants or round Balls of Flax, and steep them therein, and then stop them hard into the Horses Ears; then take a Needle and Thred, and stitch the tips of his two Ears together, by means whereof, he cannot shake out the Medicine, and use the Horse thus three several Mornings together, and it will kill the Farcy, as hath been oft proved.

Other Farriers use to take Drag-worts, or Groundsel, and beat it well in a Mortar with white Salt, and then stop it hard into the Horses Ears, and so either stitch them together, or with a broad inckle bind them up, renewing it once in Fourteen Hours for three or four dressings, and it will heal any reasonable Farcy.

Others use to anoint all the Sores either with Tansey and Verjuice boyled together; or else with Boars grease very hot, and that will kill it. Others use first to wash the Sores with old Urine, then take the Powder of Glass, Brimstone and Hogs grease well stamped and beaten together; then opening, and slitting the Knots, anoint them all therewith, and it will cure them immediately. Other Farriers use to let the Horse Blood, if it be at the beginning of the disease, or else not; and then to burn all the Knots as is aforesaid, and then to heal the burnings with Tar, Oyl, and Honey mixt together, and give him with a pint of Malmsey, two or three spoonfuls of the Powder Diapente: or else give him four ounces of the Powder of Wall-wort or Dan-wort, with a pint and a half of Malmsey, then Drink together,

after

after that, take an ounce of Aloes, one ounce of Centaury, one ounce of Opoponax, beat them all into fine Powder, and give them him to drink in a pint and a half of Malmſey warmed, wherein the Roots of the aforeſaid Herb called VVall-wort, or Dan-wort, have been ſodden: Uſe to ride him oft until he ſweat, and when the Diſeaſe is killed, turn him to Graſs: for running in the open Air is very wholſom.

There be others, which take black Sope, Arſnick, unſlakt Lime, Verdigreaſe, and Read Lead, work all theſe well together, and opening the Knots, dreſs them therewith till you ſee them begin to dry up and die. Others open the Knots with a hot Iron, and then take black Sope and great Bay-Salt beaten together, and half ſo much as of them, of Verdigreaſe, and boil the Verdigreaſe with freſh greaſe, and then take a Saucerful of Muſtard, and put them all together, and dreſs the Sores therewith.

There be others that take three ounces of Quick-ſilver, and put it into a Bladder, with two ſpoonfuls of the juyce of Oranges or Lemmons, and ſhake them together to cool the Quick-ſilver: then take half a pound of freſh Hogs greaſe, and Verdigreaſe an ounce; put all theſe in a trend Diſh, and work them well together: then anoint the Knots with this Oyntment till they rot: then let them out with a ſharp Knife, and anoint them ſtill, and put into his Ears the Juice of Ragweed, and the Sores will dry up. This Medicine is very well approved. Others take black Sope, Muſtard made of VVine-Vinegar, and Read Lead; mix all theſe together, and anoint the Vein all along, holding a hot Iron cloſe to the Sore, to make the Oyntment ſtrike in, and do thus once a Day until the Sores dry up. Other Farriers take the Juice of Hemlock a good quantity, and dipping Tow therein, ſtop his Ears therewith; then open all the Knots and thruſt in Salt. Laſtly, give him to drink ſweet VVort mixt with Fennel and Treacle. Other Farriers take the Butter Bur, and being dryed and beaten to Powder, ſtrew it upon the Knots after they have been opened, and then give two or three ſpoonfuls of the ſame Powder with a pint of Malmſey to drink, and it will cure the Farcy; and it is alſo exceeding good for all manner of Ulcers; the root is ſtrong in ſmell, and bitter in taſte.

Others take Sulphur, Orpiment unſlakt Lime, and mixing them together, put it into the Knots, and it will kill the Farcy: which done, anoint him with Bole-armony made into Powder, and incorporated with ſtrong Vinegar, the Juice of Houſleek, and of white

Leeks and Solatro. Other Farriers, after they have let the Horse Blood, will boil in Vinegar, Bean-flower and Swines Greaſe, then add a pretty quantity of Oyl, and then ſtrain it, and then add one part of Aloes, and two of Brimſtone, and boyl it a little: then being warm, anoint all the ſore places therewith, or elſe anoint them twice a Day with the Juice of Smallage, and the Yolks of Eggs beaten together.

There be other Farriers which take two Ounces of Oyl de Bay, one of Euforbium, and two ounces of Arſnick, and mixing them together, anoint the Sores therewith, and it will kill the Farcy. Now after all theſe many Receipts, of which not any but have been approved to be very good, yet theſe two which I ſhall now rehearſe, I have ever found to be the moſt excellent for any manner of Farcy whatſoever, whether it be (as our ſimple Smiths term it) a dry Farcy, a wet or watery Farcy, or a running Farcy, all being indeed but one Farcy, and proceeding from one cauſe; only ſome Horſes not having ſuch flux of humours in them as others have, the Knots will be unwilling to break; then, ſay they, it is a dry Farcy. Others of the contrary part will break as faſt as the Knots ariſe, and run filthy matter, then they call it a watery Farcy. Others will ſpread in many parts of the Body, yet not break, but as it were move betwixt the Skin and the Fleſh, but that they call a Running Farcy.

Now all theſe are but one Farcy, and having but one certain Cure, which is this: Firſt, with diligent heed mark upon what principal Vein of the Horſes Body the Knots do ariſe, and note how they ſpread and run, then if the Farcy be divided into ſundry Branches, according as the Vein doth divide, you ſhall take the laſt Knot of every Branch, which for the moſt part will be hard, and not come to rottenneſs; and then ſlit them, and fill them with your Knife's point full of white Mercury: then thoſe which you find to be rotten, let the matter forth, and anoint them with black Sope and Mercury mixt together; then within a Day or two you ſhall ſee thoſe which you dreſs with Mercury ſimple, to have their cores fall out; and the reſt which you dreſs with black Sope will dry up: then anoint them all with freſh Butter molten till they be whole. Now if you perceive any new Knots to ariſe, then you ſhall dreſs them likewiſe with Mercury ſimple, as was ſaid before, and not leave any uncured. Now if the Farcy be not very contagious, and as it were newly begun, then if you only take black Sope and Mercury, as before ſaid, and

and anointing your Finger and your Thumb therewith, do but nip and bruise every Knot, and within two or three days after they will dry up and heal. But if the Farcy be foul and desperate, that is to say, either universally spread over the Body, or so gotten into any Limb or Member, and the Limb is deformed, and hath lost his proportion, so that a Man can neither judge which way the Veins run, nor in what part the Knots are most venemous, because that healing one, two new ones will arise:

In this same case, you shall first give your Horse a strong scouring or purgation, according to the strength of his Body, of all which a pint of Muskadine, or a quart of strong Ale, with half a pint of the Oyl of Oats, is the most soverain: then you shall take a penny-worth of Tar, and two good handfuls of Pigeons dung, and twelve pence worth of white Mercury; mix all these very well together, and make them into a Salve; then with a slice daub it all over the sore place, leaving no part of the Member uncovered; then heating a Bar of Iron red hot, hold it so near that it may dry the salve upon the sore: then lay more fresh Salve on, and dry in like manner, and so let it rest until it fall off, and it will kill any Farcy whatsoever, at the first or second dressing. There be others which will stop the Knots with the Powder of Verdigreast and of Arsnick mixt together, or else wash the sores with Aqua fortis, but they are neither so good as the other before rehearsed.

CHAP. CXXXII.

Of the Canker in any part of the Body.

A Canker is a poisonous creeping Ulcer, fretting and gnawing the Flesh a great breadth, whose beginning is Knotty, not much unlike to the Farcy, and spreadeth it self into divers places; and being exulcerated, gathereth together at the length into one Wound or filthy Sore, from whence there runneth a thin sharp lye, which galleth off the Skin wheresoever it goes, and so both encreaseth the Ulcer, and maketh it more incurable. It proceedeth from melancholly and filthy Blood, ingendereth either by rankness of keeping, or else by too extream Poverty; and if this naughty Blood be mixt with sharp or salt humours, then it causeth more painful and grievous exulceration. It also may proceed from some loathsom Wound, which is neither clean kept nor well dress, but in such

ſore, that the corrupt Matter thereof poyſoneth the other clean parts of the Body. For ſigns of this Sorance, there needeth no more but the deſcription already mentioned. And for the cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, it is, Firſt to let the Horſe Blood in thoſe Veins which are next the Sore, and make him bleed well; then take of Allom half a pound, of Green Copperas as much, of White Copperas one quartern, and a good handful of Salt, boil all theſe things together in fair running Water, from a Pottle to a Quart: and this Water being warm, waſh the ſore therewith with a Clout, and then ſprinkle thereon the Powder of unſlakt Lime, continuing ſo to do every Day once the ſpace of Fifteen Days; and if you ſee that the Lime do not mortifie the rank Fleſh, and keep it from ſpreading any further, then take of Sope half a pound, of Quick-ſilver half an ounce, and beat them together in a pot till the Quick-ſilver be ſo well mingled with the Sope, as you can perceive no Quick-ſilver in it; then with an Iron ſlice or ſplater, after that you have waſhed the Sore with the ſtrong Water aforeſaid, cover the Wound with this Oyntment, continuing thus to do every Day once until the Canker leave ſpreading abroad. And if it leave ſpreading, and that you ſee the rank Fleſh is well mortified, and that the edges begin to gather a ſkin, then after the waſhing, dreſs it with Lime, as before, continuing ſo to do until it be whole; and in the dreſſing ſuffer no filth that comes out of the Sore to remain upon any whole place about, but wipe it clean away, or elſe waſh it away with warm Water; and let the Horſe during this Cure, be as thinly dyeted as may be, and throughly exerciſed. Now if this Cankerous Ulcer happen to be in the Tail of a Horſe, as it is often ſeen, and which you ſhall perceive as well by the falling away of the Hairs, as alſo by the Wound, then you ſhall make a Bolſter of ſoft Cloth or Spunge, and wet it with Vinegar both within and without, and ſo bind it on faſt to the ſore; and always when it waxes dry, you muſt wet it again, do thus twice or thrice a Day, if it be done oftner it is better, ſo ſhall you continue for three or four days, and then heal up as you heal an ordinary Wound; that is, with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, or ſuch like. There be other Farriers, which for the Canker on the Body do take an ounce of the juice of the Root of Aſſedely, three ounces of unſlakt Lime, two ounces of Orpiment, Arſnick, put this in an earthen Veſſel cloſe ſtopt, and either boyl or bake it in an Oven till it come to a Powder, then firſt waſh the ſore with ſtrong Vinegar, and after ſtrew this Powder thereon.

Others

Others uſe to take Garlick, and beat it in a Mortar with Swines-greaſe till it come to a Salve, and then having waſht the Sore either with Vinegar, Allom-water, Copperas-water, or old Urine, anoint it once or twice a day with it till it be whole. Other Farriers take the Herb Mullen, and bruiſe it, and mix it with Salt and Verdigreaſe, and dreſs the Sore therewith Morning and Evening for the ſpace of three or four days; then uſe the ſame Salve again as long without Verdigreaſe; then laſtly uſe the Herb alone: but if at any time you ſee it do begin to Wax raw, then begin again, as is aforeſaid, and ever before you anoint, waſh it firſt with Vinegar and Greaſe mixt together. Others take Savin, Bay-ſalt, and Rue, ſtampt with Barrows-greaſe, and anoint the Sore therewith, and when the ill humours are kill'd (which you ſhall know by the whiteneſs) then heal it with Tar, Oyl, and Honey mixt together.

Laſtly, (and which I hold the beſt) take Vinegar, Ginger, and Allom, and mix them together till they come to a Salve, and with it anoint the Sore, and it will both kill the Poyſon, and heal the Ulcer.

CHAP. CXXXIII.

Of the Fiſtula.

A Fiſtula is a deep, hollow, crooked, mattering Ulcer, and for the moſt part, commonly a great deal ſtraighter at the mouth than at the bottom, being ingendred in ſome Wound, Bruiſe, Sore, or Canker, not throughly healed. The ſigns to know it are, The hollowneſs of the Sore deſcending downward from the Orifice, and the thinneſs of the Matter which iſſueth from the ſame; beſides, the crookedneſs which you ſhall find in the Ulcer, when you ſearch it.

Now for the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, it is thus: Firſt ſearch the bottom thereof with a Gooſe or Swans quill, or with a ſmall Rod well covered with a fine Linnen-cloth; and having found the bottom thereof, cut it ſo large with a Razor, that the Matter may have free paſſage downwards; but take heed in launcing it, that you cut not any maſter Shew, or main Tendon: then having ſtanched the Blood either with Swines-dung, or ſuch like, take of good Honey a pint, of Verdigreaſe one ounce, and boil them well together upon a ſoft Fire three quarters of

an hour: then having cleanſed the Sore by tying a tent of Flax or fine Linnen-cloth to the point of your Quill, with a thred draw it ſoftly into the Wound: then cut off your Quill or Feather ſo long, that you may take good hold in the nether end of the tent, which then ſhall come out at the bottom of your Sore: then dip another tent in the aforeſaid Salve, and then with a needle and thred make faſt your tent to your firſt clout, at the upper end thereof, then draw out your firſt tent downward, ſo ſhall you draw your tent with the Medicine eaſily into the Wound, and your firſt tent will have cleanſed the Sore very clean; and if the matter do abound much, then it ſhall be good to dreſs him twice a day: but you muſt not dreſs him with this Medicine no more but one day, and afterward you ſhall dreſs him with this Medicine following; Take of Turpentine, of Swines-greaſe, of Honey, and Sheeps ſuet, of each a like quantity, and melt them together, and make a Salve thereof, wherewith you ſhall dreſs your Sore four days, for one day that you dreſs him with the former Medicine made of Honey and Verdigreaſe; and take heed that you make your tent of very ſoft Linnen-cloth, and fine Flax: and let not your tent be too big after the firſt and ſecond time dreſſing, but preſently after the firſt dreſſing, you muſt cover the ſore place, and round about the ſame, with this Poultis here following:

Firſt, Take two Gallons of fair water, and having boiled and ſcum'd it ſo long till you have perfectly cleanſed it of all corruption, then take two or three handfuls of Mallows, and as much of Violet-leaves, and two or three of Oat-meal, and having boiled all theſe three things well in your former prepared VVater, you ſhall add thereto of Hogs wort, and freſh Butter, of each a pound; then ſhall you let it boil ſo long till it become thick, like Paſte or Pap, and then apply it hot to the Sore, and take heed that in opening this Sore you let not any hair ſtrike into it; and on the other ſide, that you keep it not hot: and if this Fiſtula be in the Horſes VVithers, you muſt take heed that you tye his Head to the Rack, ſo as he may neither lye down, nor put his Head lower than his Manger: for if you ſuffer him to feed on the Ground when he hath any grievous Sore in his VVithers, it ſhall hardly be poſſible ever to Cure him; but if you perceive the VVound to heal apace, and that it matter but a little, then ſhall it be enough to dreſs him once a day: and alſo it ſhall be good. Take great heed, that you make not your tent too big, and ſee that you uſe your Poultis till it be perfectly Cured. Now there

be

be others of the Ancient Farriers, which use for this Cure, First to search the depth of the Fistula either with a Quill, or with some other Instrument of Lead, which may be bow'd every way: for unless you find the bottom of it, it will be very hard to Cure; and having found the bottom, if it be in such a place as you may boldly cut and make the way open with a Launcet or Razor, then make a slit right against the bottom, so wide, that you may thrust in your Finger to feel whether there be any Bone or else Gristle perished, or spongy, or loose Flesh, which must be gotten out; and then tent it with a tent of Flax dipped in this Ointment: Take of Myrrh, of Aloes, and of Sarcocolla, of each one ounce, of good Honey six ounces, and of Verdigrease two ounces: and melt all these on a gentle Fire, and make them into a Salve; then being luke warm, dress the tent therewith, and bolster the tent with a bolster of Flax, and if it be in such a place as the tent cannot conveniently be kept in with a band, then fasten on each side the hole two ends of a Shoemakers thred right over the Bolster, to keep in the tent, which ends may hang there, as two Laces to tye and untye at your pleasure, renewing the tent every day once, until the sore leave mattering, and then make the tent every day lesser and lesser, until it be whole: for you shall understand, that this Salve doth purge this Fistula of putrefaction, incarnateth and breedeth Flesh, conglutinateth and eateth away all naughty Flesh. Now when you have done as aforesaid, then you shall close it up by sprinkling thereon a little unslackt Lime; but if the Fistula be in such a place, as you can neither cut against the bottom, nor tye the same, then there is no remedy, but every time you dress it, to pour into it either through some Quill, or by some small squirt or Syringe, some strong white Copperas-water, or some Allom-water, so that it may go down to the bottom, and dry up the filthy Matter: and this you may do twice a day at least until it be whole. Now there be of our latter Farriers, which use this Cure, after they have searched the Fistula to the bottom, to take a pottle of White Wine Vinegar, of Camphire half an ounce, of Mercury precipitate half an ounce, of green Treacle three ounces, of Red Sage an handful, of Yarrow and Rib-wort of each an handful, of Honey half a pint, of Boars grease half a pint, boil all these together till a quart be consumed, and with this you shall wash and cleanse the Wound. Then to heal up the same, you shall take Oyl of Roses, Virgins Wax and Rozen, of each a like quan-

tity, of Turpentine five ounces, of the Gum of Ivy and Deers ſuet as much, boil theſe together unto a Salve, and then dreſs the Sore therewith until it be whole; obſerving ever, both in this Cure, and all the reſt, that as ſoon as you have put in your tent, to clap a Plaiſter over it of Pitch, Rozen, Maſtick, Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, which will both comfort the Wound by taking away evil humours, and alſo keep in the tent from falling out. Now if the Fiſtula be in or about the Head of the Horſe, then you ſhall take the Juice of Houſleek, and dip therein a lock of Wool, and put it into the Horſes Ears, and it will ſtay the Inflammation; but if it be exulcerated and broken, then you ſhall cut away all the rotten and falſe Fleſh, and then Bathe it well with the grounds of Ale made warm, and then wipe the Blood clean away: then take Butter, Rozen, and Frankincenſe a little, and boil them all together: and boiling hot pour it into the Wound, and then clap on the Plaiſter; do thus once a day till the Horſe be whole. Now if there be any Inflammation behind the Horſes Ears, or that it grow to any Impoſthumation in that place, then you ſhall boil the roots of Mallows in Water till they wax tender, then bruiſe them, and ſtrain out the Water clean, and being warm, apply it to the ſore, and it will heal it.

There be other Ancient and Skilful Farriers, which for the general Fiſtula uſe for a prevention thereof, To take Honey and Sheeps-ſuet, and making it ſcalding hot, to ſcald the ſore extreamly therewith upon the firſt ſwelling, and it will keep the Fiſtula that it ſhall not breed; but if it breed, then you ſhall Launce it in the nethermoſt part, and put into it as much Mercury Sublimatum as a peaſe, being firſt abated with Sallet oyl, and laid on with a Feather; after that, take of Verdigreaſe four penny-worth, of Vitriol a half penny-worth, of Red-lead three penny-worth, beat theſe together, and every day waſh the Wound with Copperas-water, made with Copperas and Elder Leaves in Summer, and with the inner green bark in Winter; after the waſhing, take the Powder, and put it on the Sore, and after it drop on a little Oyl.

Other Farriers take the outermoſt green Shells of Wall-nuts, and put them in a Tub, ſtrowing three or four handfuls of Bay-Salt upon them, ſome in the bottom, ſome in the midſt, and ſome on the top, and ſo keep them all the Year; and when you will uſe them, take a pint of them, a little Bay-Salt, and half a quarter of a pound of black-Soap, with half a ſpoonful of Hog-Butter, (and for want thereof,

other

other Butter) and mix and incorporate them together; and then ſpread it on the Sore, or tent the Sore therewith; but two hours before you lay it on, anoint the place with Veniee Turpentine, and do thus till the Fiſtula be whole.

Other Farriers take Unguentum Ægyptiacum, which is made of Honey a pint, Vinegar half a pint, Allom a quarter of a pound, and Verdigreaſe one ounce and a half; and ſeethe them all together till till they be thick, and of a tauny colour; this is called Ægyptiacum, and to make it the ſtrongeſt way, is to put in of Mercury Sublimatum one ounce made into Powder, and of Arſnick two ſcruples, and boil it together; with either of theſe, eſpecially the ſtronger, dreſs any Fiſtula, Canker, or foul old Ulcer whatſoever, and it will kill it; and the weaker of theſe, which wanteth the Mercury and the Arſnick, may be applied to the Fiſtula in the Mouth of a Horſe. Other Farriers take of Sublimatum made into Powder one ounce, the midſt of well Leavened Bread ſlack baked, three ounces, of Nenin ten drams: mingle them together with a little Roſe-water, and make tents thereof, and dry them upon a Tile, and at your pleaſure tent your Fiſtula therewith, and it will aſſuredly kill it. Others take ſtrong Lye, Honey, Roch-Allom, and Mercury, and ſeethe them together, and ſquirt it into a Fiſtula, and it will kill it at the bottom, and when you mean to dry up the Fiſtula, take red Wine, Goats-dung, and Bean-flower, and ſeethe them together, and apply it to the Fiſtula, and it will dry it up.

Now if you intend to ſink down the ſwelling of a Fiſtula, firſt of all ſear it with a drawing Iron in this proportion †, and then take Roſin, Sheeps-ſuet, and Brimſtone, and boil them together, and lay it upon a Fiſtula very hot with a Cloth, and it will ſink down the ſwelling. It is alſo moſt excellent to take away a Wind-gall, if it be laid on after the Wind-gall is prickt, but not too hot, but very reaſonable, and it will keep it alſo very clean.

There be other Farriers, which for a Fiſtula take Verdigreaſe, Butter and Salt melted together, and pour it ſcalding hot into the Sore; and uſe this till all the Fleſh look red; then tent it with Verdigreaſe, burnt Allom, Wheat-flower, and the yolks of Eggs well beaten and mingled together: laſt of all, skin it with Barm and Soot mixt together.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXIV.

A rare and true approved Medicine to Cure any Fistula, or hollow Impostumation whatsoever.

TAke a pint of the strongest Vinegar, and being hot upon the Fire, mix therewith the lome of a clay Wall, which hath not any Lime in it, but by no means do not pick out the chopt straws or hay that is in the lome, but boil them all together till it come to a Salve: then being reasonably hot, spread it over all the swell'd place, and over every part which you shall feel hard: and you shall thus do twice a day, and it will not only ripen and break the hollow Ulcer, but also search it to the bottom and heal it. This Medicine Cureth any sore back whatsoever, how grievously soever, either gall'd or bruised.

CHAP. CXXXV.

Of the Ambury.

AN Ambury is a great spungy Wart full of Blood, which may grow upon any part of the Horses Body, chiefly about the Eye-brows, Nostrils, or Privy-parts, and it hath a root like unto a Cocks-stone. Now the Cure, according to the Opinion of the Ancient Farriers, is, First to tye about with a thred or hair, so hard as you can pull it, and the thred will eat in by little and little, in such sort as within seven or eight days it will fall away of it self; and if it be so flat, that you can bind nothing about it, then take it away with a sharp hot Iron, cutting it round about, and so deep as you leave none of the root behind; and then dry it up with the Powder of Verdigrease: but if it grow in such a sinewy place as it cannot be conveniently cut away with a hot Iron, then it is good to eat out the Core with the Powder of Roſalgar, or Mercury, and then to stop the hole with flax dip in the white of an Egg, for a day or two: and lastly, to dry it up with the Powder of unslacked Lime, and Honey, as is before taught. Other Farriers, instead of tying the Wart with a thred, do tye it with some Horse-hair: and that is a great deal the better, and it will rot it off sooner, and faster.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXXXVI.

Of the Cords.

THE Cords is a certain ſtring, which cometh from the Shackle-vein to the Griſtle in the Noſe, and between the Lip, the length of an Almond; or there be two ſtrings like threds, which lye above the Knee, betwixt the Knee and the Body, and go like a ſmall Cord through the Body to the Noſtrils, making a Horſe to ſtumble much, and ſometimes to fall alſo; and it is a Diſeaſe very much incident to many young Horſes. The ſigns are, An apparent ſtiff going, and much ſtumbling, without any outward or viſible Sorance; the Cure is, according to the Opinion of our Ancient Farriers, To take the end of a crooked Harts-horn that is ſharp, put it under the Cords, and twine it ten or twelve times about, till the Horſe be conſtrained to lift up his Foot; then cut the Cord aſunder: and put a little Salt into the iſſue, or cut it firſt at the Knee, then at the end of his Noſe, and ſo draw it upward a ſpan length, and cut that off. Other Farriers let the Horſe Blood in the Vein that deſcendeth in the inſide of the Leg, by the Breaſt, and take away at leaſt a Pottle of Blood, and after ſeven days waſh him with Beef-broth, and it will heal him.

Other Farriers take Muſtard, Aquavitæ, and Sallet-oyl, and boil them on the Coals, and make a Plaiſter, and bind to a place that is grieved, and it will heal him.

Others take the grounds of Ale, and being made warm, Bathe his Legs therewith, and then rope them up with wet Hay-ropes, and it will make the Horſe perfectly ſound.

CHAP. CXXXVII.

Of the String-halt.

THE String-halt, of ſome called the *Mary hinchcho*, is a ſuddain twitching up of the Horſes hinder Legs, as if he did tread upon Needles, and were not able to indure his Feet upon the Ground; The ſigns whereof be an apparent ill-fayoured manner of halting moſt viſible to the Eye. And the Cure is, To take up the middle Vein above the Thigh, and underneath the ſame, then under the ſaid Vein there

there lies a ſtring, which ſtring muſt be cut away: and then anoint him with Butter and Salt, and he will both do well, and go well.

CHAP. CXXXVIII.

Of a Horſe that is Spur-gall'd.

IF a Horſe by the indiſcretion of an Evil Rider, be Spur-gall'd, which is a Diſeaſe moſt plain both to be felt and ſeen: then the Cure is, either to Bathe it with Urine and Salt mixt together, or with Water and Salt, or with warm Vinegar, or elſe bind unto the place the crops of Leaves of Nettles ſtamped; and any of theſe will Cure him.

CHAP. CXXXIX.

Of Wounds in general.

WOunds, according to the Opinion of all Farriers, is a ſolution, diviſion, or parting of the whole: for if there be no ſuch ſolution, or diviſion then it is rather called a Bruiſe than a Wound; and therefore, Wounds are moſt commonly made with ſharp or piercing Weapons, and Bruiſes with blunt Weapons: notwithſtanding, if by ſuch blunt Weapons any part of the whole be evidently broken, then it is to be called a Wound, as well as the other, and theſe Wounds do proceed from ſome ſtroak, prick, or violent accident. Now of Wounds, ſome be hollow, and ſome be deep and hollow: Again, ſome Wounds chance in fleſhy parts, and ſome in boney and ſinewy places; and thoſe which chance in the fleſhy parts, though they be very deep, yet they be not ſo dangerous as the others, and therefore I will ſpeak firſt of the moſt dangerous. If then a Horſe have a Wound newly made, either in his Head, or in any other place which is full of Sinews, Bones or Griſtles, then, according to the Opinion of the moſt Ancient Farriers, you ſhall firſt waſh the Wound well with White-Wine warmed, and keep it ever whilſt you are in dreſſing it, covered with Cloths wet in warm White-Wine: that done, you ſhall ſearch the bottom of the Wound with a Probe or ſmall Inſtrument of Steel made for the purpoſe, ſuffering the Wound to take as little Wind or Air as you can poſſible: then having ſound the depth, ſtop the hole cloſe with a clout until your ſalve be ready: then take of Turpentine, Mel-rolatum, Oyl of Roſes, of each a quar-

tern,

tern, and a little unwrought Wax, and melt them together, stirring them continually, that they may be well mingled together; and if the Wound be a cut, make an handsom roll or round plegant of soft Tow, so long and so big as may fill the bottom of the Wound, which for the most part is not so wide as the mouth of the Wound; then make another roll or plegant somewhat bigger, to fill up the rest of the wound, even to the hard mouth, and let both these rolls be anointed with the ointment aforesaid, made luke-warm: Only this you must ever observe, that if the wound be long and large, that then it is best, if you can conveniently, to stitch the wound together with a fine needle and a Crimson silk; for that will make it heal the sooner and make the scar less. But if the hurt be like an hole made with some prick, then make a stiff tent either of Tow or Lint, such an one as may reach the bottom, anointed with the aforesaid Ointment, and bolster the same with a little Tow; and over both this and the other, or any wound whatsoever, as soon as your rowels, plegnants or tents are put in, you shall clap a sticking plaster made of Pitch, Rosin, Mastick and Turpentine, melted together, as hath been before taught, both to keep in your salve, and to comfort the sore. Now if the mouth of the wound be not wide enough, so as the matter may easily run forth, if it be in such a place as you may do it without hurting any sinew, then give it a pretty slit from the mouth downward, that the matter may have the freer passage; and in any wise, have an especial regard that the tent may be continually kept in by one means or other, and also that it may not be drowned within the wound, but by tying some thread about the upper end thereof, so kept, that it may be taken out at pleasure. Now if the hole be deep, and in such a place as you may not cut it, then make your tent full as big as the hole of a dry spunge that was never wet, so long that it may reach the bottom; and the tent being made somewhat full, with continual turning and drying of it, you shall easily get it down, and then dress the wound with this twice a-day, cleansing the wound every time with a little white Wine, luke-warm; for the spung anointed with the ointment aforesaid, will both draw and suck up all the filthy matter, and make it so fair within as is possible; and as it beginneth to heal, so make your tent every day lesser and lesser, until it be ready to close up; and never leave tenting it, so long as it will receive a tent, be it never so short; for hasty healing of wounds breedeth Fistula's, which properly be old sores, and therefore must be healed like Fistula's. Now if the

wound proceed from any ancient impostumation, then you shall take two or three great Onions, and taking out the cores, put therein a little Bay-salt, and a little whole Saffron, and so roast them in the hot Embers; then plaster-wise lay them all hot on the wound, renewing it once a day till the wound be healed. Now if the upper skin of the wound be petrefied, and you would have it away, then make a plaster of Cows dung sod in milk, and clap it to for four and twenty hours, and it will leave nothing vile about the wound. Others use generally for any cure whatsoever, to take a quarter of a pound of Butter, of Tar and black Sope, of each half as much, and a little Turpentine; boil all but the Sope together, then when you take it off the fire, put in the Sope, and with this ointment dress and cut, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers use only to take Hogs-grease and Venice-Turpentine and to melt them together, and it will heal any Wound. Other Farriers take eight drams of Turpentine, four drams of new Virgins wax, melt them in a pewter vessel, and stir them well together, and when they are well melted and mixed, take them from the fire, and by and by whilest they be hot, pour into them half a pint of white Wine, then after they be cold, throw away the Wine, and anoint your hands with Oil of Roses, and work the Wax and Turpentine well together, after that put them into the pewter vessel again, then put to them half an ounce of the gum of Fir-tree, and three drams of the juice of Betony, then seeth them well together until the juice of Betony be wasted, then put to it three drams of Woman's milk, or the milk of a red Cow, and seeth them once again until the milk be wasted; and then put it in a close pot or glass, and with this dress any wound whatsoever, and it will heal it. Others use to take Rosemary, and dry it in the shadow, and beat it to powder, then wash the wound with Vinegar, or the Urine of a Child, and strew thereon the aforesaid powder, and it will heal an indifferent Wound.

Other Farriers take Wormwood, Marjoram, Pimpernel, Calamint, *Olibanum*, beat them all into fine powder, then take Wax and Barrows grease, and boil them on a soft fire until they be as thick as any Ointment or Salve; with this dress any wound and it will heal it. Others use to take the tops of Nettles, Butter, and Salt, and beating them well in a mortar till they come to a Salve, and it will dry and heal a Wound. Now the powder of Honey and Lime, or Turpentine simply of it self, will dry up and skin any

Wound

Wound. Take Turpentine, Honey, Hogs greaſe, Wax and Sheeps ſuet of each alike; melt them well together to a ſalve, and they will heal any wound. Now if a Horſe be gored upon a ſtake, then you ſhall caſt him, and pour into the wound Butter ſcalding hot, and ſo let him lie till it be gone down into the bottom; and do thus once a day till the wound be whole. If you deſire to keep a wound open, put into it the Powder of green Copperas, and it will do it; but if you intend to heal it ſpeedily, then wheat-flower and Honey well beaten together to a Salve will do it, dreſſing the wound once a day therewith.

CHAP. CXL.

Of an hurt with an Arrow.

IF a Horſe be ſhot or hurt with an Arrow, tent the hole only with Hogs greaſe and Turpentine molten together, and renew it once a day until the wound be whole.

CHAP. CXLI.

Of the healing of any old Sore or Ulcer.

OLd Ulcers or Sores are of three kinds; the firſt deep, hollow and crooked, and they be called Fiſtulaes; the ſecond broad and ſhallow, but moſt ſpreading and encreaſing, and they be called Cankers; and the laſt broad, deep, black about the ſides and bottom, yet not much encreaſing, although not at all healing, and they be called old Sores or Ulcers: They proceed either from ſome great Bruiſe, Wound, or Impoſtume, which is either venomed or abuſed in healing by contrary ſalves; or through the flux and abundance of humors flowing down to thoſe parts, through the negligence of a moſt unskilful Farrier. The ſigns are, the long continuance of the ſore, the thinneſs of the matter which iſſueth away, and the blackneſs of the ſore, which is ever full of inflammation.

Now for the cure, according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers, it is thus: Firſt cleanſe the ſore well with white Wine; then take Copperas and the leaves of Lilies, beat them well in a mortar with Swines greaſe till it come to a perfect Salve, and lay it upon the ſore with flax, and then cover it with a plaſter as in

case of wounds, and renew it once a-day, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Lime, and tough Horse-dung, and mix it very well together with Pepper, and the white of an Egg, and lay it to the sore, renewing it once a-day, till the Ulcer be cured.

Other Farriers strew upon the sore the powder of Galls, and that will dry it up.

Others scald it once a day with hot Oil Olive, and that will heal it.

CHAP. CXLII.

A most certain and approved Cure for the healing of any old Ulcer whatsoever.

TAke Mastick, Frankincense, Cloves, green Copperas, and Brimstone, of each a like quantity, or Myrrh, double so much as of any one of the other; beat all to powder, then burn it on a Chasing-dish and coals, but let it not flame; then, as the smoak ariseth, take a good handful of Lint, or fine Hurds, and hold it over the smoak, so that it may receive all the perfume thereof into it; then, when it is throughly well perfumed, put the Lint or Hurds into a very close box, and so keep it.

Now when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore with Urine or Vinegar, made warm, then dry it; and lastly, lay on some of this Lint or Hurds; and thus do twice a-day, and it is a speedy and most infallible cure.

CHAP. CXLIII.

Of Bruisings or Swellings.

ALL Bruisings and Swellings come unto an Horse, either by accident, or by some blow, rush, pinch, or outward venoming; or else naturally, as through the flux of Blood, or through the abundance of Wind. The signs are the sightly appearance, in what place or member soever they be: And the first, which are those which come by accident, are properly called Bruisings, or Swellings; and the other, if they do rot or corrode, and so turn to matter, are called Impostumes.

Now for the general Cure of any Bruise or Swelling, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, it is thus: Take of dry Pitch,

of

of Gum, of each an ounce; of *Galbanum*, of Lime, of each four ounces, of Bdellium two ounces, of Wax three ounces; melt and boil them very well together, then anoint the sore place therewith once a day, and it will heal it. But if the swelling proceed only from some bruise or rush, then you shall take two pints of Verjuice, one pint of Barm, and putting a little fine Hay thereto, boil them very well together, then bind the Hay to the swelling very hot, and after pour on the Liquor: Do thus three or four days together, and it will take away the swelling.

Other Farriers take the tops of Worm-wood, Pellitory of the Wall, Branck Ursine, beat them well together with Swines grease, then seeth them; then add a pretty quantity of Honey, Linseed-oil and Wheat-meal; then stir it over the Fire, till all again be sodden together; then lay it to the swelling, and renew it once a day, till the swelling be gone.

Other Farriers use first to prick the swelling with a Fleam, then take of Wine-lees a pint, as much Wheat-flower as will thicken it, and an ounce of Cummin, boil them together, and lay this somewhat warm unto it, renewing it every day once, until the swelling either depart, or else come to an head; which if it do not, then launce itand heal it according to a wound.

Other Farriers take of Rosin, of Turpentine, and of Honey, of each half a pound, dissolve them at the fire, then strain them, and add of Myrrh, Sarcocol, and the flower of Fenugreek, and of Linseed, of each an ounce, incorporate them all together, and then make it thick like a Salve with the meal of Lupins, and lay it to the swelling, and it will asswage it.

Other Farriers take of *Galbanum*, and of Cerus, of each an ounce, of Oil two ounces, and of Wax three ounces, mix them together over a soft fire; and when they are brought to a Salve, then lay it to the swelling, and it will asswage.

If you take only rotten Litter, or Hay boiled in strong Urine, and apply it daily unto any swelling, it will take it away. Now if the swelling be upon the legs, and come by any strain, then you shall take of Nerve-oil one pound, of black Soap one pound, of Boar's grease half a pound, melt and boil them all well together, then strain it, and let it cool, then when occasion serveth, anoint and chafe your Horse's legs therewith, holding an hot Iron near thereunto, to make the Ointment enter in the better; then rope up his legs, and keep them clean from dust or dirt. But if the

swelling

ſwelling be upon any part of the back or body, then take of Honey and Tallow of each alike, and boil them together, then ſpread it on a cloth and lay it on the ſwoln place, and let it there ſtick till it fall away of it ſelf. Now if the ſwelling proceed from any windy cauſe, and ſo appear only in the Horſe's belly, then you ſhall take a ſharp pointed Knife or Bodkin, and arm it ſo with ſome ſtay that it go not too deep for piercing his guts: then ſtrike him therewith through the skin into his body before the hollow place of the Haunch-bone, half a foot beneath the back-bone, and the Wind will come out thereat; then if you put a hollow quill therein, or ſome feather to keep it open a while, the wind will avoid the better, then heal it up again.

It is alſo very good to rake the Horſe, and to ride him up and down a little: but if the ſwelling be under the Horſes jaws, or about any part of his head, then you ſhall take his own dung hot as ſoon as he makes it, and with a cloth bind it faſt thereto, renewing it twice a-day till the ſwelling be gone. See further in the new additions for the Fiſtula, marked thus, ☞.

CHAP. CXLIV.

Of Impoſtumes, and firſt how to ripen them.

IMpoſtumes are a gathering and knitting together of many and moſt corrupt humors in any part or member of the body, making that part to ſwell extremely, and growing into ſuch violent inflammation, that in the end they rot and break out into foul, mattery and running ſores; they commonly proceed either from corruption of food, or corruption of Blood; they are at the firſt appearance, very hard, and very ſore: which hardneſs is the principal ſign that they will rot. And of theſe impoſtumes, ſome be hot impoſtumes, and ſome be cold; yet forſmuch as every impoſtume muſt firſt be ripened, and brought to matter before it can be healed, we will firſt ſpeak of the ripening of them. If therefore you would ripen any impoſtume, (according to the opinions of the ancient Farriers) You ſhall take of *Sanguis Draconis*, of Gum-*Arabick*, of new Wax of Maſtick, of Pitch of *Greece*, of Incenſe, and of Turpentine, of each a like quantity, and melting them together, and ſtraining them, make a plaſter thereof, and lay it to the impoſtume without renewing, and it will both ripen, break, and heal any impoſtume.

Other

Other Farriers take of ſwines greaſe, red wax, and the flower of *Euphorbium*, and mixing them on the fire well together, lay it to the Impoſthume, and it will do the like.

Other Farriers take of Honey, and of Wheat-meal, of each alike quantity, and either boil it in the Decoction of Mallows, or elſe mix it with the yolk of an Egg, and it will ripen, break, and heal; yet it muſt be renewed once a day.

Other Farriers take Barly-meal, and boil it with Wine and Pidgeons dung, and ſo lay it to the Impoſtume plaſter-wiſe, and it will ripen exceedingly.

Other Farriers take a handful or two of Sorrel, and lapping it in a Dock-Leaf, roaſt it in the hot Embers as you would a Warden, and then lay it to the Impoſtume as hot as may be well endured, renewing it once a day; and it will ripen, break, and heal it. A Plaſter of Shoomakers Wax will do the like alſo.

Other ancient Farriers take Mallow-roots, and Lily-roots, and then bruiſe them, and put thereto Hogs greaſe and Linſeed meal, and plaſter-wiſe lay it to the Impoſtume, and it will ripen it, break it, and heal it perfectly. See further in the new additions for the Fiſtula, noted thus, ☞

CHAP. CXLV.

Of old Impoſtumes.

IF the Impoſtume do proceed from any old Cauſes, as thoſe which riſe after cold taking, or when a Horſe is at graſs, in the Winter ſeaſon, then you ſhall take the herb called Balm, and ſtamp it and Hog's greaſe well together, and ſo plaſter-wiſe apply it to the ſore, and it will heal it: or elſe when the Impoſtume is ripe, open it in the loweſt part with a hot Iron, then waſh it with warm Urine; after that anoint it with Tar and Oil well mixt together; and if you make your inciſion in the manner of a half Moon, it is the better.

Other Farriers take white Mints, and ſeeth them in Wine, Oil, Ale, and Butter, and ſo lay it hot to, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take Cuckow-ſpit, and ſtamp it with old greaſe, and ſo apply it, and it will heal it.

Other Farriers take a handful of Rue, and ſtamp it well with the yolks of Eggs and Honey, and then apply it plaſter-wiſe, and it will heal any old impoſtume. ☜

CHAP.

CHAP. CXLVI.

Of hot Impostumes.

IF the Impostume proceed from any hot causes; as from the extremity of travel, parching of the Sun, or the inflammation of the blood; then, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall take Liver-wort, and stamp it, and mix it with the grounds of Ale, Hog's greale, and bruised Mallows, and then apply it to the sore, and it will ripen, break and heal it: But if you would not have the swelling to break, then take the grounds of Ale or Beer, and having boiled Mallows therein, bathe the sore place therewith, and it will drive the swelling away. Other Farriers take either Lettuce-seed, or Poppy-seed, and mix it with oil of red Roses, and lay it to the sore plaster-wise, especially at the beginning of the swelling, and it will take it clean away.

CHAP. CXLVII.

Of the Tetter.

A Tetter is a filthy kind of Ulcer, like unto a Canker, only it is somewhat more knotty, and doth not spread, but remaineth most in one place; and many times it will remain between the skin and the flesh, like a knotted Farcy, and will not brake.

The cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient and understanding Farriers, is, to make a strong Lee with old Urine, Ashes and green Copperas, and bathe the knots therewith, and it will kill and heal them. Some other Farriers take a Snake, and cut off the head and the tail, and cast them away; the rest cut into small pieces, and roast them on a spit; then take the greale that droppeth from them, and being hot, anoint the Sorrance therewith, and it will heal it in a short time; but look that you touch no part of the Horse therewith, save only the Sorrance, for it will poison and venom.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXLVIII.

Of Sinews that are cut, pricked, or bruised.

IF an Horse, by the mischance of some wound, shall have any of his sinews either cut, pricked, or sore bruised, then if there be no Convulsion of the sinews, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take Tar, and Bean-flour, and a little Oil of Roses, and mixing them together, lay it hot unto the place; and if it do not present good, take Worms and Sallet-oil fried together, or else the Ointment of Worms, which you may buy of every Apothecary, and applying either of them, they knit the sinews again, if they be not clean asunder. But if there be a Convulsion, then with a pair of Shears you must cut the sinew in pieces, and then take Rosin and Turpentine, Pitch and *Sanguis Draconis*; then melting them together, clap it somewhat hot unto the sore; then take Flax and put upon it, for that will cleanse and defend it: And than this Medicine, there is none better for any swoln Joint whatever.

Now if the joint be not much swell'd, but only that the sinews are exceeding stiff through the great bruisings, then you shall take of black Soap a pound, and seeth it in a quart of strong Ale till it wax thick like Tar, then reserve it, and when you shall see cause, use to anoint the sinews and joints therewith, and it will supple them, and stretch them forth, although they be never so much shrunk; as hath been approved.

CHAP. CXLIX.

Of fretting the Belly with the Fore-girths.

IF when you saddle and gird your Horse, the Girths be either knotty or crumpled, and therewithal drawn too strait, they will not only gall and wound the Horse under the belly very much, but they will also stop the blood which is in the principal veins, called the Flat-veins, in some sort, so they will occasion most extreme and hard swellings.

The Cure whereof is, according to the general opinion, to take of Oil de Bay, and Oil of Balm two ounces, of Pitch two ounces, of Tar two ounces, and one ounce of Rosin; mingle them well to-

gether, and then anoint the Horſes ſore bowels therewith; then take either Flocks, or chopped Flax, and clap upon it, and ſo let it abide until it fall away of it ſelf, and it will ſurely cure him.

Other Farriers uſe to take Vinegar and Soap, and beat them well together, and ſtir it with a ſtick or cloth, and then fall to rub and waſh the galled place therewith, and do thus at leaſt twice a day, and it will dry it up in two or three days at the moſt. But if the galling be about any part of the Horſe's neck, then you ſhall take the leaves of Briony (called the Hedge-vine) and ſtamp them, and mix them with Wine, and then, plaſterwiſe, lay it to the ſore, and it will heal it.

CHAP. CL.

Of Bliſters.

BLiſters are certain waterish hollow Blebs, which do ariſe betwixt the skin and the fleſh, proceeding either from ſlight burnings, ſcaldings, or chafings, and they be very full of thin matter. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the moſt general Farriers, is, Firſt, in the Sun to fret them till they bleed; then take the roots of Ivy, and ſtamping them in a Mortar, mix them with as much Tar, Brimſtone and Alum, till they come to a Salve; and then dreſs the bliſter therewith, and it will heal it.

CHAP. CLI.

To take away all manner of Bones, Knobs, or any ſuperfluous Fleſh.

WHen an Horſe hath any bone growing upon any part of his body, more than natural, or when he hath any lumps or bunches of ſuperfluous fleſh, otherwiſe than of right doth belong to his true proportion; then ſuch bones, knots, or bunches are called Excretions, proceeding from tough and flegmatick ſubſtances, ſtirred up either by moſt ſore bruiſes, imperfect healed wounds, or other naughty putrefaction of the blood, being moſt apparent to the eye, and moſt palpable to the hand.

Now for the Cure (according to the general opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) you ſhall firſt uſe corroſive Medicines, after drawing Medicines, and laſtly drying Medicines; or more particularly, thus you ſhall cure them; firſt, with an Inciſion-knife, ſcarifie the Excretions,

Excretions, then apply Sulphur and Bitumen, or Coloquintida burnt and sifted; and when it hath eaten the Excretion away, then heal it up with drying Salves, as powder of Honey and Lime, or Bole-armoniack, or such like. Other Farriers use, after they have made the Excretion to bleed well, then to take two ounces of the ashes of Vitis, and as much unslack'd Lime, mixed with six ounces of strong Lee, first strained, then sod till half be consumed, and so brought to a firm substance; then keep it in a glass, in a dry place, and apply it to the Excretion, till it have eaten it away, and then heal it up, as is before-said. Other Farriers use to take a pound of strong Lee, and Soap, and a quarter of a pound of Vitriol-Roman, one ounce of Sal-armoniack, and as much Roch Alum, and boil them together until they be very thick; and then, with that Ointment eat away the Excretion. Others use to take of *Egyptiacum* the strongest kind, and lay it on the Excretion with a Cotton three or four times, and it will take it clean away. This Medicine is most excellent for any splint; and of no small importance, if it be used against any Fistula; for it will sink it, although it were in the Crown.

CHAP. CLII.

How to eat away any superfluous and dead flesh.

IF when your Horse hath any Wound, Ulcer, or other sore, you shall perceive that there groweth therein dead flesh, which dead flesh you shall know, partly by the insensibility thereof, and partly in that it is a spungy, hollow, naughty flesh, not substantial, as the true flesh is, and either of a blackish, or an high red colour; then it shall be meet that you seek all means possible how to consume and eat away that superfluous and naughty flesh, because the sore that is pestered therewith, neither can nor will ever heal, till it be cleansed of the same: Therefore, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, the best means to eat it away, is, to boil fresh Grease and Verdigrease, of each a like quantity together, and either to tent or plaster the sore therewith, until the dead flesh be consumed.

Other Farriers take either the scrapings of Harts-horn, or Ox-horn, and mixing them with old Soap, dress the sore therewith, and it will eat away dead flesh.

Other Farriers take *Spongia Marina*, or Sea-sponge, and therewith dress the sore, and it will do the like. Other Farriers use the

powder of Risagallo, Risagre; but it is a great deal too strong a fretter. Others use Litharge, or Lime in Lee; but they are likewise very violent and strong eaters.

Others use to take either white or black Elleborus, Ink, quick Sulphur, Orpiment, Litharge, Vitriol, unslack'd Lime, Roch-Alum, Galls, Soot, or the ashes of Avellan, of each half an ounce; and they will consume dead flesh: Likewise Quick-silver extinct, and Verdigrease, of each an ounce, made into powder, will do the like: The juice of Borrage, of Scabious, of Fumitory, and of a Dock, of each half an ounce, a little old Oil and Vinegar; boil with a soft fire, put to it Tar, and it will likewise eat away any dead flesh.

There be other Farriers which take Cantharides, Ox-dung and Vinegar, and mix them well together, and lay it to the sore, and it will fetch away the dead flesh. Others use first to pounce the sore with a Razor, then anoint it with Grease, and strew upon it a pretty quantity of Orpiment. Other Farriers use, instead of Risagallo, to take the powder of Verdigrease and Orpiment, of each an ounce; of unslack'd Lime and Tartar, of each two ounces; mix them together, and therewith dress the sore, after you have washed it well with strong Vinegar; and if you please, you may add thereunto Vitriol and Alum, for they are both consumers of dead flesh. Other Farriers take the powder of Tartar, and Man's Dung, burnt with Salt, and then beaten into powder, and strewed on the sore: Or else take Salt, unslack'd Lime, and Oister-shells, and beat them in a Mortar with strong Lee, or old Urine, till it be like a paste; then bake it in an Oven, and after beat it to a powder; strew it on the sore, and it will eat away the dead flesh.

Other Farriers use first to wash the sore with Ale, wherein Nettle-seeds have been sodden, and then strew upon it the powder of Verdigrease.

Now to conclude, you must ever observe, that before you use any of these Medicines, you do shave away the hair, that it be no impediment to the Salves; also when you have dress't it once, and see that there is no Asker raised, then you shall dress it with some mollifying, or healing Salve, till the Asker come away, and then dress it with your eating Salve again; and thus do, until you behold that all the dead flesh be consumed, and that there is nothing but perfect and sound flesh, and then heal it up, as in case of Wounds. Also Precipitate, simple of it self, will eat away any dead flesh.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLIII.

For Knots or Joints, Hardneſs, Cramps, or any Inflammations.

THere do grow in joints three ſorts of ſwellings; namely, an hot ſwelling, an hard ſwelling, and a ſoft ſwelling; all which you may eaſily diſtinguiſh by your feeling: And they do proceed, either from abundance of groſs humours engendred by foul keeping, or elſe by accident, as from ſome Wound, Ruſh, or Strain. The Cure whereof, according to the opinion of moſt ancient Farriers, is, to beat the powder called Diapente, together with Oil, till it be like an Ointment, and then apply it once a day to the grief, and it will take it away; eſpecially if it be a Cramp, or an Inflammation.

Other Farriers uſe to incorporate with Oil, half an ounce of liquid Storax, two ounces of Turpentine, five of Wax, and ten of Bird-lime; and apply that to the grief, and it will eaſe it. Other Farriers take Wine, and old Oil, and Tar, mingled and boiled together, and therewith dreſs the ſore place, and it will help it.

Others of your old and later Farriers take half a pound of greaſe, three ſcruples of Muſtard, and the like of Bay-ſalt; mix theſe with Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Others uſe to take a plaſter of Figs, and the roots of Fern and Rocket, or mingle them with Greaſe and Vinegar, and apply it to the grief. Other Farriers uſe to take the *Unguentum Baſilicon*; which is made of Honey, Storax, *Galbanum*, *Bdellium*, black Pepper, Bay-berries, the marrow of a Stag, of each a like quantity; twice as much of Armoniack, and of the powder of Frankincenſe as much as of any of the other, and incorporate them with Sheeps-ſuet, and apply it to the grief, and it will help it.

Other Farriers take dry Pitch, Pitch of *Greece*, of each one part; of *Galbanum*, and of Lime, of each four parts; of *Bitumen* two parts, of Wax three parts; melt them all together, and anoint the place therewith very hot, and it will take away the grief, and peradventure alſo the eye-ſore.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLIV.

How to cure any Wound made with the shot of Gun-powder.

ACcording to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, you shall first, with a Probe, or long instrument, search whether the Bullet remain within the flesh, or no; and if you find that it doth, then, with another instrument for the purpose, you shall take it forth, if it be possible; if otherwise, let it remain; for in the end, Nature it self will wear it out of its own accord, without any grief or impediment, because Lead will not corrode nor canker: Then to kill the fire, you shall take a little Varnish, and thrust it into the wound with a feather, anointing it within even unto the bottom; then stop the mouth of the wound with a little soft Flax, dipped in Varnish also; then charge all the swollen place with this charge; Take of Bole armoniack a quartern, of Linseed beaten into powder half a pound, of Bean-flour as much, and three or four Eggs, shells and all, and of Turpentine a quartern, and a quart of Vinegar, and mingle them well together over the fire; and being somewhat warm, charge all the sore place with part thereof, and immediately clap a Cloth or piece of Leather upon it, to keep the wound from the cold Air; continuing both to anoint the hole within with Varnish, and also to charge the swelling without, the space of four or five days; then at the five days end, leave anointing of it, and teng it with a tent reaching to the bottom of the wound, and dipped in Turpentine and Hog's-grease melted together, renewing it every day once or twice, until the fire be throughly killed; which you shall perceive by the mattering of the wound, and by falling of the swelling; for as long as the fire hath the upper hand, no thick matter will issue forth, but only a thin yellowish water, neither will the swelling asswage; and then take of Turpentine, washed in nine several waters, half a pound, and put thereunto three yolks of Eggs, and a little Saffron, and tent it with this Ointment, renewing it every day once, until the wound be whole. But if the shot have gone quite through the wound, then you shall take a few Weavers Linen-thrums, made very knotty, and dipping them first in Varnish, draw them clean through the wound, turning them up and down in the wound at least twice or thrice a day, and charging the wound on either side, upon the swoln places, with the charge aforesaid, until,

until you perceive that the fire is killed; then clap on a comfortable Plaster upon one of the holes, and tent the other with a tent in the Salve, made of washed Turpentine, Eggs and Saffron, as is before said.

Other Farriers use only to kill the fire with Oil of Cream, and after to heal the wound up with Turpentine, Wax, and Hog's-grease, molten together.

Other Farriers kill the fire with Snow-water, and charge the swelled place with Cream and Barm beaten together; and then heal up the wound, by dipping the Tent in the Yolk of an Egg, Honey, Saffron, well beaten, and mixed together.

CHAP. CLV.

Of burning with Lime, or any other fiery thing.

According to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, you shall first wash the sore round about, and in every part, very clean, with warm Urine; then kill the fire, by anointing the place with Oil and Water beaten together; dressing him so every day, until the sore be all raw; and then anoint it with Hog's-grease, and strew thereupon the powder of unslack'd Lime; dressing him thus every day once, until he be whole.

Other Farriers use first to wash and cleanse the sore with Sallet-Oil only warmed, then to kill the fire with Cream and Oil beaten together; and when it is raw, then to spread upon it Cream and Soot mixed together; and lastly, to strew upon it the powder of Honey and Lime, until it be perfectly skinned.

CHAP. CLVI.

Of the Biting with a mad Dog.

If your Horse at any time be bitten with a mad Dog, the venom of whose teeth will not only drive him into an extream torment, but it will also infect and inflame his Blood in such sort, that the Horse will be endangered to die mad. The Cure thereof, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Goat's-dung, of Flesh that hath lain long in Salt, and of the herb Ebulus, generally called Dane-wort, of each half a pound, and forty Wall-

nuts;

nuts; ſtamp all theſe together, and lay part thereof to the ſore, and it will ſuck out the venom, and heal up the wound; but upon the firſt dreſſing, you ſhall give the Horſe Wine and Treacle mixed together to drink.

There be other Farriers, which firſt give the Horſe Sack and Sallet-oil to drink, then with an hot Iron cauteriſe and burn the ſore; and laſtly, heal up the wound with the Salve firſt recited.

Other Farriers firſt give the Horſe two or three ſpoonfuls of the powder of Diapente, to drink in a pint of Muskadine; then take a live Pidgeon, and cleaving her in the midſt, lay it hot to the wound, and it will draw out the venom; then heal the ſore with Turpentine and Hog's-greaſe well molten together. The leaves of Ariſtoloch bruiſed will take away any poiſon.

CHAP. CLVII.

Of Hurts done by the Tuſks of a Boar.

IF an Horſe be ſtricken with the tuſks of a Boar, you ſhall then take Copperas or Vitriol, and the powder of a Dog's head, being burned, after the tongue hath been pulled out, and caſt away, and mixing them together, apply it once a day to the Sore, and it will cure it: Yet, before you dreſs it, firſt waſh the ſore very well, either with Vinegar, or with White-wine, or Urine.

CHAP. CLVIII.

To heal the biting or ſtinging of Serpents, or any venomous Beaſt whatſoever.

IF your Horſe be either bitten or ſtung, either with a Serpent, or any other venomous Beaſt, which you ſhall eaſily know by the ſudden ſwelling either of the body or member; then you ſhall firſt chafe him up and down until he ſweat, and then let him blood in the roof of the mouth; and laſtly, take a young Cock, or a Pidgeon, and cleaving it in the midſt, clap it hot to the wound, and then give the Horſe White-wine and Salt to drink. Other Farriers take a good quantity of the herb called Sanicula, ſtamp it, and temper it together with the Milk of a Cow, till it be all of one colour, and give it the Horſe to drink, and it will heal him. Other Farriers clap to the

the ſore Hog's-dung, or Ox-dung, or Hen-bane bruiſed, or elſe the aſhes of Reeds, then give him to drink Mug-wort, or great Tanſie, and Wine, and Camomil, ſtamped together: Or elſe give him Wine and *Oleum Roſatum* mixed together.

Other Farriers make a Plaſter of Onions, Honey and Salt, ☞ ſtamped and mingled together, and lay that to the ſore place, and give the Horſe Wine and Treacle to drink, or elſe white Pepper, Rue and Thime, mixed with Wine. Other Farriers take Aphodillus, *Haſtula Regia*; ſtamp it with old Wine, and lay it to the ſore, for it is moſt ſovereign good.

CHAP. CLIX.

Of Lice and Vermin, and how to kill them.

THe Lice or Vermin which breed upon an Horſe, be like unto Geeſe-Lice, but ſomewhat bigger, and do breed moſt commonly about the Ears, Neck, Mane, Tail, and generally over the whole body; they do proceed from poverty, or feeding in Woods, where Trees are continually dropping upon them: The ſigns are, the Horſe will be always rubbing and ſcratching; and albeit he eat much meat, yet will not proſper; and with this continual rubbing, he will fret and wear away all his Mane and Tail, and you ſhall alſo perceive the Lice, when the Sun doth ſhine, running on the tops of the Hairs. The Cure, according to the opinion of the ancient Farriers, is, to take of Soap one pound, and Quick-ſilver half an ounce; mix and beat them together well, until the Quick-ſilver be killed, and then anoint the Horſe all over therewith, and it will conſume the Lice preſently.

Other Farriers take Staves-acre and Soap, and mixing them together, anoint the Horſe all over therewith. Others take unripe Mulberries, and their roots or ſtalks, and ſeeth them in ſtrong Urine, and then waſh the Horſe therewith; after that, anoint all his body over with *Sanguis Draconis*, the juice of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Oil, and Swine's Greaſe, very well mixed together.

Others uſe to chafe all the body over with Quick-ſilver and ſoft ☞ Greaſe, mixed together, till the Quick-ſilver be killed; and in two or three dreſſings the Lice will be conſumed.

CHAP. CLX.

How to ſave Horſes from the ſtinging of Flies in Summer.

IF you will ſave your Horſes in the Summer-time from the ſtinging or biting of Flies, which is very troubleſome unto them, then you ſhall anoint all the Horſe's body over either with Oil and Bay-berries mingled together, or elſe bind unto the Head-ſtall of his Collar a Spunge dipped in ſtrong Vinegar. Some uſe to ſprinkle the Stable with Water wherein Herb of Graſs hath been laid to ſteep; or elſe to perfume the Stable with the ſmoak of Ivy or Calamint, or with Gith burnt in a pan of Coals.

☞ But the ſureſt way of all, both in the Stable, and abroad, is, to make two good wiſps of Rue, and therewithal to rub the Horſe's body all over, and no Fly will light upon him, or touch him; as hath been often approved.

CHAP. CLXI.

Of Bones being broken, or out of joint.

☞ OUr common Engliſh Farriers are very far to ſeek in this Cure, becauſe they do neither perfectly acquaint themſelves with the members of an Horſe, nor have ſo much invention, in this extremity, to make an Horſe, being an unreaſonable Creature, to ſuffer like a reaſonable perſon; and alſo that in the old Traditions in Horſe-leach-craft affirm, that all Fractures above the Knee are incurable; and ſo deſpairing, they ceaſe to make practice. But they are much deceived; for neither the Fracture above the Knee, nor the Fracture below the Knee, is more incurable in an Horſe, than in Man, if the Farrier can tell how to keep the Horſe from ſtrugling, or tormenting the member grieved.

If therefore your Horſe have any bone broken, which is moſt eaſie to be diſcerned, by the deprivation of the uſe of that member, and as eaſie to be felt, by the ſeparation of the bones, and one part being higher than the other, beſides the roughneſs and inequality of the place grieved; you ſhall then, for the Cure thereof, firſt take a ſtrong double Canvas, which ſhall be as broad as from the Horſe's fore-ſhoulder, to the flank; and ſhall have another double Canvas, which

which shall come from between the Horse's fore-booths, up to the top of the withers; where meeting with the rest of the Canvas, and having exceeding strong loops, to which strong ropes must be fastned, you shall by main force sling up the Horse from the ground, so as his feet may no more but touch the ground: And if it be a fore-leg that is broken, then you shall raise him a little higher before than behind; if an hinder-leg, then a little higher behind than before, so that the Horse may rest most upon the members most sound. When your Horse is thus slung, then you shall put the bones into the right place; which done, wrap it close about with unwashed Wool newly pulled from the Sheep's back, binding it fast to the leg with a smooth Linen Roller, soaked before in Oil and Vinegar mingled together, and look that your Roller lie as smooth and plain as may be; and upon that again lay more Wool dipped in Oil and Vinegar, and then splint it with three broad, smooth and strong Splints, binding them fast at both ends with a Thong, and in any case the Horse's legs be kept out very streight, the space of forty days, and let not the bones be loosned above thrice in twenty days, unless it shrink, and so require to be new dresst and bound again; but fail not every day once to pour on the sore place, through the splints, Oil and Vinegar mingled together: And at the forty days end, if you perceive that the broken place be sowdred together again with some hard knob or gristle, then loose the Bonds, and ease the Canvas, so as the Horse may tread more firmly upon his fore-foot; which when he doth, you shall loosen him altogether, and let him go up and down fair and gently, using from henceforth to anoint the sore place either with soft Grease, or else with one of these Plasters, or Ointments; Take of *Spuma argenti*, of Vinegar, of each one pound, of Sallet-oil half a pound, of Armoniack, and of Turpentine, of each three ounces; of Wax, and of Rosin, of each two ounces; of Bitumen, of Pitch, and of Verdigrease, of each half a pound; boil the Vinegar, Oil and *Spuma argenti* together, until it wax thick, then put thereunto the Pitch; which being molten, take the pot from the fire, and put in the Bitumen, without stirring at all; and that being also molten, put in then all the rest; set the pot again to the fire, and let them boil all together, until they be all united in one; that done, strain it, and make it in Plaster-form, and use it as occasion shall serve.

Other ancient and well experienced Farriers take of liquid Pitch one pound, of Wax two ounces, of the pureſt and fineſt part of Frankincenſe one ounce, of *Ammoniacum* four ounces, of dry Roſin, and of *Galbanum*, of each one ounce, of Vinegar two pints; boil firſt the Vinegar and Pitch together, then put in the *Ammoniacum*, diſſolved firſt in Vinegar; and after that, the aforeſaid Drugs; and after they have boiled all together, and be united in one, ſtrain it, and make it into a Plaſter, and uſe it according to occaſion.

Other Farriers take of old Sallet-oil a quart, and put thereunto of Hog's Greaſe, of *Spuma Nitri*, of each one pound, and let them boil together until it begin to blub above; then take it from the fire: And when you uſe any of the Ointment, let it be very hot and well chafed in, and then one of the two former plaſters folded above it; and it is moſt ſovereign and comfortable for any bone that is broken.

CHAP. CLXII.

Of Bones out of joint.

IF an Horſe have any of his Bones out of the joint, as either his Knee, his Shoulder, his Paſtern, or ſuch like; which you ſhall perceive both by the uncomlineſs of the joint, and alſo feel by the hollowneſs of the member that is diſplaced; then your readieſt Cure is, to caſt the Horſe on his back, and putting four ſtrong Paſterns on his feet, draw him up ſo as his back may no more but touch the ground, then draw the grieved leg higher than the reſt, till the poiſe and weight of his body have made the joint to ſhoot into its right place again; which you ſhall know when it doth, by a ſudden and great crack which the joint will give when it falleth into the true place; then with all gentleneſs looſe the Horſe, and let him riſe; and then anoint the grieved place, either with the laſt Ointment rehearſed in the laſt Chapter, or elſe with the Oil of Mandrake, or the Oil of Swallows; both which are of moſt ſovereign virtue.

CHAP. CLXIII.

To dry up Humours, or to bind; being Aſtrictive, or binding Charges.

TAke of *Unguentum Triphармacum*, made of Litharge, Vinegar; take old Oil, boiled till they be thick; only take as much Oil as of both the others; and it will ſtop and ſtay the flux of any humors.

If you take ſtrong Lee, it is a great drier and binder of humors.

Diſſolve in Vinegar, Roſin, Aſphalto and Myrrh, of each an ounce, of red Wax half an ounce, and of Armoniack half an ounce, mingle them well together in the boiling; for this Salve drieth wonderfully, bindeth all looſe members, and comforteth all parts that are weakned.

Take of Lard two pound, and when it is ſodden, ſtrain it with three ounces of Ceruſs, and as much Alum melted; and it both drieth and bindeth exceedingly.

Dry Figs, beaten with Alum, Muſtard and Vinegar, do dry abundantly.

Oil and ſoft Greaſe beaten to a Salve, with Vitriol, Galls and Alum, and the powder of Pomegranates, Salt and Vinegar, both dry and bind ſufficiently.

Soap and unſlack'd Lime mixed together, drieth perfectly after any Inciſion.

Verdigreaſe, Orpiment, Sal armoniack, and the powder of Coloquintida, of each a-like, made into a Plaſter, with Milk or Wax, drieth and bindeth.

The Greaſe of Snakes roaſted, the head and tail being cut away, is a great drier.

To conclude, The Bark of a Willow-tree burnt to aſhes, is as a great drier, and binder, as any Simple whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXIV.

A Plaſter to dry up ſuperfluous Moiſture, and to bind Parts looſned.

TAke of Bitumen one pound, of the pureſt part of Frankincenſe three ounces, of *Bdellium Arabicum* one ounce. of Deer's Suet one pound, of *Populeum* one ounce, of *Galbanum* one ounce, of the drops of Storax one ounce, of common Wax one pound, of Reſin

Cabial

Cabial half a pound, *Viscus Italicus* one ounce and an half, of Apoxima one ounce, of the juice of Hyssop one ounce, of the drops of Armoniack one ounce, of Pitch half a pound; let all these be well and perfectly molten, dissolved and incorporated together according to Art, and then make a Plaster thereof.

CHAP. CLXV.

Another Plaster to dry up any Swelling, Wind-gall, Splent, or Bladders, in or about the Joints.

TAke of Virgin's Wax half a pound, of Rosin one pound and a quarter, of *Galbanum* one ounce and an half, of Bitumen half a pound, of Myrrh Secundary one pound, of Armoniack three ounces, of Costus three ounces; boil all these things together in an earthen pot, saving the Armoniack and Costus; which being first ground like fine Flour, must be added unto the other things, after that they have been boiled and cooled, and then boiled all together again, and well stirred, so as they may be incorporated together, and made all one substance, and then applying as occasion shall be administred.

CHAP. CLXVI.

Receits to dissolve Humours.

TAke of Wormwood, Sage, Rosemary, and the bark of an Elm, or of a Pine, of each a good quantity, and boil them in Oil, with a good quantity of Linseed, and make a Bath thereof; bathe the grieved part, and it will dissolve any humours that are gathered or bound together.

A pound of Figs, stamped with Salt, till they come to a perfect Salve, dissolveth all manner of humours, by opening the pores, and giving a large passage.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXVII.

How to mollifie any hardneſs.

TAke of Linſeed punn'd, and of Fenugreek, of each four ounces; of Pitch and Roſin, of each three ounces; of the flowers of Roſes two ounces. Pitch of *Greece* three ounces; boil them together, then add three ounces of Turpentine; ſix ounces of Honey, and a little Oil; and then applying the Salve, it will mollifie and ſoften any hard ſubſtance.

Malvaviſco well ſod, and ſtamped with *Oleum Roſatum*, being laid hot to any hardneſs will make it ſoft.

Boil Branck-Urſine and Mallows together, and beat them with Oil and Lard, and they will ſoften much.

Malvaviſco, Cole-worts, Branck-Urſine, Herb of the Wall, and old Greaſe pounded, doth mollifie very much.

The Oil of Cypreſs both mollifieth and healeth.

Wheat-meal, Honey, Pellitory, Branck-urſine and the leaves of Wood-wood, being beaten with Swine's Greaſe, and laid hot unto any hard tumour, doth ſuddenly mollifie it, and is paſſing good for any ſtripe alſo.

Greaſe, Muſtard-ſeed and Cummin boiled together, doth mollifie very much.

Take of Soap half an ounce, of unſlack'd Lime an ounce, and mix them well with ſtrong Lee, and it will mollifie even the hardeſt hoofs.

The juice of the leaves and roots of Elder, or a Plaſter made thereof, doth dry up and mollifie humours marvellouſly.

So doth the juice of the tops of Cypreſs, and dry Figs, macerated in Vinegar, and ſtrained, of each three ounces: And if you add to it of Salt-Niter one ounce, of Armoniack half an ounce, of Aloes and Opoponax a little, and make it into an Ointment, it will mollifie any hardneſs very ſufficiently.

Mallows, Nettles, Mercorella, and the roots of Cucumbers, and old Turpentine, being beaten together with old Greaſe, will mollifie any hardneſs ſpeedily.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXVIII.

To harden any Softneſs.

THe Sole of any old Shooe burnt, and ſodden in Vinegar, will harden Hoofs; and ſo will alſo the powder of Galls, boiled with Bran and Salt, in ſtrong Vinegar.

The powder of Honey and Lime, or the powder of Oiſter-ſhells, or the powder of a burnt Felt, or thick Cream and Soot mixed together, will harden any ſore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXIX.

To conglutinate.

IRis *Illyrica* beaten and ſifted, mingled with Pepper, Honey, Currants, and given the Horſe to drink with Wine and Oil, helpeth and conglutinateth any inward Rupture or Burſtneſs whatſoever.

Dragant, Saffron, the fruit of the Pine, with the yolks of Eggs, given likewiſe to drink with Wine and Oil, doth alſo conglutinate any inward member or vein broken.

Incenſe, Maſtick, and cut, doth the like alſo. Poligano ſod in Wine, and given to drink, is good alſo.

The roots and ſeed of Aſparagus, ſod in Water, and given to the Horſe; then after, for three days, give him Butter and Opoponax, with Honey and Myrrh; and it will conglutinate any inward Ulcer or Rupture whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXX.

To mundifie and cleanſe any Sore.

TAke Oil of Olives, Swine's Greaſe clarified, the Greaſe of a young Fox, Turpentine, Alum, and white Wax; ſeeth them all together, till they be moſt throughly incorporated together; and with this Ointment dreſs any foul ſore whatſoever, and it will mundifie and cleanſe it moſt ſufficiently.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXI.

Of repercuſſive Medicines, or ſuch as drive back Humours.

REpercuſſive medicines, or ſuch as drive evil humours back, are commonly called amongſt Farriers, Plaſters, or Salvers defenſative, and are to be uſed about every great Wound or Ulcer, leſt the flux of humours flowing to the weak part, both confound the medicines, and breed more dangerous Exulcerations. Now of theſe Repercuſſive medicines, theſe are the beſt; either Vinegar, Salt and Bole-Armoniack, beaten together, and ſpread round about the ſore; or elſe White Lead and Sallet-oil, beaten alſo together; or Red Lead and Sallet-oil; or elſe *Unguentum Album Camphoratum*, and ſuch like.

CHAP. CLXXII.

Of burning Compoſitions.

BUrning Compoſitions are for the moſt part Corroſives, of which we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more at large in a Chapter following; yet foraſmuch as ſome are of better temper than others, you ſhall here underſtand, that of all burning compoſitions, the gentleſt is *Unguentum Apoſtolorum*; next to it, is Verdigreaſe and Hog's greaſe beaten together; next to it, is Precipitate and Turpentine mixed together; next to it, is Arſnick, allayed with any Oil, or healing Salve; next to it, is Mercury ſublimate, likewiſe allayed with ſome cooling Salve; and the worſt is Lime and Soap, or Lime and ſtrong Lee beaten together, for they will corrode and mortifie the ſoundeſt part or member whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXXIII.

For all manner of Hurts about an Horſe whatſoever.

TAke an ounce of Oil, two ounces of Turpentine, and a little Wax, mingle them at the fire: This will heal any Wound or Gall, and keep it clean from filth, water and dirt.

Take Vinegar and Honey, and boil it together; when it is cold,

add the powder of Verdigreaſe, Copperas and Braſs burnt, mingle them well together: This will take away all ill and dead fleſh, and cleanſe and heal any old Ulcer.

Take Wax, Pitch, Swine's Greaſe and Turpentine, and mix them well together: This will heal any bone, ſpell, or any other ſtub.

Take Houſe-ſnails, and ſeeth them in Butter, and they will draw out any Thorn or Nail, being often renewed. So will alſo the roots of Reeds, being bruiſed and applied.

The roots of an Elder, beaten to powder, and boiled with Honey, is good for any old Sore whatſoever.

Take Salt, Butter and Honey, or white Wax, Turpentine and Oil-*Roſarum*, of each a like quantity, with twice as much Bean-flour as of any of the other; mix it very well together, and make it into a Salve, and it will heal any Sore, either old or new, whatſoever.

Take Wax, Turpentine and Deer's Suet, or the Marrow of a Stag, and mix them well together, and it will heal any Wound, or any Impoſtume whatſoever: So will alſo Wax, Oil, Maſtick, Frankincenſe and Sheep's Suet, well molten together; or the powder of Maſtick, Frankincenſe and Aloes, mixed and molten well together.

The Whites of Eggs, beaten with *Oleum Roſarum* and Salt, and ſo laid upon Flax-hurds, healeth any Wound that is not in any principal part, where the Muſcles are.

If you will puriſie, cleanſe and heal any old Sore, take three pints of well clarified Honey, and boil it with one pint of Vinegar, and one of Verdigreaſe, and ſo apply it: Or elſe, take of Maſtick and Verdigreaſe, of each half an ounce; of Frankincenſe one ounce, of new Wax four ounces, of Turpentine ſix ounces, and of Hog's Greaſe two pound; boil and incorporate all theſe together, and then apply it to the ſore place, and it will both cleanſe, puriſie and heal.

Chick-weed, Groundſel, Graiſe and ſtall Urine, very well boiled together, will heal any galling or hurts by Halter, or other accident, or any ſtrain, or ſtripe, or ſwelling, which cometh by any ſuch like miſchance.

Take of new Milk three quarts, a good handful of Plantain; let it boil till a pint be conſumed; then add three ounces of Alum made into powder, and one ounce and an half of white Sugar-candy made likewiſe into powder; then let it boil a little, till it have an hard curd, then ſtrain it; with this warm, bathe any old Ulcer, then dry it, and lay on ſome *Unguentum Baſilicon*. This cleanſeth, dri-

b 3 eth,

eth, ſtrengthneth and killeth the Itch, and healeth the fouleſt Ulcer, either in Man or Beaſt, that may be. Alſo, if you take of Milk a quart, of Alum in powder two ounces, of Vinegar a ſpoonful; when the Milk doth ſeeth, put in the Alum and Vinegar, then take off the Curd, and uſe the reſt, and it will likewiſe dry up and heal any foul old Sore whatſoever.

CHAP. CLXXIV.

How to make the Powder of Honey and Lime.

TAke ſuch a quantity of unſlack'd Lime as you ſhall think fit, beat it into very fine powder; then take ſo much Honey as ſhall ſuffice to mingle it together, and make it into a very ſtiff paſte, in the form of a thick Cake, or Loaf; then put the ſame Cake or Loaf into an hot Oven, or a burning fire, till it be baked, or burnt glowing red; then take it forth, and when it is cold, beat it into very fine powder, and then uſe it as occaſion ſhall ſerve. It drieth, healeth and skinneth any Sore whatſoever very marvelouſly.

CHAP. CLXXV.

The Order of taking up of Veins, and wherefore it is good.

FIrſt, before we ſpeak of the order of taking up of Veins, you ſhall underſtand, that all Veins, except the Neck-veins, the Eye-veins, the Breaſt-veins, Palate-veins, and the Spur-veins, are to be taken up, and not ſtricken with the Fleam; partly becauſe they are ſo little and thin, that if you ſtrike them, you ſhall either endanger the ſtriking thorough them; or partly becauſe they are ſo near adjoining to Arteries and Sinews, that if, in ſtriking, you ſhould hit and prick either Artery or Sinew, it were a preſent laming of the Horſe, as I have oftentimes ſeen and noted in the practice of many ignorant Smiths. Now touching the order of taking up of a Vein, it is thus.

Firſt, You ſhall caſt your Horſe either upon ſome ſoft ground, graſs, ſome dung-hill that is not very moiſt, or in ſome lightſome houſe, upon good ſtore of ſweet ſtraw; then, when the Horſe is thus caſt, you ſhall look for the Vein which you intend to take up; and if it be either ſo ſmall, or lie ſo deep, that you can hardly perceive it, then you ſhall, with warm Water, rub, chaſe and bathe

all that part where the vein lieth; then take a narrow silk garther, and an handful or two above the vein (if it be of any of the Horse's legs) garther the member very streight: But if it be a vein to be taken upon the body or breast, then with a good surfingle, either close behind the hinder point of the shoulder, or within an handful of the place where you mean to take up the vein, gird him very streight, and presently you shall see the vein to arise; then mark that part of the skin which covereth the vein, and with your finger and your thumb, pull it somewhat aside from the vein, and then, with a very fine Incision-knife, slit the skin clean through, without touching the vein, and in any wise cut no deeper than through the skin, and that long-wise too, in such sort as the vein goeth, yet not above an inch at the most in length; that done, remove your finger and your thumb, and the skin will return again into its place, right over the vein, as it was before, insomuch that but opening the orifice or slit, you shall see the vein lie blew and bare before your eyes; then take a fine smooth Cronet, made either of the Browantler of a Stag, or of an old Buck, and thrust it underneath the vein, and lift it up a pretty distance (that is to say, half the thickness of the Cronet) above the skin; that done, you shall then loose either the Garther or Surfingle, for they are but only helps for you to find out the vein; and when the vein doth appear, have a special care that you touch not the sinews.

Now when you have thus taken your vein upon your Cronet, you shall then either put a red silk thread, dipp'd in Oil of Butter, or else a small Shoe-maker's thread underneath the vein also, somewhat higher than the Cronet, which silk or thread must serve to knit the vein when time requires; then the Cronet standing still as before, with your Knife slit the top of the vein long-wise, the length of a Barley-corn, that it may bleed; then stopping the nether-part of your vein with the silk, or the thread, suffer it to bleed from above; then with your silk or thread removed above, knit it fast with a sure knot above the slit, suffering it only to bleed from beneath; and having bled there also sufficiently, then knit up the vein beneath the slit with a sure knot, then fill the hole of the vein with Salt, and heal up the wound of the skin with Turpentine and Hog's grease molten together, or else with a little fresh Butter, laid on with a little Flax, or soft Tow, is sufficient.

Now the virtue which redounds from this taking up of veins; first, it is very necessary, and doth ease all griefs, strains and stiffness

neſs of the limbs; for the taking up of the plat-veins eaſeth all pains in the breaſt, and griefs in the cheſt: The taking up of the fore-thigh-veins eaſeth Farcies, and ſwellings of the legs: The taking up of the ſhackle-veins before, helpeth Gourding, Quitterbones, and the ſwelling of the joints, ſcabs and ſcratches: The taking up of the hinder hough-veins, helpeth Spavens of both kinds; moſt eſpecially, any Farcy in thoſe parts; and generally, all Swellings, or Impoſtumes: The taking up of the paſtern-veins behind, helpeth ſwelling about the Cronet, or nether joints, Pains, Mules, and all manner of Kibed Heels; beſides ſundry other ſuch like diſeaſes.

CHAP. CLXXVI.

Of Cauterizing, or giving the Fire, the Kinds and Uſes.

THe giving of Fire, which, among the beſt Farriers, is called Cauterizing; and amongſt the ſimpler, Burning, Searing, or Bliſtering; is (according to the general opinion of all the moſt ancient Farriers) the chiefeſt Remedy, and, as it were, the laſt refuge of all diſeaſes incident to any Horſe's body, whether they be natural or accidental; for the violence of fire ſeparating and digeſting all manner of humours into a thin air, and looſe body, cleanſeth and avoideth thoſe groſſneſſes which are the material cauſes of Putrefaction and Ulceration. Now of Cauterization there be two kinds; the one of them actual, which is that which is done by the hand, and with the Inſtrument; that is to ſay, of the hot Iron, of what faſhion ſoever; the other potential, which is done by the applying of a Medicine, whoſe nature is either Corroſive, Putrefactive, or Cauſtick.

Now the firſt of theſe, which is the Cauterize actual, is principally to be uſed when there is any Apoſtumation in any ſinew, part, or member, or amongſt any of the moſt principal veins; alſo when you ſhall diſmember or cut away any joint, or make any inciſion, where there is fear of any Flux of Blood, or where you ſhall find either the skin or muſcles ſhrunk or ſtraitned; and in many ſuch like caſes.

The Cauterizing potential is to be uſed in old cankered Ulcers, Wens, or any ſpungy excretions, either of fleſh or bone whatſoever; of whoſe natures and properties you ſhall read more hereafter, in a following Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXVII.

Of the Cauterize actual, and the form of Instruments.

AN actual Cautery, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, being moderately used, is a notable remedy to stop all corruption in members, to keep perfect the complexion of the same, and also stanch the blood; only you must have a careful regard that in the handling of your Iron, you touch neither Sinews, Tendons, Cords, nor Ligaments, lest you do utterly disable the member, or breed Cramps or Convulsions; except it be when you dismember or cut away any joint; as when you do make Curtals, geld Horses, or such like; and then your Cautery is to be used only to sear the Veins, Sinews, and Ligaments, till such time that you are perfectly assured that all flux of blood is stopped whatsoever.

Now again, the actual Cautery bindeth together parts loosened, it doth attenuate things blown and puffed up, it drieth up superfluous moisture, it both looseneth, disperseth and divideth evil matter gathered into knots, it asswageth old griefs, it rectifieth those parts of the body that are corrupted by any manner of way, reducing them to their first perfect estate, and suffereth no abundance of evil humours to grow or increase; for the skin being separated and opened with the hot Iron, all putrefaction whatsoever, through the virtue of the fire, is first digested and ripened, and then so dissolved, that the matter doth issue out abundantly at the holes, whereby the grieved or sickned member is now healed, and eased of all pain and grief; yea, and insomuch that the holes being once closed, and close shut up, the place is stronger, and better knit together, and covered with a tougher and harder skin than ever it was before: Only the greatest blemish that can any way be found in Cautery is, that it commonly leaveth a great scar, which is many times an eye-sore more than is tolerable; and therefore the use of Cauterizing is only to be preferred, but in desperate cases of great extremity; for, albeit it works foul, yet I am perswaded it is most certain, and it works most sure.

Now as touching the Instruments wherewith you must canterize, their substance and proportion, you shall understand, that the most curious Farriers do prefer either Gold or Silver to be the best metal to make them of, in that few or no evil accidents do follow where they burn: But the wisest, best and most skilful Farriers take

Copper

Copper to be ſufficient enough, and a metal without any lawful exception; yet where Copper Inſtruments cannot be had, there you may, with commendations enough, uſe ſuch inſtruments as are made of Iron, and find your work nothing at all hindred.

Now for the faſhion or proportion of your inſtruments or Irons, they are only to be referred to the Sore, or place grieved, wherewith you are to meddle; according to the diverſity whereof, your inſtruments are to be made of divers faſhions: As, ſome are to be made Knife-wiſe, either with thin edges, or broad edges; and they be called Drawing knives, or Searching-knives, becauſe they are principally employed in the drawing of ſtreight lines, ſhallow or deep, and ſometimes in circular, or divers ſquares. Some are made like ſtreight, and ſome like crooked Bodkins; and they are employed either in fleſhy Excretions, to cauſe Exulcerations; or elſe Impoſtumes, to open ſmall paſſages for the Matter. Some are made like Hooks, or Sickles; and they are to be uſed, where the Wound is crooked, for the burning out of dead fleſh, or ſuch like hidden evils, which cannot be reached by any ſtreight Inſtruments. Others are made either with great Buttons, or little Buttons at the end; and they are uſed to open Impoſtumes, or elſe to burn into the ſound fleſh, where you intend to make any new Sore or Iſſue, for the drawing, or keeping back of other evil humours. And in making of theſe Irons, the Farriers own Judgment is to be of great value, becauſe he muſt either increaſe or diminiſh them, according to the manner of the place grieved; and be ſure that he ever make them fit for his right purpoſe.

Now for the uſe of theſe Inſtruments, there are two principal things to be regarded, firſt, the heating of the Iron; and next, the true temper, or bearing of the Farrier's hand.

Touching the heating of the Iron, you ſhall underſtand, that the back of the Iron muſt never be ſo hot as the edge; that is to ſay, you muſt never make the back of the Iron red hot, for fear that thereby it yield too much heat, and conſequently breed Inflammation: Therefore, whenſoever you ſee the back of your Iron as hot as the edge, you ſhall a little cool it with Water.

Now for the temper of the bearing of your hand, you ſhall underſtand, that the more evenly and light it is done, ſo much the better it is done: And herein is to be conſidered the fineneſs or thickneſs of the Horſe's skin, which you ſhall know moſt commonly by his hair; for if it be ſhort and fine, then the skin is thin; if it be long and rough, then is his skin thick and boiſterous. Now

Now the skin that is fine muſt be cauterized or ſeared with a very light hand, in as much as the skin is ſo ſoon pierced through; and the thick skin with a heavy hand; and both of them with ſuch a tempered hand, that the skin muſt no more but look yellow; wherein you ſhall ever find, that the fine skin will ſooner look yellow, than the thick skin; the main reaſon being, becauſe the thickneſs and roughneſs of the hair of the thick skin doth cool and choak the heat of the Iron; inſomuch that if it be not laid to with a more heavy hand, and the inſtrument ſo much the more and the oftner heated, it cannot work that effect which in Art it ſhould do.

Now you ſhall alſo obſerve, that in drawing of any Line, or other Cauterize whatſoever, that you ever draw with the hair, and never againſt the hair, whether the Lines be ſhort, long, deep, ſhallow, ſtreight, crooked, or over-thwart, according as the griefdothrequire.

Now, to conclude, you are to obſerve, in Cauterizing, theſe few precepts: Firſt, that you do not give fire to any ſinewy place, except there be ſome apparent ſwelling, or elſe impoſtumation. Secondly, that you give not fire to any bone that is broken, or out of joint, for fear of breeding a general weakneſs in the whole member. Thirdly, never to give the fire ſo deep, or ſuffer your hand to be ſo heavy, that you may miſ-ſhape or deform the Horſe, either by unneceſſary figures, or uncomely skars. Fourthly, not to be too raſh or haſty in giving fire, as if every Cure was to be wrought by that practice only (as I know ſome very well reputed Farriers hold opinion) but only to attempt all others good means before; and when all hope elſe is deſperate, then to make the fire your laſt refuge, as an extremity that muſt prevail, when all other practices do periſh.

Laſtly, I would not have you, like the fooliſh Farriers, which know nothing, utterly to contemn and neglect it, as if it were uſeleſs; but with all moderation, and judicious diſcretion, to apply it in fit time and place. So the poor Horſe may gain eaſe, your ſelf good reputation, and the owner profit; which is moſt certain, as long as you are governed by wiſdom.

CHAP. CLXXVIII.

Of Cauterize by Medicine, which is Cauterize-potential.

THe potential Cauterize, or ſearing of the fleſh by medicine, is (as I ſaid before) when the medicines are either corroſive, putrefactive,

Putrefactive, or Caustick, Corrosive, as when they do corrode, rot, gnaw, and fret the flesh. Putrefactive, when they do corrupt the complexion of the member, and do induce a main Scar like dead flesh, causing infinite pain, in such sort, that they are often accompanied with Fevers and Mortality, and therefore are not to be administred, but to strong bodies, and in very strong diseases; and Caustick, which is as much to say as burning, when the operation is so strong, that it inclineth, and cometh neareſt to the nature of fire, and so burneth and consumeth whatsoever it toucheth.

Now these potential Cauterizes do exceed and excel one another by certain degrees, as thus: The Corrosives are weaker than the Putrefactives, and the Putrefactives are weaker than the Caustick; the Corrosives work upon the upper part in the soft flesh, the Putrefactives in the depth of the hard flesh, and the Caustick have power to break skin sound or unsound, both in hard and soft flesh, and that very deeply also.

Now of Corrosives some be simple, and some be compound: The simple Corrosives are Roch Allum, burnt, or unburnt, the Spunge of the Sea somewhat burnt, Lime, red Coral, and the powder of Mercury, the shavings of an Ox or Hart's horn, Precipitate, Verdigrease, and such like. The compound Corrosives are, black Sope and Lime, *Unguentum Apostolorum*, and *Unguentum Egyptiacum*, and *Unguentum Caracosum*, and many such like: And these are to be applied unto Sores, Ulcers, or Excretions, after they are Corroded.

The Putrefactives are Arsnick, either white or yellow, Realgar, or any Medicine compounded with any of them; besides, Sandaracha, Chrysocolla, and *Aconitum*.

Now if you would have your Putrefactive Medicines to be caustive, that is, breeding a great Scar, and hot in the fourth degree: Then they are unslack'd Lime, and the burned dregs of wine; and these are to be used to Carbuncles, Cankers and Amburies.

The Caustick Medicines are those which are made of strong Lye, called *Capitellum*, or Magistra, of Vitriol Roman, Sal niter, *Aqua fortis*, *Apium*, Cantharides, Ciclamine, Onions, strong Garlick, *Melanacardium*, the stones or grains of Briony, and many such like.

Now in conclusion, I would wish every diligent Farrier, seldom or never touse either Arsnick, Realgar, or Mercury sublimate, simply of themselves, but rather to allay them (if the substance whereon they are to work be very great) with *Unguentum Apostolorum*; but if it be very little, then with Hog's grease, Turpentine, or such like. And

thus much for this potential Cauterizing, and the proper uses.

CHAP. CLXXIX.

Of the rowelling of Horses, and the use thereof.

THe rowelling of Horses, is, amongst our ignorant and simple Smiths, the most ordinary and general Practice of all other whatsoever, insomuch that not any Disease can almost be found about a Horse, either how slight or great soever it be, but presently without any reason or sense therefore, they will rowel him for the same; whereby they not only put the Horse to a needless torment, but also bring down (now and then) such a flux of naughty humours, that they lame the Horse, which otherwise would be perfectly sound. But it is not my Theam to dispute of those ignorances; only this I must say of Rowelling, it is a practice as necessary and commendable for the good estate of a Horse's Limbs, and Body, as any medicine whatsoever, so it be applied in his due time, and in his due place: Otherwise on the contrary part, it is contrary to all goodness.

The helps which are got by Rowelling, are these; it separateth and dissolveth all evil Humours, which either through natural or unnatural corruptions are gathered and knit together in any one place, hindring the office of any member, or deforming the body by any superfluity or evil substance; it looseneth those parts which are bound, and bindeth those parts that are weakned; it giveth strength unto sick joints, and comforteth whatsoever is oppressed with any cold flegm, or hot cholerick substance: The general use of Rowelling, is either for inward strains, especially about the shoulders or hips, or else for great hard swellings, which will not be mollified or corroded by any outward medicine, which is either Plaster or Unguent, for you shall understand, that when a Horse receiveth any strain or bruise, either in the upper joints of his shoulder, or his hips, which joints do not stand one upon another, as the lower joints do, but they go one into another, as the one end of the Marrow-bone into the pot of the Spade-bone, and the other end into the pot of the Elbow, which is a double bone: Now as I say, when a bruise is received in these parts, if by present application of hot and comfortable medicines, the grief be not taken away, then eft-soons there gathers between the pot and the bone, a certain bruised jelly, which continually offending

fending the tender Griſtle which covers the end of every bone, makes the Horſes to halt vehemently, and then is this corrupt matter not to be taken away by any outward medicine, but by Rowelling only; and as I ſpake of the ſhoulder, ſo I ſpeak of the hips, alſo, where the upper thigh-bone, goeth into the pot of the cannel-bone, and there breeds the like infirmity. Now for the manner of Rowelling it is in this ſort. Firſt, when you have found out the certain place of the Horſe's grief, as whether it be on the fore-pitch of the ſhoulder, on the hinder Elbow, or on the Hip, then you ſhall (having caſt the Horſe upon ſome Dung-hill, or ſoft ground) make a little ſlit more than a good handful below the place of his grief through the skin, and no more, ſo big as you may well thruſt in a Swan's quill into the ſame: Then with your Crooſet raiſe the skin a little from the fleſh, and then put in your quill, and blow all the skin from the fleſh upward, even to the top, and all over the ſhoulder: Then ſtopping the hole with your finger and your thumb, take a ſmall Hazel-ſtick, and all to beat the blown place all over; and then with your hand ſpread the Wind into every part, and after let it go: Then take a Tampin of Horſe-hair twound together, or which is better, of red Sarſenet, half the bigneſs of a man's little finger, and about a foot or ſixteen inches in length, putting it into your Rowelling needle, which would be at the leaſt ſeven or eight inches long, thruſt it in at the firſt hole, and ſo putting it upward, draw it out again at leaſt ſix inches above; and then, if you pleaſe, you may put in another above that: And then tye the two ends of the tampins or rowels together, and move and draw them to and fro in the skin, in any wiſe not forgetting, both before you put them in, and every day after they are in, to anoint them well with Butter, Hog's greaſe, or Oil de Bay.

Now there be other Farriers, which in that they are opiniated, that theſe long rowels, or tampins of hair or ſilk, do make both a double ſore, and a great ſcar, therefore they make their rowels of round pieces of ſtiff Leather, ſuch as is the upper part of an old ſhooe, with a round hole in the middeſt, according to this form: And then doubling it when they put it in, as ſoon as it is within, to ſpread it, and lay it flat between the fleſh and the skin, and ſo as the whole of the Rowel may anſwer juſt with the hole that is made in the horſe's skin; and then once in two or three days to cleanſe the Rowel, and to anoint it, and ſo put it in again.

Other Farriers do uſe to make the Rowel of Lanthorn-horn, in the ſame faſhion as is made of Leather, and in like ſort to uſe it. But for mine own part, I have uſed them all, and truly in my practice find not any better than another: Only the Leather or the horn is ſomewhat more cleanly, and leſs offenſive to the Eye, yet they ask much more attendance.

Now if you do Rowel your Horſe for any ſwelling, then you ſhall ever put in your long Rowel the ſame way that the veins run, and ſeldom or never Croſs-wiſe, and the more you blow the skin for a ſwelling, ſo much the better it is: For the wind is it which only occaſioneth Putrefaction, and makes theſe feſtred humours to diſſolve, and diſtil down from the ſecret hollows of the joints, into theſe open places, where it falleth away in matter, and ſo the Beaſt becomes cured.

CHAP. CLXXX.

How to geld Horſes or Colts.

THere is to be obſerved in the gelding of Horſes, firſt, the Age. Secondly, the ſeaſon of the year: And laſtly, the ſtate of the Moon. For the age, if it be a Colt, you may geld him at nine days old, or fifteen, if his ſtones be come down: For to ſpeak the truth, the ſooner that you geld him, it is ſo much the better, both for his growth, ſhape, and courage: Albeit, ſome hold opinion, that at two years old ſhould be the ſooneſt, but they are miſtaken, their reaſons are weak therein.

Now if it be a Horſe that you would geld then there is no ſpeech to be made of his age: For it is without any queſtion, that a perfect Farrier may geld a Horſe without danger at any age whatſoever, being careful in the cure.

Now for the Seaſon of the year, the beſt is in the Spring, between *April* and *May*, or in the beginning of *June* at the fartheſt, or elſe about the fall of the Leaf, which is the latter end of *September*.

Now for the ſtate of the Moon, the fitteſt time is ever when the Moon is in the Wane; as touching the manner of Gelding it is in this ſort, whether it be a Foal, Colt, or Horſe: Firſt, you ſhall caſt him either upon ſtraw, or upon ſome dunghill. Then taking the ſtone between your foremoſt finger, and your great finger, you ſhall with a very fine inciſion Knife ſlit the Cod, ſo that you may

preſs

preſs the ſtone forth, and no more: Then with a pair of ſmall Nippers, made either of Steel, Box-wood, or Braſil, being very ſmooth, and clap the ſtrings of the ſtone between them, very near unto the ſetting on of the ſtone, and preſs them ſo hard, that there may be no flux of blood: Then with a thin drawing Cauterizing Iron made red hot, ſear away the ſtone; then take a hard Plaiſter made of Roſin, Wax and waſht Turpentine well molten together, and with your hot iron melt it upon the head of the ſtrings: Then ſear the ſtrings, and then melt more of the Salve, till ſuch time as you have laid a good thickneſs of the Salve upon the ſtrings: Then looſe the Nippers, and as you did ſo with that ſtone, ſo do with the other alſo: Then fill the two ſlits of the Cod with white Salt, and anoint all the outſides of the Cod, and all over the Horſe's belly and thighs with Hog's greaſe clean rendered, and ſo let him riſe: And keep him either in ſome very warm ſtable, or otherwiſe in ſome very warm paſture, where he may walk up and down; for there is nothing better for a Horſe in this caſe, than moderate exerciſe.

Now if after the gelding you do perceive that his Cod and ſheath doth ſwell in any extraordinary faſhion, then you ſhall chaſe him up and down, and make him trot an hour in a day, and it will ſoon recover him, and make him ſound without any impediment.

CHAP. CLXXXI.

Of the making of Curtails, or cutting off the tails of Horſes.

THe Curtailing of Horſes is uſed in no Nation whatſoever, ſo much as in this Kingdom of ours, by reaſon of much Carriage, and heavy burthens which our Horſes continually are exerciſed and employed withal, and the rather, ſith, we are ſtrongly opinionated, that the taking away of thoſe joints doth make the Horſes chine or back a great deal ſtronger, and more able to ſupport a burthen, as in truth it doth, and we daily find it by continual experience.

Now for the manner of Curtailing of Horſes, it is in this ſort: Firſt you ſhall with your finger and your thumb grope till you find the third joint from the ſetting on of the Horſe's tail, and having found it, raiſe up all the hair, and turn it backward: Then taking a very ſmall ſtrong Cord, wrap it about that joint, and pull it both with your own ſtrength and another man's, ſo ſtreight as you can poſſible pull it: Then wrapt it about again, and draw it as ſtreight

or

or straighter again: and thus do three or four times about the tail, with all the possible straightness that may be; and then make fast the ends of the cord: Then take a piece of Wood, whole and smooth and even, of just height with the thrust of the Horse's tail, and setting it between the Horse's hinder Legs, after you have trammelled all his four Legs, in such sort that he can no ways stir, then lay his tail thereupon, and taking a main strong sharp Knife made for the purpose, set the edge thereof so near as you can guess it, between the fourth and fifth joint, and then with a great Smith's Hammer, striking upon the back of the Knife, cut the tail asunder: Then if you see any blood to issue forth; you shall know that the cord is not streight enough, and therefore you must draw it streighter, but if no blood follow, then it is well bound: This done, you shall take a red hot burning Iron, made round after this fashion, of the full compass of the flesh of the Horse's tail, that the Bone of the tail may go through the hole, and with it you shall sear the flesh till you have mortified it; and in the searing you shall plainly see the ends of the veins start out like pap-heads; but you shall still continue searing them, until you see all to be most smooth, plain, and hard, so that the blood cannot break through the burning: Then may you boldly unloose the Cord; and after two or three days, that you perceive the sore begin to rot, you shall not miss to anoint it with fresh Butter, or else with Hog's grease and Turpentine, until it be whole.

CHAP. CLXXXII.

To make a white Star in any part of a Horse.

IF you will at any time make a white Star, either in your Horses fore-head, or in any other part of his body, you shall, according to the opinion of the most ancient Farriers, take a Tile-stone, and after you have burned it, beat it into fine Powder: Then take Lily Roots, Dasie Roots, White brier Roots, of each a like quantity, and having dryed them beat them also into fine Powder, and mix them with the first: Then with a Razor shave that part of your Horse where you would have your Star: and then with this Powder rub it so vehemently, that you scarce leave any skin on; then take a good quantity of Honey-suckle flowers, & like a quantity of Honey, and the water wherein a Mole hath been sodden, and then distil them

them into a water, and with that water wash the sore place the space of three days together, and keep the Wind from it, and you shall presently see the white hairs to grow; for this Receipt hath been often very well approved.

There be other Farriers, which take a Crab, and roast it, and being very hot, bind it to that part which you would have white and it will scald away the old hair, and the next hair that groweth will be white. Other Farriers use, after they have shaved the place to take the juice of sharp Onions, or Leeks, and to bath the place very much therewith: Then take Barley-bread, as hot as it cometh from the Oven, and clap it to the shaved place, suffering it to lie so till it be cold; and then after anoint it with Honey, and the white hair will come. Other Farriers use to anoint the shaven place with the grease of a Moldy-warp sodden, and that will bring the white hairs. Other Farriers use after they have shaved it; to rub the place well with Salt, and then twice every day for a fortnight, to wash it with the broth wherein a Moldy-warp and some Swine's grease hath been sodden.

Other Farriers use to boil a Moldy-warp in Salt-water for three days together, or else with strong Lee, and ever as one Liquor consumeth, to supply it with another; then with this Decoction being warm, anoint the shaved place, and it will bring white hairs suddenly. Other Farriers take the Gall of a Goat, and rub the shaved place therewith, and it will bring white hairs also.

Other Farriers take Sheep's milk, and boil it, and in that wet a Linen cloth, and being very hot lay it to, renewing it until you may rub off the hair with your finger; this done, apply the milk to it twice a day lukewarm, till the hair do come again, which without all question will be white.

Other Farriers take the Roots of wild Cucumbers, and twice as much Nitrum mingled with Oil and Honey, or else add to your Cucumbers Sal nitrum beaten, and Honey, and anoint the shaven place therewith, and it will bring white hairs.

Other Farriers use to take a piece of a Brick-bat, and with it gently to rub and chafe the Place, till by the continuance thereof, you have rubbed away both the hair and the skin, so broad as you would have the Star, and then to after-anoint it with Honey, until the hair come again: Or else to roast a Colewort stalk like a Warden, or an Egg, until it be stone-hard; and then as they come hot out of the fire, to clap either of them to the Horse's fore-head, and it will

will ſcald of the hair, then to anoint it with Honey till the hair come again.

Now to conclude, and to ſhew you the moſt perfect and abſolute experiment, which I have ever found to be moſt infallible, and it is thus: You ſhall take a very fine, ſharp, long Bodkin, made for the ſame purpoſe, and thruſt it up betwixt the skin and the bone upwards, ſo long as you would have the Star; and in thruſting it up, you ſhall hollow the skin from the bone, the bigneſs that you would have the Star: this done, you ſhall take a piece of Lead, made in the true ſhape of your Bodkin, and drawing out the Bodkin, thruſt in the Lead into the ſame holes; then you ſhall thruſt the Bodkin croſs wiſe the forehead underneath the Lead; and then thruſting in ſuch another piece of Lead, you ſhall ſee it in the Horſe's face to preſent this figure; which being done, you ſhall take a very ſtrong pack-thread, and putting it underneath all the four ends of the Leads, and drawing it with all ſtreightneſs, you ſhall gather all the hollow skin together on a purſe, folding the pack-thread oft and oft about, and ſtill ſtreighter and ſtreighter, ſo that you ſhall ſee it then to preſent unto you this figure: This done, you ſhall let it reſt at leaſt the ſpace of eight and forty hours, in which time the skin will be, as it were, mortified: Then may you unlooſe the pack-thread, and draw forth the leaden pins, and with your hand cloſe the hollow skin to the Fore head hard again: And ſhortly after you ſhall ſee the hair to fall away, and the next hair which cometh be white; and this experiment is moſt infallible.

Now there be ſome other Farriers, which will not put in pins, nor uſe any pack-thread, but only will ſlit the fore-head, and open the skin on both ſides, and then put in either a Horn or a plate of Lead as big as the Star, and ſo let it remain till the skin rot: Then take out the Horn or Lead and anoint the place with Honey, and the water of Mallows ſod, and it will bring white hair: And ſurely this Experiment alſo is moſt infallible; but it maketh a foul ſore, & is ſomewhat long in bringing his vertue to effect. Again

Again, I have seen a white Star also made by taking the guts of a Hen, or Pullet, and clapping them hot as they come out of the belly to the Horse's face, having in readiness some hollow round thing made for the same purpose, to keep the guts together upon the Horse's face.

CHAP. CLXXXIII.

How to make a black Star, or white hair black.

IF at any time you would have a desire to make upon a white Horse a black Star, you shall take a scruple of ink, and four scruples of the wood of Oliander beaten to Powder; incorporate this in as much Sheeps suet as will well suffice, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will no doubt make any white hair black.

Other old Farriers take the Decoction of Fern Roots, and Sage sod in Lee, and wash the place therewith, and it will breed black hair: But you must wash the place very oft therewith.

Other Farriers use to take the rust of Iron, Galls and Vitriol, and stamp them with Oil: or else take Souter's Ink, Galls and Rust, and beat them well together, and then anoint the place therewith, and it will turn any white hair to black.

CHAP. CLXXXIV.

To make a red Star in a Horse's Face.

IF you desire to make in your Horse's face, or any other part, a red Star, you shall take of *Aqua fortis*, one ounce of *Aqua vitæ* a penny-worth, of Silver to the value of eighteen pence; put them into a glass, and heat them well therein, and then anoint the place very well therewith, and it will immediately turn the hair to be of a perfect red colour, only it will endure no longer than till the casting of the hair: And therefore, at every such time you must renew the hair again, if you would have the Star to continue.

CHAP. CLXXXV.

How to make Hair to come very ſoon, very thick, and very long.

IF you would have Hair to come very ſoon in any bare place, or to grow thick where it is thin, or long where it is ſhort, you ſhall take (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) the Urine of a young Boy, and with it at firſt waſh the place: After that, take Lee made of the unſlack'd Lime, Ceruſe, and Litharge, and with it waſh the hair off, and it will make it come ſoon, long, and thick.

Other Farriers uſe to waſh the place with water wherein the Roots of Althæa have been ſod; Then after dry it gently with your hand, and it will encreaſe hair much. Other Farriers uſe to waſh the place with Oil mingled with the aſhes of Nut-ſhells burnt, or elſe Snail-ſhells burnt, and it will encreaſe hair alſo. Other Farriers take Agrimony pounded with Goat's milk, and with it anoint the place, or elſe Oil wherein a Moldy-warp hath been boiled, and anoint the place with either of them, and it will encreaſe hair very much. Other Farriers take the dung of Goats, Alum, Honey, and the blood of a Swine: Mingle them all together, and ſtir them till they be ready to boil, and being hot, rub the bare place therewith. Other ancient Farriers take Nettle-ſeed bruiſed with Honey, Water and Salt, and then rub the place therewith. Other Farriers take the root of a white Lily beaten and ſod in Oil, and anoint the place therewith. Others take the juice of a long Onion, or elſe the juice of Radiſhes, and anoint the place therewith. Others take Tar, Oil-Olive, and Honey boiled together, and with it anoint the bare-place. Others take the Soot of a Cauldron mixed with Honey and Oil, and anoint the place therewith.

There be other ancient Farriers which uſe this, and it is the beſt of all, they take green Wall-nut-ſhells, and burn them to Powder, and then mix it with Honey, Oil, and Wine, and anoint the place therewith, and it will encreaſe hair wonderfully, and very ſoon.

CHAP.

CHAP. CLXXXVI.

To make Hair ſmooth, ſlick, and ſoft.

IF you will make your Horſe's Coat to be ſmooth, ſlick, ſoft, and ſhining, you ſhall with ſufficient ſtore of cloth keep him warm at the heart, for the leaſt inward cold will make the hair ſtare: Then you ſhall make him ſweat oft; for that will raiſe up the duſt and filth, which makes his coat foul and hard, then you ſhall, when the Horſe is in his greateſt ſweat, with an old Sword-blade turning the edge towards his hair, ſcrape, or as it were curry away all the white foam, ſweat, and filth, which ſhall be raiſed up, and that will lay his coat even and make it ſmooth: And laſtly, you ſhall when you let him blood, rub him all over with his own blood, and ſo let it remain two or three days, and then curry and dreſs him well, and this will make his coat ſhine like glaſs.

CHAP. CLXXXVII.

How to take off Hair in any part of a Horſe.

IF you will at any time take off the Hair from any part of a Horſe, you ſhall diſſolve in water (according to the opinion of the moſt ancient Farriers) eight ounces of unſlack'd Lime: And then boil it till a quarter be conſumed, then add to it an Ounce of Orpiment, and then lay a Plaſter thereof to any part of the Horſe, and it will in few hours bring all the hair away.

There be other ancient Farriers which boil in running Water, Ruſt and Orpiment, and with it being very hot waſh the place, and it will ſoon bring the hair away.

CHAP. CLXXXVIII.

How to caſt and overthrow a Horſe.

WHenſoever you intend to caſt or overthrow your Horſe, after you have brought him into a convenient place: As namely, either upon ſome green ſwarth, or upon ſome Dung-hill, or in ſome Barn upon good ſtore of ſoft ſtraw, you ſhall take and double a long

long rope, and caſt a knot a yard from the bought; then put the bought about his neck, and the double rope betwixt his fore-Legs, and about his hinder paſterns, underneath his fetlock, then put the ends of the rope under the bought of his Neck, and draw them quickly, and they will overthrow him, then make the ends faſt, and hold down his head, under which always you muſt be ſure to have good ſtore of ſtraw. Now if you would at any time, either brand your Horſe on the buttock, or do any thing about his hinder Legs, that he may not ſtrike, take up his contrary fore-Leg, and when you do brand your Horſe, ſee that the Iron be red hot, and that the hair be both ſear'd quite away, and the fleſh ſcorched in every place before you let him go, and ſo you ſhall be ſure to loſe no labour.

CHAP. CLXXXIX.

How to know the age of a Horſe.

THe age of every Horſe is known, either by his teeth, by his hoofs, or by his tail.

It is known by his Teeth; at two years old he changeth the four fore-moſt teeth in his head, at three years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more apparent foals teeth but two of each ſide, above and below: At four years old he changeth the teeth next unto them, and leaveth no more foals teeth but one on each ſide, both above and below; at five years old he hath never a foals tooth before, but then he changeth his tuſhes on each ſide: At ſix years old he putteth up his tuſhes, near about which you ſhall ſee apparently growing a little Circle of new and young fleſh; beſides, the tuſh will be white, ſmall, ſhort, and ſharp: At ſeven years old, the two out-moſt teeth of his nether chap on both ſides will be hollow, with a little black ſpeck in them, And at eight years old, then all his teeth will be full, ſmooth, and plain, the black ſpeck being clean gone, and his tuſhes will be ſomewhat yellow, without any circles of young fleſh: At nine years old, his foremoſt teeth will be very long, broad, yellow, and foul, and his tuſhes will be blunt: At ten years old, in the inſide of his upper tuſhes will be no holes at all to be felt with your fingers ends, which till that age you ſhall ever moſt perfectly feel; beſides the temples of his head will begin to be hollow and crooked: At eleven years of age his teeth will be exceeding long, very yellow, black, and foul, only

he

he will cut even, and his teeth will ſtand directly oppoſite one againſt another: At Twelve years old his teeth will be long, yellow, black, and foul, but then his upper teeth will over-reach and hang over his nether teeth: At thirteen years his tuſhes will be worn cloſe to his chap if he be a much ridden Horſe, otherwiſe they will be black, foul, and long like the fangs of a Boar.

If a Horſe's hoof be ruggid, and as it were ſeamed, one ſeam over another; if they be dry, full, and cruſty, it is a ſign of a very old age; as on the contrary part, a ſmooth, moiſt, hollow, and well ſounding hoof is a ſign of young years.

If you take your Horſe with your finger and your thumb, by the ſtern of the tail, cloſe at the ſetting on by his buttock, and feeling there hard; if you feel betwixt your finger and your thumb of each ſide his tail, a joint ſtick out more than any other joint, by the bigneſs of a hazel Nut, then you may preſume, the Horſe is under ten years old, but if his joints be all plain, and no ſuch thing to be felt, then he is above ten, and at leaſt thirteen. If a Horſe's eyes be round, full, and ſtarting from his head, if the pits over his eyes be filled, ſmooth, and even with his Temples, and wrinkles either about his brow or under his eyes, then the Horſe is young: If otherwiſe you ſee the contrary Characters, it is a ſign of old age. If you take up a Horſe's skin on any part of his body, betwixt your finger and your thumb, and pluck it from the fleſh; then letting it go again, if it ſuddenly return to the place from whence it came, and be ſmooth and plain without wrinkle, then the Horſe is young, and full of ſtrength; but it being pulled up, it ſtand, and not return to his former place, then be aſſured he is very old, and exceedingly waſted.

Laſtly, if a Horſe that is of any dark colour, ſhall grow griſſel only about the Eye-brows, or underneath his Mane, it is then an infallible ſign of moſt extreme old age: And thus much touching a Horſe's age.

CHAP. CXC.

How to make an old Horſe ſeem young.

TAke a ſmall crooked Iron, no bigger than a Wheat-Corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two utmoſt teeth of each ſide the nether chap before, next to the

the tushes, and then with an Awl blade prick it, and make the shell fine and thin; then with a sharp scraping Iron, make all his teeth white and clean: This done, take a fine Lancet, and above the hollows of the Horse's eyes which are shrunk down, make a little hole only but through the skin, and then raising it up, put in a quill that is very small, as the quill of a Raven, or such like: and then blow the skin full of wind, till all the hollowness be filled up, and then take out the quill, and lay your finger a little while on the hole, and the wind will stay in, and the Horse's countenance will be as if he were but six years old at the most.

CHAP. CXCI.

How to make a Horse that he shall not neigh either in company, or when he is ridden.

IF either when you are in service in the Wars, and would not be discovered, or when upon any other occasion, you would not have your Horses to neigh, or make a noise, you shall take a list of woollen cloth, and tie it fast in many folds about the midst of your Horses tongue; and believe it, so long as the tongue is so tied, so long the Horse can by no means neigh, or make any extraordinary noise with his voice, as hath been often tried and approved of.

CHAP. CXCII.

How to make a Horse exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur.

IF your Horse be either dull of the Spur through his natural inclination, or through tiring, or any other accident, you shall first shave him the breadth of a saucer on both sides, just in the spurring place, on both sides the vein, then with a Lancet make six issues or small orifices on both sides; then raising the skin from the flesh, you shall put into the holes a pretty quantity of burnt Salt, which will make the sore to rankle.

In this sort you shall keep it three days, and by no means ride the Horse; the third day being ended, you shall set a Child on his back with spurs, and make him spur the Horse in the sore place; which done, you shall wash the place with Pis, Salt, and Nettles sodden well together, and it will make his sides smart so extremely, that he will never abide the Spur after.

Now

Now you ſhall let him ſtand after his waſhing three days more, and then take half a pint of Honey, and with it anoint his ſides once a day till they be whole. Alſo rub his ſides with the powder of glaſs, and it will do the like.

CHAP. CXCIII.

How to make a Horſe that tires, or is reſtiff, to go forward.

IF your Horſe, (as it is the common nature of Jades) through the naughtineſs of his nature, or dulneſs of ſpirit, be either ſo reſtiff, or ſo tired, that he will not go forward a foot, but ſtandeth ſtock ſtill: You ſhall then make a running ſuickle of a good ſmall cord, and put it about his Cods and Stones, in ſuch ſort that it may not ſlip; Then you ſhall draw the reſt of the cord between the girths and the Horſe's body, and bringing it up juſt between the Horſe's four legs, be ſure to hold the end of the cord in your hand as you ſit in the ſaddle, then ride the Horſe forward, and when he beginneth to grow reſtiff or to ſtand ſtill, then pluck the cord, and cramp him by the Stones, and you ſhall ſee that immediately he will go forward. And in this ſame manner you ſhall uſe him for at leaſt a fortnight together, and it will clean take away that evil quality.

CHAP. CXCIV.

Other moſt excellent and approved ways to preſerve a Horſe from tiring never diſcloſed till now.

IF your Horſe either through violence of Labour, diſtemperature of Body, or naughtineſs of Nature, happen to tire under you, or travel not with that ſpirit you deſire, then when you come to a baiting place alight, and ſet up your Horſe warm, but do not walk him: Then after he hath been well rubb'd, take a quart of ſtrong Ale, and put thereto half an ounce of the fine ſierc'd powder of Elicampane, and brew them together, then give it the Horſe with an horn; which done, tie his head to the rack, for you need not care for Provender till night, at which time Provender him well, and in the morning give him Oats or Bread, or both in plentiful manner, and being ready to take his back, give him the former quantity of Ale and Elicampane as aforeſaid; and doubtleſs you ſhall find

him

him to travel with great Courage and Spirit, as hath been approved. Alſo if you take a bunch of Penny-royal, and tie it to the mouth of your bit or ſnaffle, you ſhall find it very comfortable, and it will cauſe your Horſe to travel luſtily.

☞ Again if you take of your beſt Tabaco, and dry it in the Sun in a glaſs cloſe ſtopt, then pound it very ſmall, and mix it with an equal quantity of Cockle-ſhells, then with the Oil of Dill, and the Oil of Cloves, make the powder into a paſte, then make pretty round balls thereof as big as Wall-nuts, and dry them in the ſhadow in the Dog-days, then keep them cloſe in a Gally-pot, and give them as Pills in the time of neceſſity; that is to ſay, a ball at a time, whenſoever your Horſe ſhall fail in travel: And this doth not only help tiring, but alſo takes away any cold whatſoever.

☞ Laſtly, if your Horſe notwithſtanding for all this, do happen at any time to tire, then preſently take off his Saddle, and with the herb Arſmart rub his back all over very hard, then laying Arſmart alſo under the Saddle, ſo ride him gently at the firſt, and if there be any Life in him, it will make him go, as it hath been made proof of.

CHAP. CXCV.

How to make a Horſe to follow his Maſter, and find him out, and challenge him amongſt never ſo many people.

IF you will have your Horſe to have ſuch a violent love towards you, that he ſhall not only follow you up and down, but alſo labour to find you out, and own you as ſoon as he hath found you: You ſhall then take a pound of Oat-meal, and put thereto a quarter of a pound of Honey, and half a pound of Lunarce, and then make a Cake thereof, and put it in your boſom next unto your naked skin: Then run or labour your ſelf up and down until you ſweat, then rub all your Sweat upon your Cake; this done, keep your Horſe faſting a day and a night, and then give him the Cake to eat, which as ſoon as he hath eaten, you ſhall turn him looſe, and he will not only moſt eagerly follow you, but alſo hunt and ſeek you out when he hath loſt or doth miſs you; and though you be environed with never ſo many, yet he will find you out, and know you, and you ſhall not fail, but every time that he cometh unto you, you ſhall ſpit in his mouth, and anoint his tongue with your ſpittle: And thus doing, he will never forſake you.

CHAP.

CHAP. CXCVI.

The Nature and ſpecial Qualities of all the Simples that are ſpoken of in this whole Work, ſet down in the manner of Alphabet.

A.

Abrotanum, which we call in Engliſh Southern-wood, is hot and dry in the third degree, and openeth the Pipes of the Body, and is good for ſhort wind.

Abſinthium, which we call Worm-wood, is hot in the firſt degree, and dry in the ſecond; it cleanſeth, and bindeth, and is good for the Stomach.

Aceto, which we call Vinegar, eſpecially if it be of wine, is cold and piercing, to wit, cold in the firſt, and dry in the third degree.

Agaricum, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree; it expelleth Humours, purgeth all Flegm and Choler, and is good for the Liver and Kidneys.

Allium, which we call Garlick, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it draweth, openeth, and expelleth all evil Humours.

Agrecum, which we call Creſſes, is hot and dry in the fourth degree; it burneth, draweth, and reſolveth, and is exceeding good for Scurf, or wild Scabs, or for the Lungs.

Agripa, is a known Unguent that is good againſt all tumours.

Alum, called commonly Roch-Alum, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is good for cankers.

Alder, or Elder-tree, is hot and dry, it purgeth choler and flegm, and healeth wounds.

Aloes, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the third degree: It cleanſeth and diſſolveth, and alſo comforteth the vital parts.

Althea, which we call white Mallows, is hot and dry: It looſeneth and ſcattereth humours, warmeth and moiſteneth very much.

Almonds, are hot and moiſt in the firſt degree: Provoke Urine, and are very good for the Lungs or Liver.

Ambroſia, which we call Wood-ſage, repreſſeth, driveth back, and bindeth humours.

Ammoniacum is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: it ſoftneth, and diſſolveth humours.

Anetum, which we call Dill, is hot in the third and dry in

the ſecond Degree: It ripeneth crude humours, and expelleth heat.

Aniſeeds are hot and dry in the third Degree: Expel cold, diſſolve humours, and provoke Urine.

Antimonium, or *Stibium*, is cold and dry, it bindeth, mundifieth, and purgeth.

Apio, which we call *Smallage* or *Parſly*, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: It ripeneth, cleanſeth, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

Ariſtolochia, which we call *Birth-wort*, or *Hartwort*, is hot, and cleanſeth: But if it be *Rotunda*, then it is ſo much ſtronger, being hot and dry in the fourth Degree: It draweth and purgeth thin water and flegm, and is good to open the Lungs; it is good againſt all manner of poiſon whatſoever, or biting of any venomous Beaſts.

Armoniack both drieth, cooleth, ſoftneth, and draweth.

Artemiſia, which we call great Tanſie, or Mug-wort, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third Degree: It is very good for Worms, and ſwellings in the ſinews.

Arſnick of both kinds, is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree: It bindeth, eateth, and fretteth, being a very ſtrong Corroſive.

Aſſafetida is a gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt Degree. It cleanſeth evil humours.

Aſphaltum is a pitch that is mixt with *Bitumen*: It is hot and dry and comforteth any ſwelling.

Aſſoneo is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: It cleanſeth and drieth, and is good for to comfort the ſtomach.

Aſſungia, which we call the ſoft or freſh greaſe, is hot and moiſt in the firſt Degree: It mollifieth, ripeneth, and healeth any Wound, Impoſtume, or Ulcer.

Avena, which we call commonly Oats, are naturally dry: They do dry, bind, cleanſe, and comfort all the inward Parts, and are the only principal ſimples which do naturally agree with the compoſition of a Horſe's body; and therefore the Oil or the Quinteſſence of them is the only abſolute and perfect medicine that can be adminiſtred for any inward ſickneſs, as experience will approve and make perfect.

Avelane, which we call the aſhes of Nutſhells burnt, are hot and dry, and do skin or ſtop the flux of matter.

B.

Barberies, are vehemently hot and dry, and are good for all manner of rheums, or shortness of Wind, especially for any disease in the Lungs: They are good against poisons, consumptions, short breath, flegm, hardness of hearing, help tiring, Cramps, Scurvy, the Stone, stoppings of the Liver, cure the Yellows and Dropsie.

Balsamum is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth draweth and comforteth.

Bdellium is a gum that is hot and dry: It softneth, and draweth away moisture, and is excellent against all hard swellings whatsoever.

Bertonicum, or *Betonicum*, which we call Dog-stone, or Kegwort, is hot and dry in the first Degree: It purgeth, and cleanseth all evil humours.

Bicca is cold and dry in the second Degree: It closeth things opened it softens hardness, filleth places empty, and doth extenuate all excretions.

Bittole, which we call Beets, is cold and moist, and cleanseth Ulcers.

Bitumen is a kind of Brimstone, or fatness from the Sea, it is hot and dry in the second Degree, and is comfortable against any swelling.

Bozino is hot in the first, and moist in the second Degree, and it ripeneth Impostumes.

Bole-Armonia is a certain earth which is cold and dry, which bindeth and driveth back evil humours, and is also an excellent Defentarive against fluxes of Blood.

Branc-Ursin is a wonderful great softner and mollifier.

Brassica, which we call Cole-worts, is very dry, it doth conglutinate Wounds, it healeth Ulcers and Tumours, it holdeth the seed and killeth evil humours.

Brotano, which is the same that *Abrotanum* is, look there.

Brusco, which we call Butchers Broom, or Knee-holm is hot in the second Degree, and dry in the first, it provokes Urine.

Briony, of these there are two kinds the white and the black, but the white is more effectual; the root of it is hot and dry in the second Degree: It cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good for all old Diseases; it also drieth, draweth, and mollifieth all manner of hardness

C.

Callafonia or Colofonia, doth incarnate Ulcers, and doth conglutinate things which are ſeparated.

Calaminto, which we call wild Peny-Royal, or wild Mint, of which, that which grows on the Mountains is the beſt, is hot and dry in the third degree, doth reſolve Tumours, and draweth away Humours.

Calcina viva, which we call unſlack'd Lime, is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it aduſteth, drieth, and corrodeth.

Camomila, which we call Camomile, is hot and dry in the firſt degree, it mollifieth and diſſolveth all Griefs, and is good eſpecially for the Liver.

Camedros, which we call Germander, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is good againſt all moiſt Colds.

Camphora is a kind of Gum which is cold and dry in the third degree; it preſerveth the Body from Putrefaction, and bindeth Humours.

Canabis, which we call Hemp, is hot, the Seed whereof driveth away extraordinary Colds; it ripeneth and diſſolveth Humours, and mollifieth and drieth Inflammations.

Cinamon, is hot and dry in the third degree; and is comfortable in all inward Sickneſſes.

Canna, which we call Reeds, eſpecially the Hedge-Reed, draweth out Pricks, if you lay the Roots to the Knobs.

Cantharides, are certain Flies, which are hot and dry in the third degree; they will raiſe Bliſters in the ſound Parts.

Capilli Veneris, which we call Maidens-hair, is dry, and bindeth looſe Humours.

Cardimomum, is hot, it extenuateth Humours, and being mix'd with Vinegar killeth Scabs.

Cloves are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable to the inward parts.

Carrowaies are hot and dry in the third degree, it helpeth Wind and cleanſeth evil humours.

Caſſia is hot and moiſt in the firſt degree, it expelleth Wind diſſolveth humours, and purgeth the ſtomach of choler and flegm.

Caſtoreum is hot and dry, and purgeth much.

Cabbage is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree, it cleanſeth and ripeneth humours.

Cinera

Cinere, which we call Ashes, are hot and dry in the fourth degree, and cleanse mightily.

Centuria, which we call wild running *Betony*, swelling like *Marjoram*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it bindeth wounds, and conglutinateth, and is good for diseased Livers, for the Worms, Sores and Wounds, and is commonly called Centaury.

Cepe, which we call Onions, is hot in the fourth degree: It doth cleanse corruptions, and ripen swellings.

Cervil is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

Cerusa is a white Ointment made of Oil and white Lead, it is cold and dry in the second degree: And for the effects it hath all those, which *Braccha* hath.

Cerecallo: See *Serecocollo*.

Chelidonium which we call *Selandine*, is hot and dry in the third degree; it cleanseth all putrefactive humours, and is excellent against inward sicknesses, especially yellows or jaundice.

Cicuta, which we call Hemlock, is cold in the fourth degree, it nummeth and astonieth.

Cicoria, which we call Succory, is cold and dry in the first degree, and bindeth much.

Comin is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second: It mollifieth and ripeneth.

Cipollo, which is Leeks, or as we call them, chives, see *Cepe*.

Cinabar, or *Sanguis Draconis*, or as we call it *Vermilion*, is a certain metal drawn from quick Sulphur, and Quick-silver, it drieth, healeth, incarnateth, bindeth and comforteth Ulcers.

Ciso or *Cisto*, is dry in the second degree, and bindeth much.

Citrons, or *Citrons*, are cold and moist in the second degree, they do cleanse and pierce.

Colloquintida, is hot and dry in the third degree, and mundifieth only.

Colofonia, which we commonly call Earth-pitch, or Greek-pitch, is hot and dry in the third degree; it conglutinated and gathereth together. See *Pece Grece*.

Cocumeri, see *Cucumer*.

Consolida, which we call Comphry, is cold: It conglutinateth and bindeth, and is good against Ruptures.

Costro, or *Cosso* being bitter, is hot, and healeth Ulcers.

Costus, is hot in the third degree, and dry in the second degree: and it raiseth up worms, and is that which we call Herb *Mary*, or the root of *Angelico*.

Corne

Corne di cervo, which we call harts-horn, is dry, yet it ſtrengthneth very much, and expelleth poiſon.

Crocum which we call Saffron, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: It bindeth, comforteth, and reſolveth Impoſtumes.

Cucumeri Silvaggi, is hot and dry in the third degree: It diſſolveth, ſoftneth, and purgeth flegm.

Cucumeri elaterium, is cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: It cleanſeth much, and is made of the juice of wild Cucumbers.

D.

Dates are hot and moiſt in the ſecond degree: They do reſolve and diſperſe things knit together.

Diacatholicon purgeth all offenſive humours which offend the Body whatſoever.

Diaphœnicon or *Diaphenicon*, purgeth Wind exceedingly, and comforteth all griefs of the belly which are begot by crude humours, ſpringing from Colicks or ſuch like pains.

Dialtea or *Dialthea*, is an ointment made of Holy hox, or Sea mallow; it warmeth and moiſtneth.

Dragen-wort is hot and dry, and bindeth much.

E.

Ebuli, which we call Elder, is hot and dry in the third degree; it drieth, and driveth out Water, and expelleth Choler and thin flegm; ſee *Sambucus*.

Edera terreſtris, which we call ground-Ivy, ſee *Hedera*.

Elaterium ſee *Cucumeri*.

Elleboro, which we call neeſing powder, of it are two kinds, the white and black; it is hot and dry in the third degree.

Eruca, which we call Rocket, and of which the wild is the beſt; the ſeeds thereof are hot and dry, and expelleth Urine, Worms and Water.

Eluſa, which is an herb like ſpunge, is hot in the fourth degree, and drieth and cleanſeth exceedingly: and of ſome is called Wolf's milk.

Euforbium is a gum that is hot in the fourth degree; it drieth, purgeth, cleanſeth, and exulcerateth much.

Exemuſcon

Excruſion is that which we call *Oxicration*, is a certain compoſition or mixture made of *Aceto* and water, and is good to allay ſwellings and tumours.

F.

Faba, which we call a Bean, is cold and dry, and it cleanſeth, and diſſolveth very much.

Farina which we call Bran, is hot and dry in the firſt degree, and diſſolveth very much.

Fern is dry and binding, but the root is hot and cleanſing, and killeth Worms.

Felle, which we call Gall, is hot and dry, and it cleanſeth and mundifieth.

Ferrugo, which we call the ruſt of Iron, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it comforteth and reſtraineth evil humours.

Fici aridi, which we call dry figs, are hot and dry in the ſecond degree; they ripen tumours, ſoften and conſume hardneſs, and are good for purſiveneſs, coughs, and Diſeaſes of the Lungs.

Filomontano, which we call a Dodder, being a thing that cleaveth to herbs, winding about them like threads; it openeth the Liver and Milt, and purgeth all flegm and choler.

Filonio is a compoſition, which will aſtoniſh or benumb any part or member.

Fennel is hot in the third, and dry in the firſt degree: It doth diſſolve all manner of groſs humours, and is good for the Liver or Lungs.

Fuligo which we call Soot, is hot and dry, and it drieth marvellouſly, and ſo doth all ſoots whatſoever.

G.

Galanga, which we call Galangal, is hot and dry in the third Degree: It eaſeth the Stomach of all griefs, which proceed from cold cauſes: It ſtreightneth the brain, and comforteth the Senſes.

Galbanum is hot in the third Degree, and dry in the ſecond: It ſofteneth, ſtoppeth, and draweth away evil humours, and is good againſt a cold.

Galla, which we call Galls, or a light fruit of Oaks, are hot and pleaſing.

Garriſilata, which we call herb Bennet, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree.

Garofoli,

Garofoli, which we call Cloves, are hot and dry in the third degree, and are very comfortable for inward ſickneſs.

Ginger is hot, and is excellent to preſerve heat in the inward parts.

Geniſtra or *Giniſtra*, which we call Broom, is hot and dry in the third degree; it killeth Worms, and ſcoureth much.

Gentian, eſpecially the Root, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree; it doth extenuate, purge, and cleanſe all evil humours, and it is good for the Liver and Stomach, and for Wounds and Sores.

Gillio, which we call Lilies, ſoftneth Sinews, and are good for Wounds and Sores.

Gramen, which is any manner of Grain and Pulſe, is cold and dry, except Wheat, and that is temperately hot and moiſt; they do incarnate and mundifie.

Graſſo, which is any manner of Fat, is hot and moiſt, and doth ripen and ſoften.

H.

H *Arundinis cortex*, whiah we call Cane-reed, is hot and dry in the third degree.

Hedera, which we call Ivy, is a great drawer and opener.

Helxine, which we call Pellitory of the Wall, cleanſeth and bindeth, and is good for any old Cough, or for any Inflammations.

Hiſſopo, which we call Hyſſop, there is both wild, and that of the Garden, but the Garden is the beſt, it is hot and dry in the third degree; cleanſeth and warmeth, it is good for Inflammations of the Lungs, old Coughs, Pozes, Rheums, and ſhort Wind.

Hordeum, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the firſt degree, and it mundifieth and cooleth.

I.

I *Ncenſe*, which we call Frankincenſe, it drieth and incarnateth; ſee *Olibanum*.

Ipericon, which we call Saint-*Johns*-wort, expelleth moiſture, and healeth burnings.

Irios

Irios Florentia, which we call Flower-de-luce, especially the root: it warmeth, ripeneth, and cleanseth, and is good for the cough, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

Iride Illirica : See *Helpine.*

Iris is a root that is hot and dry: It cleanseth and ripeneth, and is good against Colds, and purgeth Ulcers.

Iaspiana, which we call Henbane, is cold in the fourth degree: it astonisheth and benumbeth,

Juniper is hot and dry in the third degree: The berries are good for the Stomach, Lungs, Liver, and Kidneys; it cureth all Coughs, Gripings, and Windiness of the Belly, and provoketh Urine: Is good against all Venom, the Infection of the Plage, and kills Worms.

L.

Liguſtum which we call Lovage, is hot and dry in the third degree: It expelleth Wind, especially the Seed and Root.

Lapathum, which we call a Dock, is cold and moist, and it mollifieth.

Lauri, which we call Laurel, or Bays, are hot and dry, and they cleanse and mundifie.

Lentisco is a gum that is like Mastick; it is dry in the second Degree, and moderately bindeth: It is bitter in taste, and ever green.

Linosa, which we call Flax or Lime, the seed thereof is hot and dry, and it ripeneth and mollifieth tumours.

Lee is hot and dry in the fourth degree: It is very adustive, cleansing and piercing.

Lythargyrio, of which there are two kinds, the one of the colour of Gold, the other of Silver: It is very dry, it bindeth, softneth, incarnateth, cooleth, and closeth up; and of these two, that which is like Gold is the best.

Lolium, which we call Cockle, is hot and dry in the third degree, and dissolveth much.

Lumacbs, which we call House-snails without shells, do conglutinate very much.

M.

Malva is cold and moist, it stoppeth, softneth, and mitigateth pain.

Malvaviſcus is very dry, it ſoftneth, looſneth, and mitigateth.

Mace is dry in the third degree, without heat, and only bindeth.

Manna is of equal temper, hot and dry, it openeth, mollifieth, and incarnateth.

Mariaton or *Martiaton*, is a hot unguent againſt all cold humours: It helpeth the grief of ſinews, purgeth old watry matters, and ripeneth tumours.

Marrubio, which we call Hore-hound, of which there be two kinds, the white and the black; but the white is the better: It is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the third Degree: It helpeth obſtructions in the Liver, openeth and purgeth, and is good againſt colds and for ſores.

Maſtick is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: It draweth and drieth, bindeth and ſoftneth, and is good againſt cold.

Medulla, which we call Marrow, of what kind ſoever, is cold and moiſt, and mollifieth Ulcers; now the beſt Marrow is that of a Hart, or old Stag, the next of a Calf, the next that of a Sheep, and the laſt that of a Goat.

Mel, which we commonly call Honey, is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it cleanſeth the ſtomach and the entrails, ſtoppeth humours, and incarnateth Wounds.

Meliſſa, which we call Balm, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt Degree: It cleanſeth and conglutinateth.

Mentha, which we call Mint, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond Degree, of which the wild Mint is the beſt: it killeth Worms, it bindeth, it diſſolveth, and is good for the ſtomach, or a cold Liver.

Minio, which we call red Lead, is cold and dry, and good againſt ſwellings.

Myrrhe or *Myrrha*, is a ſovereign Gum; it is hot and dry in the ſecond Degree; it conglutinateth, bindeth and cleanſeth wounds, is good againſt all colds, killeth worms, and helpeth the purſick: for though it doth cleanſe much, yet it doth not exaſperate the Arteries; alſo it doth incarnate.

Morcoſita or *Marcaſita*, is hot and dry; it comforteth, bindeth, and melteth humours.

Mertilia is the fruit of the Myrtil-tree, it is dry in the third Degree, it doth bind good, and looſen evil humours.

Morcas, which we call the Mulberry, the unripe is cold and dry in the ſecond Degree: The bark, but chiefly the root, is hot and

dry

dry in the third degree, it doth cleanſe, purge and bind, the root thereof killeth Worms, and the gum thereof doth looſen, and the juice of the berry doth heal cankers, or ſore mouths.

N.

Narciſſi Radix, which we call the root of a white *Daffodil*, or elſe Prime-roſe pearleſs, is dry, it cleanſeth and draweth, and healeth wounds.

Nardi Radix, which we call Set-wall, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree; it bindeth and *Spica Nardi* provoketh Urine.

Naſturtium is hot and dry in the fourth degree; It burneth, it draweth and melteth, and killeth Worms; ſee *Agrecum*, which we call Creſſes.

Nigella, which we call Git, is hot and dry in the third degree: It ſtayeth Wind, killeth Worms, and looſeneth; yet to give too great a quantity is dangerous.

Nitrum is of the ſame nature that Salt-peter is, and it mundifieth exceedingly.

O.

Libanum is a gum, it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; it warmeth, bindeth, cloſeth Wounds, and incarnateth.

Oil of Olives is of a very temperate nature, and changeth its qualities according to the nature of the Simples which are mixt with it.

Opium is cold and dry in the fourth degree, and is a Liquor made with Poppy dried and mix'd with Saffron, it doth aſtoniſh and provoke ſleep.

Opoponax is a Gum that is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: It ſoftneth and ſtayeth humours: It is good againſt all Colds. See *Papaver*, *Galbanum*; *Bdellium* or *Sagapenum*.

Orpimento is a kind of Metal, of which the artificial is called Arſenick, it is hot in the third degree, and dry in the ſecond, it bindeth, corrodeth, burneth and fretteth, and is a Corroſive.

Origano, which we call wild Marjoram or Peny-royal, is hot and dry in the third degree; it taketh away ſtoppings, and is good for Coughs.

Orobus, which we call Fitches, are hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degree: They do open and cleanſe.

Orizo, which we call Barly, is cold and dry in the firſt degree: It ripeneth and cleanſeth.

Urtica, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry: They are biting and wholeſome for the Lungs, or for Sores.

Ovum, which we call Eggs, the white is cold, and the yolk is hot, and doth incarnate.

P.

Panacea is that Herb whoſe fruit we call *Opopenax*.

Panico is a grain which we call Panick, it is cold and dry, and bindeth.

Papaver, which we call Poppy, the Seeds thereof are white, and hot in the fourth degree. See *Opium*.

Paſtinache, which we call Parſnips, are hot, and do provoke Urine.

Pece, which we commonly call Pitch, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, draweth, drieth and ripeneth.

Pece liquida, which we call Tar, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, is good againſt Colds, or evil humours gathered together in the breaſt, and draweth wounds.

Pece Reſina, which we call Roſin, or Pitch of *Greece*, it draweth, healeth and incarnateth.

Pece Reſina & liquida, which we call Turpentine, it doth draw, skin, incarnate and conglutinate things together.

Pepper is hot and dry in the fourth degree, it is both attractive and mundificative, and good for all Diſeaſes of the Breaſt or Lungs.

Peaches are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: They bind and ſtir up Worms.

Petaſites, which we call Butter-bur, is dry in the third degree.

Petrolium, is a certain Oil made of Salt-Peter and *Bitumen*, it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it healeth wounds and comforteth weak members.

Petroſellium, which we call Parſley, or Stone-Parſley is, and eſpecially his Seed, hot and dry in the third degree: It ſtays wind, openeth, and provoketh Urine.

Philonium,

Philonium, of which there are two kinds, *Philonium Romanum*, and *Philonium Perſicum*, are excellent compoſitions, and moſt comfortable after the loſs of blood.

Pologono, which we call Knot-graſs, is cold in the ſecond degree, and keepeth back humours.

Plantago, which we call Plantain, is cold and dry in the third degree: It comforteth, drieth, bindeth, and incarnateth wounds.

Porri, which we call Leeks, Scallions or Onions, are hot and dry, and do extenuate Obſtructions, and raiſe and looſen all evil humours in the body.

Puce or *Porrum*, is hot in the ſecond degree, and it is good for all cold watriſh Stomachs.

Pulegium, which we call Peny-royal, is hot and dry in the third degree, it doth vehemently dry in moiſture, warmeth ripeneth, and is good for the Lungs.

Punicum Malum, which we call Pomegranate, is cold and dry: It bindeth, provoketh Urine, and is good for the Stomach.

R.

R*Afano* or *Raphanus*, which we call Radiſh, is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: They comfort and are good for old Colds; but eſpecially they provoke Urine.

Reſina, which we call Roſin, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: it ſtoppeth, ſoftneth, cleanſeth, draweth and purgeth wounds, and is good againſt cold cauſes.

Reſalgar, ſee *Riſigalla*.

Rigoretio or *Rigolio*, which we call Liquorice, is temperate in heat and moiſteneth, and ripeneth, and is good for Heat in the Stomach or Liver, and profitable againſt wounds.

Riſigalla, is a Compoſition of Sulphur, Orpiment, and unſlack'd Lime; and is a moſt ſtrong Corroſive.

Roſſa flos, which we call Roſe-leaves, or Roſe-cakes, are dry and binding.

Rubea, which we call Madder, is dry: It comforteth and incarnateth, the root thereof provoketh Urine and is good for the yellows.

Ruberb or *Rubarb* is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, it purgeth choler and flegm, and putteth away ſtoppings.

Ruta, which we call Rue or Herb-grace, is hot and dry in the third

third degree: But the wild Rue in the fourth degree, and therefore exulcerateth, the Garden-Rue digesteth, and mightily comforteth all inward inflammations, it ripeneth, and drieth, and expelleth wind.

S.

Savina, which we commonly call Savine, is hot and dry in the third degree, it openeth, dissolveth, drieth mightily, and is most sovereign against Worms.

Sacoro is hot and moist, and is very comfortable.

Sagapenum; see *Serapino*.

Sagina, or *Saggina*, or *Sorgo*, of some called *Panicum Indicum*, is only hot and dry.

Salo, which we call Salt, is hot and dry in the second degree: and it cleanseth.

Salamora, which we call Brine, or Water and Salt, is of the same nature that Salt is.

Sal armoniack is hot and dry in the fourth degree: And it cleanseth.

Salee, which we call Sallows or Willows: It bindeth and drieth vehemently.

Salgemma, is a kind of Salt which is hot and dry: It cleanseth and mundifieth.

Sal nitro, some use for this Salt-peter, it is hot and dry, and evaporateth: It comforteth Sinews and taketh away tiring or wearineſs.

Salvia, which we call Sage, is hot and dry in the second degree: it cleanseth and bindeth. Is good for Wounds, or Exulceration of the Lungs.

Sambucus, which we call Elder-tree or Wall-wort, that is like Elder-tree, is hot in the second degree, and dry in the first: It drieth, digesteth, and conglutinateth.

Sandolo, which we call Sanders, are cold and dry in the second degree, and drive back humours.

Sandolo Rosso or *Sandolo Bianca*, which we call red Sand or white Sand, are hot and dry, and bring on skin.

Sanguis draconis, see *Cinabar*: Yet some take it for the red Dock, or red Patience, but it is not so.

Sapone, which we call Sope, is hot: It draweth, mollifieth, drieth, cleanseth and purgeth.

Sassifragia,

Saſſifragia, which we call Saxifrage, is hot, dry, and binding.

Scabioſo, which we call Scallions, is hot and dry in the ſecond degree; they do regenerate, and are good for ſcabs, for the lungs, or for the ſoreneſs in the breaſt.

Scammonium, which is the juice of a root, is hot in the third degree: It digeſteth and purgeth choler, but muſt never be given inwardly, unleſs it be corrected.

Scariola, which we call Endive, is cold and dry, and binding.

Sarcocolla, is a Gum of the kind of *Euforbium*; it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree: It cleanſeth, incarnateth, and comforteth Wounds.

Sea Onions, is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree; it ripeneth and expelleth humours, it hindreth putrefaction and preſerveth health.

Semola, which we call young Cole-worts, are hot and dry in the firſt degree.

Semper-vive, which we call Houſleek, and ſome call Stone-crop, is cold in the third and dry in the ſecond degree; it is good for burnings and frettings, or for inflammation of Ulcers; it driveth back humours, cooleth and bindeth.

Savadolce is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: It cleanſeth and openeth.

Serapino, is a Gum of Ferula, it is hot in the third, and dry in the ſecond degree: It mollifieth, looſeneth, and is good for Colds.

Serpillo, which we call wild running Betony or Thyme, ſmelling like Marjoram, is hot and dry in the third Degree.

Sinapi, which we call Muſtard, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: It draweth and reſolveth, and is good for Scurfs or wild Scabs.

Solatro, which we call Night ſhade, is cold in the third degree.

Sulphur-vive, which we call Brimſtone, is hot and dry in the third degree: It draweth, diſperſeth humours, and killeth worms.

Spelta, which we call Beer-Barley, is a grain leſs than Wheat, and ſhorter than Rye, but not ſo black, is cool and cleanſing.

Sparaci, which we call Aſparagus, is without any manifeſt heat or cold, and only cleanſeth.

Spica or *Spica*, which we call Lavender, is hot in the firſt, and dry

dry in the ſecond degree: It cleanſeth, and is good for the head, eſpecially the Conſerve, which is very comfortable.

Squille, is that which we call the Sea-Onion; ſee Sea-Onion.

Stecados, which we call French Lavender, is hot and dry.

Storax or *Stirax*, is a ſweet Gum, which is hot and dry: It correcteth, ſoftneth and is good for coughs or any ſickneſs in the head.

T.

Tartaro, which we call Tartar, is the excrements of Wine, which ſtick to the Veſſel: It is hot and dry in the third degree, and only cleanſeth.

Tataruch, which we call Snails with ſhells, are of the ſame nature that Snails without ſhells are.

Taſſo barbaroſſo, which we call Yew, is of the nature of poiſon.

Turpentine is hot in the ſecond, and dry in the firſt degree: It draweth, cleanſeth, skinneth and comforteth.

Thymum, which we call Thime, is hot and dry in the third degree, and expelleth flegm.

Thuris Lacrima, which we call Frankincenſe, is hot in the ſecond and dry in the firſt degree. See *Olibanum*.

Thuris Cortex, is dry in the ſecond degree, and bindeth.

Thuris ſucculis is hot and dry in the third degree.

Tithymalis, which we call Spurge or Milk-Thiſtle, is hot and dry in the fourth degree: It cleanſeth and purgeth flegm and choler; and is good for old ſores or fiſtula's.

Triſora Magna is a certain Compoſition which will provoke ſweat, helpeth grief in the Stomach, and taketh away all cold Rheums.

Tutia Preparata is a certain Mineral that is cold in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond degreee, and is very good for ſore Eyes.

V.

Veratro, ſee *Ellebore*.

Verbena, which we call Vervein, is hot and dry: It comforteth and mundifieth.

Verdcrame, which we call Verdigreaſe, is hot and dry in the third degree, and is a Corroſive that eateth away dead fleſh.

Vermi,

Vermi, which we call Worms, do conglutinate and comfort ſinews.

Verce is hot and dry. See *Braſica*.

Vitro, which we call Glaſs, is hot in the firſt and dry in the ſecond, and it cleanſeth.

Vinacce, which we call the Kernels of Grapes, are dry.

Virga Paſtoris, which we call wild Taſſel, is cold in the third, and dry in the firſt degree: It comforteth and bindeth.

Viſchio, which we call Lime, is hot in the fourth Degree: It drieth and skinneth, but being mixed with any liquid ſtuff, it burneth, and is Corroſive.

Vitelli or *Vitis alba*, which we call Briony, is hot, chiefly the root: It cleanſeth and killeth ſcabs: It drieth, it draweth, molfieth and diſſolveth.

Vitelli which we call the yolks of any Eggs, are hot, and do ſtrengthen and incarnate.

Vitriol, which we call Copperas, is of two kinds, that is *Vitriolum Romanum*, which we call green Copperas, and *Vitriolum album*, which we call white Copperas, they both are hot and dry, but the white is much the ſtronger; they take away ſcurfs, and kill ſcabs.

Vitriola Calcanthum, is reckoned amongſt Metals, and is a kind of inky earth: Drieth and fretteth.

Vitriola herba is an herb that groweth on the wall, and is taken for Pellitory of the Wall. See *Helxine*.

Urtica, which we call Nettles, are hot and dry, and ſtop and cleanſe humours, and are good for ſores.

Z.

Zeferano, which we call Saffron, is hot in the firſt, and dry in the ſecond Degree: It comforteth and expelleth all inward Poiſon, and incarnateth Wounds.

Zebulus, ſee *Ziziphe*.

Zeutonico, which we call Worm-ſeed, is hot and dry.

Zenzera, which we call Ginger, is of the nature of Pepper, and hath the ſtrength of long Pepper; it maintaineth natural heat, and is good for cold ſtomachs.

Ziziphe taketh away Coughs, and helpeth the ſhortneſs of Breath.

Zucche, which we call Gourds, are cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and it allayeth all manner of Inflammations, or hot ſwellings.

CHAP. CXCVII.

Certain Principles touching SIMPLES.

YOu shall understand, that touching Simples, some are only to ease pain, as Linseed, Camomil, soft Grease, Suet of all sorts, or any other Oil that is hot in the first degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, the Medicine is called *Anodyna* or Lynogs.

There are other Simples which are astonying, benumbing or bringing sleep, as Opium, Mandrake, Poppy, Hemlock, and such like, which are gross and cold in the fourth degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is amongst Leaches, called *Narcotica*.

The third sort of Simples are such as incarnate or breed flesh, as Frankincense, Flour, Saffron, Yolks of Eggs, and such like, which are hot in the second degree; and whensoever any of these Simples are compounded with their like, then the Medicine is called *Sarcotica*.

The fourth sort of Simples are corroding, fretting or burning, as Arsnick, Rissagallo, Mercury, Lime, and such like, which are hot in the fourth degree; and whensoever they are applied simple or compound, then the Medicine is called Corrosive.

The fifth sort of Simples are those which be called mollifying, and are four in number; that is, green Mallows, white Mallows, Violets, and Brank-ursin.

The last sort of Simples are those which are called Cordials, and are three in number: that is to say, Violets and Bugloss of both kinds.

And thus much touching the nature, use, property, and operation of Simples.

CHAP. CXCVIII.

Of Weights and Meaſures, and to know them by their Characters.

ALbeit I have in this work ſet down your Weights and Meaſures in ſuch plain Engliſh, that every one may underſtand them: Yet foraſmuch as the more curious do ſet down many excellent Receipts under obſcure Characters, I think it good here to acquaint you with them all, that when you find any ſuch, you may not be ignorant in the underſtanding of them.

Know then that the leaſt of all weights is a grain, which is the weight either of a Barley-corn, or of a Pepper-corn, and his Character is *G.* or *Gr.*

Siliqua is four grains, and his Character is *ſ.*

An Engliſh half-penny is five grains, and his Character is *ob.*

A Scruple is twenty grains, and his Character is ℈.

A dram is three Scruples, or the eighth part of an Ounce, and his Character is ʒ.

A Roman Peny is the ſame that a Dram is, and his Character is *X.*

An ounce is the twelfth part of a pound, which is twenty four ſcruples, and four hundred and eighty grains, and his Character is ℥.

The Character of half an ounce is ℥ ſs.

A Pound in medicinal Receipts is twelve ounces, and his Character is ℔.

The Handful is ſix ounces and a half, and his Character is *M.*

The Character of as much as you can hold betwixt your Fingers is ℘.

The Character for a drop is *Gut.*

The Character for three drops is *Gut.* iij.

℔ ſs is half a Pound.

℥ ſs is half an Ounce.

ʒ ſs is half a Dram.

℈ ſs is half a Scruple.

℥ j ſs is an Ounce and an half.

M j ſs is an handful and an half.

P j is half an handful, which is three Ounces and an half.

Aana or *aa*, is like, or of each alike.

And thus much touching Weights, and their Characters.

CHAP. CXCIX.

The Farriers Instruments expounded, with their Names and Properties.

THe Figure 1. sheweth the Hammer, which driveth in the nail.

Figure 2. Pincers which breaketh off, clencheth and draweth the nail.

3. The Butter is that which pareth and openeth the Foot.

4. The Rasp or Rape, which maketh smooth the Hoof.

5. The Cutting Knife, which taketh away the superfluous Hoof.

6. The Fleam, with which he letteth blood in the Neck, or in the gross places where the vein is great.

7. The Farrier's Lancet which openeth small veins and threads, where the Stroke may not be used.

8. The Incision-Knife, to open Impostumes, and to cut away superfluous Flesh.

9. The Cronet to take up Veins.

10. The drawing cauterizing Iron to open and separate the flesh either sound or impostumed.

11. The round button cauterizing Iron to bore holes in the skin and swelled places.

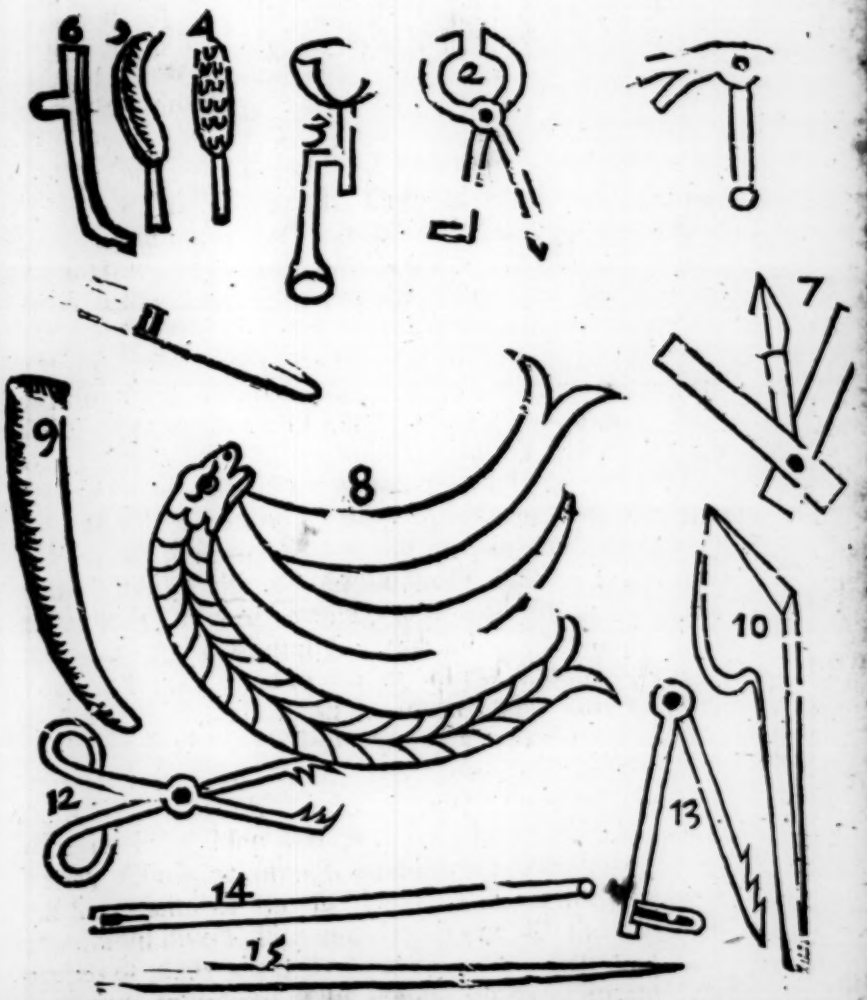
12. The Mullets to cleanse Wounds.

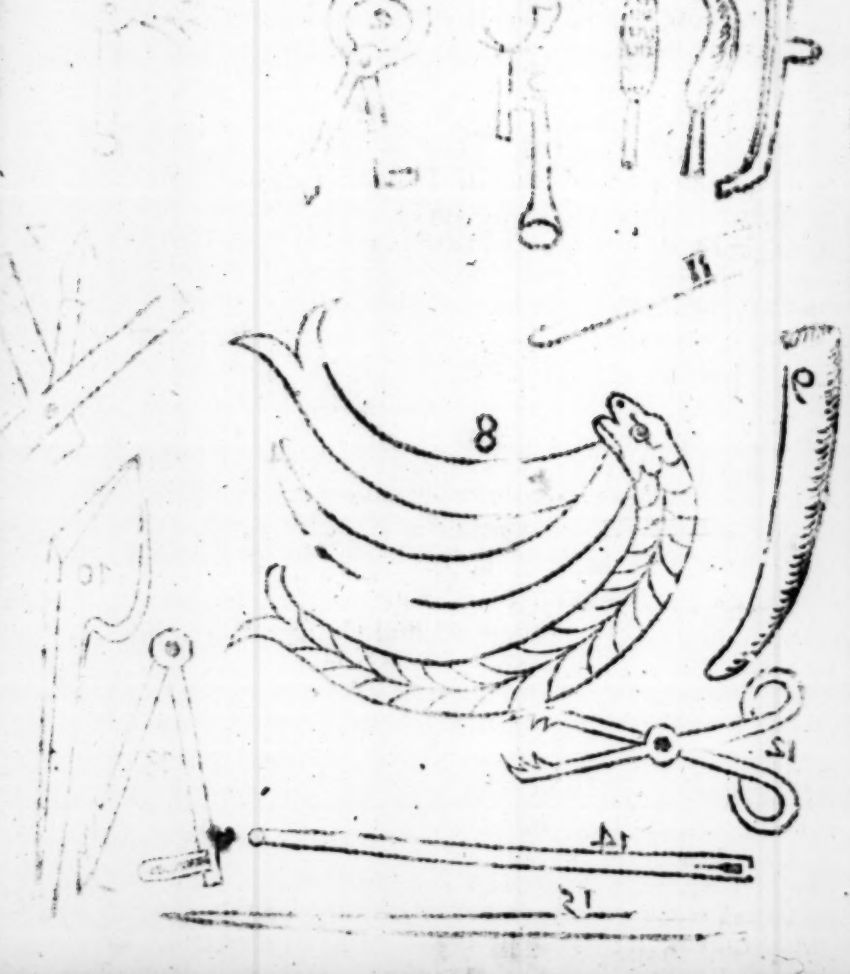
13. The Barnacles to pinch an Horse by the nose or ears, to make him endure pain patiently.

14. The Needle to stitch up Wounds.

And thus you have a full Explanation of all the needful Instruments belonging to the skilful Farrier.

The Farriers Chief Inſtruments.




8
11
12
14
15

THE POSTSCRIPT.

Courteous Reader,

HAving now with infinite Labour and Industry perfected and finished this my MASTSERPIECE for the Cure of Horses and Mares, wherein the Physical part of Horsemanship concerning those manifold inward Diseases which are incident to Horses is clearly discovered, and the Chirurgical part concerning outward Accidents, is plainly opened and described; and having for the more absolute Advancement of Horsemanship, and to give Satisfaction therein, made a particular Speculation and run through every Part, Vein, Bone, Sinew and Artery of the Horse's Body, demonstrating not only their Number and Place by Figure, but also considering their Disaffections and Diseases which do thereunto belong; and having also with much pain (as a Work of this difficult Nature requireth) brought it to a full period, not only giving you a few terms of Art concerning Horsemanship, but making an Anatomy from head to foot of all the Integral parts of a Horse, with their Diseases inward and outward, and their Physical, and Chirurgical Cure exactly prescribed and set down, and have given you ocular Demonstrations of the whole Fabrick of the Horse's Body. So that as in a Map you may behold every small Part, River, Creek or Stream running up and down within the Superficies of the Earth; so I have likewise made and drawn divers Pictures, setting out all the parts and parcels of a Horse's Body, and that they may be plainly seen and considered, I have most lively delineated and figured

figured out every Part and Vein in the Horse, where to find it from Head to foot. I have also Anatomized the Horse in every Bone, that you may perceive their Conjunction, and how they are joined, and thereby judge of their Dislocations, and putting out of their places; and all this you shall at one view behold in the several Parts and Figures which you shall find in this Book.

Therefore, I would advise all Gentlemen, and others, who being of a generous spirit, cannot chuse but delight and take wonderful pleasure in Horses, to consider, that for want of Care and Experience many excellent Horses falling into slight and common Diseases, have either utterly perished, or else been lamed and spoiled; it will be therefore a Study worthy the thoughts of a generous Spirit, to know how to accommodate and apply Cures and Medicines to the outward and inward Diseases of Horses, in regard that a Horse is a Beast whose praises cannot be sufficiently declared.

The Horse is commodious for common use, as pleasing Tillage, and transporting of Carriages and Burthens, and also for Men's continual occasions and daily Journeys. In time of Peace, when Princes did use to recreate themselves with Hunting Deer and other wild Beasts, Horses were always had in high estimation and honour; and those that would out-run the Wind, and made the best speed after the Chace were most esteemed, so that there could be no pleasure in hunting, if they had not Horses to carry them after their Game; and what a brave sight is it to see, in a field an hundred or more hunting Horses riding and running this way or that way after the timorous Deer, or fearful Hare? Therefore the Horse, as he was made for industrious Labour, so he is fit to maintain and procure the Pleasures and Delights of a Prince, or any Nobleman.

And

And more even in War, the Courage and Service of a Horse is daily to be seen, and too well known; he will as it were neigh them by the sound of Drum and Trumpet, prick up his ears into the Battel, and take delight to charge the Enemy: He is all fire, and full of mettel and fury. And thus we see that a Horse is not only convenient for daily occasions of the Husbandmen, of Travellers, and divers others, but in Princes Courts he is highly esteemed for Hunting, for Races, and other Pastimes; and also in the Wars, his daily Service is sufficiently known, being a Beast of a magnanimous and undaunted Courage, so that the Horse is naturally made for Profit and Pleasure; for Labour and Delight; for Peace and War; for Hunting, for Triumphs, and all gallant occasions.

It is pity then that a brave Horse, well limb'd and spirited, falling sick in any inward Disease, or outward accidental infirmity, as Sprains, Dislocation of Joints, Spavins, and hundreds more, should be spoiled in suffering the Disease to grow on him until it be incurable, or in applying Remedies unfit for the Malady; whereby many a Horse becomes maimed, and for want of Cure utterly disabled for any Service.

Therefore my advice and counsel is, (as I said before) that if any Gentlemen whatsoever, shall have their Horses, either by outward accident, as Sprains, sticking in the Feet, and the like; or inward Surfeits, Glanders, Colds and Heats, by intemperate and extraordinary Riding fall sick, or become through the aforesaid Infirmities any way disabled for Service, they should not depend upon their own Experience or Judgment, but should wisely consider with themselves, and consult with the Farrier, reasoning together, and comparing their Opinions concerning the Causes and Cures of such Diseases as are incident to their Horses, that so by this means, by the height of Discourse and Reason they may come to a certain and infallible know-

ledge of the Horse's Diseases and Infirmities, and having diligently searched out the Causes thereof, they may know likewise to cure the same; for you shall meet with many illiterate Farriers, who are not Book-learned, and therefore have no more knowledge than Horses themselves, but are subject through their Ignorance to run into many gross Errors, so that through their Negligence and aforesaid Ignorance, mistaking the causes and cures of Diseases, and in one word, most grosly, for it is good for experience both in the Theorick and Practick part of any Art or Science.

For another (to my knowledge) many good Horses do continually remain lame and unfit for Service, or else do utterly perish for want of understanding their Diseases and the particular Cures thereof. Therefore as wise Physicians do consult together when they meet with a sick Patient, so I advise both Gentlemen and Farriers to compare their Judgments together, whereby the Beast may be saved, the Gentlemen and Farriers gain Credit, and their Experience and knowledge in the many Diseases of Horses much bettered.

Moreover, for the Reader's greater benefit, all Simples and Compounds good for Horses are Alphabetically here placed, and the Conditions of them whether hot or cold, with their Names and Qualities are described. Also what Ounces, Drams and Scruples are to be given to any Drink. If Gentlemen be unacquainted with these things, let them consort with the Farriers, and so confirm their Judgments by Discourse. And so, courteous Reader, I have left you my best Work thus accomplished, and this perfected, that I know, in all the points belonging to the Cure of Horses, it will give full satisfaction, if the Reader follow the Advice of this Postscript.

THE

THE TABLE OF THE FIRST BOOK, CONTAINING All Cures Physical.

Chapter. Page.

THE Composition of Horses bodies
1. Of Elements
2. Of Temperaments
3. Of Humours
4. Of Members
5. Of Powers
6. Of Actions or Operations
7. Of Spirits
8. Of things not natural
9. Of complexions
10. Of inward sicknesses
11. Of signs of Sicknesses
12. Of Observations in Physicking
13. Of Urine and Excrements
14. Of Fevers
15. The Quotidian
16. The Tertian
17. The Quartan

Chapter.		Page.
19	*The continual*	31
20	*The Herique*	32
21	*The Autumn Fever*	32
22	*The Summer Fever*	33
23	*The Winter Fever*	33
24	*Fever by surfeit*	34
25	*Fever pestilent*	35
26	*Of the Plague*	35
27	*Fever accidental*	36
28	*One general approved cure for all Fevers*	37
29	*Diseases in the head*	38
30	*Of Head-ach*	38
31	*Of Frenzie*	39
32	*Of the sleeping evil*	40
33	*A Horse taken*	41
34	*Of the Staggers*	41
35	*Of the Falling-evil*	43
36	*Of the Night-mare*	45
37	*Of the Palsie*	46
38	*Of the general cramp*	47
39	*Of the cold*	48
40	*How to take away any cold*	50
41	*The best of all medicines for the*	52
42	*Of Hide-bound*	52
43	*Of the Glanders*	53
44	*Two certain Cures for the Glanders.*	54
45	*Of the mourning of the Chine*	58
46	*A certain approved medicine for the mourning of the Chine*	59
47	*Of the cough*	60
48	*Of the wet cough*	63
49	*Of the dry cough*	64
50	*Two approved cures for any cold cough*	65
51	*The best Medicines for any dry cough*	67
52	*Of broken Lungs.*	67
53	*Of rotten Lungs.*	68
54	*Of shortness of Breath.*	69
55	*Of the broken winded*	69
56	*Of the consumption*	71
57	*Consumption of the flesh*	72

Chapter.		Page.
58	*To make a Horse fat*	87
59	*The mirror and master of all medicines to fatten a Horse*	88
60	*Of the breast-pain*	89
61	*Of the Anticor, or heart-sickness*	90
62	*Of tired horses*	90
63	*Of loathing of meat*	92
64	*Of casting out drink*	94
65	*Of glut of provender*	95
66	*Of foundring in the body*	96
67	*Of the hungry evil*	98
68	*Of inflammation in the Liver*	99
69	*Of obstruction in the Liver*	99
70	*Of the consumption of the Liver*	99
71	*Of diseases in the Gall*	103
72	*Diseases in the spleen*	104
73	*Of the Yellows*	105
74	*Of the Dropsie*	108
75	*Of the Colick*	100
76	*Of the Belly ake*	101
77	*Of Costiveness*	101
78	*Of the Lax*	103
79	*Of the bloody flix*	104
80	*Falling of the Fundament*	105
81	*Of Botts and Worms*	106
82	*Of pain in the Kidneys*	109
83	*Of the Strangury*	110
84	*Of the pain piss.*	111
85	*Of the stone*	112
86	*Of pissing blood*	114
87	*Of the Colt's evil*	115
88	*Of the mattering of the yard*	116
89	*Of the shedding of the seed*	116
90	*Falling of the Yard*	117
91	*Barrenness of Mares*	118
92	*Consumption in Mares*	119
93	*Rage of love in Mares*	119
94	*Of casting Foals*	119
95	*Of hardness of foaling*	120
96	*Of making Mares cast their Foals*	120

97 *Drinking*

Chapter.

97 *Drinking of Horse-leaches*
98 *Curing of Hey-evil*
99 *Of the Suppository*
100 *Of Glisters*
101 *Of Purgations*
102 *An excellent and approved scouring*
103 *Of neezing or fumes*
104 *Of frictions and bathes*
105 *General drenches*
106 *To make Diapente*
107 *A famous Drench and Ointment*
108 *Of the oil of Oats*
109 *Brief Observations, &c.*
110 *Principles in foals and horses*
111 *Observations in mares*
112 *Observations in buying a horse*
113 *Notes concerning some simples*

Chapter.

75 Of the Colick
76 Of the Belly-ake
77 Of Convulsions
78 Of the Lax
79 Of the bloody flux
80 Curing of the Yard-swelling
81 Of Boar-yard worms
82 Of pain in the Kidneys
83 Of the Strangury
84 Of the pain pyss.
85 Of the stone
86 Of pissing blood
87 Of the Colts evil
88 Of the watering of the yard
89 Of the bedding of the seed
90 Falling of the Yard
91 Barrenness of Mares
92 Corruption in Mares
93 Rage of love in Mares
94 Of casting Foals
95 Of barrenness of foaling
96 Of making Mares keep their Foals

THE TABLE OF THE SECOND BOOK, CONTAINING All Cures Chirurgical.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*Proportions of members*	149
2	*Of the Veins*	151
3	*The Anatomy of Veins*	152
4	*Of the sinews*	154
5	*The Anatomy of sinews*	155
6	*Of all the Bones*	156
7	*The Anatomy of Bones*	157
8	*Of letting blood*	158
9	*Of outward Sorrances*	161
10	*Of weeping eyes*	164
11	*Of blood-shotten eyes*	165
12	*Dimness of sight*	166
13	*A certain and approved Medicine for any Pin, Pearl, or Web*	167
14	*Another to the same effect*	169
15	*Pearl, Pin, or Web*	169
16	*An infallible cure for any Pin, Pearl, or Web*	170
17	*Of the Haw*	170

Chapter.		Page.
15	*Of Moon eyes*	171
16	*Canker in the eye*	172
17	*Stripe in the eye*	173
18	*Wart in the eye*	174
19	*Inflammation in the eye*	174
20	*Impostume in the ear*	175
21	*The pole evil*	176
22	*A rare and certain cure for the pole evil*	178
23	*Of leaved ears*	178
24	*Of the vives*	179
25	*A rare and certain approved cure for the vives*	181
26	*Another excellent cure for the vives*	181
27	*Of the Strangle*	182
28	*Canker in the nose*	183
29	*Bleeding at the nose*	184
30	*Bloody rifts*	185
31	*The Gigges*	186
32	*Of the Lampas*	187
33	*Of the Canker*	187
34	*Canker in the mouth*	188
35	*Heat in the mouth*	189
36	*The tongue hurt*	190
37	*Of the Barbes*	
38	*Pain in the teeth, and of Wolves teeth*	
39	*Crick in the neck*	
40	*Wenns in the neck*	
41	*Swelling after blood letting*	
42	*To stanch blood*	
43	*Falling of the Creſt*	
44	*A certain approved way to raiſe the creſt*	
45	*Mangineſs in the Main*	
46	*Of ſhedding the hair*	
47	*Grief in the withers*	
48	*Any gall'd back*	
49	*Canker in the wicher*	
50	*Of [illegible] ſit faſt*	
51	*Wenns below the ſaddle*	
52	*Navil gall*	
53	*Swaying of the back*	

Chapter.		Page.
54	Weakneſs in the back	209
55	Swelling of the cods	210
56	Of burſtneſs or incording	211
57	Botch in the groin	213
58	A certain approved cure for the botch	213
59	Itch in the tail	213
60	Of the general ſcab	214
61	Two moſt excellent and approved cures for the ſcabs	217
62	Of halting before	218
63	Of halting behind	220
64	Of hidden grief	221
65	Of griefs in the ſhoulder	222
66	Wrinch in the ſhoulder	223
67	Wrinch in the nether joint	225
68	Splatting the ſhoulder	225
69	Shoulder-pight	226
70	A certain cure for any deſperate ſtrain in the ſhoulder, &c.	227
71	Swelling in the fore-legs	228
72	Foundring in the feet	229
73	Of the ſplent	234
74	An approved and certain cure for any Splent	237
75	Of the Serew	237
76	Of the Mallender	238
77	Of an upper attaint	239
78	An approved Medicine for any ſinew-ſtrain	241
79	A nether attaint	241
80	An over reach on the heel	242
81	The mellet	242
82	Falſe quarters	243
83	An horſe hipped	244
84	Of ſtifling	245
85	Bone ſpaven	247
86	Blood-ſpaven	250
87	An approved cure for any Blood-ſpaven whatſoever	251
88	Of the Sellander	251
89	Of the hough-bone	252
90	Of the Curb	253
91	Of the pains	254
92	The mules	257

Chapter. Page.

93 *Of Wind-galls* 258
94 *Strain in the paſtern* 260
95 *To help any halting* 261
96 *Three rare and approved Medicines to cure any ſtrain or Swel-*
ling whatſoever 263
97 *Another approved cure for any ſtrain* 264
98 *Of enterfeering* 264
99 *The ſhackle gall* 264
100 *Caſting in the Altar* 265
101 *The ſcratches* 268
102 *A certain and approved cure for the ſcratches* 268
103 *Of the Ring bone.* 269
104 *Hurts on the cronet* 270
105 *A certain approved cure for any hurt on the Cronet* 271
106 *The crown ſcab* 271
107 *The Quitter bone* 272
108 *Of gruveling* 273
109 *Of ſurbating* 275
110 *Prick in the ſole* 276
111 *To draw out a ſtub* 277
112 *The Fig* 278
113 *A Retrait* 278
114 *Of Cloying* 280
115 *Obſervations for the hoofs* 281
116 *Looſening the hoof* 283
117 *Caſting the hoof* 284
118 *Of Hoof bound* 285
119 *The running Fruſh* 286
120 *An approved and certain cure for the running Fruſh* 287
121 *Of evil hoofs* 288
122 *Of Brittle hoofs* 288
123 *To preſerve hoofs* 289
124 *Hurts on the Hoofs* 290
125 *To ſoften hoofs* 292
126 *To harden hoofs* 293
127 *Of the Mat-lame* 293
128 *To skin a ſore Foot* 294
129 *Of gourded Legs* 295
130 *A moſt certain and approved Cure for gourded Legs* 295

131 *Of*

Chapter.		Page.
131	*Of the Farcy*	294
132	*Of the Canker*	301
133	*Of the Fistula*	303
☞ 134	*A rare and approved cure for any Fistula*	308
135	*Of the Ambury*	308
136	*Of the Cords*	309
137	*Of the string-halt*	309
138	*Of Spur-gall*	310
139	*Of Wounds in general*	310
140	*Hurts with Arrows*	313
141	*Of healing old Sores*	313
☞ 142	*A certain and approved cure for any old Sore*	314
143	*Of Bruisings or Swellings*	314
144	*Of Impostumes*	316
145	*Of cold Impostumes*	317
146	*Of hot Impostumes*	318
147	*Of the Tetter*	318
148	*Of sinews cut, &c.*	319
149	*Of fretting with the Girths*	319
150	*Of Blisters*	320
151	*To take away Bones, &c.*	320
152	*To eat dead Flesh*	321
153	*Of Knots in the Joints*	323
154	*Wounds made with Gun-powder*	324
155	*Of burning with Lime*	325
156	*Biting of a mad Dog*	325
157	*Hurts with a Boars Tusk*	326
158	*The stinging of Serpents*	326
159	*Of Lice*	327
160	*Defence from Flies*	328
161	*Of Bones broken*	328
162	*Bones out of joint*	330
163	*To dry up Humours*	331
164	*To dry up superfluous Moisture*	331
165	*To dry any Swelling*	332
166	*To dissolve Humours*	33
167	*To mollifie Hardness*	333
168	*To harden Softness*	334
169	*To conglutinate*	334

Chapter.		Page
170	*To mundifie*	324
171	*Repercussive Medicines*	325
172	*Of burning compositions*	325
173	*For all manner of Hurts*	329
174	*Powder of Honey and Lime*	337
175	*The taking up of Veins*	337
176	*Of Cauterizing*	339
177	*Cauterizing actual*	340
178	*Cauterizing potential*	342
179	*Of Rowelling*	344
180	*To geld Horses*	346
181	*To make Currals*	347
182	*To make a white Star*	348
183	*To make a black Star*	350
184	*To make a red Star*	350
185	*To make hair to come very soon*	352
186	*To make hair smooth and fine*	353
187	*How to take off hair in any part of a horse*	353
188	*How to cast and overthrow a Horse*	353
189	*How to know the age of a Horse,*	354
190	*How to make an old Horse seem young*	355
191	*How to make that a Horse shall not neigh, neither in company, or when he is ridden*	356
192	*How to make a Horse exceeding quick and nimble of the Spur*	356
193	*How to make a Horse that tires, or is restiff, to go forward*	357
194	*Other most excellent and approved ways to preserve a Horse from tiring, never discloſed till now*	357
195	*How to make a Horse to follow his Master, and to find him out, and challenge him among never so many people*	358
196	*The Nature and special Qualities of all the Simples that are spoken of in this whole Work, set down in the manner of Alphabet*	359
197	*Certain Principles touching Simples*	396
198	*Of Weights and Measures, and how to know them by their Characters*	397
199	*The Farriers Instruments expounded, with their Names and Properties*	398

FINIS

AN
APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

The exacteth RECEIPTS for Curing

ALL

DISEASES

IN

OXEN, COWS, SHEEP, HOGS, GOATS, and all ſmall Cattel.

Never before made Publick.

LONDON,

Printed by *Eliz. Holt* for *M. Wotton* and *George Coniers*, at the *Three Daggers* in *Fleet-ſtreet*, near the *Inner Temple-Gate*; and at the *Golden Ring* in *Little Britain*, 1695.

AN
APPENDIX,
CONTAINING
The exactest RECEIPTS for Curing
ALL
DISEASES
IN
OXEN, COWS, SHEEP, HOGS, COLTS,
and all Small Cattel.

Never before made Publick.

LONDON,
Printed by Eliz. Holt for M. Wotton and George Conyers, at the Three Daggers in Fleet-street, near the Inner Temple Gate; and at the Golden Key in Little Britain, 1695.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

I. Of OXEN.

THE worthy Author having excellently treated of the Order and Government of Horses, both as to their Breeding, Feeding and Managing, as also for the Curing of all Diseases they are, or may be incident to, I thought it very proper to add by way of *Appendix*, this short, but necessary Treatise for the directions of the painful Country-man in his ordering all other sorts of Cattel, *viz.* Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Hogs, *&c.* and herein I shall be as short as may be, giving you only those approved Receipts, which not only the former, but these modern times have frequently experienced.

CHAP. I.

For the Cough in Oxen.

A Cough of no long continuance may soon be remedied by a Drink which you make with Water and Barly-Meal, adding some Bean-flour and some Stich-wort and so given to your Beast.

A certain Cure for an old Cough, is to steep two pound of Hyssop in a quart or two of Water, well mixt with eight pounds of Lentil-pease mingled together: Likewise give the Beast fine Wheat and Roots of Leeks clean washed, well beat together, fasting. You may also stamp Garlick with Dragon-Water, new Ale and Butter, and being warm give it the Beast.

CHAP. II.

For a Beast's hoof hurt.

IF your Ox by chance be hurt with a Stub of Wood, or with a Coulter or Share, on any part of the Clees, mix but the powder of Brimstone with a Salve of pitch and old grease well melted together; then pour it hot on any sore part.

To keep your Beasts from Foundring, when you unyoke them, wash their Feet with cold Water, likewise let their Pasterns and Clees be anointed with old Grease, and they will do well.

To cure the Gravel or a Cut in an Oxe's foot, let him be bathed in warm Water, then melt Tar and old Grease for an Ointment, and if with old fresh Grease you rub and chafe his Feet, before you unyoke him, nothing is better to preserve them.

CHAP. III.

For a bruise on a Beast's shoulder.

LAbouring Oxen may be lame or sore bruised on their Shoulders, either by going on the hard Ground, by a crush of a Post or Gate, let them but bleed on the fore-legs, it shall certainly heal them.

CHAP. IV.

For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body.

YOur Ox will commonly gape, and eat no meat but stand holding his head and mourn, if he has eat any venemous Grass or such like, for Cure whereof give him to swallow down a white Onion bruised, well mix'd with a little good Vinegar, but be sure before he has it, you rub his Mouth and Tongue well with it.

CHAP. V.

To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel

BY taking Cold after a great Rain, by ſome Sickneſs or Surfeit, your Oxen, Kine or other Cattel may be lowſie; for a Remedy, rub and chafe the Beaſt all over with the Decoction of wild Olives mixt with Salt, or take Peny-royal mixt with Garlick ſtampt. Give it the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, and chafe him a while after. Some ſay Rain will kill them, if you ſift Aſhes on their Backs. If you feed your Cattel well, and put them into good paſture, it will not be long e'er they are well. If they have Lice or Ticks about them, theſe Medicines above are very good to kill them with.

CHAP. VI.

Againſt the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn.

YOur Cattel will be in danger of Death (without ſpeedy Remedy) if through negligence of the Keeper, they eat of Barley, Rie or Wheat, that is near ripe; for it will lie and ſprout in their Maws, and cauſe in them a mighty ſwelling. To help them, ſome drive them up and down, till they ſee them aſſwage thereof, and ſo they recover. Some throw a new laid Egg, ſhell and all into the Beaſt's mouth, and break it in his mouth, making him ſwallow it with Ale. Some give him an handful of Nettle-tops well beat, and ſtrained with Wine or honeyed Water. Some ſtamp or ſtrain Juniper leaves or green Berries with Wine, and give it the Beaſt. Others give the Beaſt in Ale or Beer, Soot and the hard Rone of a red Herring well beaten. All which are approved Remedies.

CHAP. VII.

For an Ox or other Beaſt that have loſt their Quide.

AN Ox or other Beaſt will mourn, and eat nothing (becauſe he cannot digeſt what he has already eaten) if he happen to loſe his Quide, as perhaps by ſome occaſion it may fall out of his mouth. To remedy this, ſome take part of the Quide out of another Beaſt's mouth of the like nature; if it be a Cow wants her Quide, they

take part of the Quide of another Cow, giving it her to ſwallow down, and ſhe will be well, and ſo the like of other Beaſts. Some bruiſe a quantity of the Herb called Cudwort, and put it to a quantity of Fat, and ſo make the Beaſt that hath loſt his Quide ſwallow it, and he will amend. Others put a piece of Leaven into the Beaſt's mouth, as aforeſaid, and thereby he will recover: But if he have continued ſo long that he is far ſpent and waſted, take out his Tongue, prick the Vein under it with an Awl in two or three places, and ſo it will bleed, whereby he will be well again.

CHAP. VIII.

For Worms in Cattel.

STamp a good handful of Wormwood, ſtrain it with Ale or Beer and give it to your Cattel troubled with Worms. Some ſtamp Garlick and mix it with Milk or Ale, and give them. Some ſtamp a good handful of Mugwort, and being ſtrained with Ale, give it the Beaſt. Others ſtamp Garden-Creſſes, then ſtrain it with Ale, and give them. All which are very good Remedies for Worms in Cattel.

CHAP. IX.

To help a Beaſt that piſſeth Blood.

IN arable Land you may find ſhell-ſtones, which burnt and beaten to powder, and mixed in a Veſſel of Milk and Water is very proper to be given to your Cattel, or you may take Blood-wort and Knot-graſs, and ſtamp a handful of each together, mix them with good Milk; add to it ſome runnet and ſome of the husks of Acorns. Give this in a drenching Horn twice a day, and it will effect what is deſired.

CHAP. X.

To help Cattel that cannot piſs.

TAke *Cardnus Benedictus* a good quantity, and ſteep it in white Wine a whole night, afterward ſtrain it; you may alſo add ſome Sow-thiſtles, a handful of Aniſeeds and two or three Onions ſliced, all ſteeped the ſame time and ſtrained; and ſo given to the Beaſt it will force Urine, and increaſe the Appetite.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

For Beaſts that are gored or hurt by one anothers horns.

YOU may take red Earth and Oker, and mingle them well together with a little Ale, make a Salve of it and ſpread it upon a plaſter. Aſhes finely ſifted mixed with the Grounds of Ale, have been found an excellent Remedy, but it muſt be made very thick and applied by plaſter to the place grieved. It certainly heals.

CHAP. XII.

To breed Calves and cut them.

AS Husbands relate, it is not convenient to take Calves of which you will make young Bulls, which are calved within the Prime, which is counted five days after the Change, for they will not prove well: And Calves (or any other Beaſt) then Calved are not good to keep, but to eat or ſell: Two Calves of a hundred will be enough to make Bulls. For the reſt it will be beſt to cut them quickly after they have Calved, for two years old; then mix with Litharge the aſhes of Vine-Twigs burnt, and put it upon the Sores, three days after for fear of Swelling anoint it with melted Tar, mingled with the aforeſaid aſhes.

Some approve of gelding of Calves young and tender, not with Iron, but a cloven Hazel-ſtick preſſed together, raiſing the end by degrees, whilſt it is conſumed. This way is counted beſt, for it is performed without wound.

It is not ſo convenient to cut a Calf (that is big) the firſt year, as it is the ſecond.

In Autumn at the decreaſe of the Moon, it is beſt to cut them, the Sign not being in the place; then take two ſtreight laths, like Rulers of Wood, made in faſhion of a pair of Tongs or Barnacles, caſting him down, his feet being traveſſed together, touch him with Iron, afterwards take up the ſtone with the Nerves and ſtrings they hang by and cloſe your Tongs under betwixt his body and ſtones; let the ſtones be on the outſide, but cloſe them hard together, then firſt ſlit the purſe of one Cod, and put forth the ſtone thereat. Let

it be cut off within, hard by the ſaid tongue, cloſe up the Nerves; then take out the other ſtone. For fear of bleeding too much, anoint him with freſh greaſe, and let him go, but cut them ſo, that you leave the end of the ſtring joining to the ſaid Nerve, and he will not loſe ſo much blood, and will not be feminate nor ſtout of his Members. After ye have thus dreſſed, anoint him with freſh greaſe.

CHAP. XIII.

The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves.

THE right and good ordering and nouriſhing of Cattel and Kine (as able Authors relate to us) muſt be the care of the Husbandman himſelf, or ſome honeſt experienced Servant that will have a diligent eye over his Cattel, whether they be Oxen or Kine, at home or abroad, and to ſee that they have (both Morning and Evening) Meat and Water ſufficient, and in due time; and if ſick, to provide them Medicines, and to get ſtalls for them to lie in, ſet Eaſt and Weſt, with windows and doors Southward, but cloſe Northly, for the better ſecurity of the Cattel from the ſharpneſs of the Winter. Some hold ſtrewing of Salt beat, on the boards or ſtones under them to be good for the preſervation of the health. Some ſtrew ſand on the *P*iancks for fear they ſhould ſlide. Be ſure they be well littered after their work at night.

If you put them out in the Spring with your Kine, ſeparate the young Calves as ſoon as they have ſucked their Dams, and put them ſeveral into a houſe, where they muſt remain one day, if you have a mind they ſhould ſuck, turn them out to their Dams only morning and night, then houſe them again. Thus doing, your Calves will be fairer and fatter than going with their Dams. It is neceſſary to give Kine with Calf of the green herb called Melilot, ſtampt with Honey ſteept all night in Milk, the herb aforeſaid (although ſhe be a good Nurſe herſelf) without ſhe be well looked to by the Owner, ſhe will not be able to give nouriſhment enough to her Calf. Farmers Wives may (without any waſte) make Butter and Cheeſe, when the Calves are took up and the milk put apart, gather your Cheeſe well and cloſe, preſs out the Whey clean, if you leave any in the Cheeſe will be ſowr and full of holes, ſcald and waſh your pots and other Veſſels throughly. Let not your Women-ſervants touch the Butter or Cheeſe when they have their monthly terms, for it is

not

not wholeſome: It is not a good ſign for a day-labouring Ox to bate none of his fleſh, but to continue fat, for he is flegmatick. Open his mouth every eighth day, waſh it with his own Water, it will draw forth the flegm, which he would ſtill ſwallow down. The flegm oft-times hinders his eating, and you may diſcern that it occaſions the Catarrh or Rheum by the hanging down his Ears, by the dropping of his Eye, and being watry: Then bruiſe Thyme in white Wine and waſh his mouth, and rub it with Fat and Garlick well mixt; after this waſh it again as before. Several Remedies are preſcribed for it, but for the Catarrh of Rheum, if his eyes do inflame, let but blood on the vein under his tongue, and you ſhall find the Cure perfected to your hearts content.

CHAP. XIV.

For purging of Cattel.

BRuiſe and ſeeth in Water the leaves of Adder, ſtrain them, give them to the Beaſt in the morning, and both Choler and Flegm ſhall be purged downwards by it: It will likewiſe cleanſe the ſtomach of Water.

Others take a quart of Ale or Beer, putting into it a good handful of the tops, leaves and flowers of Centaury, which they boil until a quart of it waſte away; then it being pretty warm (but be ſure well ſtrained) they give it the Beaſt, if the ſign ſerve. This is a gentle purge for choler and flegm, but chiefly flegm, and is neceſſary at any time for the Cattel. If the weather be ſharp, let him be in the houſe ſix hours after. Some put into a pint or more of honeyed Water or Ale a handful of green Broom-crops, which they ſteep at night, and ſo (being ſtrained the next morning) give it the Beaſt warm. There are ſeveral other things might be ſet down, but theſe well ordered, the Beaſts will do well, God willing.

CHAP. XV.

For Fatting of Oxen.

COuntrymen, and my Friends, if you deſire to fat your Oxen well, obſerve theſe following Directions; firſt he will like his Meat the better if he go in the Sun, or if with warm Water he be waſhed three

three times a week; then give him to eat ground Beans, dried Barley, or Elm-leaves; or if you boil Coleworts with Bran, it will make their Bellies looſe, and add to Nutriment more than Barley; Chaff likewiſe ſometimes mixt with ground Beans is very good. If your Ox by labour be weak or feeble, once a month give him Fetches beat, and ſteeped in Water mixt with beaten Bran, and to make your Beaſt lively and nimble, rub his Horns with Turpentine being mixt with Oil-Olive; touch not any other part of his head beſide the Horns, for it will in ſome time endanger his ſight. Alſo if you rub and chafe the Muzzel or Mouth of an Ox with Garlick bruiſed or Leeks well beat; he being made to ſwallow it, he will aſſuredly be cured of a riſing that comes over the heart of the Beaſt, whereby he ſeems as though he would vomit.

CHAP. XVI.

A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongſt Cattel.

THere are ſeveral Remedies for the Plague or Murrain amongſt Cattel, if taken betimes. Infectious blood cauſes the diſeaſe; it is vulgarly diſcerned in the head by a ſwelling, they will have great eyes that run with Water; they will eat though they are ſick, and when once they froth at mouth they are near death. For Cure of this Diſeaſe, it is thought good of ſome to bind a ſmall Cord hard about the neck, then take a Launcet and ſtrike on the farther ſide, where you will find a Vein, bleed him a pint or more, and ſo for the other ſide of the neck: It will ſtanch, the Cord being taken away, but it is more dangerous of Bleeding ſtill if the Sign be there; and if it continue, put to it Nettles and wild Tanſie bruiſed with Salt, and ſome give them Drinks. Thus ſerve your infected Cattle, being all together in one Paſture, by this means you will avoid great peril in this diſeaſe. The Murrain is caught by venomed Graſs, by Company, by poiſoned Water, and by Hunger.

CHAP. XVII.

To rear up Calves that they may increaſe.

IT will be prudence in a Husbandman every year to rear as many Calves as he thinks neceſſary for the maintenance of his Stock. Thoſe

Thoſe that fall betwixt *Candlemas* and *May* are eſteemed of beſt, for at that time they can ſpare their milk, and there will be graſs enough, and they will be able by the next Winter to ſhift for themſelves with other Cattel, being looked after a little; alſo their Dams in *June* will take Bull again and bring other Calves in the ſpace above-mentioned. A Cow is barren oftentimes and the Calf weak, if it be after *May* e'er ſhe Calve, and beſides it would be too chargeable to rear Calves the latter end of the year and to keep their Dams in the Houſe all the Winter, as it is practiſed in ſome places: Again for their own advantage it will be beſt they come betimes, that they may put them out, for graſs increaſes a great deal more milk, when the Kine are abroad, than hay or ſtraw at home, for dry meat will abate milk, graſs does not; and if your Calves have been uſed to graſs, wean them abroad and not at home; your Calves will have great Bellies if you wean them with hay, graſs makes them ſtir better, and not noxious to them, in the Winter-ſeaſon inſtal them, rather than let them run abroad a-nights; when you take them in, you may give them hay, but in the day-time let them feed in the Fields. Obſerve but theſe Directions, and you will find them a great deal fitter for the Plough, when you come to make uſe of them.

CHAP. XVIII.

For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk.

ANiſeeds boiled in Ale or ſtrained, given warm to a Cow that has newly Calved, and being poor wants Milk, is very good for the increaſe of it. Colewort-leaves boiled or raw, will do the like: Alſo Barly and Fennel-ſeed ſod together is good for her. There are ſeveral others, but theſe are the principal approved Medicines to increaſe Milk in Kine.

CHAP. XIX.

For the Shoulder-bone of a Beaſt out of joint.

YOu may eaſily diſcern by the tripping of a Beaſt on the ſame Foot, that the Shoulder-bone is out of joint; for Cure whereof throw him on the ground, and bind faſt his other three legs, then ſtretch out the other leg and put one hand on his ſhoulder, where the

the Bone went out, and the other near his Body within ſide, and place the Bone right, and juſt even with the other Bone; when it is right and faſt together, get two wooden pricks of a length, and boring two holes croſs under the skin in the middle of the joint, from both ſides of the joint, they muſt be diſtant an inch and an half from each other, and there put your pricks croſs under the skin, then wrap it round with ſtrong pack-thread binding of it round the ends of the pricks, draw up the skin in a lump with it; ſo when your thread is faſtened, there let it be until it drop away of it ſelf, and the Beaſt will be well, fit for work in two days time. If it be in the heat of Summer, anoint the place with Tar by reaſon of the Flies.

CHAP. XX.

To cure Cattel that be ſick and will not feed in Paſture.

BRuiſe and boil of Horehound, Camomil, Betony, Cinquefoil, Peny-royal and Agrimony, of each a like quantity alike, in a quart of ale, until half of it be conſumed, with a ſtick of bruiſed Liquorice; afterwards ſtrain it, and mix it with three peny-worth of good Treacle, give it him faſting, when it is well mixt together, walk him for ſome ſpace after, and he will certainly recover.

CHAP. XXI.

A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be ſound.

GRipe him on the back with you hand behind the fore-ſhoulder and if he be not ſound, he will ſhrink with his back, and almoſt fall down; but on the contrary, if he be ſound, he will not ſhrink in the leaſt.

CHAP. XXII.

A Remedy for the Diſeaſe in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick, or any ſuch like thing.

IF at any time your Beaſt be troubled with the Colick, Belly-ake or gnawing in the guts, it will ſpeedily give him eaſe, if you boil good ſtore of Oil in the Water he uſes to drink. For the Bloody Flux give the Beaſt ſome powder of Wood, Roſe-ſeeds well beat & dried, and brewed with a quart of ale, and it will cure him.

CHAP. XXIII.

For Weakneſs, Stiffneſs or Soreneſs in the Sinews of a Beaſt.

IF your Beaſt's Sinews be at any time tender or do ſhrink, you may perceive it by the ſlow pace he goes. Bind to the place out of order Mallows and Chickweed; but they muſt be boiled in the Dregs of Ale or Vinegar, and being very warm when you lay them on, they will very much ſtrengthen the Sinews.

CHAP. XXIV.

A Cure for the Palate of a Beaſt's Mouth that is down.

THe Palate of a Beaſt's Mouth by hard working will be apt to come down, which you may diſcern by two things, they will often ſigh, and would fain eat, but cannot. To cure him, throw him down, putting it up again with your hand, then bleed him in the Palate, and anoint it with Honey and Salt, and turn him to Graſs, for you muſt not let him eat any Hay or dry Meat.

CHAP. XXV.

For any inward Diſeaſes in Cattel.

TAke a handful of Wormwood and as much Rue, and boil them in a quart of Ale; then let it be ſtrained, and put into it two ſpoonfuls of the juice of Garlick, as much of Houſe-leek, and as much of *London*-Treacle; make it lukewarm, mix them well together, and then make the Beaſt drink of it, and you will in a ſhort time ſee the virtue of it againſt any inward Diſeaſe or drooping in Cattel.

CHAP. XXVI.

For all ſorts of Bruiſes in general.

FRy the leaſt ſort of Brook-lime with Tallow, and apply it hot to the place that is hurt, and if it does not expel it, yet it will ripen it, and break it, and heal it, as many by Experience have found to be very true.

CHAP. XXVII.

A Remedy to kill any ſorts of Worms either in Oxen, Cows, or Calves.

CHop the Herb Savin very ſmall, beat it with freſh Butter, then roll it up in Balls; give it the Beaſt, and it will deſtroy the Worms in their Bodies ſooner than any other thing. Likewiſe a little black Sope mixt with ſweet Wort, and given the Beaſts to drink, will make them void their Worms better and quicker than other things.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Againſt the Gout in Cattel.

YOU may diſcern by the often riſing and ſwelling of your Beaſts Joints, whether they have the Gout or not: For Cure whereof, boil Galengal in the dregs of Ale and ſweet Butter, and being made like a Pultice, clap it to the place that is diſordered.

CHAP. XXIX.

For Purging of Cattel as ſome do.

GReen weedy Graſs growing under Trees in Orchards is the beſt thing to purge Beaſts naturally, and the beſt purging Medicine for them is Sugar-Candy, Butter and Tar, well mingled together, then rolled up in Balls as big as Hen-Eggs, and ſo given them.

CHAP. XXX.

Things good to breed Milk in Kine.

IF your Cows Milk after ſhe hath Calved come not down as it was wont to do, beat to Powder, Coriander and Aniſeeds, and put them into a quart of ſtrong Poſſet Ale, and make her drink every Morning; which thing alone will beget great and wonderful increaſe in her Milk: beſides it will aſſuredly cauſe it to ſpring, and come down in abundance.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXI.

For the Rot in Beaſts.

IF your Beaſts wax lean, ſlight their Meat, or ſcour much behind, you may aſſure your ſelf they are ſubject to rottenneſs; you muſt beat to Powder Bay-berries, and mix with it Myrrh, Ivy-leaves, Elder-leaves and Fever-few, a good lump of Clay and Bay-Salt all together in ſtrong Urine, and when it is warm, give the Beaſt half a pint thereof to drink, and it will firmly knit and preſerve them.

CHAP. XXXII.

Againſt Vomiting of Blood.

I Muſt give you to underſtand, that this Sickneſs happens to your Beaſts by being hard kept, and then put into good Paſture, where they feed over-much, and ſo get ſuch rank Blood, that you may diſcern it flow from their Mouths. The remedying of this muſt be to bleed the Beaſt, and afterwards to drink give him ſome Bole-Armoniack and Ale mixt together.

CHAP. XXXIII.

For the over-flowing of the Gall in Beaſts.

IF the Skin and the Eyes of your Beaſt look yellow, it is a true ſign of the over-flowing of the Gall: For a Remedy, firſt let him blood, afterwards for three mornings one after another, make him a Drink of two pints of Milk, Saffron and Turmerick; mix it all together; then give it him, and it will help him.

CHAP. XXXIV.

To draw out Thorns.

IF at any time your Beaſts accidentally get Thorns or Stubs in their Feet, get but ſome black Sope and black Snails, and let them be well beat to Salve; then lay them to the ſore place, and it will by degrees draw them out, and your Beaſt (whether Ox, Cow or Calf) will in a ſhort time be perfectly well again.

CHAP. XXXV.

A Cure for Feverish Cattel.

BEasts many times surfeit by their Meat being raw and musty, whereby the Fever cometh upon them, or if they are kept in the Cold (through a Flux of cold Humours ingendred by it) they will have a Fever. If they tremble, groan or foam at mouth, it is a true sign they have it: To cure him, let him blood, sprinkle his Hay with Water, and boil three or four Plantane Roots, and two spoonfuls of *London* Treacle in a quart of Ale, and then give it him to drink.

These Remedies afore-mentioned are the best (as by experience several have found) for Oxen, Cows, and Calves, some I know by my own Experience; others are collected out of such able skilful Authors that would never have prescribed such Medicines, if they would not certainly have cured the Beasts.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

II. Of SHEEP.

CHAP. I.

Some ſhort but ſure Rules for a certain Cure of Diſeaſes in Sheep.

IF the greateſt quantity of your Sheep happen to fall ſick, change of Paſture will conduce much toward their Recovery, and place them a good diſtance from the Ground they went in before: If the Murrain come by Cold, put them in the Sun; if by Heat, in the Shade: Alſo over-driving them, and ſo will lying ſtill be the worſe for their Diſtemper; you muſt keep them going on a moderate pace. Likewiſe it will be much better to part them at their new Paſtures, for in a ſmall parcel the Infection will not prevail ſo much as in a great quantity, and a few will be ſooner cured than a great many.

CHAP. II.

For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep.

BRimſtone and Tar well ſtirred together over a ſmall Fire is an excellent Remedy; when the Wool is ſheared off anoint the ſore place with that above mentioned. Likewiſe Powder of Brimſtone mixt with Wax is good for the Scab.

CHAP. III.

For Sheeps Feet.

A Certain Cure for Sheeps-Feet that are Galled, is, if you beat a Pomegranate not ripe with Alum, and adding to it a little Vinegar, apply it to the place. Or the powder of Galls burnt mixed with red Wine, and ſo laid unto it, is very good.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

For broken Bones in Sheep.

IF accidentally any one happen to break his Leg, the Bones will be knit again, if you bruiſe young Aſhen Leaves, and lay to it, or apply to it the Herbs of Comfrey, Betony, or Cuckow-ſpit well ſtampt, and the bones will knit.

CHAP. V.

For the Glanders or Snivel in Sheep.

GIve them to drink honied Water, well mingled with the Juice of Betony, and it will help them. Some for their Cure take a Stick, and (at what time they think fit) cleanſe their Noſes of all the Matter and Snivel they can get out. Others ſtamp the Herb called Bucks-beard with Wine, which they ſay is an excellent Remedy for to drive Cold or Flegm out of their Bodies.

CHAP. VI.

For Sickneſs in Lambs.

IF your Lambs have a Fever, or are grieved otherwiſe, the diſtemper will be catching; therefore take them from their Dams, and if you would have them well again in a ſhort time, force them to drink rain water mingled with ſome of the Ewes milk. Alſo ſome pour down their Throats, Goats milk with a Horn, and for ſome time after keep them warm; which is preſcribed for an excellent Medicine.

Sometimes your Lambs will have ſcabs on their Chins, ſometimes on other places; if on their Chins, waſh the palate of the Mouth and Sores with Cypreſs Leaves ſtamped in Water; or Tar and Hogs-greaſe mixt and made into an Ointment, is very good, but you muſt waſh the ſcab with Vinegar, before you anoint it. If they happen to be ſcabby on the Brisket or elſewhere, I might ſet down ſeveral Remedies, but I ſhall inſtance but one, which I do imagine to be the beſt, becauſe moſt Shepherds do generally uſe it, which is only ſome fine Greaſe mingled with Tar, and ſo to lay it upon the place infected.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Some ſhort but neceſſary things to be obſerved concerning Sheep.

FIrſt, if the Wool come off when they have been ſcabby, greaſe them with Tar and Gooſe-greaſe, and it will grow again.

Secondly, for the Cough, ſtamp the great Nettle, then let it be ſtrained with Wine; and give him of the Juice thereof to drink, but it muſt be warm; and ſo he will be well. You muſt be ſure to take it in time, for until it be gone he will not be fat, but abate in his Fleſh daily.

Thirdly, if a Sheep be blind, which they will be for a ſpace at one time or other, ſome ſay he will be well again of himſelf, but if you bleed him under the Eye, or drop Tar in his Eye, he ſhall recover his ſight the ſooner.

Fourthly, Scabs often come on the Muzzels of Sheep by pricking their Lips and Muzzels with eating the Tops of Furz, which you muſt anoint with Plantan and freſh Greaſe boiled both together and it will perfect their Cure.

Fifthly, They are troubled with the Haw in the Eye, for which the Juice of Pimpernel dropt into the Eye and ſhut it cloſe, is very good.

Sixthly, A Shepherd muſt always carry with him his Knife Sheep-hook, Sheers and Tar-Box, and a Dog muſt not be wanting, which muſt be ſuch a one as he has brought up to his own command, to go or ſtand ſtill as he pleaſes.

Seventhly, Sheep ſometimes have the Pox, which you may diſcern by things like red Pimples on their Skin, and Locks of Wool will hang looſe on their Backs; the Pimples will be as broad as a Groat and many Sheep for want of early looking after, die by it.

Eighthly, Sheep by feeding on Hills or places full of Fern are in the Spring-time commonly troubled with the Cramp, or as ſome call it the Wood-Evil; which Diſeaſes (without ſpeedy Remedy) will endanger their Lives in two days time. For Cure cauſe them to be anointed with Neats-Foot, Oil and Houſleek, ſtamped together, or Scallions of Bugloſs ſtamped and bound to their Legs is good. Likewiſe it will help towards their Cure to remove them into ſome other lower Meadows to feed in.

Ninthly, Sheep in the hot ſeaſon will be troubled with Fly-blows

and

and Maggots, which you may be certain of, if they bite, ſtamp or ſhake their Tails, and many time they are wet; to dry it up, throw Powder that is very dry upon it, ſome time after ſtrike it off again, and anoint it well with Tar, and they will be perfectly well.

Tenthly, by cropping ſome noxious Herb your Sheep may be poiſoned, which you may eaſily know by their Heads hanging down, and they will ſwell, and ſtagger, and foam at Mouth, and in a ſhort time (without ſpeedy Remedy) fall down dead, which to prevent, cut the bladders which you will ſee under his tongue, then chafe it with Lome beat ſmall, or the crums of Bread, afterwards waſh it down. If his water be ſtopped, pour ſome Drink down his throat, and give him juice of Wormwood in Vinegar, and it will cure him.

Eleventhly, Sheep may have Worms in their Guts, which come by reaſon of ſome cold Humor; you may know it by ſeveral things, he will not feed as formerly, he groans, hangs down his head, and many times ſwells, which without help will ſpeedily kill him: Now for his Cure give him Powder of Worm ſeed in a little Malmſey or Powder of Savin in Ale or Wine finely beat and it will throughly heal them.

Twelfthly, if you imagine your Sheep have the Rot, honeyed Water warm mixt with Elder-berries will clear their Bodies of Water, or ſeeth a little Water, put ſome Milk to it, then give it to them; for it will purge them betwixt their Fleſh and Skin. If they will drink ſalt Water after they have been a great Journey, you may aſſure your ſelf of their health, and they will do well.

CHAP. VIII.

For the red Water in Sheep

SHeep are oftentimes troubled with the red Water, which is a poiſonous Diſeaſe, very noxious to the Heart; for this Water will ſo ſcald and conſume that at length he will periſh by it, without ſome ſpeedy help; which muſt be done thus: Firſt, Bleed him in the Foot between the Claws, and under the Tail; then ſtamp Wormwood and Rue with Bay-Salt, and it will cure them, being applied to the ſore places.

CHAP. IX.

For the Itch or Scab in Sheep.

WAſh the ſcabby places of your Sheep with the Root of Camelion noir and the Herb Bears-foot boil'd both together in Water; it muſt be warm; and without any other thing they will be cured.

CHAP. X.

Herbs hurtful for Sheep.

SEveral Herbs are very noxious to Sheep, I ſhall inſtance the principal; Firſt, Spear-wort, which uſually grows in moiſt places, is thick and hard of digeſtion. Knot graſs and Mill-dew'd Graſs are not good, Black Ellebore is very hurtful for Sheep or other Cattel, if they eat any ſtore of it. Two-peny Graſs, and dead Graſs or rotten Fog, which is in low Commons and Meadows is very deſtructive to them, and will breed the Rot in them, Hemlock and Muſhrooms are naught for Sheep. Laſtly, If Sheep eat Oak-leaves when they are green, it is bad for them; eſpecially for young Lambs, for it will certainly kill them.

CHAP. XI.

Againſt the Gall in Sheep.

SHeep will ſtand ſhrinking their Four-feet together, if they are troubled with the flowing of the Gall; you muſt let him blood under the Tail, then give him to drink half a ſpoonful of good Vinegar and as much *Aqua Vitæ* mixed together, and he will be better.

CHAP. XII.

The Turning Diſeaſe in Sheep.

SHeep oftentimes hold their Head on one ſide, by reaſon of this Turning Sickneſs. Some Shepherds give advice, that if the Sheep hold their Heads on the right ſide, ye muſt cut off the Horn on the left ſide, for under the Horn there lies a Worm which will be killed if you anoint it with Tar, and they will be well again.

CHAP. XIII.

Some Directions to encreaſe Milk in Ewes.

THere is nothing better than altering of Paſture for the increaſing of Milk in Ewes; put them to graze ſometimes in Valleys, ſometimes in Hills, let them feed longeſt upon ſhort Graſs, if it be ſweet, for there they eat moſt heartily; for touching giving them Fitches, Dill and Aniſeeds, and ſuch like, Milk will ſpring much better by Change of Paſture.

CHAP. XIV.

For looſe Teeth.

IF your Sheeps Teeth be looſe, let him blood in his Gums, and under the Tail, and afterwards rub his Teeth with Earth, Salt and Sage, and they will faſten.

CHAP. XV.

For the Wild Fire in Sheep.

THere is a dangerous Sickneſs, which is called the Wild-Fire, that will infect the whole Flock, if not lookt after. Some bury the firſt infected Sheep alive, with his heels upwards before the Sheep-Coat door; but it is very certain you may ſave your Sheep alive, if you take but Chervil, ſtamp it with old Ale, make a Salve thereof, and anoint the Sore therewith, and your Sheep will be ſure to recover again.

The right Method for the Ordering of Cattel.

III. Of HOGS.

THere are ſeveral Diſeaſes which Hogs (as well as other Creatures) are incident unto, which you may find diſcourſed of in the Pages following, with Directions for the Cure of them.

CHAP. I.

For Impoſtumes under the Throats of Hogs.

IF your Hogs have Kernels or Impoſtumes underneath their Throats, they muſt be let blood under the Tongue; and when they have bled ſufficiently, beat ſome fine white Meal and Salt together, and rub and chafe his Throat and Groin with it, and he will do well. Others preſcribe as followeth: You muſt give them ſix ounces of *Garum*, which you may buy at the Apothecaries, then with a flaxen Cord bind it thereunto with Ferules of Wood. and hang them about his neck, ſo that they may touch the Impoſtumes and Kernels, and it will certainly cure them.

CHAP. II.

Directions to preſerve your Hogs from the Meaſels.

IN the heat of Summer, as from the middle of *July* to the middle of *Auguſt*, in which time are the hotteſt and Dog-days, you muſt give your Hogs ſome cooling Herbs chopt ſmall, as Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Violet-leaves, Fumitory, Dandelion, Sow-thiſtle, and ſuch like, or the Leaves of Dwale, they muſt be mingled with their Waſh or other Meat. Theſe Herbs aforeſaid are very good to keep them in a cool temper; you muſt uſe but a few of the Leaves of Dwale, for they are exceeding cold in Operation. For I muſt acquaint you that it is the great and vehement heat of Blood in

Hogs which doth breed the Meaſels. There will be Kernels in the outward part of the Body, which will appear in his Throat, and at the roots of his Tongue, and you may firſt know his Infection, if he be hoarſe, or rattle in his voice when he cries, it is a certain ſign; then if you look into his mouth, you may ſee the Kernels under his Tongue; thus you may know Meaſly Hogs. Likewiſe to preſerve them from the Meaſels, put mens Urine amongſt their Waſh, and it will keep them from it. Sope-water and Fiſh-water is naught for them, it will breed the Meaſles: Some ſay, if you often uſe to put Muſtard amongſt the Waſh they eat, it will in a ſhort time make them Meaſly.

Now it would be neceſſary to give you ſome Directions to cure your Meaſled Hogs, for take all the Care you can to prevent it, ſome may happen to be ſo. An approved Remedy to help them, is to ſhut them up in a Sty without any thing whatſoever, either Meat or Water for the ſpace of three days and three nights. Then make a hole in the tops of half a dozen Apples, and take out the Cores; afterwards fill it up with Brimſtone beat to Powder, and cover the Brimſtone with Pieces of Apples, and ſo throw them to your Meaſly Hogs; firſt give him one or two, and ſo the reſt, for being hungry he will eat them all; then after two or three hours give him a little Meat, and no more until the next Morning; then the next Morning ſerve him as aforeſaid with five or ſix Apples, as before is directed. Thus ſerve him five or ſix days, and he will be well again. Alſo ſome mix the Lees of Sope, with ſome ſtrong Lee of a Buck, and give that, and uſe them as the other aforeſaid, and give him no Meat for an hour or two after; and they ſay this is a very good Remedy againſt the aforelaid Sickneſs.

CHAP. III.

What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat.

THE Roots of Daffadils are very good for to cleanſe the Lights of Hogs. Knot-graſs is good for Hogs, and they love it marvellous well; it binds the Belly, and cauſes Urine; the Juice of it put into the ears, helps the pains in the Head; theſe are the Herbs that are wholſome.

Likewiſe many there be that are not wholſome: The Herb called Gooſe Foot, or the Camelion Thiſtle will kill Hogs, if they eat

eat of them. If they eat of Hen-bane or Hemlock, which is ſo cold in operation, that they are very nigh unto a cold Venom, and will make Hogs lie as if they were dead for ſome time; to Cure them, warm the Juice of Cucumbers, give it them to drink, for it will make them Vomit, whereby they will ſo throughly cleanſe their Bodies, that in a ſhort time they will recover their Health again.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Gargit, Catarrh, and Staggers in a Hog.

Firſt, for the Garget, it is very noxious to them and many are killed by it, you may know by a Swelling and Inflammation in the Throat behind a Hog's Jaws. For to give him eaſe they do uſe to ſlit the Sore in the middle, and then flay up the Skin on both ſides of it; afterwards they rub it with Salt within, and lay Tar without, and he does well. Some rub it with Nettles and Salt. Some mix burnt Alum with Plantane.

Hogs have ſometimes the Catarrh or Rheum, which makes their Eyes water; it happens to them by eating a great deal of rotten Fruit, which breeds a corrupt matter almoſt as bad as the Plague. For help, old Capers mixt with their Meat or Waſh is good; or Coleworts both red and white put amongſt their Meat is alſo good: Some mingle Marſh-Mallows with the Meat. Others boil Liver-wort in honied Water, and give it them. All theſe aforeſaid are excellent things to ſtay the Rheum or Catarrh.

For the Staggers in a Hog, give him of the Herb called Stare-wort or Gall-wort in Milk, and he will amend.

CHAP. V.

How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs.

As long as your Hogs are louſie they will not thrive; be ſure you keep them well in cold Weather, for it is through Poverty and want of good feeding in the Winter, they are ſo full of this Vermin. To rid them, take Quick-ſilver, firſt kill it with faſting Spittle and Sallet-Oil; then mix therewith freſh Greaſe or Neats Foot Oil, and ſo anoint them all over. Some melt Sope and Tar together, with the Powder of Staves acre, and ſo anoint them

them with it. If Maggots breed in your Hogs Ears, or any other hollow place under the Skin, drop the juice of Hemlock into the hole, and they will die or avoid; alſo take but Oil and put in that place, all the Maggots will die or avoid the place incontinent, if they live; this has been well experienced by ſeveral Perſons.

CHAP. VI.

How to ſpay a Sow.

YOu muſt firſt lay her upon ſome Form or Board, then with a Cord bind her mouth faſt, lay her ſo that her left ſide be upward; then take your Launcet and ſtrip away the Hair two inches long, three fingers from the hinder Leg, and likewiſe from the edge of her Flank. Then with the point of your Launcet cut aſlope her Belly through the skin two inches and a half long, ſo that you may put in your Fore-finger towards her Back, and there you ſhall feel two Kernels as big as Acorns on both ſides the Birth, and with the top of your finger draw on to the ſlit, then cut the ſtring with your Knife; ſo take out the other alſo, and cut them off, then ſtrike away the Blood and ſtitch up the ſlit again with a ſtrong Thread. Be ſure you have a ſpecial care of her Guts; then afterward anoint her with Tar, and ſo you may let her go.

THE TABLE OF THE APPENDIX.

I. Of OXEN.

Chapter		Page.
	For the Cough in Oxen	1
2	*For a Beast's Hoof hurt*	2
3	*For a Bruise on a Beast's Shoulder*	2
4	*For a Beast that has accidentally gotten Venom either in his Tongue or Body*	2
5	*To kill Lice or Ticks in Cattel*	3
6	*Against the Swelling of Cattel by eating of green Corn*	3
7	*For an Ox or other Beast that have lost their Quide*	3
8	*For Worms in Cattel*	4
9	*To help a Beast that pisseth Blood*	4
10	*To help Cattel that cannot piss*	4
11	*For Beasts that are gored or hurt by anothers Horns*	5
12	*To breed Calves and cut them*	5
13	*The Government of Cattel and the ordering of Kine with their Calves*	6
14	*For Purging of Cattel*	7
15	*For Fatting of Oxen*	7
16	*A certain Cure for the Murrain or Plague amongst Cattel*	8
17	*To rear Calves that they may increase*	8
18	*For a Cow that has newly Calved wanting Milk*	9
19	*For the Shoulder-Bone of a Beast out of Joint*	9
20	*To cure Cattel that be sick and will not feed in Pasture*	10
21	*A certain Sign to know if an Ox or Cow be sound*	10
22	*A Remedy for the Disease in the Guts of an Ox or Cow, if it be Flux, Colick, or any such like thing*	10
23	*For Weakness, Stiffness or Soreness in the Sinews of a Beast*	11
24	*A Cure for the Palate of a Beast's Mouth that is down*	11

Chapter.		Page.
25	*For inward Diſeaſes in Cattel.*	11
26	*For all ſorts of Bruiſes in general*	11
27	*A Remedy to kill any ſort of Worms either in Oxen Cows or Calves*	12
28	*Againſt the Gout in Cattel*	12
29	*For the Purging of Cattel as ſome do*	12
30	*Things good to breed Milk in Kine*	12
31	*For the Rot in Beaſts*	13
32	*Againſt Vomiting of Blood*	13
33	*For the over-flowing of the Gall in Beaſts*	13
34	*To draw out Thorns*	13
35	*A Cure for Feveriſh Cattel*	14

II. Of SHEEP.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*SOme ſhort but ſure Rules for a certain Cure in Diſeaſes of Sheep*	15
2	*For the Itch and Maggots in your Sheep*	15
3	*For Sheeps Feet*	15
4	*For broken bones in Sheep*	16
5	*For the Glaunders or Snivel in Sheep*	16
6	*For Sickneſs in Lambs*	16
7	*Some ſhort but neceſſary things to be obſerved concerning Sheep*	17
8	*For the Red Water in Sheep*	18
9	*For the Itch or Scab in Sheep*	19
10	*Herbs hurtful for Sheep*	19
11	*Againſt the Gall in Sheep*	19
12	*The Turning Diſeaſe in Sheep*	19
13	*Some Directions to encreaſe Milk in Ewes*	20
14	*For looſe Teeth*	20
15	*For the Wild-Fire in Sheep*	20

III. Of HOGS.

Chapter.		Page.
1	*FOR Impoſthumes under the Throats of Hogs*	21
2	*Directions to preſerve your Hogs from the Meaſels*	21
3	*What Herbs are good, and what are bad for Hogs to eat*	22
4	*Of the Garget, Catarrh, or Staggers in a Hog*	23
5	*How to kill Lice or Maggots in Hogs*	23
6	*How to ſpay a Sow*	24

FINIS.

THE

Complete Jockey;

Or the most exact

RULES and METHODS

To be observed for the training up of

RACE-HORSES.

SHEWING,

How to prepare them for any Heats or Courses, with the manner of their Keepings, Instructions for their Dressing and Looking to, their Scourings, Diets, Matches, and Racings, with every Particular to be observed therein; the like not published to the World before.

To which is added,

The most Experienced way for Buying Horses; and Instructions to avoid being Cheated upon the like occasion; with a relation of the Cheats and Tricks the *Jockies* and *Horse-Coursers* put on the unexpert Buyers.

Written for the Pleasure and Profit of all Gentlemen and others, who take delight in any thing of this Nature.

LONDON, Printed in the Year, 1695.

OF

Race-Horſes.

CHAP. I.

The beſt Method, and ſpeedieſt way for Ordering of Race-Horſes, to fit them for any Match in what Eſtate ſoever they be.

AT ſuch time as a Horſe is matched, (or deſigned to be matched) for a Race, or Courſe, let him, to whom the Horſe belongs, or whoſoever ſhall have the ordering of that Affair, be very circumſpect in obſerving the Condition or Ability of Body in which the Horſe is at the time of ſuch his being matched, which chiefly ought to be taken notice of in three ſeveral Rules or Methods, the which I here ſhall undertake to lay down for the better ſatisfaction of thoſe whom it hereafter may concern.

1 The firſt of which is, if your Horſe be Foggy, Groſs, or over-fat when he has been lately taken from Graſs, or Soil.

2. The ſecond likewiſe to be obſerved is, If he be more than ordinary Lean, either by reaſon of two hard Riding, or any Diſeaſe has pulled him down by hindring his feeding.

3. Thirdly, If he be in good plight, and has had good keeping, dealt well by, and moderately rid or exerciſed.

Now in the first of these you cannot take less than two Months, or ten Weeks, to bring your Horse into a fit condition for a Match, which must be done by moderately Dieting him and often Exercising him, which wasts the superfluous grease, and makes him long-winded, both which will make him more fit and apt to win the Wager laid upon his Head.

As for the Second, If your Horse be exceeding poor, then about six Weeks space must be allowed, with good feeding and moderate exercise.

Now for the Third and Last of the fore-mentioned conditions, which is a *medium* betwixt both; lesser time will serve to fit him for the match you do design to have him run. About a Month or five Weeks will be sufficient, if you observe the Dieting of him, which must be indifferently well.

But seeing I have given you an account of the particular Estates or Conditions of Horses; So now I must give you some cautions therein to be observed: First then, note if your Horse be fat and unwieldy, you must have a regard to his Exercise, for if he be over-free, and is willing to put out his strength and abilities to the utmost, so that his flesh quickly fall away, you must restrain him, and not put him to too hard Exercise, for he cannot bear it like those, who are hardy by nature, and grow fat with any Diet, or any reasonable Exercise.

Yet farther, if your Horse be in a poor condition by any hard or ill usage or disorder of Body, yet notwithstanding any thing in the like nature, grows quickly into good liking, and so continues for a considerable time; you need not, neither shall you be so tender of him as in the case of that just before mentioned, nor at all restrain him from his Exercise, for if you do, he will soon grow unfit for your purpose

Thus far have I thought fit to instruct such as are unskilful, or have not the most expedient Method, for preparing Horses for Races.

And now I think it most convenient to give my Reader a full satisfaction and ample instruction as to the dieting and using of Horses, and lay open the secrets most necessary to be observed by all according to truth and the most innate Sincerity. And first of the fat Horse, because in him are comprehended the other two, by reason he may be made lean, or between both, as the Master of him thinks most convenient, *&c.*

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

The way and manner of dieting or feeding a Horſe to fit him for a Race, being Fat or Groſs, immediately after his being taken from Paſture or Soil, as to the firſt two weeks.

NOW if you lay a Wager, or match a fat or unwieldy Horſe, which has been made ſo, either by being kept at graſs in long idleneſs; or ſtanding at his Stall, and there over-laviſhly fed; to bring him to a fit condition to perform your expectation, for the firſt Fort-night you muſt be up as ſoon as day appears, if not before, to attend him, and having put on his Bridle, which you muſt be ſure always to let hang upon the Rack cloſe by him, dipped either in Beer or Ale, which will not only put him in mind of his being rid, but alſo make him the more familiar with it, and love it the better when on. This being done, cleanſe the Stable of the filth, and then fall to dreſſing of him, which according to the beſt method, is as follows.

Firſt, Curry him well in every part, but begin with the Head, then his Neck, Back, and Hinder-parts, after that his Shoulders and Fore-legs as low as the Knees, that done, uſe your duſting Cloth, or ſomething in the like nature, and with it duſt him over in every part, then rub him well with your hard bruſh, beginning firſt at the Head, and omitting no place whatſoever there, as the Temples, Noſe, Ears, Under-jaws, and Fore-head, then proceed to the others parts as before, not forgetting his ſhanks, nor ſetting on of his Hoofs, going backwards by degrees till the whole Body be well rubbed, after that take your wet hand and ſtroke him over gradularly, not leaving him rough nor wet in any part. Then with your wet hands or a ſoft Cloth rub gently his Yard, Teſticles, Sheath, Ears, between his Thighs, and all other private places whatſoever: After which, with a Hair-cloth or any other hard Cloth, if that be wanting, rub him over again, being ſure to obſerve the rubbing of his Face well, as his Cheeks, between his Jaws, and on his Fore-head, the riſing of his Neck, and Fetlocks, and other places as you ſhall ſee occaſion.

Which

Which being well done, take a clean woollen cloth ſomething fine, and cleanſe him with the ſame, beginning at the Head, and ſo proceeding as you were taught before, leaving no part unrubbed; Laſtly, with a Curry-comb well wetted, comb out the Main and Tail very decently; thus much for rubbing and cleanſing; which is as neceſſary in the ordering of Race-Horſes, as their meat. The next thing to be obſerved is, to cover his Body with a large Cloth for that purpoſe, either of thick Kerſy or thin Stuff according to the ſeaſon of the Year, or as heat or cold ſhall beſt agree with the nature of the Horſe, upon which put his Saddle, girting the foremoſt Girth very hard, but the other ſlack; then under it thruſt two wiſps of clean ſtraw, which may ſtretch it to an equal ſtraightneſs with the firſt, then putting a thick Breaſt-cloth on you may mount, but if you pleaſe you may firſt ſpurt ſome Beer or Ale into his mouth, which will make him champ and feel his Bit the ſooner, and be ſure that your Stable be made clean before you bring your Horſe in again, the Dung and foul Litter being laid at the door, and it well ſtored with freſh; for if the Horſe ſtand not upon good ſtore of Litter, and have it likewiſe to lie dry in, he will not thrive well nor ſeem half ſo pleaſant as he will with it; for which purpoſe of all the ſtraw, Wheat-ſtraw is the beſt, and muſt be uſed on this occaſion unleſs it cannot be got, and then the next to it is Oat-ſtraw, for both Rye and Barley-ſtraws do much annoy your Horſe, by reaſon the one doth cauſe him to be much troubled with the heart-burn, and the other to looſen him, and make him ſcour extremely.

Being thus upon his back, you muſt ride him eaſily for the ſpace of half an hour, for if you gallop or ſtrain him preſently you do him much injury, by reaſon that it ſtretches his Sinews too much on the ſudden, which is apt to ingender cold humours in the Joints and Nerves, ſo that the Horſe will be ſtiff after it, if not carefully, if not quickly remedied by bathing his Legs with Oil of Swallows or Earth-worms; but after by gentle riding they are made pliable, you may gallop him eaſily, but let it be by any means upon plain and firm ground, or if you live near any ſteep Hills, whoſe aſcent is ſmooth and firm, let it be up them, then walk him down in your hand, a foot pace, or a ſmall amble, that ſo he may cool by degrees; the beſt time to begin to exerciſe is before the Sun riſe, or as ſoon as it is riſen at the fartheſt, then after his breathing

breathing, when he begins to be cool, lead him to ſome pleaſant Spring or River, and there let him drink his fill.

Then gallop him again, but not too hard, when you have done ſo, for about the ſpace of a quarter of an hour, bring him again to the Brook or River, and let him drink if he ſo pleaſes, but if not, then give him a gentle courſe or two to raiſe thirſt in him, the which no doubt will do it, for take this as a general Rule, that before and after water, you be ſure to breath him gently.

After he hath drank three times, and been breathed the like number, you may bring him home, and coming to the Stable-door, where the Dung and the foul Litter is laid, let him ſtand upon it; after you are alighted from his back for ſome time, and by ſoftly tapping or hitting his hinder Legs with your ſwitch or whip, make him ſtretch them as far as he can backwards, and by pleaſant whiſtling provoke him to Urine, which if he refuſe to do once or twice, yet at laſt he will do it freely; and thereby you will preſerve your Stable from filth and noiſomneſs, which otherways would much offend the Horſe.

He being come into the Stable, rub his Fore-Legs with wiſps of clean Straw, putting all your ſtrength thereto, but firſt, be ſure to tie his Head up cloſe to the Rack in his Bridle, then his Breaſt, or Fore-cloth being taken off, rub his Head, Breaſt, and Neck. After that, unlooſe his Body-Cloth, and rub him well in every part, but eſpecially in the Saddle-place, his Saddle being hung up in his ſight; and after he hath been well rubbed with dry Cloths, cover him up again with a linen coverer, and upon that put his woollen Cloth, or more if the Weather be cold, if warm, they will be ſufficient, but be ſure to obſerve they are dry when you put them on.

After you have girted them cloſe upon him, ſtop in little wiſps of light ſtraw quite round him, between the Cloths and the Girts, let them by no means be knotty or hard, leſt they hinder him of his ſleep, and make him lie uneaſie by hurting his ſides; when he is thus cloathed, cleanſe his feet, by pulling out the gravel or earth that they may have got into them, and with warm Cow-dung ſtop the ſame up cloſe; after that is done, put about half a ſmall armful of Hay, that is very ſweet and good, into his rack, bound up as hard as poſſibly you can bind it, but firſt let it be cleared from Duſt or Seeds as well as may be, and take not off his Bridle till he has

has eat it or moſt of it, for it being bound up hard will make him pull it with more than ordinary eagerneſs, and then conſequently he muſt eat it with a good ſtomach, but let him not ſtand above one hour and a half in his Bridle, but having taken it off rub well his Face, the ridge of his Neck, and each part of his Head with a rough Cloth made of Flax or Hemp, but the latter is the beſt, becauſe if it be new, the ſmell of it is very wholeſome, and being apt to make him ſneeze, will thereby cleanſe his Head of groſs and crude humours lodged therein.

This being done, cleanſe the Manger of all the ſcattered Hay, or other things offenſive that may be in it, then take about two double handfuls of the beſt old Oats that are free from Chaff or Seeds, be ſure they be the largeſt and fulleſt you can get, for the goodneſs of Oats is known by their weight, ſuch as many do call *Polonian* Oats, or ſome more vulgarly cut Oats, for theſe of neceſſity are wholeſomeſt and beſt; for if you give your Horſe thoſe that are muſty or wet, they will cauſe ſeveral little riſings in the Horſes Body, or more properly termed ſwellings, and ſuch as be not old breed little worms in the Belly and cauſe pain; it is very hurtful for to give your Horſe any Oats that are not throughly dreſſed, for they will not only cheat him in his feeding, but make him ſlight them; nor are black ones to be allowed of, unleſs in time of neceſſity, and then they are not wholeſom.

Therefore be ſure when you give him his portion of Oats, which muſt not exceed a quart at a time, you muſt ſift them ſo, that all the light Oats and Husks may fall away, and whatſoever elſe you imagine offenſive, as Duſt or Seeds, Straw or other Grain, after which put them into the Manger; and obſerve whether he eat them heartily or not, if he do, you may ſupply him with the like quantity again, ordering them as the former, ſo depart and leave him to himſelf till about ten or eleven of the Clock, at which time you coming again to him rub his Head, Face, and Neck, with the Hempen Cloth before recited, then give him another like quantity of Oats or ſomewhat more, order them alſo in the like manner before you give them to him, after which leave him for the ſpace of two hours, and let him remain during that time in as much darkneſs as your Stable is capable of, and not only then, but always in your abſence; for the more obſcure and dark he is kept, the better will he eat his meat, and the better will he take his reſt;

for

for note, a Horſe will ſeldom lie down in a Stable that is very light, unleſs he be much wearied either with ſtanding or Travel; to cauſe the more darkneſs many are uſed to line their Stables, or at leaſt the Stall where the Horſe deſigned for Race ſtands, with Sacking or Canvas; not only to make it dark, but to keep him the warmer, by ſheltring him from wind and duſt.

After the end of the ſaid two hours which is about one of the Clock; you muſt viſit him again, and give him another the like quantity of Oats ordered as the former, and rub his head, neck, and face, as before; which done, give him a ſmall bundle of Hay hard twiſted together, and let him alone to eat that by himſelf, and ſo let him continue till four of the Clock if the days be long, but if ſhort, not paſt three.

Then according to the time come to him again, and the Stable being well cleanſed, wet the Bit of his Bridle in Beer, and ſo faſten the Reins of it to the Rack as ſoon as you have put it on, which being done, take off his cloths and dreſs him according to what you were taught in the morning; he being well dreſſed, bring him forth and put his Saddle upon his Cloths as formerly, and endeavour to make him piſs upon his Dung and old Litter caſt without the Stable, then as ſoon as you pleaſe you may mount him, and ride him as in the morning, only let this difference be generally obſerved, that you ride him not up any hills that are ſteep in the evening, but upon the plaineſt and firmeſt ground you can find; or if you will for change, ſometimes in ſmooth, green Meadows that are dry, or by running waters if they lie convenient, or that there be any near you; and let him take all the Air he can, and often ſuffer him to gaze upon the Stream, but ſuffer him not to ſtand ſtill, but keep him in a continual motion either Galloping or ſhort Pacing which many give the term of racking; if he at any time as you lead him in or out of his Stable, offer to ſmell to any Horſe-dung though not his own, hinder him not, for that will cauſe him to evacuate and fit him the better for his meat.

When he is well watred and well aired at the cool of the day (or if it be within night it matters not) bring him home (for note, there is nothing better to rid him of groſs and foul hmours than to be abroad with him early and late) and when he is come to the Stable, obſerve that nothing, according to former ordering of

him be omitted, but all done with care and diligence, the which I hope by this time you have ſo well taken notice of that I need not to repeat it over again; let his diet be likewiſe the ſame, and let him ſtand at it by himſelf two hours or more, according to the Seaſon of the Year, in his cloths; in Winter you may let him ſtand till nine before he has his Bait for all night, in Summer later if you pleaſe; then coming to viſit him you muſt give him near three pints of Oats ſifted, dreſs him in every part, give him a ſmall bundle of Hay in his Rack, and after having raiſed his Litter leave him till the enſuing morning.

When betimes you muſt abroad with him again and uſe him as you have been taught, ſo that in the ſpace of two weeks you may bring him to ſuch a paſs, as he will be fit to ride or take any moderate heat, but beware how you ſtrain him too much, for it will do him a great injury; thus having after the exacteſt manner inſtructed you as to the firſt fortnights keeping, I ſhall next proceed to give you Rules and Methods for giving him Courſes, or as ſome term them Heats, *&c.*

CHAP. III.

Orders moſt carefully to be obſerved in the Courſing or Heating your Horſe.

TO begin with which, I muſt inform you that you muſt not give above two Courſes in a Week, for if you do you will ſpend him too much, although he be never ſo luſty, and thereby weaken him and make him unfit for your Race.

The next thing to be obſerved is, that one of the times muſt be upon the day you deſign he ſhall run the Match; the two days muſt be as equally diſtant from each other as you can divide the Week, therefore you ought to make your Match accordingly; Mondays and Fridays, or Tueſdays and Saturdays are the fitteſt if you can ſo model the affair, for thoſe days have the moſt diſtance between them; if your Match be deſigned on the Monday let that and Friday be his heating days.

But if on *Tueſday* or *Wedneſday*, then *Saturday* muſt be the other that muſt ſerve to both, becauſe it is unſeemly to do it on the *Sunday*, and ſo you may obſerve of whatſoever day it ſhall fall out to be, that you keep as near as you can an equal diſtance of time between his Courſes or Heats.

But again, you muſt be ſure to obſerve in what weather you ride him at ſuch times, for if it be wet, that is, if it either Rain, Snow, or Hail, you muſt not give him any heat till ſuch time it be fair, unleſs neceſſity urge it, as when it rains moſt part of the Week or ſo; and then you muſt chuſe the time when it holds up beſt, and let him be covered very warm, not only his Body, but his Head, Neck, Ears, Breaſt and Shoulders; for his Head you muſt provide a covering made with little bags to put his ears in, and be ſure you keep him abroad as little time as poſſible, for the damp raw Air will at ſuch times indanger much his health.

But to the laſt particular that is to be taken notice of in this Chapter; be ſure if the weather be fair and ſerene, get him dreſſed and abroad with him as ſoon as day-light appears, but not before, by reaſon it is very incommodious in this caſe both to the Horſe and Man, and thus much concerning his Courſes or Heats, which is the moſt neceſſary thing to be obſerved in preparing him for your Match; now to the ſecond order of his Keeping and Feeding.

CHAP. IV.

The manner of his ſecond Fortnights Feeding, and the care to be obſerved therein.

IN this as in the former, you muſt be circumſpect to obſerve the cleaning of his Stall, giving freſh Litter, and keep it lighted up that his Bed may be always ſoft, and the old with his Dung and Stale caſt out at the Stable-door, then when you come to him in the Morning give him a quart or ſomewhat more of well dreſſed Oats, dreſſed as you were taught before, e'er you put on his Bridle, which being eaten, dreſs him in every part with ſuch

cloths, bruſhes, and combs, as you formerly have done, which being perfected according to the beſt of your skill, ſurſingle on his cloths, and then ſet his Saddle upon his back and ride him abroad, galloping and racking him moderately, and between each time of ſo doing water him, and let his bringing home and Stabling be in each particular obſerved as in the foregoing fortnight, the which you have been ſo amply taught that I think there is no need of repeating it over again, only this take notice of, which is not yet laid down; when you have brought him into his Stall before you pull off his Bridle take a wiſp of the beſt hay you can get, and holding it hard in your hand after it is well duſted, let him eat it thence, and give him all the occaſion you can to pull hard at it, and if he devour it with a good Appetite ſupply him with more, and do ſo three times at leaſt if he will eat it, for by ſo doing you will bring him to be familiar with you and win much upon his good nature; when he refuſes to eat or that you think he has eaten enough, take off his bridle after he has ſtood in it about an hour, then rub him all over and dreſs him as formerly, which ended, give his Bait of Oats in quantity and manner as has been often declared, but by no means forget to ſift them. Then having his diet-bread by you pretty ſtale, which muſt be about three days old at leaſt, it being then the wholeſomeſt and moſt commodious for him to eat, and after having eaten it to digeſt; the manner of making it according to the moſt skilful preſcribers is as you ſhall be ſhewed in the following Chapter.

CHAP. V.

The firſt Diet to be given in the ordering your Race-Horſe, and the way to make it.

FIrſt, to make this Diet-bread you muſt take half a buſhel of the beſt Horſe-beans, well ſifted from any Seeds or Husks, or three pecks, if your Horſe be a great feeder; to the latter you muſt put one peck of the beſt Wheat you can get, to the former quantity proportionably; you may grind them, divided if you pleaſe, and

and ſo mingle them afterwards, but in my opinion they will be beſt ground together, after which dreſs the meal as fine as you can, ſo that there be few or no husks or bran left in it; then take the beſt Ale-yeſt you can get, by no means let it be ſour or dirty, about three quarts will do, and put to that as much water as will juſt make the Meal up into Dough, which muſt be kneaded with all your ſtrength in a Trow, or ſome ſuch like thing for that purpoſe. If you are not ſtrong enough to knead it with your hands you may tread it with your feet, being ſure to leave no knobs in it, when it is throughly kneaded, cover it from the duſt and let it remain the ſpace of an hour, then knead it again, and after you have ſo done make your Loaves up about the bigneſs of ſix-penny-loaves or bigger if you pleaſe, and after you have baked them exceeding well in an Oven, take them out, ſet them trans-verſe to cool, that is, with their bottoms upwards.

When you have kept them three days, which you muſt do e'er you give any of them to your Horſe for fear of making of him ſick, which if they do, he will refuſe to eat it for the future.

The next thing to be obſerved is, that if the bread be moiſt or clammy, ſo that it ſtick to his mouth and he cannot freely ſwallow it, or do ſeem not to like it, you muſt cut it into thin ſlices and dry it in the Sun, or if the Sun ſhine not, in ſome Stove or by the Fire, but not too hard, then take it and mix it with his portion of Oats by ſmalling it amongſt them, ſo that then he will eat it freely, and it will do him no harm, but be ſure to pare away the cruſt, but note that you muſt never give it him alone, but always being crumbled and mixed with his Oats, the quantity of Bread you ſo mix muſt not exceed three or four ſlices at a time.

You having given him one bait, in the morning, about eleven or twelve a-clock viſit him again, and after well dreſſing him give him his bait or portion of diet, as before, both of Bread and Oats.

About two of the Clock or ſomewhat later if you deſign not to courſe him the following day, and ſo take the diſtance of time as has been formerly obſerved in all his diets, only let his motions be curiouſly obſerved and each action taken notice of, for by that you may know in what liking or eſtate of body he is, and how he thrives upon his diet.

Again obſerve, that if you deſign to heat him the day following you muſt not from the time juſt before mentioned give him

any

any bread with his Oats, but let him eat them by themſelves, and when he has eat them put him on his Bridle and dreſs him well in each part, the manner of which I hope we need not now declare; then his cloth being put on in decent manner, clap on his Saddle and ride him abroad in the Air, gallop and rack him gently and let him take his watrings as before, them bringing him home let him ſtale and dung at the door if you can get him to do it; and being brought into the Stable, after rubbing down give him his portion of Oats, but no Hay, for that is not convenient before a heat.

Now I have given you a moſt exact account concerning the ordering and dieting your horſe, the next thing neceſſary is, to inform you what Muzzles are moſt convenient for Race-Horſes, and what is the occaſion of their being put on, and the danger that there is in ſome of them.

Firſt then, Muzzles were made to prevent horſes from biting and tearing their Racks, Mangers, and Stalls, to keep them from eating Loume or Mud-walls, their own Litter or the like, which is very dangerous and hurtful to them, for it is not requiſite they ſhould eat any thing without your knowledge, or what you give them.

But as for theſe Muzzles there are many kinds, ſome cloſe, ſome broad, others with little round holes in them, theſe are commonly made of Leather which often proves very annoiable to your Horſe.

Firſt then, any Leather that is alumed is very hurtful to the head by reaſon of its ſharp ſcent and faltneſs, the next is that which is greaſed or dreſſed with courſe Oil, the ſmell of which often makes your Horſes head-ake, and cauſes him to leave his meat, be ſick and hard bound, ſo that he cannot dung kindly.

Now there are another kind of Muzzles that are very requiſite which are much in uſe, which are made of pack-thread or whip-cord. Theſe are moſt convenient in the Summer-time and will not offend the horſe, if you waſh them once in two or three days or have freſh ones to put on.

Another ſort there are which are commonly uſed in Winter, which are made of ſtrong Canvas fit for the head of your Horſe, ſo far as need requires, and bound with ſtrong filleting, on one ſide a loop being made, and on the other a ſtring to faſten it round his Poll, and under his Chaps; ſome for warmth uſe to put double

double Canvas, but take notice there muſt be a breathing Place with net-work juſt againſt his mouth and noſtrils to let the Air in and out, or elſe if it be hard tied on it will go near to ſtifle him.

Thus much as touching Muzzles, now I will return again to the ordering your Horſe, and give you a farther account of ſeveral other particulars in the management of him, beyond what has already been diſcourſed upon.

If in the enſuing morning, you coming to viſit your horſe find him laid, raiſe him not, but let him reſt, but if he be upon his Legs take a quart of Oats and waſh them well in Beer or Ale, then dry them indifferently well and give him them to eat; and when he has ſo eaten them, put on his Bridle and rub him down exceeding well, after that put on all his cloths and then for Saddling of him; after which, hold up his head as high as you can reach, and into his mouth break a new-laid Egg and oblige him to ſwallow it, after which ſpurt ſome Beer into his mouth and carry him abroad to Air, obſerving at the door as formerly. Being mounted, ride him gently, and by degrees increaſe his pace till it come to a gallop, and if he be ſo enclined let him ſmell to any Horſe's dung he meets with upon the Road.

Now I ſhall give you another inſtruction worth obſerving; that is, the day you are deſigned to run the Race when you come within a mile or leſs of the ſtarting goal or poſt for that purpoſe aſſigned; take off his cloths, which being done clap your Saddle upon his back, ſending ſome perſon with his cloths to the end of the Race intended, and ride him on gently till you come to the weighing or ſtarting poſt; ſhew him the poſt and make him as far as he is capable, ſenſible of what he is deſigned for to be done withal.

The Signal for the ſtart being given put him on at near three quarters ſpeed, or if his ſtrength will allow it, more, but be ſure you put him not to more than he is able to perform, hold the Reins pretty ſtreight in your hand, but by no means check him in his Courſe, but let him run on chearfully, and give him all the encouragement you can, and ſo let him run the whole Race through.

If you, during the Courſe find his ſtrength to fail him, or that he begin to yield, give him what eaſe you can, and do not force him to too great a ſwiftneſs, but uſe him ſo that he may be at all times well

well pleaſed with his courſes and free to run, and ſo in a ſhort time you bring him to perfection, but if he be any way diſcouraged at firſt, he will never perform according to your Expectation.

Now the next thing material to be obſerved is upon what ground you run, and then conſider which ground your horſe takes moſt delight to run upon, for this may turn to your great advantage, the which you may beſt take notice of in his Heats or in his firſt Race, whether it be ſmooth, rough, dry, wet, or a little riſing that he moſt eagerly covets, and for the future chuſe it if poſſible in all your Races.

When the Race is ended, wherein if he have been exceeding hard put to it, by no means let him ſtand ſtill but gallop him moderately about ſome green Field, the better to let him take breath by degrees and cool accordingly, the which when you find he has pretty well done, have him into ſome dry gravel-pit or other deep place out of the wind, or if there be none convenient, then to the thickeſt Buſhes or Trees you can meet with, and there having his cloths ready, with a large blunt knife or ſome old piece of Iron or Wood flat like a Ruler, yet having a blunt edge, ſcrape the ſweat off from his Body, laying the ſtrength of both your hands to the ſame till none appear in any part, and between whiles give your horſe a turn or two, and then ſcrape him again till he has done ſweating, at which time pull off his Saddle and ſcrape the place on which it was; likewiſe then with dry cloths, rub him in all parts, not omitting any place, exceeding well, put on his cloths and girt his Saddle on upon them, immediately after which you muſt gallop him gently for a conſiderable ſpace, then rub him ſlightly not taking off his cloths, eſpecially from his head and neck; then you may alight and walk him in your hand about the Heath or Field, but be ſure you ſuffer him not to graze if he ſhould offer it, and when you perceive him cool and dry, ride him home gently; you may gallop him ſoftly if you pleaſe; when you come home to the Stable-door endeavour to make him piſs and dung, but beware you put him not into the Stable till he be quite dry and very cool, where being entred faſten his bridle to the Rack, and have this following doſe in readineſs, which you muſt give him in a drenching horn, or ſome ſuch like thing, which will cleanſe his body and much help nature to recover ſtrength, if he be any ways weakned by his running.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

The Doſe or Scouring is made thus.

FIrſt, get a Pint of the beſt Canary, and add to it one ounce, three drams of clarified Roſin beat into powder, and ſtir it about in the Wine, then add more, half a pint of Olive Oil the beſt that can be got, (for if it any ways ſtink it will make your horſe ſick and cauſe him to caſt it up again) and mix it well with the former, then take an ounce and three quarters, or if you will, two ounces of Sugar-Candy, beat it ſmall and put it to the reſt, all which being well mixed together place them in an earthen Veſſel upon a gentle fire till they boil, then take it off and let it ſtand till it be blood-warm, and ſo give it your Horſe; if he refuſe to take it you muſt force him to it by pouring it down his throat, and holding up his head till he have quite ſwallowed it down.

The virtue of it is to take away by ſcouring and ſometimes by gentle Sweat all foul and groſs humors, that too much heat or over-ſtreining had cauſed to gather in the Stomach and Bowels, it diſſolves crewdy greaſe that having been melted is again ſettled in hard knobs, and brings it away in what part ſoever; in fine, there is not a wholſomer drink can be given to any horſe, eſpecially after running.

CHAP. VII.

The Way and Method of looking to, and keeping your Horſe after he has taken this Potion.

WHen the Horſe has taken it, then immediately rub his Legs and pull off his Saddle and all other his cloths, leaving him nothing on, then curry him well, and after bruſh him, and with a duſting cloth duſt him, and again with a new hempen cloth or cloth of hair, rub his body in every part, but in ſo do-

ing your greateſt pains muſt be about his head, neck, and breaſt; this being perfected put on his cloths and keep him as warm as poſſible, and put ſeveral handfuls of ſtraw under his girts, and then let him remain without either meat or drink for the ſpace of two hours, during which time you muſt watch him, and ſeldom let him ſtand ſtill for fear of getting cold, during the time the Potion is in working; nay, ſleep or ſtanding ſtill (which he will chuſe if he be left alone to himſelf) are alike dangerous, by reaſon that the blood and vital Spirits have not their operation ſo well as in times of motion, nor the heat of the body power to force up the humors that lie as it were abſconded in the ſeveral parts. When he has ſtood in his Bridle, and faſted ſo long as is before-mentioned, or if you think convenient ſomewhat longer; then take ears of wheat about one hundred, and offer them to him to eat, but let them not be bearded in any wiſe, but e'er you ſuffer him to take them, feel him all over in what condition or eſtate of body he is, and if you find him ſweat on a ſudden or any cold clamm over-ſpread his Limbs, which many call a cold ſweat, or if you obſerve him to pant, tremble, or fetch his breath ſhort, with-hold your hand and give not any thing; for if you do, it will much indanger him, theſe being the Symptoms that the Potions has not done working, but that it is ſtriving with the vicious humors and foul indigeſtures of the Body, therefore put off his ſlip and taking off his Bridle ſtop all the Lights of the Stable, the better to keep it dark, and ſecure your Horſe from too much Air, and let him take his eaſe in your abſeuce for the ſpace of two hours or more, by which time the Potion will have done working and his ſickneſs will paſs away.

Then coming to him again, if you find him well you may give him the ears of wheat by four or five at a time till the whole parcel is waſted, after that if he will eat any more you may ſuffer him to have the like quantity again, and after them a ſmall bundle of Hay bound up very hard and thrown into his Rack, but during the time of his eating it, be ſure to rub him over as you have been taught; but more eſpecially his head.

Within the hour following give him his quantity of Oats as before, mingling with them a pint of husked Beans, as clean from husks and duſt as can be, then take three ſlices of bread and (the cruſt being cut away) crumble them among the Oats and Beans, and ſo give them to him, and after he has eaten them

them let him ſtand about two hours and a half, or three if you pleaſe.

Then coming to him give him ſome Bait again of each the ſame parcel as before, then dreſs him down well and put on his cloth, but put not on his Saddle, nor back him, neither let him have any water that night, but keep him within doors, for if you do otherwiſe you will endanger your horſe.

CHAP. VIII.

The manner of making theſe Balls and their Virtue, with an account of what Diſeaſes they are moſt powerful to cure.

TAke the powder of *Elicampane*-Roots, *Cummin*-ſeeds and *Fenugreek*-Seeds, of each two ounces beaten and ſifted as fine as you can poſſible, to which put two ounces of Sugar-candy, brown if you pleaſe, beat that likewiſe; fine flower of Brimſtone the like quantity, one ounce of the juice of *Liquorice*, then wetting them with half a pint of White-wine, ſet them over the fire, after which take one ounce of the Chymical oil of *Aniſeeds*, and three ounces of the Syrup of *Colts-foot*, add to theſe of *Olive*-oil, *Honey*, and Syrup or melted Sugar, all of them being the beſt you can get, one pint and a half, that is, of each half a pint, proportionable, then mingle all theſe Ingredients together, and thicken them into paſte with fine wheat-flower, and ſo make them up into Balls for your uſe; you muſt not make them above the bigneſs before-mentioned, or if you pleaſe you may make them up as you uſe them; put them or the Paſte up into a gally-pot and ſtop it cloſe, and it will keep a long time.

For the uſe of them take theſe inſtructions, for their virtues are very great.

Firſt then, if you uſe them for any ſickneſs or dulneſs in your Horſe, anoint or rub them over with ſweet Oil or Butter, and ſo give them to him each Morning as you were taught before, and after give him a gentle breathing and let him drink, but if the weather be foul, take him not out.

But if for cold, or any infirmity in his Stomach, you may give them to him till you perceive it is waſted and gone.

The Virtues of them are for ſeveral other things, as Glanders, Heavineſs to purge away any molten greaſe, to recover a loſt Sto-

mach, Faintings, and Heart-Qualms, and to make any tolerable Horſe fat to admiration, but to your Race-Horſes you muſt give for ſtrengthning and cheriſhing the Spirits. But now to the fourth and laſt fortnight for preparing your Horſe, which muſt begin with his laſt diet.

CHAP. IX.

The manner of making his laſt Diet.

IN this you muſt uſe three Pecks of Wheat, and but one of Beans, and let them be ground together upon the black Stones as ſmall as poſſible they can be, then dreſs it through an exceeding fine dreſſing-cloth; for note, that every Bread muſt be finer than the former: Then put to it the fore-mentioned quantity of Ale-Yeſt, but be ſure it be not ſowre, nor the Grounds. Then knead it together, and make it up into Loaves as formerly; but to this, above what has been ſpoken of, you muſt add the Whites of two or three and twenty Eggs, and inſtead of water put milk, ſo much as will make it up.

They being baked, let them ſtand their uſual time, and then cut the Cruſt away, or as ſome call it, chip them, after which, dry a quart of Oats well, and after that ſift them, ſo that there be no defect left in them, to which, put your Beans in like manner ordered, and at the uſual times, give them all three, mingled together to him.

As for his Heating and Courſing-days, the firſt week they muſt be punctually obſerved, but the ſecond you muſt abate him one, that is, heat him but once, and that muſt be *Mondays* heat. After he has ſtood one hour more in his Bridle, you may take three pints of Oats, and ſteep them in Beer or Ale for a ſhort time, and then give them to him, and they will much cheriſh him, and allay his thirſt.

This being done, about an hours ſpace after, you ſhall give him the former quantity of Beans, Oats, and Bread in the ſame order, and manner, or if you think it more convenient, you may give them ſeveral, and not mingle them; let him by no means want for feeding at night, for when you make him his laſt, give him not only his Bait, but leave him a bundle of Hay in his Rack bound up very hard.

Next

Next Morning, as ſoon as day appears, you muſt give him his firſt diet, then rub him well in every part; after which, put on his cloths and air him, that is, ride him abroad, and uſe him as formerly, permitting him to drink freely; both Gallop and Rack him, but do not ride him hard.

When you return, dreſs him, and feed him with Oats, Beans, and Bread, as heretofore, and ſome Hay, but not ſo much as you were uſed to give him.

As for your heating days, they muſt likewiſe be obſerved in all points as formerly, nor upon any occaſion neglected, unleſs upon ſuch as has been declared, nor muſt you encreaſe them, nor ſtrain your Horſe more than you were wont; four heats or courſes will be ſufficient for the firſt fortnight, and four purges or ſcouring for the whole time of his being made fit for Racing, all which muſt be obſerved with diligence and caution, according to the forementioned Methods and Inſtructions; but now to the third, *&c.*

CHAP. X.

The third Fortnights Dieting and Ordering your Horſe.

NOw for the manner of Making his Bread, it muſt be as followeth, finer than formerly was wont, muſt it be made; therefore take but two pecks of Beans, and with fine Wheat make it up a Buſhel, let them be ground together as formerly, and dreſſed exceeding fine, ſo that there be hardly a Huſk or a Bran to be ſeen; then with a like quantity of yeſt as before, mingle the meal and add water to it, ſo much as is juſt ſufficient to make it ſtick cloſe together; when it is well kneaded and worked up, you muſt bake it as you have been taught.

After which, it having ſtood about three days or ſomewhat more, pare away the Cruſt and give it your Horſe, (that is) three ſlices crumbled amongſt a quart of fine dreſſed Oats and a quart of ſplit Beans; your obſervance ſhall be in theſe as in the former two weeks, his Dreſſings, Airings, times of Feeding, and likewiſe his heating days muſt be particularly obſerved. And take notice of this,

That you muſt not, after he has been heated, give him any of the Scowring, but that being laid aſide, give him in the room of it Balls about the bigneſs of a Pullets Egg, which are great Cordials,

als and reſtoratives, and you muſt give him one at a time; thus ſitting in the Saddle or otherwiſe if you pleaſe, hold up his head as high as is convenient, and put one of them into his Mouth and oblige him to ſwallow it, but before you give it him, you muſt rub him down, or according to your match; for you muſt not heat him for four or five days before you intend to run your Race, but you may air him very well, and give him gentle breathings, that he may in no wiſe loſe his wind, but give him none of the forementioned ſcouring drink.

One thing more I have conſidered to quicken his Spirits and make him lively, which is to burn *Storax*, *Olibanum*, *Frankincenſe* and *Benjamin* mixed together, which drive away all ill ſcents and airs, and there is nothing more wholeſom for the brain.

As likewiſe, when you give your Horſe his Oats, Beans and Bread, waſh the two former in neither Ale nor Beer, but take a pint of *Muſcadine*, and about the Whites of ten Eggs, and ſteep them therein, but you need not do this above four times in a week; at other times, give them to him dry as formerly.

Beware likewiſe how to give him any Hay, unleſs immediately after his heats, and then holding a ſmall wiſp in your hand, let him pull it thence by degrees, but if his Belly be apt to ſhrink up, you may give him more to keep it ſtreight.

Again, all the laſt week, if your Horſe be given to eat his Litter you muſt keep him muzzled as you have been formerly taught, but if he be not ſubject to the ſame, nor to eat any other foul thing, three days before you run him will be a ſufficient ſpace to keep him muzzled.

The day-morning before you intend to run him, you muſt air him gently, and when you have brought him home, dreſs him and rub him as formerly, and be ſure to diet him exceeding well, omitting no point, neither before nor after his being carried abroad, only towards night you may ſtint him of the third part of his uſual Bait, but let his laſt Diet be full Proportion, as likewiſe his dreſſing; another thing is alſo to be obſerved, which is, that you muſt not keep him out late, but let him be in his Stable at Sun-ſet or before, and likewiſe the day before the Match, you ſhall ſhooe him, poll him, and all things elſe that you ſhall think convenient for fitting him out in the beſt wiſe, but beware that it be not unskilfully performed, for then you may much injure your Horſe, or

give

give him ſome cauſe to be offended at your curioſity, or as many call it Adornment. It is reported by ſome who have had long experience in this way and manner of ordering of Horſes, that ſeveral are ſo skilful to understand the meaning of ſuch ornaments, and what they are to be put to, the next day, which makes them conceive ſuch Pride that they will not eat any meat till the time they have run the Race, unleſs it be forced upon them.

It is true, all Authors that treat of Naturalities do affirm that horſes are moſt knowing and ſubtil Creatures, and that they are endued with many noble Qualities and generous Perfections.

Now for brading their Tails and Manes, and tying Ribbons on their fore-head, or at their ears, I hold altogether unneceſſary, for ſo doing does not only offend him, but many times hinders him in the performance of his Race, by reaſon that they make him caſt his head often to look at them, and if he has not been uſed to them, many times make him ſtart out of his way, and ſo loſe his ground; therefore in my opinion, only to comb out his Mane and Tail (and if they be too cumberſome you may clip them a little) is the beſt Method in that caſe.

Be ſure there be nothing left undone that you intend to do to him, till the morning he is to run, for if there be, it may chance to vex him, and thereupon ſome Horſes will grow ſullen and will not run freely.

The morning you are to run, make him a viſit before it is well light, and after you have pulled off his Muzzle and rubbed his head in every part thereof, offer him a quart of Oats ſteeped in a pint of Muskadine or Tent, but before you put them in bruiſe them a little, if he chance to refuſe it, put him ſome Oats in the whites of Eggs only; or to be better ſure of his eating, ſome of the beſt and fineſt Bread, and ſome whole Wheat, well ſifted and dreſſed, mingle with his Oats, in which you muſt uſe no Beans; but be ſure you give him but a little of any of theſe diets, for if you fill him he will be unfit for the Race and may fail your expectation, which otherwiſe he no doubt would have anſwered in each particular, to your great ſatisfaction.

If he empty not his Body freely, take him abroad and air him a little, and ſee if you can poſſibly get him to dung and urine, the which if he do (the which no doubt by this time you will have

taught

taught him to do) bring him into the Stable again, and put his Muzzle on; but on the contrary, if he will empty without any farther trouble in the Stable, 'tis needleſs to lead him out, and far better to let him remain till the time you are deſigned to run, or about half an hour before, according as the diſtance is from the place he is kept at to the ſtarting place.

Juſt as you are going to lead him, dip the Bit of his Bridle in Muskadine or Alicant, and then drawing off his Muzzle, draw on his bridle, but if you ſee him inclinable to empty, let him do it before, and to incite him to do it the more ſpeedily, give him about a pint of waſhed Oats, Bread and Wheat as before you did; then ſpread ſoft wax, ſuch as ſhoo-makers uſe, under your Girts and Saddle, which done girt it gently on his back, ſo that he ſcarcely feel it is on; then ſpread a large white Linen cloth over his Saddle, and over it all his other cloths, which likewiſe being ſlightly girt, ſtick wiſps under his Girts or Surſingles, but let them be very ſoft; then cover him with ſome piece of rich Tapeſtry or Cloth of State to make him ſhew gallant, after which pour down his throat with a drenching horn, one pint of Muſcadine, Alicant, or for want of either, Canary.

Then lead him forth with courage, and ſuffer him to move gently, and if he offer to ſmell to any dung, either old or new, ſuffer him by any means to do it, or if he offer not, endeavour to make him, for it will cauſe him to evacuate, which will much lighten him and help him in the Race; nay uſe double diligence herein, by leading him to ſuch places as you think will ſooneſt provoke him to it, as heaps of ruſhes, brakes, or heath, little buſhes, high tufted graſs, or the like; but if there happen to be no ſuch in your way, then you may ſpread, and light up ſome Straw under his feet, making it ruſtle; then whiſtle, and touch him gently with your ſwitch or whip to make him ſtretch, the which no doubt will effect your deſire.

Again, If he foam at mouth by champing hard upon his Bit or otherwiſe, you muſt take care to have a fine linen cloth ready to wipe it off, and a veſſel of fair cool water, to cleanſe and waſh his mouth ſtill as you obſerve the froth or foam to riſe.

Then having walked him gently to the place deſigned for ſtarting, you muſt take off all to his Saddle, and having rubbed him down with care in every part (which muſt be done with hard

wiſps

wiſps) ſearch and cleanſe his feet, and ſpurt ſome water in his mouth; after which, your ſelf or whom you aſſign to ride him, may take his Back, and obſerving the fair ſtart, put him ſwiftly on, and run the Match.

——No doubt with good ſucceſs, for this manner of ordering will ſeldom fail your expectations, if your horſe in himſelf be but ſound and of good Mettl'd Limbs and ſtrength to bear him out.

Now I ſhall give the curious to underſtand as neceſſary a point belonging to horſes as has ever been diſcourſed of in any Tract whatſoever, the which will be very uſeful for all thoſe whoſe employ it is to trade in Horſes, and be as the Sailers Card, to direct them in that affair, and keep them from being over-ſeen, or cheated in any Market or Fair whatſoever; with each particular obſervation, rule and method to be taken notice of in the Limbs, body, and head, as eyes, mouth, noſe, ears, and the true manner to know a good Horſe from a bad.

But to begin, firſt, there are theſe things to be obſerved, if you will chuſe a Horſe that ſhall be for your turn, and pleaſe you in every part, and in all his actions, travels, or other labours, as Hunting, Racing, War, drawing of Coach, Chariot, or any rural ſervice whatſoever, but take notice that no one Horſe can be capable of all theſe.

Therefore you muſt chuſe your Horſe according to what you deſign him for, and ſo manage him accordingly.

But to imperfection in general, the which I will undertake to demonſtrate in the ſound Horſe, who is no ways defective, becauſe in him may lively appear all the maladies and miſchances that may or can befal any horſe whatſoever.

Firſt then, be adviſed, that whenever you deſign to buy a Horſe, take eſpecial notice of all his parts, and the full proportion of his body according to his natural ſhape, or if you can obſerve any imperfection in his Limbs that may ariſe by accident, whereby they are leſſened or made bigger, take ſpecial care to find out the cauſe of it if poſſible, by which you may know what you buy, and whether to like or diſlike him.

In which, your obſervances in election muſt be drawn from two heads, the firſt of which is general, the latter peculiar or proper.

For the firſt of which, it is to be underſtood upon what occaſion you buy your Horſe, or for what uſe he is deſigned, what colour is beſt, or beſt pleaſes you; next his ſtature, breed and likelineſs, theſe are general, becauſe every man in this will pleaſe himſelf according to his fancy, nor ever can we imagine all men to be of a mind in this, therefore it is beſt to let them chuſe according to their own pleaſure, nor much matters it.

The next, which is a peculiar or a particular Query, is to know what Country-breed he is of, whether Engliſh or Foreign, to know which you muſt enquire of thoſe who have had the breeding of him, or if that cannot be known, by reaſon of his being ſo often bought and ſold, take theſe particular obſervations; if he be Spaniſh breed, his Limbs are ſmall and ſtreight, dry and ſpare, like a Hart's; if Barbary, a fine little Head and a well-ſet Breaſt and Shoulder; if of Naples, he is hawks-noſed and clear-eyed, his eyes ſeeming to ſparkle; if Dutch or Flemmiſh, his legs will be generally rough and large-hoofed; as for French and Engliſh, they are almoſt alike, only the Engliſh are ſtronger ſet and more hardy for any exerciſe whatſoever.

Now to his colour, for the colour of a Horſe is much to be obſerved, by reaſon one colour is far better than another, though there be good Horſes of all colours; the beſt colours, as the moſt experienced do affirm, are the Roan, the White, the Lyard, the Bay, the Sorrel, the Dapple Gray, the Flea-bitten, the Black, Iron-grey, and White, but above all, the Bay is choſen and accounted the beſt, both by the French and the Engliſh, eſpecially if they have a Star in their fore-heads, and their feet ſpotted with white ſpots, the Lyard for courage is eſteemed, which is a mingled Roan, the Mouſe, Dun and Grizled, were formerly in great eſteem, as alſo the Dapple-Grey, and ſuch as come neareſt them, the Iron-Grey, the White Sorrel and Brown-Bay. *Plato* commendeth much the White, whom *Virgil* does not eſteem; others commend the Black, eſpecially if he have a white Star in his fore-head, or be ſtreaked with white down his face, the black if he be not mingled with Silver hair, nor have any white about him, is naught for Service, the Flea-bitten Horſe is always ſingular good for Travel and other Labours, and will hold out the beſt of any; the yellowiſh or glew'd unleſs he be ſpotted or ſtraked with white is naught, yet if he be well marked he often proves indifferent well;

and

and if he have a black Liſt down his back from the nape of his neck to his tail, he is excellent good for a Stallion if his proportion be according; the red Bay, and the blue gray are much ſubject to Melancholy. The Flea-bitten and the Black with White are Sanguine, the Roan, the Sorrel, and the Black without White ſubject to choler.

But as to their Paces, which are theſe, Trot, Rack, Amble, or Gallop, the which you muſt chuſe, according as you deſign to put him to, either for Racing, Hunting, Travelling, or Fight; if it be for moderate Travelling, an eaſie Trot is beſt, the which you may know if he be prone to by obſerving his Legs.

Thus when his near fore-leg and his off hinder-leg, move together, or his near hinder-Leg and his off fore-Leg; and farther obſerve, that if when he moves, he be quick to raiſe his Legs from the ground, and do it ſhort and with an even diſtance, making but little treads, he will likewiſe pace very well; for if he lift up his feet blunderingly or careleſly, it denotes he is given to Stumbling and will be oft troubled with Lameneſs; if he ſtrike his Legs acroſs, or take no wideneſs in his ſteps, it denotes he is ſubject to trip, enterfere or fall; if he take not his ſtep even, it ſhews an unwillingneſs to travel and a weakneſs in his Limbs; if he tread large ſteps, he is ſubject to over-reach and ſtrain himſelf if he be put to the Speed.

Again, if you chuſe a Horſe for eaſe and pleaſant Journeys, you muſt chuſe an Ambler, which you may know thus, if he move both his Legs on the ſame ſide together, fore-Leg and hinder-Leg, and that he muſt do, large, nimble, and eaſie; for if he tread ſhort and ſhuffling he is no good Ambler, yet if he be very nimble at his firſt beginning to pace, it denotes he cannot long hold it.

Now for hunting either of Buck, Stag, or Hare, for ſpeed on the Road, or to ride Poſt, if you chuſe a Horſe, then you muſt take one who has naturally or has been taught the racking Pace, which is neither Trot nor Amble, but between both, and is the eaſieſt of all, though it gain not ſo much ground, the which you may obſerve by the ſame method as you did ambling.

The next I have to treat of is gallopping, which is natural to all the former Paces, but the Amble; for an ambling Horſe will immediately be brought to Gallop, by reaſon it conſiſts almoſt of the ſame nature with it, only a ſlower and not ſo much ſtraining; for it being a ſwift Pace, by long uſe has ſo inured the Horſe to it

that he cannot without ſome time and inſtruction frame his legs to it, but will fall into a Pace; if he be overmuch ſpurred, beaten or forced, that can properly be called no Pace, but a confuſion of all together, but perfects all things, ſo in time you may bring him to gallop as you pleaſe if no imperfection in his Limbs reſtrain him.

Now I ſhall lay down ſuch obſervations as you may infallibly know a good Gallopper by. Firſt, if he raiſe his feet ſwift and clearly from the ground but not too high, and that he neither rowl nor boggle in his way, nor ſtriketh his Belly with his feet. If he take large reaches with his fore-legs, and his hinder follow quickly, in which you muſt likewiſe obſerve that he do not cut under the Knee, or on the Shank, which is called by ſome the Galloping, but by others the ſwift-cut, or that he throws not his Legs croſs or twiſt them as it were, nor that he ſet one foot upon, or clap it againſt the other, but that he keep him ſteady and even in all his courſe, and ſtill with his fore-foot head the way.

The Horſe who has theſe properties always gallops moſt neatly, and a Man may truſt to him in any time of danger, that is, if he be beſet with Thieves, or purſued by an Enemy, in time of War, if he be but able of Body, and well kept.

If your Horſe raiſe all his feet together, and gallop as it were on a heap, or round, then he is not ſwift, but will tread ſure and hold out well, by reaſon of his ſtrength and limbs, and is fit for War or carry double.

Again, obſerve if a Horſe, gallops but ſoftly and treads firm, not being Subject to fall nor ſtumble, yet his Legs ſeem tender, and he lifts them up as it were in fear, and throws them in and out as if he was hurt or pained, then he is not for galloping uſes, nor ever will he, by reaſon he has ſome obſcure diſeaſe or ſtiff lameneſs in his Joints that is hard to remove.

Now as to his height or ſtature, the which muſt be obſerved according to the uſe you put him to, or as your ſelf ſhall think fit, a well-made Horſe with ſtrong Joints, but not much fleſh upon his Legs, you muſt chuſe, about ſixteen hands high; if you take one for carrying double or any other great weights; as likewiſe for drawing either in Cart, Waggon or Coach, and if for recreation only, the fineſt and neateſt limbed and ſhaped you can light of, and not exceeding fourteen hands in ſtature, or if you pleaſe leſs, according to the proportion of your own body.

Thus

Thus far having given you, as I well hope, a ſatisfactory inſtruction, I ſhall now proceed to inform you of the Deformities and Imperfections, ſecret Diſtempers and Infirmities that lie hidden many times from the eyes of the Buyer, the which are not a few, ſo that it would be almoſt impoſſible to diſcover them all, ſo that every one might underſtand them; therefore I ſhall endeavour to give you as plain and full an account as is neceſſary, or that can be underſtood according to the beſt opinions of the skilful.

To begin then, when any one offers you a Horſe to ſell, after you have ſeen him tried, as to the former experience, and underſtand his Age, and Breed, then cauſe his Saddle and all other his Cloths, nay his very Bridle, if ſo be you can get him to ſtand ſtill without it, to be took off, and then place your ſelf juſt before him, and look wiſhfully upon him, and take eſpecial notice of his Countenance at all times, whether he look pleaſant and lively, well and ſtedfaſt, without change or alteration; the which if he do, it is a ſign that he is of a good Spirit, and in good health, as to bodily ſickneſs or inbred diſeaſes; the next thing to be obſerved is his ears, for if they be thick, ſtiff and taper from the roots to the tips, as alſo long or of a convenient ſize well faſtned and ſtrong at the roots, it is a great ſign of mettle, perfection and completeneſs, for ſuch ears are an ornament to any horſe.

But if they be contrary, as thick at the ends, lolling, and often moving, it denotes him dull, ſloathful, heavy, and ſtubborn, and of a very ill temper.

Now if his face be clean and his forehead riſing, the ſimilitude of a feather in his forehead, upon his cheeks or any part of his face, but it is the greater ſign if it be above his eyes, or if he have a white Spot, Star, or Streak of a pretty large Size, drawn even, or a ſnip of white upon his noſe, it is a ſign he is good and beautiful.

But on the contrary, if his face ſeem ſwelled, bloated or puffy, fat, dull, cloudy, or lowring, his forehead flat and ſquare, which the Vulgar term Mare-faced, the rach if any he has in his front, ſtanding very low, or in the middle of his face, his Star or Streak uneven or crinkled, his noſe ball'd or raw, and the hair in many places off from his face, are very bad marks and ſignatures of great deformity.

Again,

Again, if his eyes be ſhining, full and round, ſtand Eagle-like, out from his head, and little or none of their whites to be ſeen, if they be full and ſparkling, it denoteth him chearful, ſwift-ſighted and comely, full of ſpirit and of good nature, yet fierce and fiery.

But if his eyes look askew, ſeem dull, and withered, little and ſlow in motion, they denote much imperfection, and are unhandſome to behold; if they are the colour of Foxes or Ferrets eyes, he will be quickly moon-eyed or wall-eyed, and, if not timely prevented, blind; if he chance to have a thick, dull Philm over it, and in it white ſpecks, it not only ſhews a timorouſneſs in your Horſe, but ſubjection to cauſeleſs ſtarting, and alſo in danger of having a Pin and Web or white skin over his ſight; if they run either water or matter, or ſeem bloody or raw, they proceed from an old Surfeit or an over-heating, which was done by immoderate riding: Corruption ingendring in the Head by exceeding draughts or the like, as dead eyes that are low ſunk do; that, if he lives long he will be blind, and that he was gotten by a very aged Stallion and is of no good breed; if the Whites be as much ſeen as the Black it ſignifies great weakneſs, unnatural and ſullen in himſelf.

Again, if you obſerve by feeling or otherwiſe, his Chaps or Jaw-bones Lean, Spare, and large ſpaces between them, his Wind-pipe Head great and wide, not ſurrounded or incumbred with Nerval ſmall Ropes or the like; and that his neck ſeems to ſhoot through the Jaw, or be placed in the nether part of it within the ſame; it is a token of large and ſtrong wind, and that your Horſe will hold out a Race very well if all his Limbs be proportionable, and that he is of a good heart, and has a head not ſubject to Diſeaſes: But on the contrary, if his Jaws be fat, groſs and full of kernels or knobs, and that there is but a little ſpace between the bones, it denotes ſhort wind, foulneſs of Stomach and Belly, and ſubject to Glaunders, Broken-winded, or Strangury, and many times apt to be troubled with grievous Colds.

Now if his Jaws be cloſe and firmly fixed as it were to touch each other, ſo that they cauſe the fleſh to riſe about them as if ſwelled, it denoteth ſhort-wind, groſs and vicious humours ſetling there, and eſpecially if it riſe more in one place than in another, and the form of the riſings be long, for then ſome inward infection is gathered

thered, which if not taken in time will turn to an Impoſtume or worſe.

If he have wide Noſtrills, and they open and ſhut and ſeem in a continual motion, ſo that the inſides or redneſs upon every little Straining or Snorting appear, yet the compaſs of his noſe but ſmall, his mouth not wide but deep, with ſmall dry Lips, meeting without the leaſt hanging over, do likewiſe promiſe the horſe good. And well-winded, courageous and hardy.

But if contrary, quite otherwiſe; as ſhort-winded, tender and weak, a ſhallow-mouthed Horſe will never bear his Bridle well, but if it be not buckled faſt, the Bit will be apt to fall out of his mouth, or he will be much apt to ſlaver.

Again, if his upper Lip be uneven, and will not meet with his under, but either ſhut over or flap, it is a certain ſign that he has a lingering Diſeaſe or is exceeding ſlow, as alſo if he have a Rheum or dropping at the noſe, if that be clear it will if not timely ſtopped (the which it is hard to do) turn to the Glaunders; if one noſtril runs it is worſe than if they did both.

—Now as to his teeth, be ſure to obſerve that when you buy a Horſe, to look in his mouth, and take a diligent care to ſee if he have loſt none of his teeth, or if he have, what they are, whether Grinders, Fore-teeth or Tuſhes; for thereby you may give a ſhrewd gueſs at his Age, although the mark be out of his mouth; but to avoid being cheated buy not a horſe that has loſt any, for if he have loſt ſome the reſt will quickly follow.

The next thing to be conſidered is his Breſt, for if that be broad, ſtrong-ſet, riſing or full-fleſhed, and adorned with marks or feathers; then you may confide in his ſtrength, and he will not deceive your expectations; but if he be the contrary, it denotes weakneſs of Body and unfitneſs for Labour, and that he is given to that ill quality in Horſes, *viz.* to ſtumbling, as likewiſe to cutting and tripping; as alſo if his Breaſt ſeem to ſink or give inwards, it ſhews him of no courage or metal.

The next thing to be conſidered is his Legs; that is, his fore-legs only, of the hinder hereafter I ſhall treat; firſt obſerve the Joint next to his ſhoulder, which is properly called his Bow or Elbow, and from thence his Thigh as low as his knee, and obſerve they be well Sinew'd and covered with brawny fleſh, no ways giving out nor tumid, and that he ſtand firm without bending or moving his

Joints

Joints, which if he do, it is a ſign of ſtrength, as likewiſe they are all marks of the ſame.

The next is to obſerve if he carry an even or equal pace with his Legs, but eſpecially with his knees, and that they be neat, well knit, and not too fleſhy, of a juſt proportion; for take notice if they differ in magnitude he has had his knee broke, or elſe ſome diſtemper harbours there, as the Gout, &c. if you find any cuts or ſcars with hair growing in them, he is apt to fall, which will be hard to cure or rid him of.

Then leaving his Knees, obſerve his Shanks as low as his Fetlock, and if they be well Sinew'd, finely made and ſhaped proportionable to his Thighs, and that they neither bend in nor out, and that there be no ridge nor ſeam deſcending from the knee-joints on the inſide, there is he good and ſound in thoſe parts; but on the contrary, if there be ſcars, ſcabs, or knobs on the inſide, it is by reaſon of his high ſtriking, called by moſt the ſwift-cut; but if above his Fetlock or Hoof, it is interfering or ſhort-cutting, but in this be ſure to take good obſervation, for if under the skin, all over there appear little Knobs or Scabs, it is cauſed by ſome ill uſage or naſty keeping, or elſe Symptoms of the Maunge, that will in a ſhort time break forth to the full if not prevented.

Farther, if his Legs be full fleſhed, fat, or Dropſical, he will in no wiſe be fit for ſervile Labour; if on the inward bend of his Knee there be long ſcars, ſeams or ſcabs, the which have not been occaſioned by the ſwift-cut, they will prove very dangerous for it denotes a Mallander that in a ſhort time will turn to a Canker or Ulcer.

Now let us deſcend to his Paſterns, the firſt of which muſt be ſure to be cleaner and ſtrongly knit with Sinews or Ligaments, the ſecond ſtreight, ſtiff and ſmoothly fixed, not more inclinable to bend one way than another, but not over-long; for it ſhews a weak Horſe: Or if the former be gouty or ſwelled, it denotes ſtrains and over-reaching Sinews.

The next thing to be conſidered is the hoof, the which is as great a piece of Curioſity to be obſerved, as any that belong to the chuſing a good Horſe, for if that fail, all the other properties avail not.

Firſt then, a good hoof ſhould be ſmooth of colour; black and inclining to long, ſomething hollow and full, ſounding; for, take

ſo

notice that a white hoof is not ſo good by reaſon of its tenderneſs; ſo that it is apt either to let the ſhooe draw, or it ſelf to batter or ſpread, by being in too much wet or hard riding.

The next is a withered hoof that ſeems to ſcall, or have welts or ſeams upon it; which denotes the Horſe to be aged or much worn by hard travel or over-heats; another ſort of hoofs there are which are called ſhort hoofs, and are ſo brittle, that they will not bear any ſhooe above a day at the moſt, if rid or laboured; if his hoof be exceeding round, it is bad for deep and dirty ways, by reaſon the horſe cannot tread ſure; a flat hoof that is light and full of pores or holes is a ſign of his being foundred; if you perceive by ſtriking the hoof a hollow noiſe, or that it be hollow within, it ſignifies ſome internal defect, and old feſter not cured, that has waſted the pith, and therefore is not good.

The next thing obſervable is the Coronet or Socket of the hoof, the which being well fleſhed, ſmooth, without Chops or Scars, and well decked with hair, is a ſign of its being in good plight and ſound; but if the contrary, he is often troubled with ring-worms, a crown-ſcab, or the like dangerous misfortune.

Having taken particular notice of the former properties of goodneſs or defect, remove your ſelf to the right ſide, and then take eſpecial notice how his head is fixed to his neck; ſee firſt that it be ſmall at the ſetting on, and ſo by degrees deſcend taper to his ſhoulders, not thick, but rather broad; and obſerve that his head ſtand not too high nor too low, with a high, yet thin Creſt, his Mane declinable, long, ſoft, and a little curling, which are ſigns of comelineſs; as on the contrary, a thick joult-head, and thick neck, ſhort and brawny, ſhews much dulneſs and deformity.

If there be any ſwelling in, or under the nape of the Neck, it will certainly turn to the Poll-evil or ſome Fiſtula, which is altogether as bad if not taken in time.

Again, to have a thick Neck, and lank or fallen near the Withers, to have a groſs and flat, or ſunk Creſt, are ſigns of great defect in ſtrength; exceſſive ſtore of hair upon the Mane, eſpecially if it be ſtreight and hard, ſignifies dulneſs and want of courage; a thin Mane, that is not made ſo by any accident or diſtemper, ſhews the horſe to be of a fiery nature; if it fall away, it ſhews either Itch, Worms, or Mange to lodge there.

The next thing worthy to be obſerved, is his Back or Chine, which muſt be broad, ſtreight, and ſmooth, well meaſured and even, to which his Ribs muſt be well grafted, firm, and round, his fillets or haunches ſtreight, ſtout and ſtrong, nor muſt there be above three Inches breadth between his fartheſt rib and huckle bone, that is the neareſt to the ſame, as the ſhort ribs, which are all ſigns of a perfect and well ſhaped Horſe.

The next thing is, to take a ſpecial obſervation of the ſhape of his Body, if it be plump, ſmooth, and contained within the compaſs of his ribs, and not hanging over or paunching out; his ſtones or genitals muſt likewiſe be contained cloſe in their Purſes or Cods, as it were girt to his Yard, the which ſhews the Horſe to be of good mettle, well made and free from Diſeaſes in thoſe parts; but if the contrary, it ſhews him defective and uncomely.

Firſt then, if he have a narrow back, he will be prone to Saddle-galls, hurts and bruiſes in riding; to have a ſway back is a token of great weakneſs in the Chine, or if his Ribs be very fat and ſtreight, they in Travel will hinder him from fetching his full wind, and ſo conſequently make him tire; if now his hinder Ligaments or Fillets be ſlack, hang flabbing and unſeemly, they will be a great hinderance to him if he travel in ſteep way, and he can by no means hold any pace up a hill if it be very ſteep, and but very untoward in carrying any burthen.

Again, if his Belly be gant, and ſeems to be cloſe within his ribs, or near to his back, if his Stones hang down and ſwag about in the Cods, they are great ſigns of imperfection and uneaſineſs in the Horſe, cauſed by ſome Diſtemper, and likewiſe he will be apt to founder.

The next things to be taken notice of are his Buttocks, they muſt be ſmooth, round, and even, not ſtanding too high nor too low, but as near as can be level with his Body; but many chooſe a long Buttock'd Horſe for riding double or the like, which if they do, they muſt obſerve that they riſe behind and wear the Dock ſpread to the ſetting on thereof, which makes a Horſe ſhew well, and are ſigns of ſtrength.

Now for the narrow Buttock or ridged rump, they are both weak and uncomely, and will not conveniently bear any thing behind.

From

From which I ſhall deſcend to his Thighs or Hips, firſt obſerve if they be well brawned, ſinewed, and that they from the firſt ſetting on to the Bow-Joint are made taper, leſſening by degrees, and be well fleſhed, all which if they be not, ſhews weakneſs and unaptneſs for ſervice; after which take ſpecial notice of the Hock or middle Joint, and with your hand feel if it be well knit, full of Griſtles, Sinews, and Ligaments, that it be not fleſhy nor ſwelled, and that it have large Veins, be pliant and apt to bend at each motion of the horſe, ſomething bowing it muſt be and firm. All theſe are good ſigns; but if there be cuts, ſcars, or feſters in the inſide of the Joint or elſe-where, it is dangerous and not eaſie to be cured.

If there happen any ſwelling or heat over the Joints in general, then it is no other but a blow; but obſerve if ſuch ſwelling be only in one place, and that on the inſide in the hollow of the Joint, and the Veins ſtrut, feel hot, and beat much, or throb, and that the ſwelling be ſoft, it is a blood ſpavin; but if brawny and hard, a bone-ſpavin; but if it chance to be juſt upon the hock or out-bow, behind or a little under it, then it is or ſhortly will be a Curb, &c.

Now for his hinder-legs, you muſt obſerve whether they be fine, neat, and clean, full of ſtrong Sinews, and not very fat, which ſhews him ſound in thoſe parts; but on the contrary, if his legs be very fat, fleſhy, large, it ſignifies him bad for Service; if they be tumid or ſwelling, it denotes the ſetlings of molten greaſe there; if any ſcabs happen to be ſomething above the Paſterns, they denote the ſcratches or chops; cuts or ſcars beneath them denote Pains or Aches, all which are dangerous and require great skill and diligence to cure them.

Now for the Tail, it cannot ſtand amiſs nor out of place upon fair Buttocks; but upon an ill pair if it be never ſo well placed, it will not ſeem handſom; the poſture it ought to ſtand in, is even with the parting of the Buttocks, that is broad, high, ſmooth and ſomewhat bending inward, fleſhy and of a good length, briſtly and curled, the length being not only a beauty, but very neceſſary for him to defend himſelf with againſt Waſps, Hornets, and Flies, though many deſire to have him cut-tailed.

But in general, the whole body muſt be framed according to the moſt expert Horſemens Opinions, thus to have the head and

legs of a Stag, the ears and tail of a Fox, the neck of a Swan, the breaſt of a Lyon, the Buttocks of a Woman, and the feet of an Aſs. The perfect good horſe thus *Virgil* in his *Georgicks* deſcribes, the which to inſert may not be amiſs.

With head advanced high at firſt the Kingly Colt doth pace,
His tender Limbs aloft he lifts, as well becomes his race.
And foremoſt ſtill he goes, and through the ſtream he makes his way,
And ventures firſt the Bridge, no ſudden ſound doth him affray.
High creſted is his neck, and eke his neck is framed ſmall,
His belly gaunt, his back is broad, and breaſted big withal.
The Bay is always counted good, ſo likewiſe is the Grey,
The White and Yellow worſt of all: Beſides if far away
There haps a noiſe, he ſtamps and quiet cannot reſt,
But praunces here and there, as if ſome ſpirit him poſſeſt.
His ears be ſet upright, and from his Noſe the fiery flame,
Doth ſeem to come, while as he ſnuffs and ſnorteth at the ſame.
Thick is his Mane, and on his right ſide down doth hanging fall,
And double Chin'd, upon his Loins a gutter runs withal.
He ſcraping ſtands, and making of deep holes he paws the ground,
Whilſt that aloud his horned hoof all hollow ſeems to ſound.

Thus have you all the particular and general deſcriptions both of a good and bad horſe, and may therefore know what to chooſe and what to forbear, and note that amongſt all the Creatures irrational, there is not one more generous nor more ſerviceable to man than is the horſe; for as we read of *Bucephalus*, the horſe of *Alexander* the Great, that although he was wounded in the Battle againſt the *Perſians*, ſo that his Life was much deſpaired of, yet would not he ſuffer his Maſter to mount any other horſe till he had brought him ſafe out of the Battle. The like has been reported of others, whoſe Loves have been ſo great to their Maſters, that when they have been encloſed with Enemies, the Horſes have fought in their defence couragiouſly; and *Einnenius* relateth that a certain Traveller being ſet upon by four Thieves was killed, which his horſe perceiving, fell upon them with ſuch fury, that in revenge of his Maſters death, he killed two of them, and made the other two get up into a Tree to ſave themſelves, where he watched them till ſuch time as ſeveral Paſſengers came by and underſtood

ſtood what had paſſed, the Thieves being conſtrained to confeſs what they had done. And indeed it behoves all that frequently travel the Roads to have a good horſe, that they may ſave them in neceſſity, either by courage or ſwiftneſs in flight.

CHAP. XI.

How to cure the Autocoe, *a violent pain ſo called.*

THis happens moſt commonly, when horſes are firſt put into freſh Paſture, by their too eagerneſs in feeding, which cauſes ill digeſture, and leaves vicious humours in the ſtomach, or if he be at Stable or dry meat, the like may happen by his rank feedings; this Diſeaſe often takes the Horſe very violently, makes his Legs fail him and to hang down his Head, ſhaking all over as if an Ague poſſeſſed him; the ſpeedieſt way to remedy it, is to let him blood, and two mornings ſucceſſively to give him about an ounce of *Diapente* brewed in a quart of ſtrong Ale; it being a ſoveraign Medicine or Drink to expel the Vapours, Pains, and Infections that do oppreſs the heart; if he be not cured in twice giving, you may give him thrice, the which will infallibly remove and take away the Diſtemper.

CHAP. XII.

How to cure a Horſe that has been burnt by any Mare, &c.

WHether he be ſo or no, you may diſcern by his Yard, for if that be foul, corrupt, and ſwelleth, ſo that he cannot ſtale without much pain, they are infallible ſymptoms that he has been burnt. To cure which, take a pint of French-wine, boil it with a quarter of a pound of Roch-Alum beaten into fine powder; after which, take it luke-warm, and with a Sirringe or Squirt, ſquirt it into his Yard, and ſo do till his Yard leave mattering, and it will perfectly cure him.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Rules to be obſerved in the Sweating of Horſes.

FIrſt, let the keeper take great care, when he airs his Horſe, that it be done by degrees, and not all on a ſudden, and then let him obſerve in that as well as in all his other actions, what temper of Body he is of, that is, whether with little or much motion he uſed to ſweat; for many Horſes will ſweat though they ſtand ſtill in their Stalls, which commonly denotes the Horſe faint, ill-dieted, and as bad looked after, then muſt you exerciſe him to work out the ſweat, and bring down his foul feeding; but if he be not apt to ſweat, unleſs upon ſtrong heats and large breathings, then obſerve if his ſweat be white or frothy, then take notice that your Horſe is foul within and muſt be exerciſed yet more; but if it be like water yet thick and black, then you need not fear any danger.

CHAP. XIV.

How to prevent a Horſe from Stumbling, &c.

TAke your Horſe ſo uſed to ſtumble, and with his Halter faſten him cloſe to a Poſt, then with your Launcet or a ſharp penknife ſlit the skin from his Noſe to the upper Lip, that is, downright juſt between his Noſtrils about two inches, which when you have done, part it as wide as you can, and under it you will find a red film or ſecond skin, that likewiſe cut and part, beneath which you may diſcern a flat, ſmooth, white Sinew, the which take up with your Cornets Horn-point, and twiſt it round about, after a little ſpace twiſt it again quite round, ſo another time, then have regard to his Legs, and you ſhall ſee him draw by degrees

grees his hinder legs almoſt to his fore-legs, the which as ſoon as he has done, with your Launcet divide the Sinew at the part which grows to the Lip, the which as ſoon as you have effected, untwiſt it and it will ſhrink up into the head, and then his legs will withdraw back again; for note that his Sinew is the cauſe of this ſtumbling, and that it goes quite through his body, and ſpreads it ſelf into his two hinder Legs; after which you muſt cloſe up the ſlit and put into it freſh Butter, and a little Salt beat fine, then take a Cere-cloth made of *Burgundian* Pitch, or Stock-Pitch, and lay upon it, and afterwards you may truſt your Horſe for Stumbling; this is a rare ſecret known but by few, but worthy to be obſerved in any the like occaſions.

CHAP. XV.

How to take the beſt advantage of ground in any Race.

'TIS to be obſerved, that when you know the ground you are to run, you muſt acquaint your Horſe with it, and give him his Heats there always, making him take the worſt part of it, that ſo upon any ſtraight he may not boggle, but that if he in the Race get the beſt part he may run the more chearfully, yet let it not be in ſuch rough ground where he may be apt to ſlip, or get any ſprains in his Joints, for if he does it will diſable him for the future and make him timorous; but at any time when you heat your Horſe thereon, let him run out the full Courſe, and never beyond the weighing Poſt; or if you do not ride him out-right, ride him half way and back again, but never let him exceed the bounds he is to run, that is, not beyond the Mark or Poſt, but you may run him quite through, and then back again if he be of ability to bear it, ſo that in a little time he will be ſo well acquainted with the ground, that when he comes to the Race it will be eaſie for him to perform; one thing more is to be obſerved, that is, what ground the Horſe moſt delights to run upon, that you muſt chooſe as near as opportunity will give you leave, but you muſt not always heat him upon the ſame ground, ſometimes in ſpacious Fields, green Meadows and Rivers ſides, as has been before-mentioned.

CHAP. XVI.

How to know by the hair of your Horſes Neck in what eſtate he is.

FIrſt obſerve the horſes hair in every part; but the main regard is to be had to that of his Neck; for if it be ſleek, cloſe, bright, and ſhining, it denotes that he is in good order; but if the contrary, as rough, ſhagged, and ſtanding upright, and as it were changed colour; take it for a Rule that he is not well, but that ſome inward grief has ſeized him, as chilneſs of heart, want of warmth in the external parts, or ſome Ague hovering about him, but not yet perfect; to prevent which, and to reſtore him you muſt rub him and keep him very warm, with double cloths, and give him in a quart of warm Ale, one of the before-mentioned Cordial Balls, the which will expel the cold humours, and make him lively and chearful again, the which you ſhall know by the ſudden falling off his hair, the which before ſtood ſtaring.

CHAP. XVII.

How to make the brittleſt Hoof imaginable become ſoft, and bear well any Shooe without the leaſt injury to the Horſe.

TAke about eight pound of freſh hogs greaſe, and about half a buſhel of Damask Roſes well picked and clean from ſeeds; melt the hogs greaſe in a Kettle, and when it boils put in the Roſes, and dip them all over till they ſwell; then take them off, and putting them into a cloſe Earthen Veſſel with the greaſe and all, let them ſtand and cool; or if you have an Oven, when you have drawn, let it ſtand in it and cool by degrees, after which, when your horſe has newly dunged, put about three pound of the ſame into them, let it ſtand for the ſpace of three Weeks, then melt it again, and ſtrain out the liquid part, and cover it up cloſe in the earthen veſſel by it ſelf, throwing the other away.

The

The manner to uſe it is as followeth, the one Spoonful of Tar, and a handful of Horſe-dung, heat them together in a pint of Olive Oil, then taking off his ſhooes, wrap up his feet with ſtiff Leather ſo that you may pour the Liquor in, and it will not run out, which being in, let it continue there about a week, and then the old being waſted ſupply its place with freſh, the which after thrice doing you may put on his ſhooes again, then ſtop his feet well with the Tar, Horſe-dung and Oil, putting over it Tow, or Flax, and in a ſhort time his hoofs will be ſoft and tough, ſo that you may uſe them without fear, and they will bear any ſhooe exceeding well, and ſo for a long time, if not as long as the Horſe liveth.

CHAP. XVIII.

An Account of the things to be obſerved for the preſervation of a Horſes Health, and to make him live long.

THE Firſt of which is mature and good digeſtion of whatſoever he eateth or drinketh, ſo that it turn to pure blood and nouriſhment.

2. The Second to be conſidered, is ſpare and moderate feeding in which he muſt neither eat too faſt, nor too much.

3. The Third muſt be taken from moderate Labour and ſeaſonable Exerciſe.

4. The Fourth is to obſerve fit times and ſeaſons for ſleeping and waking, both which muſt be moderately taken.

5. The Fifth, He muſt not be too much acquainted with Mares, nor ride them often, for nothing ſooner ſhortens life in any Creature.

6. The Sixth, not to be over-heat, nor his Spirits to be waſted by long and tedious Journeys.

7. The Seventh is, continually to be in ſmooth, ſerene and wholeſom Air, and not to feed in foggy Fens, Marſhes, or damp Meadows.

8. The Eighth, Obſerve that you neither exerciſe, nor any ways make him labour hard when he is newly taken from Graſs.

9. The Ninth, To keep him from greedily eating young Graſs, either Clover or other, but eſpecially from Surfeiting on the blades of Corn.

10. The Tenth, You muſt obſerve that he drink not when he has been hard ridden or laboured, ſo that he is very hot.

11. The Eleventh thing to be taken notice of is, that you muſt neither waſh nor walk him when you are come to your Journeys end, ride him about a moderate pace till he begins to cool, and then bring him into the Stable, rub him well down and clap on his Cloths, and wiſp him round, being well ſtored with Litter.

12. The Twelfth and laſt is to give him Meat in due time, obſerve his Scourings, Diets, and other Phyſical Medicines as occaſion ſhall require, the which in this Book you will find good ſtore, with large directions how to uſe them.

CHAP. XIX.

St. Anthony's *moſt Admirable Remedy for any Sprain, Swelling, or ſtretching of Sinews or Nerves. A better not to be found.*

OF bruiſed *Cummin* ſeeds take three ounces, and boil them in a pint of Oil of *Camomil*, then add to them half a pound of yellow Bees-wax, and let them boil to the thickneſs of a Cere-cloth, then ſpread it on Sheeps-Leather very hot, and apply it to the place ſo grieved, and in twice doing it will perfect the Cure if it be not too far gone, if it be, you muſt apply it till it is well.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

The ſpeedieſt and ſafeſt way to cure the ſwift Cut, or the Knee-Cut.

TAke one pint of White wine, then add to it two ounces of Virgin-Honey, brew them together, and boil them till the Honey is melted amongſt the Wine, and then add more of Turpentine the like quantity, then let them boil to the thickneſs of a Salve, and as hot as the Horſe can endure it, waſh the cuts with it once or twice a day, and it will quickly heal them, but be ſure you waſh the dirt out of them if there be any in, waſh it with hot water before you apply the Ointment.

CHAP. XXI.

A ſpeedy Remedy for a Horſe or a Cow that have any way licked up red Poiſon, Worms, Spiders, or any other venemous Inſect, or that is ready to burſt by eating of too much Clover, Turnips or young eared Barley, and drinking after it.

THis is to be known by their ſpeedy ſwelling and ſlavering at the Mouth, and working at the Fundament, the which when you perceive that they are ready to burſt (which is a common thing about Harveſt time) be ſure to have receſs to this Medicine, take four ounces of Spaniſh Sope, or if that be not to be gotten, our Engliſh Cake-Sope, and ſcrape it into a Mortar, then put to it two ounces of *Dialphera*, then beat them ſmall as you can together, and make it into Balls as big as Pigeons Eggs, and take one of them and diſſolve it in hot Beer, and if it will not quickly diſſolve, crumble it in, then with a drenching horn or any

ſuch neceſſary implement, pour it down the throat of the Beaſt ſo ſwelled, be it either a Horſe, Ox, or Cow, and it will immediately abate the ſwelling by urine and ſcouring, which it will force in abundance.

CHAP. XXII.

An approved Remedy for the mad Staggers or Lunacy.

THE Symptoms whereby you ſhall know whether your Horſe be troubled with this Diſeaſe, are his dulneſs and heavineſs, foaming at mouth, dimneſs of ſight, often ſtaring, and having a blue skin over his ſight; reſtleſs and often reeling and the like, the which, or any of them being obſerved, you muſt inſtantly take care to have your Horſe let blood in the Neck in the great Blood-veins on the left ſide, or if you think convenient on both ſides, and in the third Bar of the Palate of his mouth, and prick him in the Noſe, juſt upon the Griſtles above the Noſtrils, which bleeding will inſtantly abate the grievous pain of his Head, then take a handful of *Rue* or *Herb of Grace*, three or four cloves of Garlick, an ounce of fine Salt, *Aqua vitæ* two ſpoonfuls, of White-wine Vinegar one; after they are bruiſed together, ſtrain them and pour the Liquid ſubſtance equally divided into his ears, then with black Wool ſtop them cloſe, ſo that no Air can get in, or tie them that he may not ſhake out the wool, then fume his Noſtrils through the little end of a Funnel, with the peelings of Garlick and Maſtick well dried and beaten, and rowled up in little Balls or ſprinkled upon a chafing diſh of Charcoals, and ſo do three times a day at leaſt, and it will expel the infectious vapours that diſturbed the Brain, then give him a dram of ſingle Poppy-Seeds beaten into Powder, the which you muſt blow up his Noſtrils, and about two ounces of Poppy-water to drink, which will caſt him into a ſound ſleep, after, let his diet be maſhed Oats and ground, and give him cold water to drink, and after twenty four hours you may unbind or unſere his ears and take out the wool, and in a ſhort time he will chear up and look ſively again: *Probatum eſt.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

How to ſtop the Glaunders for a day or two, whilſt you have Sold or Swapped away your Horſe, who is troubled with the ſame.

FIrſt, of Verjuice take four ounces, three ſpoonfuls of Olive Oil, two of *Aqua vitæ*, and put half into one Noſtril, and the reſt into the other with a Siringe when it is Luke-warm, then ride your Horſe full ſpeed for half a mile or more, only when you obſerve him begin to cough, ride gently, and put him into a warm Stable, cover him with Cloths, and give him a Maſh, but if he be ill diſpoſed upon the turning of the Glaunders, give him new Milk as warm as poſſible, and they will infallibly ſtop.

CHAP. XXIV.

How to order your Stallion as to his Diet when he is to cover your Mare.

AT any time when you deſign him to Cover your Mare, you muſt about a week before take him out of the Stable, and let him run in the freſheſt and tendereſt graſs you have, the which will not only encreaſe, but make his ſeed of the apteſt and quickeſt temper for to generate a lively Colt, and he will be the willinger to cover the Mare by reaſon of his Airy temperament of Body, when feeding on Hay or other dry Meat, would render him dull and ſhort-winded, as likewiſe his being acquainted with the Mare will be a great incitement to him.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

For the melting of Greaſe after a Race or other Exceſſive Riding.

THE means to know the certainty of his greaſe being molten, is to obſerve as ſoon as he is in the Stable, whether his Breaſt beats or pants more than uſual after any Journey or Race, as likewiſe his ſides under his girts, and his Flank heaving quick and falling ſoftly; all which if you perceive, then is his greaſe melted, and will turn to crudy humours if not brought away in time; the ſpedieſt way for which, is to take one pint of Spaniſh Wine, and an ounce of *Diaſcordium* brewed in the ſame, and give it to him preſently to drink, and ſo continue doing four or five Mornings after, before he has eaten either Hay or Provender, then you muſt diet him with Maſhes of Oats and Barly boiled, and a conſiderable quantity of ground Malt, and let him drink water indifferent warm; but if he refuſe his Meat you muſt give him half a pint of White wine, into which you muſt put two ounces of Honey, and let them boil till the Honey is melted, and let him take it pretty warm, the which will cauſe him to void much Urine, and by that means give him eaſe. Upon his taking of this you muſt ride him a Mile or more, but it muſt not be above a hand gallop, then returning home you muſt rub him down and keep him as warm as poſſible; when in this manner you have ſpent three days, give him another the like quantity of Honey and White-wine, then take eſpecial notice of his Dung; if it be ſmall, and he ſeem to dung with pain, then he is bound in his Belly, and the Greaſe is not removed, to effect which, you muſt give him three pints or two quarts of Beer the ſtaleſt you can get, and a ſlice of Houſhold-bread, both being boiled and mingled together, to which you muſt add four ounces of Honey, and the like quantity of freſh Butter, then in the Morning before he hath eaten any thing, give it him luke-warm, then ride him about a Mile, then give him the ſame again at night, and ride him as before; but you muſt obſerve to give it him but every other day, the which will looſen his Belly, and by degrees waſte the greaſe, about four hours after he hath taken his doſe, boil him three quarts of Oats and give them to him, and mingling

that

that water the Oats were boiled in with ſome other to cool it, let him drink of it; you may with his Oats boil *Fenugreek* ſeeds about three quarters of a pound, and let him eat them mingled; but if he refuſe to eat them, you may mingle them with a little fine Bran; then laſt of all give him an ounce of Aloes boiled, till they are diſſolved in a quart of Ale, or a pint of White-wine, and ſo it will purge away the ill humors, and in three Weeks or leſs reſtore him to his former health and ſoundneſs of Body.

CHAP. XXVI.

How to make a Horſe Vomit, and by ſo doing, to void the foulneſs of his Stomach, or any Infection he hath taken in.

TAke *Polypodium* Roots the greater, pare them and waſh them very clean, and then ſteep them in Oil of Spike, and faſten them to the bit of his Bridle, after which put it on and ride him abroad with the ſame in his mouth, for the ſpace of half an hour, or ſomewhat more, but it muſt be ſoftly, not above a trot at the moſt, and then if any ill humour or flegmatick ſubſtance lodge in his Stomach, this will draw it up by cauſing him to vomit extremely, as likewiſe to Cough and Sneeze, the which will much cleanſe his Head from Rheums that lodge there, and expel the vapours that offend the Brain, ſo that though it make him ſick for the preſent, yet when that is over, he will find himſelf more brisk and lively than before, having voided all the filth and ſlime that are the originals of all Diſeaſes that happen at any time to any Horſe; after you have taken off the Bridle and removed the Roots, give him a pint of the beſt *French* Wine mingled with three ounces of Honey, let it be indifferent warm, and then keep him as much from cold as is poſſible, two hours after you may give him a warm Maſh of Oats and Barley.

CHAP. XXVII.

The Discovery of several Tricks and Cheats used by Jockeys.

1. First then, to make a dull Jade both kick, wince and fling, without either Whip or Spur, they use this device; in the fore-part of a Saddle made for that purpose, they have an Iron Plate, through which is drilled three holes, through which with a spring come three sharp wyers, the which as long as the Rider sits upright do not prick the Horse, but when he leans forward and presses the Bow of the Saddle, they torment him so that he capers and dances though never so dull, which the ignorant Buyer often supposes to proceed from the height of his Mettle, which the Jockey spares not to avouch with Oaths.

2. The Second is, if any Gentleman have set up a Horse in a Stable at Livery, the Jockey either by bribing the Hostler, or privately by taking an opportunity in his absence, will with a hair take up the vein on the inside of the Horses Leg, or by cramping him in the Fet-lock with a small Wyer (neither of which can be observed without a curious search) either of which, will cause the Horse after a quarter of an hours Riding to halt downright Lame, then is the owner sent for, whose coming the Jockey having notice of, pretends some Business in the Stable, and whilst the Gentleman is admiring the sudden mischance befallen his Horse, he puts in his verdict, saying, it was a great deal of pity that so good a Beast should be disabled, and by degrees insinuates into the Gentlemans acquaintance, desiring him to send for a Farrier, who comes and searches his foot, but finds no cause of Lameness there, whereupon the Gentleman dispairing of his recovery is often pressed by the Jockey to sell him at half the worth, or swap him for some dull Jade, that he or some of his Comrades have near at hand, who having got the Gentlemans Horse, by uncramping or letting loose the vein render him as at first.

3. The Third Cheat they put upon Travellers is this, coming into a Country Inn, their first walk is into the Stable, where taking a view of the Horses, they single out the best for their purpose, demanding of the Hostler, who that fine Horse belongs to,

who

who ignorant of any design freely tells them; then they place their Horses next him, and seem only to feed, or rub them down, and order the Hostler to fetch a peck of Oats, the which whilst he is gone to do, they thrust a stone about the bigness of a Tennis-Ball into his Fundament, one of which they have always ready, it not having been in a quarter of an hour before the Horse begins to sweat mightily, and fall a trembling and staring as if his eyes were ready to start out of his head, so that a white foam soon after covers many places about him, which the Hostler observing, runs to the Gentleman that owns him, and tells him his Horse is a dying, at which starting up, he runs to the Stable and finds him in a bad plight, not knowing what to think, or if he do, conjectures he is poisoned, and in a confused hurry enquires for a Farrier or Horse Doctor. when as Mr. Jockey steps in, and asketh what is the matter, as if he poor lifeless fellow knew nothing of it, but quickly understanding the business, begins both to pity the Horse and Gentleman, the former for his miserable condition, and the latter for the danger he is in of losing his Horse, when thus he applies himself: Sir, I am sorry to see your Horse in so bad a plight, then puts in to buy him at a venture, live or die, the which if he cannot do handsomely, he undertakes to cure him, telling the Gentleman that though it is not his usual custom to meddle with, yet he will undertake for forty shillings to warrant his Life: The Gentleman consents rather than to lose a Horse worth twenty pounds; then for a shew he gives him a Drench, and then takes opportunity to withdraw the stone, and within half an hours space the Horse will be perfectly well, and so they fob the Ignorant.

FINIS.

ADVERTISEMENT.

These are to give the Reader notice, that we thought not fit to put the several Cures mentioned in this Addition into the Title Page, by reason the whole Book contains the best for Practice in the World, as also these may be accounted most infallible.

THE

INDEX,

OR,

TABLE

OF THE

Complete Jockey.

SHEWING

The Directions to find any Paragraph contained therein.

CHAP. I.

THE best Method, and speediest way for Ordering Race-Horses, to fit them for any Match in what estate soever. page 3.

The way and manner of Dieting or feeding a Horse for a Race being fat or gross immediately after his being taken from Pasture or Soil as to the first two weeks. c. 2. p. 5.

Ordering

Orders moſt carefully to be obſerved in the Courſing or Heating your Horſe. c. 3. p. 10.
The manner of his ſecond Fortnights feeding, and the care to be obſerved therein. c. 4. p. 11.
The firſt Diet to be given in ordering your Race-Horſe and the way to make it. c. 5. p. 12.
The Doſe or Scouring. c. 6. p. 17.
The way and method of looking to, and keeping your Horſe after he has taken the Scouring. c. 7. ibid.
The manner of making Cordial Balls and their virtue, with an account of what Diſeaſes they are moſt powerful to cure. c. 8. p. 19.
The manner of making his laſt Diet. c. 9. p. 20.
The third Fortnights Dieting and Ordering your Horſe. c. 10. p. 21.
In buying a Horſe, what Horſe to chuſe, and how to avoid being Cheated, Pag. the 25. Break the ſecond, for here note the Printer forgot to put in the Contents of the following Inſtructions. Sect. 2. p. 25.
How to cure the Autocoe, *a violent pain ſo called.* c. 11. p. 37.
How to cure a Horſe that has been burnt by a Mare. c. 12. ib.
Rules to be obſerved in Sweating of Horſes. c. 13. p. 38.
How to prevent a Horſe from ſtumbling. c. 14. ibid.
How to take the beſt advantage of ground in any Race. c. 15 p. 39.
How to know by the hair of your Horſes neck in what eſtate he is. c. 16. p. 40.
How to make the brittleſt Hoof imaginable become ſoft and bear well any ſhooe without the leaſt injury to the Horſe. c. 17. ibid.
An account of things to be obſerved for the preſervation of a Horſes health, and to make him live long. c. 18. p. 41.
St. Anthony's *moſt admirable Remedy for any Sprain, Swelling, or ſtretching of Sinews or Nerves. A better not to be found.*

The

The ſpeedieſt and ſafeſt way to cure the ſwift-cut or knee-cut. c. 20. p. 43.

A ſpeedy Remedy for a Horſe or Cow, that have any ways licked up red Poiſon, Worms, Spiders, or any other venomous Inſect, or that is ready to burſt by eating of two much Clover, Turnips, or eared Barley and drinking ſoon after it. c. 21. ibid.

An approved Remedy for the mad Staggers or Lunacy. c. 22. p. 44.

How to ſtop the Glaunders for a day or two, whilſt you have ſold or ſwapped away your Horſe that is troubled with the ſame. c. 23. p. 45.

How to order your Stallion as to his Diet, when he is to cover your Mare. c. 24. ibid.

For the melting of Greaſe after a Race or other exceſſive Ridings. c. 25. p. 46.

How to make a Horſe vomit, and by ſo doing, to avoid the foulneſs of his Stomach or any Infection he hath taken in. c. 26. p. 47.

The diſcovery of ſeveral Tricks and Cheats uſed by the Jockeys. c. 26. p. 48.

FINIS.

30. y. 78
BL